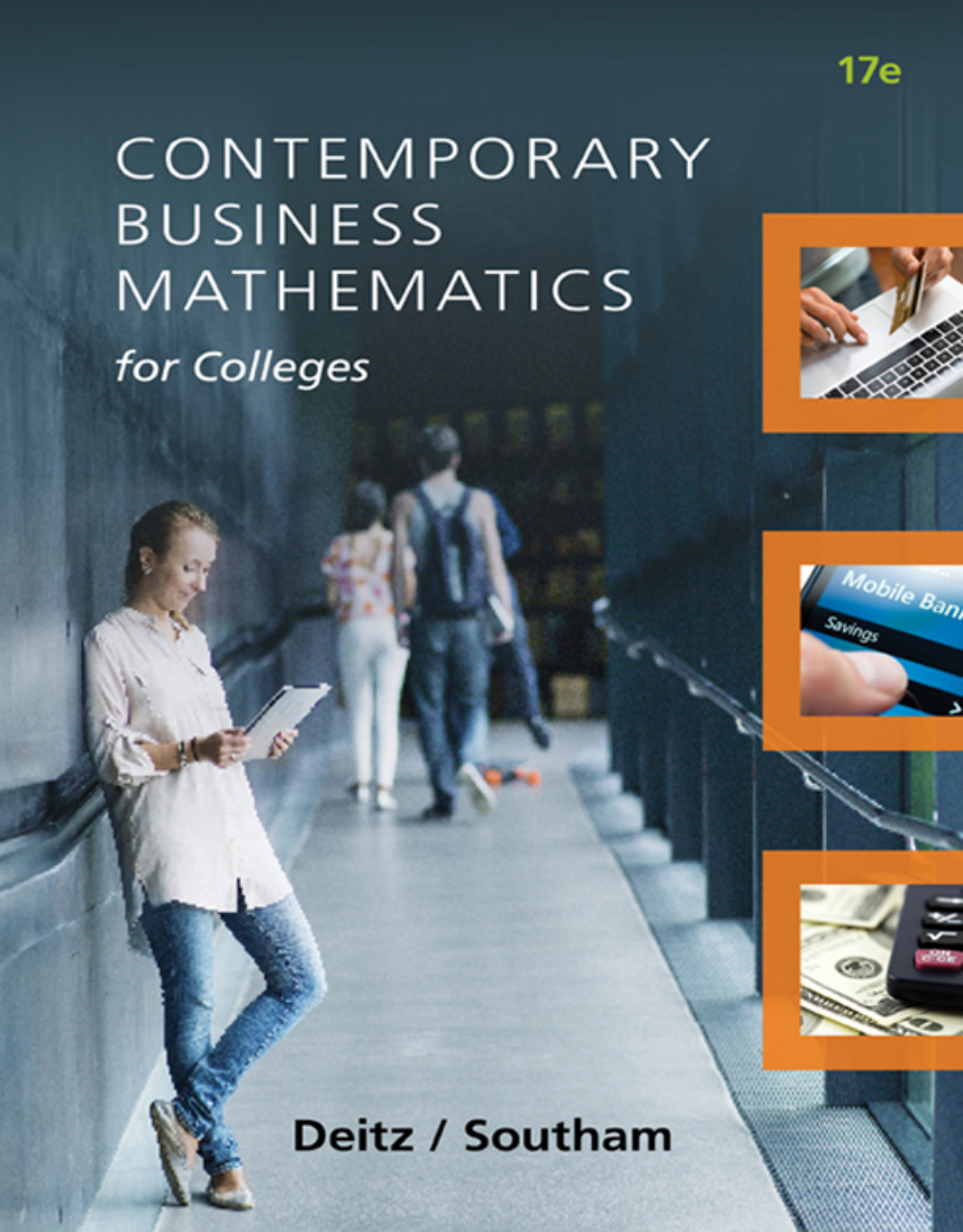


17e

CONTEMPORARY BUSINESS MATHEMATICS

for Colleges

Deitz / Southam

17e

Contemporary Business Mathematics

for Colleges

17e

Contemporary Business Mathematics

for Colleges

James E. Deitz, Ed.D.
Past President of Heald Colleges

James L. Southam, Ph.D.
San Francisco State University

CENGAGE Learning®

Australia • Brazil • Japan • Korea • Mexico • Singapore • Spain • United Kingdom • United States

This is an electronic version of the print textbook. Due to electronic rights restrictions, some third party content may be suppressed. Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. The publisher reserves the right to remove content from this title at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it. For valuable information on pricing, previous editions, changes to current editions, and alternate formats, please visit www.cengage.com/highered to search by ISBN#, author, title, or keyword for materials in your areas of interest.

Important Notice: Media content referenced within the product description or the product text may not be available in the eBook version.

CENGAGE Learning®

Contemporary Business Mathematics for Colleges Seventeenth Edition
James E. Deitz, Ed.D., and James L. Southam, Ph.D.

Vice President, General Manager: Science, Math & Quantitative Business: Balraj Kalsi
Product Director: Joe Sabatino
Product Manager: Aaron Arnsparger
Associate Content Developer: Conor Allen
Sr. Product Assistant: Brad Sullender
Associate Marketing Manager: Eileen Corcoran
Content Project Manager: Jana Lewis
Manufacturing Planner: Ron Montgomery
Marketing Manager: Heather Mooney
Production Service: MPS Limited
Sr. Art Director: Stacy Shirley
Cover Designer: LouAnn Thesing
Cover Images: ©Fentino/iStock Photo, ©loops7/iStock Photo, ©LDProd/iStock Photo
Intellectual Property
  Analyst: Christina Ciaramella
  Project Manager: Sarah Shainwald

© 2016, 2009 Cengage Learning

WCN: 02-200-208

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced, transmitted, stored, or used in any form or by any means graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including but not limited to photocopying, recording, scanning, digitizing, taping, Web distribution, information networks, or information storage and retrieval systems, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

For product information and technology assistance, contact us at
Cengage Learning Customer & Sales Support, 1-800-354-9706
For permission to use material from this text or product,
submit all requests online at **www.cengage.com/permissions**
Further permissions questions can be emailed to
permissionrequest@cengage.com

Unless otherwise noted, all items © Cengage Learning®

Library of Congress Control Number: 2014957655

ISBN: 978-1-305-50668-8

Cengage Learning
20 Channel Center Street
Boston, MA 02210
USA

Cengage Learning is a leading provider of customized learning solutions with office locations around the globe, including Singapore, the United Kingdom, Australia, Mexico, Brazil, and Japan. Locate your local office at: **www.cengage.com/global**

Cengage Learning products are represented in Canada by Nelson Education, Ltd.

To learn more about Cengage Learning Solutions, visit **www.cengage.com**

Purchase any of our products at your local college store or at our preferred online store **www.cengagebrain.com**

Printed in the United States of America
Print Number: 01 Print Year: 2015

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To the Student

Contemporary Business Mathematics for Colleges, Edition 17, presents an arithmetic-based, basic approach to business mathematics. It emphasizes a practical, skill-building approach to prepare you for future careers in business through step-by-step development of concepts, numerous practice exercises, and a focus on business applications of techniques. It will also provide you with business vocabulary, practices and valuable background information for future business courses such as bookkeeping, accounting or finance. The text progresses from basic to more complex business mathematics topics.

During its previous editions, *Contemporary Business Mathematics for Colleges* sold more copies than any other business mathematics textbook. As always, the goal of this new seventeenth edition is to make a successful book even better. This edition continues to maintain its coverage of practical business mathematics problems and offers step-by-step solutions to help you solve these problems. The content of the new edition continues to be focused entirely on business mathematics with its emphasis on both the needs of contemporary business students and the requirements of shorter regular and online courses. *Contemporary Business Mathematics for Colleges* presents the basic principles of mathematics and immediately applies them in a series of practical business problems. This new edition continues to provide a balance among conceptual understanding, skill development, and business applications.

In the modern business environment, managers, employees, and consumers all need knowledge of and skill in business mathematics. Although computers and calculators are used to do many of the calculations, it is important to understand the concepts behind the mechanical computations. The purpose of this business mathematics textbook is to increase your mathematics knowledge, to develop your skills at applying this knowledge, and to introduce you to business application areas. This will make you more valuable employees, wiser consumers, and more prepared for your future business studies.

KEY FEATURES

Integrated Learning Objectives: These icons identify the sections of each chapter where each specific Learning Objective is addressed. The Learning Objectives are there to remind the students of the organization of the chapter.

Concept Checks: At the end of the section for each Learning Objective is a Concept Check to reinforce students' understanding of that particular Learning Objective.

Step-by-Step Problem-Solving Approach: Short, concise text sections are followed by examples with step-by-step solutions. Students learn mathematical concepts by immediately applying practical solutions to common business problems, and they gain confidence in their own problem-solving skills by learning the way example problems are solved and then practicing these techniques in the assignments.

Business Examples and Applications: Every mathematical technique is introduced and/or followed by a relevant business-related example. These business problems and examples from a variety of business applications help students better relate to the material as they learn how it is successfully applied.

Bottom Line: This end-of-chapter feature ties each Learning Objective to self-test problems (with answers). Students have the opportunity to check immediately whether they have mastered the chapter's key skills before moving on to the assignments.

Self-Check Review Problems: Located at the end of each chapter, the self-check review problems provide yet another opportunity for students to reinforce their understanding before completing the end-of-chapter assignments. Answers are provided at the end of the text.

End-of-Chapter Assignments: Every chapter has a minimum of two assignment sets. These provide students with many hundreds of problems to enhance their mastery of the mathematical concepts and business-related applications.

Methodology for Solving Word Problems: Chapter 3 contains a time-tested methodology for solving various types of word problems and also an introduction to some algebraic concepts. These items are presented at this early point in the text so that students will have important basic tools as they begin their study of business mathematics.

Microsoft® Excel Templates: Spreadsheet templates give students practice with both mathematics and spreadsheet software. The Excel templates were prepared by Adele Stock, faculty, Minnesota State Colleges and Universities, and are available on the companion website.

Product Website: To access the companion site, go to www.cengagebrain.com and search for this book by its name or author. On the companion site you'll find Excel exercises, a Math in Employment test, Instructor PowerPoints, and tests in Word format.

SUGGESTIONS TO IMPROVE YOUR STUDY

The special features in *Contemporary Business Mathematics for Colleges* are meant to help you focus your study. Keeping up with the coursework and making consistent use of the features will improve your performance on homework assignments and exams.

1. Read the text and study the step-by-step illustrations and examples carefully.
2. Work the Concept Check and the Bottom Line problems. These features will give you a comprehensive review of the problems in each chapter, before you get to the assignments.
3. Read the instructions carefully for each assignment before solving the problems.
4. Your instructor may tell you whether you are to work in groups or by yourself. However, you will not have learned until you can do the calculations yourself. Ask your instructor for help if you have difficulty understanding what you are asked to do, or how to do it.
5. Before working a problem, try to estimate your answer. The early chapters present methods for doing this.
6. Use shortcuts in your calculations to increase your confidence. Shortcuts are presented in several chapters.
7. Write numbers neatly and clearly, and align them in columns to help avoid errors.
8. Space is provided on the assignment sheets to compute most problems. Show each step in the solution so that if you make an error, your instructor can help you locate the cause.
9. Record your scores for each assignment on the Progress Report at the end of the book.

Acknowledgments

We would like to acknowledge the work of reviewers and verifiers who provided suggestions about ways to continually improve our text.

Allan Sheets, International Business College, Indianapolis
Amy McLaughlin, Utica School of Commerce
Brenda Rudolph, Flathead Valley Community College
Cheryl O'Berry, Pasco Hernando Community College
David Heilman, Ohio Business College
Dawn Stevens, Northwest Mississippi Community College - Desoto Center
Debra Kayser, Sheridan College
Diane Hagan, Ohio Business College
Dr. Wanda J. Flowers, Enterprise State Community College
Emma A Faulk, Alabama State University
Gale Sheppeard, Holmes Community College
Gerald Sweeney, Ventura College
Jeff Davis, Stevens-Henager College
John Donnellan, Holyoke Community College
Judy Hurtt, East Central Community College
Julia Angel, North Arkansas College
Kara Ryan, College of Notre Dame of Maryland
Karla West, Flathead Valley Community College
Kathy H. Scott, Western Piedmont Community College
Kelli Butler, Mid Michigan Community College
Leasa L. Davis, Mountain State College
Linda Davis, Copiah-Lincoln Community College
Mahmudul Sheikh, Rust College
Mary Dombrovski, St Cloud Technical and Community College
Mauritia Dodson, Ivy Tech Commuity College
Monill McClure, Spoon River College
Paula Luft, Black Hawk College-East Campus
Rhonda Posey, Copiah-Lincoln Community College
Richard Rhoads, West Hills Community College
Sherry Harris, UAM College of Technology, Crossett
Steve Hixenbaugh, Mendocino College
Thomas Burzycki
Tiffany Harrison, Stevens-Henager College

We also thank the staff at Cengage who worked to make this new edition the best business mathematics text possible: Product Manager Aaron Arnsparger, Marketing Manager Heather Mooney, and Associate Content Developer Conor Allen. And we'd like to extend a special thanks to verifier Domenic Tavella, who worked quickly yet carefully to ensure the accuracy of this edition.

James E. Deitz
James L. Southam

About the Authors

JAMES E. DEITZ

PAST PRESIDENT OF HEALD COLLEGES

Author ***James E. Deitz*** brings both a thorough understanding of effective education today and a practical business knowledge to the latest edition of this leading text. Dr. Deitz earned his bachelor's degree in accounting from Memphis State University and doctorate of education from UCLA. Dr. Deitz has been an educator for more than 35 years, including professorships with UCLA and Los Angeles State College and a long-standing position as President of Heald Colleges. An active member of the business community, Dr. Deitz is a recognized international speaker and has served on regional educational accrediting commissions. Dr. Deitz serves currently on the Executive Committee and Board of Trustees of Dominican University of California and as a member of the Board of Directors of Bank of Marin. He has authored several texts in addition to this best-selling ***Contemporary Business Mathematics for Colleges***.

JAMES L. SOUTHAM

SAN FRANCISCO STATE UNIVERSITY

Author ***James L. Southam*** has a diverse background of professional, educational, and teaching experience in business and mathematics. Dr. Southam holds bachelor's and master's degrees in mathematics education from Southern Oregon College, a Ph.D. in mathematics from Oregon State University, an MBA in finance from University of California, Berkeley, and a law degree from University of California, Hastings. Dr. Southam's 40 years of teaching experience include San Francisco State University College of Business, California State University, Stanislaus, Southern Oregon College, Oregon State University, and the University of International Business and Economics in Beijing. Both domestically and internationally, Dr. Southam has participated in business ventures, has been a business consultant, and is a successful author.

BRIEF CONTENTS

Part 1: Fundamental Applications 2

1 Fractions 3
2 Decimals 19
3 Word Problems and Equations 41
4 International System of Units (SI): *The Metric System* 57

Part 2: Percentage Applications 74

5 Percents 75
6 Commissions 95
7 Discounts 109
8 Markup 127

Part 3: Accounting Applications 144

9 Banking 145
10 Payroll Records 163
11 Taxes 191
12 Insurance 219

Part 4: Interest Applications 240

13 Simple Interest 241
14 Installment Purchases 259
15 Promissory Notes and Discounting 283
16 Compound Interest 303

Part 5: Business Applications 330

17 Inventory and Turnover 331
18 Depreciation 351
19 Financial Statements 369
20 International Business 391

Part 6: Corporate and Special Applications 404

21 Corporate Stocks 405
22 Corporate and Government Bonds 425
23 Annuities 441
24 Business Statistics 473

Appendix A Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems 497

Appendix B Answers to Self-Check Review Problems 506

Appendix C Fundamental Concepts 510

Glossary 517

Index 523

Progress Report 527

CONTENTS

Part 1: Fundamental Applications 2

1 **Fractions** **3**
- Notation and Vocabulary of Fractions 4
- Changing Improper Fractions and Mixed Numbers 5
- Changing Fractions to Lower and Higher Terms 6
- Adding Fractions and Mixed Numbers 7
- Subtracting Fractions and Mixed Numbers 8
  - Borrowing 1 8
- Multiplying Fractions and Mixed Numbers 10
- Canceling Common Factors in Numerators and Denominators 10
- Dividing Fractions and Mixed Numbers 11

2 **Decimals** **19**
- Fractions Versus Decimal Numbers 20
- Decimal Numbers and Electronic Displays 20
- Reading Decimal Numbers 21
  - Reading Long Decimal Numbers 21
- Rounding Decimal Numbers 22
  - Rounding Up 22
- Whole Numbers, Decimal Numbers, and Arithmetic 23
- Adding Decimal Numbers 23
- Subtracting Decimal Numbers 24
- Multiplying Decimal Numbers 25
- Dividing Decimal Numbers 26
- Using Multipliers and Divisors that End with Zeros 29
- Approximating Products and Quotients 30

3 **Word Problems and Equations** **41**
- Solving Word Problems 42
- Solving Rate, Time, and Distance Problems 43
- Solving Simple Numerical Equations 45
- Numerical Relationships in a Series 47
- Making Quick Calculations by Rounding Numbers 48

4 **International System of Units (SI): *The Metric System*** **57**
- Basic Elements of the International System of Units (SI) 58
  - Decimal System 58
  - Metric Units 59
- The Measurement of Length 60
  - Changing to Larger or Smaller Units 60
  - Comparison of US and SI Systems Measurement of Length 60
  - Changing to Larger or Smaller Units 62
  - Comparison of US and SI Systems Measurement of Capacity 63
  - Changing to Larger or Smaller Units 64
  - Comparison of US and SI Systems Measurement of Weight 65

Part 2: Percentage Applications 74

5 **Percents** **75**
- Changing Percents to Decimals 76
- Changing Fractions and Decimals to Percents 77
- Finding Base, Rate, and Percentage 78
  - Using Percents in Business 80
- Using Percents to Measure Increase and Decrease 80
  - Computing Amounts of Increase and Decrease with a Calculator 82

- Using Percents to Allocate Overhead Expenses 82

6 Commissions 95
- Computing Sales Commissions and Gross Pay 96
- Computing Graduated Sales Commissions 97
- Computing Sales and Purchases for Principals 99

7 Discounts 109
- Computing Trade Discounts 110
- Computing a Series of Trade Discounts 111
  - Complement Method Shortcut 112
- Computing the Equivalent Single Discount Rate 113
- Computing Cash Discounts for Fully Paid Invoices 114
  - Returned Merchandise and Freight Charges 115
- Computing Cash Discounts for Partially Paid Invoices 117

8 Markup 127
- Computing Markup Variables 128
- Computing Markup Based on Cost 129
  - Computing Selling Price Directly from Cost 129
  - Computing Cost Directly from Selling Price 130
- Computing Markup Percent Based on Cost 131
- Computing Markup Based on Selling Price 132
  - Computing Cost Directly from Selling Price 132
  - Computing Selling Price Directly from Cost 133
- Computing Markup Percent Based on Selling Price 134

Part 3: Accounting Applications 144

9 Banking 145
- Using Deposit Slips and Bank Checks 146
- Using Checkbooks and Check Registers 148
- Reconciling Bank Statements 149

10 Payroll Records 163
- Preparing a Payroll Register 164
- Computing Federal Income Tax Withholding Amounts 166
- Computing Social Security, Medicare, and Other Withholdings 174
- Completing an Employee's Earnings Record 176
- Computing an Employer's Quarterly Federal Tax Return 177
- Computing an Employer's Federal and State Unemployment Tax Liability 179

11 Taxes 191
- Computing Sales Taxes 192
  - Sales Tax as a Percent of Price 192
  - Sales Tax as an Amount per Unit 193
  - Excise Tax as an Amount per Unit 193
- Computing Assessed Valuations and Property Taxes 194
- Computing Tax Rates in Percents 195
  - Percents 195
- Computing Special Assessments, Prorations, and Exemptions 196
- Determining Taxable Income, Using Standard Form 1040 198
  - Computing Taxable Income 201

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTENTS

Determining Taxes Due,
Using Standard Form 1040 202
    Tax Credits and Net Tax 202

12 Insurance 219
Computing Auto Insurance
Costs 220
Computing Low-Risk and
High-Risk Rates 221
Computing Short Rates 222
Computing Coinsurance
on Property Losses 223
Computing Life Insurance
Premiums 225
Computing Cash Surrender
and Loan Values 226
Computing Medical
Insurance Contributions
and Reimbursements 227

Part 4: Interest Applications 240

13 Simple Interest 241
Computing Simple Interest 242
    Using Calculators 243
Computing Ordinary Interest 244
Computing Exact Interest 244
Comparing Ordinary Interest
and Exact Interest 245
Estimating Simple Interest 246
    Combinations of Time and
    Interest That Yield 1% 246
    Other Rates and Times 246
    Estimating Exact Simple
    Interest 246
Computing the Interest
Variables 247
    Finding the Interest
    Amount, Principal, Rate,
    or Time 248

14 Installment Purchases 259
Converting Interest Rates 260
Computing Simple Interest
on a Monthly Basis 261
Computing Finance Charges 261
    Consumer Protection Acts
    and Terminology 262
Computing Costs of Installment
Purchases 263
Computing Effective
Interest Rates 265
    Increasing the Effective
    Rate 266
Amortizing a Loan 268
    Computing the Monthly
    Payment 268
    Loan Payment Schedule 270
Computing a Monthly
Mortgage Payment 271
    Amortization Schedule
    for a Mortgage 272

15 Promissory Notes and Discounting 283
Promissory Notes 284
Computing the Number of
Interest Days of a Note 285
Determining the Due Date
of a Note 286
Computing the Maturity
Value of a Note 288
Discounting Promissory
Notes 288
    Non-Interest-Bearing
    Promissory Notes 290
Bank Discounting 291
    Comparing a Discount
    Rate to an Interest
    Rate 292
Borrowing Money to Take
a Cash Discount 293

16 Compound Interest 303
Compute Future Values 304
    Future Value Formula 305
    Finding the Future Value
    Factor Using a Calculator
    (Optional) 306
    Various Compounding
    Periods 307

- Daily Compounding (Optional) 309
- Compute Present Values 310
- Compute Using Present Value Factors 311
  - Alternate Present Value Formula 312
  - Using a Calculator to Find the PVF (Optional) 312

Part 5: Business Applications 330

17 Inventory and Turnover 331
- Accounting for Inventory 332
  - Inventory Sheets 332
  - Perpetual Inventory Systems 332
- Computing Inventory, Using the Average Cost, FIFO, and LIFO Methods 334
  - The Average Cost Method 334
  - The FIFO Method 334
  - The LIFO Method 335
- Computing Inventory at the Lower of Cost or Market Value 335
- Estimating Inventory Value 337
- Computing Inventory Turnover 338

18 Depreciation 351
- Computing Depreciation with the Straight-Line Method 352
- Computing Depreciation with the Units-of-Production Method 353
  - Book Value 353
- Computing Depreciation with the Declining-Balance Method 354
- Computing Depreciation with the Sum-of-the-Years-Digits Method 355
- Computing Depreciation with the Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System 357
- Computing Partial-Year Depreciation 358

19 Financial Statements 369
- Analyzing Balance Sheets 370
- Analyzing Income Statements 372
- Computing Business Operating Ratios 375
  - Working Capital Ratio 375
  - Acid Test Ratio 376
  - Ratio of Accounts Receivable to Net Sales 376
  - Inventory Turnover 377
  - Relationship of Net Income to Net Sales 377
  - Rate of Return on Investment 377

20 International Business 391
- Computing Currency Exchange Rates 392
- Computing the Effects of Exchange Rate Changes 393
- Computing Duties on Imports 395

Part 6: Corporate and Special Applications 404

21 Corporate Stocks 405
- Computing the Costs and Proceeds of Stock Transactions 406
- Computing the Costs and Proceeds of Round and Odd Lots 409
- Computing the Rate of Yield and Gains or Losses 410
  - The Rate of Yield 410
  - Gain or Loss on Sale of Stock 410
- Computing Comparative Earning Potential 411

CONTENTS

22 Corporate and Government Bonds 425
Computing Gains and Losses on Corporate Bonds 426
Computing Annual Interest on Corporate and Government Bonds 427
  Newspaper Information on Bonds 428
  Commissions for Buying and Selling Bonds 429
Computing Accrued Interest on Bond Transactions 429
Computing the Rate of Yield for Bonds.............................430
Computing the Rate of Yield to Maturity...........................431

23 Annuities 441
Computing the Future Value of an Annuity 442
  Future Value of an Annuity Formula and Table.................................. 444
  Using a Calculator to Compute Future Value of Annuity Factors (Optional)................................445
  Various Payment Periods.........445
Computing Regular Payments of an Annuity from the Future Value 446
  Sinking Funds...........................447
Computing the Present Value of an Annuity......................448
  Present Value of an Annuity Formula and Table...................449
  Using a Calculator to Compute the Present Value of an Annuity (Optional)................................450
Computing Regular Payments of an Annuity from the Present Value.................451
Computing the Payment to Amortize a Loan 452
Creating a Loan Amortization Schedule 454

24 Business Statistics 473
Statistical Averages: Computing the Mean 474
Determining the Median.............475
Determining the Mode.................476
Constructing Frequency Tables..476
  Computing the Mean of Large Data Sets 477
Charts and Graphs: Constructing Histograms 478
Constructing Bar Graphs...............479
  Comparative Bar Graph...........480
  Component Bar Graph 481
Constructing Line Graphs 482
Constructing Pie Charts 485

Appendix A Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems 497

Appendix B Answers to Self-Check Review Problems 506

Appendix C Fundamental Concepts...................510

Glossary...517

Index..523

Progress Report 527

17e

Contemporary Business Mathematics

for Colleges

Part 1

Fundamental Applications

1 Fractions
2 Decimals
3 Word Problems and Equations
4 International System of Units (SI)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Fractions

1

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1	Change improper fractions and mixed numbers.
Learning Objective 2	Change fractions to lower and higher terms.
Learning Objective 3	Add fractions and mixed numbers.
Learning Objective 4	Subtract fractions and mixed numbers.
Learning Objective 5	Multiply fractions and mixed numbers.
Learning Objective 6	Divide fractions and mixed numbers.

©Africa Studio/Shutterstock.Com

Mathematics is a subject used in almost every phase of business. You have been exposed to business-related mathematics at least since your first visit to a store as a child. Some of business mathematics is the arithmetic of whole numbers which you started learning before you entered school. But most of business mathematics involves other additional numbers: fractions, decimals, and percents. In Chapter 1, we review fractions; in Chapter 2, decimals; and in Chapter 5, percents. (*Note:* A review of vocabulary and basic operations of whole numbers is available in Appendix C.)

Fractions are a natural part of cultures around the world. Very young children who cannot yet read learn simple fractions such as one-half and one-third when their parents teach them about sharing a candy bar or a pizza. Before the development of inexpensive handheld calculators, fractions were more important than they are today because they permitted shortcuts in arithmetic. However, fractions are still important in some industries. Moreover, the rules of fractions remain very important in algebra and higher mathematics.

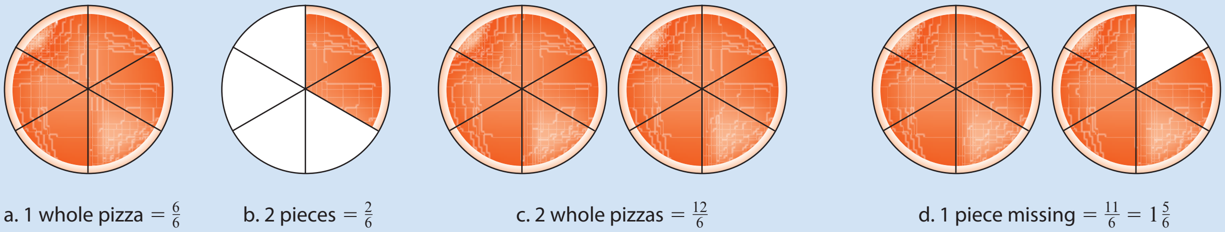
Notation and Vocabulary of Fractions

Ristorante Porta cuts its medium-sized pizzas into six pieces. Each piece is "*one-sixth*" of the pizza. If you take two pieces of pizza, you have "*two-sixths*" of the pizza. Using numbers, two sixths can be written as $\frac{2}{6}$. If you buy two medium-sized pizzas and cut each pizza into six pieces, you will have twelve pieces, or *twelve-sixths,* written as $\frac{12}{6}$. If you eat one of the twelve slices of pizza, eleven pieces remain, or *eleven-sixths,* written as $\frac{11}{6}$.

In the three fractions $\frac{2}{6}$, $\frac{12}{6}$, and $\frac{11}{6}$, the bottom number (6) is called the **denominator.** The top numbers (2, 12, and 11) are called **numerators.** The horizontal line that separates the numerator from the denominator is called the **fraction bar.** $\frac{2}{6}$ is called a **proper fraction** because the numerator (2) is *smaller than* the denominator (6). $\frac{12}{6}$ and $\frac{11}{6}$ are called **improper fractions** because the numerators are *greater than, or equal to,* the denominators. Notice that $\frac{11}{6}$ represents one whole pizza plus $\frac{5}{6}$ of the second pizza. $\frac{11}{6}$ can be written as $1\frac{5}{6}$ which is called a **mixed number** because there is a whole number part (1) and a proper fraction $\left(\frac{5}{6}\right)$.

Figure 1-1 illustrates these concepts. Diagram b represents a proper fraction. Diagrams a, c, and d all represent improper fractions. Diagram d also represents a mixed number.

Figure 1-1



a. 1 whole pizza $= \frac{6}{6}$

b. 2 pieces $= \frac{2}{6}$

c. 2 whole pizzas $= \frac{12}{6}$

d. 1 piece missing $= \frac{11}{6} = 1\frac{5}{6}$

Changing Improper Fractions and Mixed Numbers

Learning Objective 1

Change improper fractions and mixed numbers.

In Figure 1-1(d), the diagram shows that the improper fraction $\frac{11}{6}$ is equal to the mixed number $1\frac{5}{6}$. With any fraction, you can interpret the fraction bar as the division symbol so that $\frac{11}{6} = 11 \div 6$. In whole-number arithmetic, $11 \div 6$ equals a *quotient* of 1 with a *remainder* of 5. Therefore, using simple arithmetic, we can change improper fractions to mixed numbers and mixed numbers to improper fractions.

STEPS to Change an Improper Fraction to a Mixed Number

1. Divide the numerator by the denominator.
2. The quotient is the whole-number part of the mixed number.
3. The remainder is the numerator of the fraction part.
4. The original denominator is the denominator of the fraction part.

EXAMPLE A

Change $\frac{11}{8}$ to a mixed number.

STEP 1

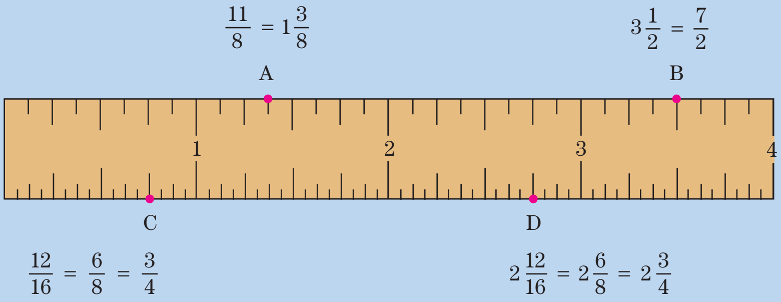
$$\frac{11}{8} = \begin{array}{r} 1\ R3 \\ 8\overline{)11} \\ \underline{8} \\ 3 \end{array}$$

STEPS 2, 3, & 4

$$\text{Thus, } \frac{11}{8} = 1\frac{3}{8}$$

Note: Refer to Point A in Figure 1-2 to see where these numbers appear on a ruler.

Figure 1-2



STEPS to Change a Mixed Number to an Improper Fraction

1. Multiply the denominator of the fraction part by the whole number.
2. Add the numerator of the fraction part to the product of Step 1. The sum is the numerator of the improper fraction.
3. The denominator of the fraction part of the mixed number is the denominator of the improper fraction.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE B

Change $3\frac{1}{2}$ to an improper fraction.

STEP 1 STEPS 2, 3

$$2 \times 3 = 6 \qquad \text{Thus, } 3\frac{1}{2} = \frac{6+1}{2} = \frac{7}{2}$$

Note: Refer to Point B in Figure 1-2 to see where these numbers appear on a ruler.

Changing Fractions to Lower and Higher Terms

Learning Objective 2

Change fractions to lower and higher terms.

Read Point C on the ruler shown in Figure 1-2. Point C marks the distance $\frac{12}{16}$ of an inch, but it could also be read as $\frac{6}{8}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch. Thus $\frac{12}{16}$, $\frac{6}{8}$, and $\frac{3}{4}$ are three ways to write the same value. We say that $\frac{6}{8}$ is in **lower terms** and $\frac{12}{16}$ is in **higher terms** because 8 is a smaller denominator than 16. We also say that $\frac{3}{4}$ is in **lowest terms** because it cannot be changed to any lower terms. When we change a fraction to lower terms, we say that we are *reducing* the fraction to lower terms. If we change a mixed number such as $2\frac{12}{16}$ to $2\frac{3}{4}$, we say that we have reduced the mixed number to its lowest terms. When we change fractions to higher terms, we say that we are raising them to higher terms.

STEPS to Reduce a Fraction to Lowest Terms

1. Divide both the numerator and the denominator by a common divisor greater than 1 to arrive at a reduced fraction.
2. If necessary, repeat Step 1 until the fraction cannot be reduced any further.

Note: If a fraction's numerator and denominator have no common divisor greater than 1, the fraction is already in lowest terms.

EXAMPLE C

Reduce $\frac{12}{16}$ to lowest terms.

$$\frac{12}{16} = \frac{12 \div 2}{16 \div 2} = \frac{6}{8} = \frac{6 \div 2}{8 \div 2} = \frac{3}{4} \qquad \text{or else} \qquad \frac{12}{16} = \frac{12 \div 4}{16 \div 4} = \frac{3}{4}$$

Note that dividing by 4 once is faster than dividing by 2 twice. Always use the greatest common divisor that you can find.

STEPS to Raise a Fraction to Higher Terms

1. Divide the new denominator by the old denominator. The quotient is the *common multiplier*.
2. Multiply the old numerator by the common multiplier.
3. Multiply the old denominator by the common multiplier.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE D

Raise $\frac{3}{4}$ to twenty-fourths.

STEP 1

$$\frac{3}{4} = \frac{?}{24} \qquad 24 \div 4 = 6$$

STEPS 2 & 3

Thus, $\frac{3}{4} = \frac{3 \times 6}{4 \times 6} = \frac{18}{24}$

Adding Fractions and Mixed Numbers

Learning Objective 3

Add fractions and mixed numbers.

Fractions and mixed numbers are all numbers, so they can be added and subtracted just like whole numbers. However, when you add fractions and/or mixed numbers, you must first find a **common denominator.** This is a denominator shared by all the fractions and it will also be the denominator of the fraction part of the answer.

The smallest common denominator possible is called the **least common denominator.** If the least common denominator is not easily apparent, it may be quicker to use the first common denominator that you can discover and then reduce the answer to lowest terms. The product of all the denominators always will be a common denominator, but very often there will be a smaller common denominator.

STEPS to Add Two or More Fractions and/or Mixed Numbers

1. If necessary, change the fraction parts to fractions with common denominators. The common denominator is the denominator in the fraction part of the answer.
2. Add the numerators to make the numerator of the fraction part of the answer. If there are any whole-number parts, add them to make the whole-number part of the answer.
3. If necessary, change an improper fraction to a mixed number and mentally add any whole-number parts.
4. Reduce the fraction part of the answer to lowest terms.

EXAMPLE E

Add $2\frac{7}{8}$ and $4\frac{3}{8}$.

The fractions already have a common denominator of 8.

$$\begin{array}{r} 2\frac{7}{8} \\ +4\frac{3}{8} \\ \hline 6\frac{10}{8} = 6 + 1\frac{2}{8} = 7\frac{1}{4} \end{array}$$

STEP 2 STEP 3 STEP 4

EXAMPLE F

Add $\frac{5}{6}$ and $\frac{3}{4}$.

A common denominator is $6 \times 4 = 24$.

$$\begin{array}{r} \frac{5}{6} = \frac{5 \times 4}{6 \times 4} = \frac{20}{24} \\ + \frac{3}{4} = \frac{3 \times 6}{4 \times 6} = \frac{18}{24} \\ \hline \frac{38}{24} = 1\frac{14}{24} = 1\frac{7}{12} \end{array}$$

STEP 1

STEPS 2, 3, & 4

EXAMPLE G

Add $3\frac{5}{8}$ and $7\frac{5}{6}$.
The least common denominator is 24.

STEP 1

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 3\frac{5}{8} & = & 3\frac{15}{24} \\ +7\frac{5}{6} & = & +7\frac{20}{24} \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$$10\frac{35}{24} = 10 + 1\frac{11}{24} = 11\frac{11}{24}$$

STEP 2 STEP 3

CONCEPT CHECK 1.1

a. Add $\frac{4}{5}$, $\frac{2}{3}$, and $\frac{5}{9}$.

The least common denominator is 45.

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \frac{4}{5} = \frac{4\times 9}{5\times 9} & = & \frac{36}{45} \\ \frac{2}{3} = \frac{2\times 15}{3\times 15} & = & \frac{30}{45} \\ +\frac{5}{9} = \frac{5\times 5}{9\times 5} & = & +\frac{25}{45} \\ \hline & & \frac{91}{45} = 2\frac{1}{45} \end{array}$$

b. Add $1\frac{5}{6}$ and $2\frac{5}{9}$.

A common denominator is $6 \times 9 = 54$.

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 1\frac{5}{6} = 1\frac{5\times 9}{6\times 9} & = & 1\frac{45}{54} \\ +2\frac{5}{9} = +2\frac{6\times 5}{6\times 9} & = & +2\frac{30}{54} \\ \hline & & 3\frac{75}{54} = 4\frac{21}{54} = 4\frac{7}{18} \end{array}$$

Subtracting Fractions and Mixed Numbers

Learning Objective 4

Subtract fractions and mixed numbers.

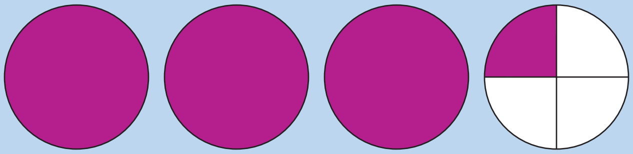
The procedure for subtracting one fraction from another is almost the same as the procedure for adding one fraction to another. When you calculate $3\frac{1}{4} - \frac{3}{4}$, $3\frac{1}{4}$ is called the *minuend* and $\frac{3}{4}$ is called the *subtrahend*, as in the subtraction of whole numbers.

BORROWING 1

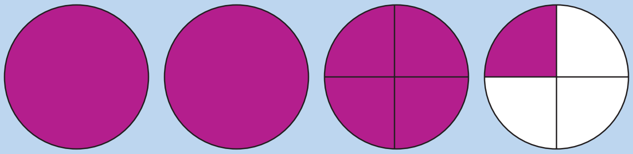
Sometimes, as with $3\frac{1}{4} - \frac{3}{4}$, the fraction part of the minuend is smaller than the fraction part of the subtrahend. To make the fraction part of the minuend larger than the fraction part of the subtrahend, you have to "borrow 1" from the whole-number part of the minuend. Actually, you're just rewriting the minuend. Remember that $3\frac{1}{4}$ means $3 + \frac{1}{4}$, or the same as $2 + 1 + \frac{1}{4}$, $2 + \frac{4}{4} + \frac{1}{4}$, or $2\frac{5}{4}$. These are simply four different ways to express the same quantity. Figure 1-3 may be useful in understanding borrowing.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Figure 1-3



a. 3 whole units plus $\frac{1}{4}$ of a unit



b. 2 "whole units" plus $\frac{5}{4}$ of a unit

STEPS to Subtract One Fraction or Mixed Number from Another

1. If necessary, change the fractions so that all fractions have a common denominator. The common denominator is the denominator in the fraction part of the answer.
2. If necessary, "borrow 1" from the whole-number part of the minuend so that the fraction part of the minuend is at least as large as the fraction part of the subtrahend.
3. Subtract the numerators in the fractions to make the numerator in the fraction part of the answer.
4. If there are any whole-number parts, subtract them to make the whole-number part of the answer.
5. Reduce the fraction part of the answer to lowest terms.

EXAMPLE H

STEP 3 STEP 5

$$\frac{7}{8} - \frac{3}{8} = \frac{7-3}{8} = \frac{4}{8} = \frac{1}{2}$$

EXAMPLE I

STEP 1 STEP 3

$$\frac{3}{4} - \frac{1}{5} = \frac{3 \times 5}{4 \times 5} - \frac{1 \times 4}{5 \times 4} = \frac{15}{20} - \frac{4}{20} = \frac{11}{20}$$

EXAMPLE J

STEP 1

$$\begin{array}{rcr} 5\frac{3}{4} & = & 5\frac{9}{12} \\ -2\frac{1}{3} & = & -2\frac{4}{12} \\ \hline & & 3\frac{5}{12} \end{array}$$

STEPS 3 & 4

EXAMPLE K

STEP 1 STEP 2

$$\begin{array}{rcrcrcr} 4\frac{4}{9} & = & 4\frac{8}{18} & = & 3\frac{18}{18} + \frac{8}{18} & = & 3\frac{26}{18} \\ -1\frac{5}{6} & = & -1\frac{15}{18} & = & -1\frac{15}{18} & = & -1\frac{15}{18} \\ \hline & & & & & & 2\frac{11}{18} \end{array}$$

STEPS 3 & 4

© JOHN WEBER/GRAPHISTOCK/JUPITERIMAGES

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONCEPT CHECK 1.2

a. Subtract $\frac{5}{6}$ from $\frac{7}{8}$.

The least common denominator is 24.

$$\begin{array}{rcr} \frac{7}{8} & = & \frac{21}{24} \\ -\frac{5}{6} & = & -\frac{20}{24} \\ \hline & & \frac{1}{24} \end{array}$$

b. Subtract $2\frac{9}{10}$ from $6\frac{5}{6}$.

The least common denominator is 30.

$$\begin{array}{rcrcr} 6\frac{5}{6} & = & 6\frac{25}{30} & = & 5\frac{55}{30} \\ -2\frac{9}{10} & = & -2\frac{27}{30} & = & -2\frac{27}{30} \\ \hline & & & & 3\frac{28}{30} = 3\frac{14}{15} \end{array}$$

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 1.1.

Multiplying Fractions and Mixed Numbers

Learning Objective 5

Multiply fractions and mixed numbers.

In fractions, multiplication and division do not require common denominators. This means that multiplication and division are simpler than addition and subtraction. Recall that any mixed number can be changed to an improper fraction. Also, a whole number can be written as an improper fraction by writing the whole number in the numerator with a denominator of 1. For example, the whole number 5 can be written as the improper fraction $\frac{5}{1}$.

STEPS to Multiply Fractions and Mixed Numbers

1. Change any mixed (or whole) numbers to improper fractions.
2. Multiply all the numerators to get the numerator of the product.
3. Multiply all the denominators to get the denominator of the product.
4. Change the product to a proper fraction or mixed number in lowest terms.

EXAMPLE L

STEP 1 | STEPS 2 & 3 | STEP 4

$$1\frac{2}{3} \times \frac{4}{5} = \frac{5}{3} \times \frac{4}{5} = \frac{5 \times 4}{3 \times 5} = \frac{20}{15} = 1\frac{5}{15} = 1\frac{1}{3}$$

EXAMPLE M

STEPS 2 & 3 | STEP 4

$$\frac{2}{3} \times \frac{4}{5} \times \frac{5}{6} = \frac{2 \times 4 \times 5}{3 \times 5 \times 6} = \frac{40}{90} = \frac{4}{9}$$

Note: The word *of* often means *multiply* when it is used with fractions. For example, you know that "$\frac{1}{2}$ *of* 6 bottles" is 3 bottles. And $\frac{1}{2}$ *of* $6 = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{6}{1} = \frac{6}{2} = 3$. For this reason, multiplication may even be the most important arithmetic operation with fractions. In verbal communication, we will often be saying expressions like "$\frac{1}{2}$ of 6."

Canceling Common Factors in Numerators and Denominators

As the last step in example M, we reduced the fraction $\frac{40}{90}$ to its lowest terms, $\frac{4}{9}$. Recall that reducing this fraction means that we divide both the numerator and the denominator by 10. As an option, we can do that division in advance, before doing any multiplication.

Examining the three numerators and three denominators, we discover that they have common factors of 2 and 5. Divide out, or **cancel,** both the 2 and the 5 in both the numerators and denominators, as shown in example N. This division of the common factors is often called **cancellation.** Canceling common factors is an option; it is not required to calculate the correct product.

EXAMPLE N

Multiply the three fractions, using cancellation.

STEP 1 STEPS 2 & 3 STEP 4

$$\frac{2}{3}\times\frac{4}{5}\times\frac{5}{6}=\frac{2}{3}\times\frac{4}{\underset{1}{\cancel{5}}}\times\frac{\overset{1}{\cancel{5}}}{6}=\frac{2}{3}\times\frac{\overset{2}{\cancel{4}}}{\underset{1}{\cancel{5}}}\times\frac{\overset{1}{\cancel{5}}}{\underset{3}{\cancel{6}}}=\frac{2\times 2\times 1}{3\times 1\times 3}=\frac{4}{9}$$

EXAMPLE O

Multiply the fraction and the whole number, using cancellation.

STEP 1 STEPS 2 & 3 STEP 4

$$\frac{3}{4}\text{ of }12=\frac{3}{4}\times 12=\frac{3}{4}\times\frac{12}{1}=\frac{3}{\underset{1}{\cancel{4}}}\times\frac{\overset{3}{\cancel{12}}}{1}=\frac{3\times 3}{1\times 1}=\frac{9}{1}=9$$

EXAMPLE P

Multiply the fraction and the mixed number, using cancellation.

STEP 1 STEPS 2 & 3 STEP 4

$$\frac{2}{5}\text{ of }2\frac{3}{4}=\frac{2}{5}\times 2\frac{3}{4}=\frac{2}{5}\times\frac{11}{4}=\frac{\overset{1}{\cancel{2}}}{5}\times\frac{11}{\underset{2}{\cancel{4}}}=\frac{1\times 11}{5\times 2}=\frac{11}{10}=1\frac{1}{10}$$

CONCEPT CHECK 1.3

Multiply the fraction, whole number, and mixed number, using cancellation.

$$\frac{1}{8}\times 4\times 2\frac{1}{3}=\frac{1}{8}\times\frac{4}{1}\times\frac{7}{3}=\frac{1}{\underset{2}{\cancel{8}}}\times\frac{\overset{1}{\cancel{4}}}{1}\times\frac{7}{3}=\frac{1\times 1\times 7}{2\times 1\times 3}=\frac{7}{6}=1\frac{1}{6}$$

Dividing Fractions and Mixed Numbers

Recall that with whole numbers, division is the *inverse* of multiplication. You can check a multiplication problem with division. With fractions, you actually perform a division problem by doing multiplication. That is, you *invert the divisor and multiply*.

Learning Objective 6

Divide fractions and mixed numbers.

STEPS to Divide Fractions and Mixed Numbers

1. Change any mixed or whole numbers to improper fractions.
2. Invert the divisor (that is, exchange the numerator and denominator).
3. Change the division symbol to a multiplication symbol.
4. Multiply the two fractions (canceling where possible, if desired).
5. Write the result as a proper fraction or mixed number in lowest terms.

EXAMPLE Q

STEPS 2 & 3 STEP 4

$$\frac{3}{10} \div \frac{2}{5} = \frac{3}{10} \times \frac{5}{2} = \frac{3}{\underset{2}{\cancel{10}}} \times \frac{\overset{1}{\cancel{5}}}{2} = \frac{3 \times 1}{2 \times 2} = \frac{3}{4}$$

© BRENT WALKER/SHUTTERSTOCK.COM

EXAMPLE R

STEP 1 STEPS 2 & 3 STEP 4 STEP 5

$$6 \div 1\frac{3}{5} = \frac{6}{1} \div \frac{8}{5} = \frac{6}{1} \times \frac{5}{8} = \frac{\overset{3}{\cancel{6}}}{1} \times \frac{5}{\underset{4}{\cancel{8}}} = \frac{3 \times 5}{1 \times 4} = \frac{15}{4} = 3\frac{3}{4}$$

CONCEPT CHECK 1.4

Divide $3\frac{3}{4}$ *by* $1\frac{1}{2}$.

Change both mixed numbers to improper fractions: $\frac{15}{4} \div \frac{3}{2}$.

Invert the divisor $\frac{3}{2}$ to $\frac{2}{3}$ and multiply:

$$\frac{15}{4} \times \frac{2}{3} = \frac{\overset{5}{\cancel{15}}}{\underset{2}{\cancel{4}}} \times \frac{\overset{1}{\cancel{2}}}{\underset{1}{\cancel{3}}} = \frac{5 \times 1}{2 \times 1} = \frac{5}{2} = 2\frac{1}{2}$$

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 1.2.

Chapter Terms for Review

cancel

cancellation

common denominator

denominator

fractions

higher terms

improper fraction

least common denominator

lower terms

lowest terms

mixed number

numerator

proper fraction

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
1.1 Change improper fractions and mixed numbers.	1 (a). Change $\frac{18}{5}$ to a mixed number. 1 (b). Change $2\frac{5}{6}$ to an improper fraction.
1.2 Change fractions to lower and higher terms.	2 (a). Reduce $\frac{12}{30}$ to lowest terms. 2 (b). Raise $\frac{7}{12}$ to sixtieths; that is, $\frac{7}{12} = \frac{?}{60}$.
1.3 Add fractions and mixed numbers.	3. Add $\frac{7}{8}$, $\frac{5}{6}$, and $2\frac{3}{4}$.
1.4 Subtract fractions and mixed numbers.	4. Subtract $1\frac{3}{4}$ from $4\frac{2}{5}$.
1.5 Multiply fractions and mixed numbers.	5. Multiply: $\frac{2}{9} \times \frac{6}{7}$.
1.6 Divide fractions and mixed numbers.	6. Divide: $1\frac{4}{5} \div \frac{3}{4}$.

Answers: 1(a). $3\frac{3}{5}$ 1(b). $\frac{17}{6}$ 2(a). $\frac{2}{5}$ 2(b). $\frac{35}{60}$ 3. $4\frac{11}{24}$ 4. $2\frac{13}{20}$ 5. $\frac{4}{21}$ 6. $2\frac{2}{5}$

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 1

Write all answers as proper fractions or mixed numbers in lowest terms.

1 Change $2\frac{5}{6}$ to an improper fraction ________

2 Change $\frac{90}{12}$ to a mixed number ________

3 Reduce $\frac{54}{63}$ to lowest terms ________

4 Raise $\frac{10}{14}$ to 56ths ________

5 Add $\frac{2}{3}$, $\frac{3}{5}$, and $\frac{3}{10}$ ________

6 Add $\frac{5}{8}$ and $1\frac{1}{6}$ ________

7 Add $\frac{3}{4}$, $2\frac{4}{5}$, and 4 ________

8 Subtract $\frac{1}{3}$ from $\frac{4}{5}$ ________

9 Subtract $\frac{8}{9}$ from $2\frac{5}{6}$ ________

10 Subtract $2\frac{4}{9}$ from $4\frac{1}{5}$ ________

11 Multiply $\frac{5}{6}$ by $\frac{12}{35}$ ________

12 Multiply $\frac{9}{16}$ by $1\frac{13}{15}$ ________

13 Multiply $2\frac{1}{10}$, $\frac{8}{15}$, and $2\frac{1}{12}$ ________

14 Divide $\frac{15}{16}$ by $\frac{5}{12}$ ________

15 Divide $1\frac{11}{25}$ by $\frac{24}{35}$ ________

16 Divide $1\frac{2}{7}$ by $1\frac{1}{14}$ ________

17 JoAnn Brandt decided to use an expensive, but effective, herbicide to kill weeds and brush on a client's land. For one part of the land, she needed $3\frac{2}{3}$ quarts of herbicide; for a second part, she needed $2\frac{3}{4}$ quarts; and for the third part, she needed $1\frac{5}{6}$ quarts. In total, how many quarts of herbicide did JoAnn need for this client? __________

18 An electrician had a piece of electrical conduit that was $12\frac{1}{2}$ feet long. She cut off two pieces that were $4\frac{3}{4}$ feet and $5\frac{2}{3}$ feet long, respectively. How many feet of conduit did she have left over? __________

19 The Chandler Hotel just hired a new chef. This chef makes a hot sauce that uses $1\frac{3}{4}$ tablespoons of chili powder, but he needs to increase the recipe by $3\frac{1}{2}$ times. How many tablespoons of chili powder should he use? __________

20 How many whole pieces of copper $2\frac{5}{8}$ inches long can be cut out of one piece that is $24\frac{1}{2}$ inches long? __________ How long is the shorter piece that is left over? __________

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Assignment 1.1: Addition and Subtraction of Fractions

Name

Date   Score

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **3** **4**

A **(12 points) Change the improper fractions to whole numbers or to mixed numbers in lowest terms. Change the mixed numbers to improper fractions. (1 point for each correct answer)**

1. $\frac{13}{6}$ ________
2. $\frac{28}{10}$ ________
3. $\frac{18}{3}$ ________
4. $\frac{25}{15}$ ________
5. $\frac{23}{13}$ ________
6. $\frac{30}{7}$ ________
7. $3\frac{7}{10}$ ________
8. $2\frac{7}{12}$ ________
9. $2\frac{5}{8}$ ________
10. $3\frac{3}{4}$ ________
11. $6\frac{3}{5}$ ________
12. $4\frac{5}{6}$ ________

____
Score for A (12)

B **(15 points) In problems 13–20, reduce each fraction to lowest terms. In problems 21–27, raise each fraction to higher terms, as indicated. (1 point for each correct answer)**

13. $\frac{10}{25} =$ ________
14. $\frac{15}{24} =$ ________
15. $\frac{18}{30} =$ ________
16. $\frac{12}{15} =$ ________
17. $\frac{32}{48} =$ ________
18. $\frac{24}{42} =$ ________
19. $\frac{42}{60} =$ ________
20. $\frac{24}{32} =$ ________
21. $\frac{5}{6} = \frac{}{18}$
22. $\frac{3}{4} = \frac{}{20}$
23. $\frac{5}{8} = \frac{}{24}$
24. $\frac{5}{12} = \frac{}{36}$
25. $\frac{3}{7} = \frac{}{35}$
26. $\frac{2}{3} = \frac{}{15}$
27. $\frac{4}{5} = \frac{}{45}$

____
Score for B (15)

C **(24 points) Add the following fractions and mixed numbers. Write the answers as fractions or mixed numbers, with fractions in lowest terms. (3 points for each correct answer)**

28. $\begin{array}{r} \frac{3}{8} \\ +\ \frac{3}{8} \\ \hline \end{array}$ ________

29. $\begin{array}{r} \frac{7}{10} \\ +\ \frac{3}{10} \\ \hline \end{array}$ ________

30. $\begin{array}{r} 3\frac{11}{16} \\ +\ \frac{7}{16} \\ \hline \end{array}$ ________

31. $\begin{array}{rl} 1\frac{2}{3} & = \\ +\ 2\frac{3}{4} & = \\ \hline \end{array}$ ________

32. $\begin{array}{rl} 2\frac{3}{4} & = \\ 1\frac{3}{8} & = \\ +\ 3\frac{5}{6} & = \\ \hline \end{array}$ ________

33. $\begin{array}{rl} 4\frac{1}{2} & = \\ 3\frac{2}{3} & = \\ +\ \frac{5}{6} & = \\ \hline \end{array}$ ________

34. $\begin{array}{rl} \frac{4}{5} & = \\ 3\frac{5}{6} & = \\ +\ 5\frac{2}{3} & = \\ \hline \end{array}$ ________

35. $\begin{array}{rl} 2\frac{5}{9} & = \\ 3\frac{8}{15} & = \\ +\ 1\frac{1}{5} & = \\ \hline \end{array}$ ________

____
Score for C (24)

D **(24 points) Subtract the following fractions and mixed numbers. Write the answers as proper fractions or mixed numbers, with fractions in lowest terms. (3 points for each correct answer)**

36. $$\begin{array}{r} \frac{5}{8} \\ -\frac{3}{8} \\ \hline \end{array}$$

37. $$\begin{array}{r} 2\frac{7}{12} \\ -1\frac{5}{12} \\ \hline \end{array}$$

38. $$\begin{array}{rl} \frac{6}{7} & = \\ -\frac{3}{5} & = \\ \hline \end{array}$$

39. $$\begin{array}{rl} 2\frac{3}{4} & = \\ -1\frac{1}{12} & = \\ \hline \end{array}$$

40. $$\begin{array}{rll} 3\frac{2}{3} & = & = \\ -2\frac{5}{6} & = & = \\ \hline \end{array}$$

41. $$\begin{array}{rll} 3\frac{3}{5} & = & = \\ -1\frac{3}{4} & = & = \\ \hline \end{array}$$

42. $$\begin{array}{rl} 7\frac{11}{15} & = \\ -4\frac{4}{9} & = \\ \hline \end{array}$$

43. $$\begin{array}{rll} 4\frac{2}{5} & = & = \\ -1\frac{5}{6} & = & = \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Score for D (24)

E **(25 points) Business Applications and Critical Thinking. Solve the following. Write your answers as fractions or mixed numbers in lowest terms. (5 points for each correct answer)**

44. A restaurant sells three different hamburgers, based on the amount of meat used: “The Mini” $\left(\frac{1}{4}\text{ lb}\right)$; “The Regular” $\left(\frac{1}{3}\text{ lb}\right)$; and “The Maxi” $\left(\frac{1}{2}\text{ lb}\right)$. Students bought one of each to compare them. What was the total amount of meat used in the three hamburgers? ____________

45. Lynn Atkins specializes in custom faux painting, but for the first coat he could combine leftover paints when the colors were relatively the same. He has three containers of different shades of white: $2\frac{2}{3}$ quarts, $3\frac{1}{4}$ quarts, and $2\frac{1}{2}$ quarts. If Lynn combines the contents of all the containers, how many quarts of paint will he have? ____________

46. Contractor Dick Reiling has a top board that is $\frac{11}{16}$ inch thick. Dick wants to use wood screws to attach it to a bottom board. If a wood screw is $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches long, how much of the screw will be left over to go into the bottom board? ____________

47. Robert Landles is planning to attach a plywood panel to a wall using nails that are $1\frac{3}{4}$ inches long. The panel is $\frac{3}{8}$ inch thick. Beneath the panel is a layer of sheetrock that is $\frac{1}{2}$ inch thick. How many inches of the nail should go into the wood frame that is underneath the sheetrock? ____________

48. Milan Fabric Center sold four pieces of wool fabric to a tailor. The pieces measured $3\frac{1}{4}$ yards, $2\frac{1}{3}$ yards, $1\frac{3}{4}$ yards, and $4\frac{1}{2}$ yards in length. How many yards of fabric did the tailor purchase? ____________

Score for E (25)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 1.2: Multiplication and Division of Fractions

Name ____________________

Date __________ Score __________

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **5** **6**

A **(32 points) Change any whole or mixed numbers to improper fractions and multiply. Cancel if possible. Where the word *of* appears, replace it with the multiplication symbol. Write the answers as mixed numbers or proper fractions in lowest terms. (4 points for each correct answer)**

1. $\frac{4}{15} \times \frac{5}{8} =$ __________

2. $\frac{8}{9} \times \frac{3}{10} \times \frac{3}{5} =$ __________

3. $\frac{3}{4}$ of $\frac{5}{6} =$ __________

4. $\frac{5}{18} \times \frac{4}{9} \times \frac{3}{10} =$ __________

5. $4\frac{1}{2} \times 1\frac{5}{9} =$ __________

6. $\frac{3}{8}$ of $20 =$ __________

7. $1\frac{7}{8} \times 12 \times \frac{3}{10} =$ __________

8. $1\frac{1}{3} \times 1\frac{7}{8} \times 1\frac{1}{5} =$ __________

____

Score for A (32)

B **(32 points) Change any whole or mixed numbers to improper fractions and divide. Cancel if possible. Write the quotients as mixed numbers or proper fractions in lowest terms. (4 points for each correct answer)**

9. $\frac{7}{8} \div \frac{3}{4} =$ __________

10. $\frac{3}{10} \div \frac{9}{20} =$ __________

11. $\frac{5}{6} \div \frac{4}{9} =$ __________

12. $\frac{7}{10} \div 2\frac{4}{5} =$ __________

13. $6\frac{1}{4} \div 4\frac{3}{8} =$ __________

14. $1\frac{7}{8} \div 5 =$ __________

15. $3\frac{1}{3} \div \frac{4}{5} =$ ________

16. $4\frac{1}{6} \div 3\frac{3}{4} =$ ________

____

Score for B (32)

C **(36 points) Business Applications and Critical Thinking. Use fractions and mixed numbers to solve each of the following. State the answers as whole numbers, proper fractions, or mixed numbers in lowest terms. (6 points for each correct answer)**

17. Last week, Eastside Concrete Co. built a small driveway that required $5\frac{1}{3}$ cubic yards of concrete. This week, Eastside must build another driveway that is $2\frac{1}{2}$ times larger. How many yards of concrete will be required? ________

18. Ted Schopf bought eight pieces of copper pipe that were each $6\frac{3}{4}$ inches long. What was the total length of pipe that Ted bought? (Give the answer in inches.) ________

19. Linda Johanssen had $2\frac{1}{4}$ quarts of liquid fertilizer in a container. Her supervisor asked her to mix $\frac{2}{3}$ of the fertilizer with water and save the remainder. How many quarts of fertilizer did Linda mix with water? ________

20. Landscaper Bill Holmes needs several pieces of PVC irrigation pipe, each 3 feet 4 inches long. PVC pipe comes in 20-foot lengths. How many pieces can Bill cut out of one length of pipe? (*Hint:* 4 inches equal $\frac{1}{3}$ foot.) ________

21. Robert Burke has a diesel-powered generator on his ranch. The generator has a tank that holds $3\frac{3}{4}$ gallons of diesel fuel. He stores the diesel fuel in 55-gallon drums (barrels). How many times can Robert refill his generator from one drum of fuel? ________

22. Home builders Bill and John Walter are planning a narrow stairway to an attic. The stairs will each be 2 feet 8 inches long. They will cut the stairs from boards that are 8 feet long. How many whole stairs can they cut from one 8-foot board? (*Hint:* 8 inches is $\frac{2}{3}$ foot.) ________

____

Score for C (36)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Decimals

2

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1 Read decimal numbers.

Learning Objective 2 Round decimal numbers.

Learning Objective 3 Add two or more decimal numbers.

Learning Objective 4 Subtract one decimal number from another.

Learning Objective 5 Multiply two decimal numbers.

Learning Objective 6 Divide one decimal number by another decimal number.

Learning Objective 7 Multiply and divide by decimal numbers that end with zeros.

Learning Objective 8 Approximate products and quotients.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Fractions Versus Decimal Numbers

Steve Stock/Alamy

McDonald's restaurant sells a hamburger sandwich called the Quarter Pounder. The sandwich is named for the amount of meat: one-quarter pound of ground beef. McDonald's—or anyone—can describe the same amount of meat in four different ways: 4 ounces, $\frac{1}{4}$ pound, 0.25 pound, or 25% of a pound. To express less than 1 pound, McDonald's could use smaller units, fractions, decimals, or percents.

All four expressions are useful, but which one is best? It may depend on what you're doing: whether you're buying or selling, whether you're speaking or writing, whether you're just estimating or making accurate financial records, or whether you're working with large volumes of something cheap or small quantities of something very expensive. For McDonald's, a Four Ouncer might not sell as well as a Quarter Pounder, but Bloomingdale's sells perfume by the (fluid) ounce rather than by the gallon, quart, pint, or even cup.

Verbal expressions such as "half of a candy bar" or "third of a pizza" are so common that children use them before they can even read. Because they are usually interested in money, most children begin to learn decimals as soon as they learn to read cash register receipts. We studied fractions in Chapter 1. Because of calculators, most calculations are now performed using decimal numbers. We study decimals here in Chapter 2. Percents are a combination of decimal numbers and a few common fractions. Percents are as easy to use as decimals and also allow simple verbal expressions. We will study percents in Chapter 5.

Chapter 2 has three main concepts: vocabulary, calculating, and estimating. Calculating with decimals is the same as with whole numbers except that there is a decimal point. Thus, calculating with decimals is actually "managing the decimal point," which your calculator does automatically. Estimating, which is important in checking your calculations, still requires that you "manage the decimal point."

Decimal Numbers and Electronic Displays

A customer in a delicatessen might ask for "a quarter of a pound of salami" or perhaps "four ounces of salami." However, the food scale in the delicatessen probably has an electronic display that is calibrated only in pounds. It will likely display "0.25" or "0.250." As a fraction, a quarter of a pound is written as $\frac{1}{4}$ pound; three quarters of a pound is $\frac{3}{4}$ pound. In the U.S. monetary system, a quarter is the name of the coin whose value is twenty-five cents. And three quarters are worth seventy-five cents. When we write these monetary amounts, we write either whole numbers or decimals: 25¢ and 75¢, or \$0.25 and \$0.75. It is highly unlikely that anyone would ever write $\$\frac{1}{4}$ or $\$\frac{3}{4}$.

Most business transactions and record keeping are best done using decimals rather than fractions. The calculations are usually more straightforward and more accurate. Today, specialized calculators, computers, and measurement instruments have electronic displays that are calibrated in decimals, not fractions.

Keith Bedford/Reuters/Corbis

Modern gasoline pumps used in the United States are calibrated in gallons and typically measure the volume of gasoline sold accurate to three decimal places. Suppose that an automobile owner buys gasoline and the display shows 12.762 gallons. 12.762 is a number; it is called a **mixed decimal.** The 12 is the whole number part of the number;

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the 762 is the **pure decimal** part. The period (or dot) that separates the 12 from the 762 is the **decimal point.** We say that the number 12.762 has three **decimal places** because there are three digits to the right of the decimal point.

Most calculators and all computer spreadsheets permit you to change the number of decimal places that are displayed. A new calculator may be preset to display exactly two decimal places because that is how the monetary system is designed. Divide 1 by 3 with your calculator. The correct answer is 0.333333333 . . . , a repeating number that never stops. Count the number of 3s that appear in the calculator. That is the number of decimal places your calculator is set to display. Read the instruction manual. Perhaps you can change the display to show more or fewer decimal places. *Note:* Your calculator also displays a zero (0) to the left of the decimal point. We follow that same convention in this book. Every pure decimal number is preceded by a zero (0).

Reading Decimal Numbers

Learning Objective 1

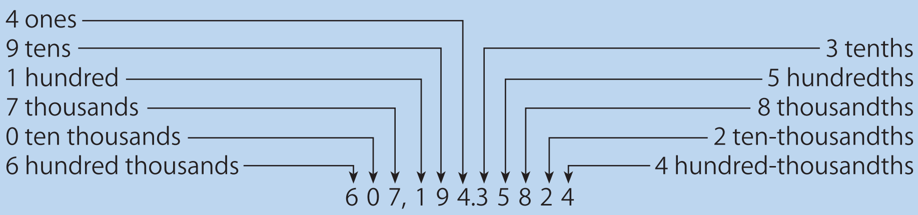
Read decimal numbers.

Reading decimal numbers, both mixed and pure, is like reading whole numbers: Each “place,” or column, represents a different value. Starting at the decimal point and reading to the *left*, the places represent ones, tens, hundreds, thousands, and so on. Starting at the decimal point and reading to the *right*, the vocabulary is different: The places represent *tenths, hundredths, thousandths*, and so on.

Recall words such as *tenths, hundredths*, and *thousandths* from our review of fractions in Chapter 1. As money, the decimal \$0.10 represents 10¢, but also \$ $\frac{10}{100}$. $\frac{10}{100}$ is pronounced as “ten *hundredths.*” But $\frac{10}{100}$ can be reduced to $\frac{1}{10}$ which is “one *tenth.*” Like fractions, the decimal 0.10 is read as “ten *hundredths*”; the decimal 0.1 is “one *tenth.*” At the gasoline pump, the display showed 12.762. As a fraction, it is written $12\frac{762}{1000}$. Both numbers are pronounced “twelve *and* seven hundred sixty-two *thousandths.* The decimal point is read as the word “*and.*”

Figure 2-1 illustrates the place values of the number system on both sides of the decimal point for the number 607,194.35824. The pure decimal part of the number in Figure 2-1 is 0.35824, which is pronounced “thirty-five thousand eight hundred twenty-four *hundred-thousandths.*”

Figure 2-1 Number System on Both Sides of the Decimal Point



READING LONG DECIMAL NUMBERS

The entire number in Figure 2-1—607,194.35824—is read as “six hundred seven thousand, one hundred ninety-four and thirty-five thousand eight hundred twenty-four hundred-thousandths.” For a long number, reciting it orally is inefficient and can be confusing to the listener. For such a number, it may be better simply to read the digits and commas, from left to right. The word *point* is used for the decimal point.

EXAMPLE A

Recite orally the number 607,194.35824.

Number	Oral Recitation
607,194.35824	"six zero seven comma one nine four point three five eight two four"

CONCEPT CHECK 2.1

a. Write 37.045 using words: Thirty-seven and forty-five thousandths

b. Write fifteen and seven hundredths using digits: 15.07

Rounding Decimal Numbers

Learning Objective 2

Round decimal numbers.

In the preceding section, you reviewed how to read and write decimal numbers such as 148.65392. However, in many business applications, if the whole-number part is as large as 148, the digits on the extreme right may not be very important. Maybe only the digit in the tenths or hundredths column is significant. **Rounding off** such a number to make it simpler is common. Rounding off a decimal is similar to rounding off a whole number.

STEPS to Round Decimal Numbers

1. Find the last place, or digit, to be retained.
2. Examine the digit to the right of the last digit to be retained.
3. a. If it is equal to or greater than 5, increase the digit to be retained by 1. Drop all digits to the right of the ones retained.
   b. If it is less than 5, leave the digit to be retained unchanged. Drop all digits to the right of the ones retained.

EXAMPLE B

Round 7.3951 and 148.65392 to one decimal place, to two decimal places, and to three decimal places.

Round to the nearest tenth	$7.\underline{3}951 \longrightarrow 7.4$	$148.\underline{6}5392 \longrightarrow 148.7$
Round to the nearest hundredth	$7.3\underline{9}51 \longrightarrow 7.40$	$148.6\underline{5}392 \longrightarrow 148.65$
Round to the nearest thousandth	$7.39\underline{5}1 \longrightarrow 7.395$	$148.65\underline{3}92 \longrightarrow 148.654$

ROUNDING UP

Retail businesses, such as grocery stores, often use a different method of rounding to a whole number of cents. Suppose that a grocery store has lemons priced at 3 for $1.00. Usually the store will charge $0.34 for one lemon, even though $1.00 divided by 3 is $0.3333 (to four places). The store has rounded up to the next larger whole cent. To round up monetary amounts, always increase any partial cent to the next whole cent. For example, $27.842 would round up to $27.85.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONCEPT CHECK 2.2

a. Round 3.4681 to the nearest hundredth (that is, to two decimal places).

Find the hundredths digit.	3.4681	(The 6)
Examine the digit to the right of the 6.	3.4681	(It is greater than 5.)
Increase the 6 to a 7 and drop the digits 81 at the right.	3.47	(The answer)

b. Round up 8.5014 to the *next* tenth (that is, to one decimal place).

Find the tenths digit.	8.5014	(The 5)
Increase the 5 to a 6 and drop the digits 014 at the right.	8.6	(The answer)

Whole Numbers, Decimal Numbers, and Arithmetic

The arithmetic of decimal numbers is almost identical to the arithmetic of whole numbers. The only difference is that you must "manage the decimal point." There are simple decimal point rules for each operation: addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. Calculators and computer spread sheets have these rules built into them. Remember that a whole number is simply a mixed decimal where the pure decimal part is zero. In the examples that follow, when you see a whole number, you may need to place a decimal point at the right end. You may even need to write one or more zeros after the decimal point.

Adding Decimal Numbers

To add two or more decimal numbers, follow these steps.

Learning Objective 3

Add two or more decimal numbers.

STEPS to Add Decimal Numbers

1. Arrange the numbers in columns, with the decimal points in a vertical line.
2. Add each column, from right to left, as with whole numbers. Insert the decimal point.

Option: You may want to write zeros in some of the right-hand columns of decimal numbers so that each number shows the same number of decimal places.

R. ALCORN

EXAMPLE C

Add 4.326, 218.6004, 7.09, 15, and 0.87782.

STEP 1

$$\begin{array}{r} 4.326\\ 218.6004\\ 7.09\\ 15.\\ 0.87782 \end{array}$$

STEP 2

$$\begin{array}{r} 4.326\\ 218.6004\\ 7.09\\ 15.\\ \underline{+\quad 0.87782}\\ 245.89422 \end{array}$$

or

STEP 2 WITH OPTION

$$\begin{array}{r} 4.32600\\ 218.60040\\ 7.09000\\ 15.00000\\ \underline{+\quad 0.87782}\\ 245.89422 \end{array}$$

CONCEPT CHECK 2.3

Add these decimal numbers: 8.95, 13.791, and 0.6.

First align:

$$\begin{array}{r} 8.95\\ 13.791\\ 0.6 \end{array}$$

Then add:

$$\begin{array}{r} 8.95\\ 13.791\\ \underline{+\ 0.6}\\ 23.341 \end{array}$$

Or, write zeros and add:

$$\begin{array}{r} 8.950\\ 13.791\\ \underline{+\ 0.600}\\ 23.341 \end{array}$$

Subtracting Decimal Numbers

Learning Objective 4

Subtract one decimal number from another.

Subtracting one decimal number from another is similar to subtracting whole numbers. When you aren't using a calculator, it may be helpful to write enough zeros so that both numbers have the same number of places. To subtract one decimal number from another, follow these steps.

STEPS to Subtract Decimal Numbers

1. Arrange the numbers in columns, with the decimal points in a vertical line.
2. If necessary, write enough extra zeros so that both numbers have the same number of decimal places.
3. Subtract each column, from right to left, as with whole numbers. Insert the decimal point.

EXAMPLE D

Subtract 4.935 from 12.8.

STEP 1

$$\begin{array}{r} 12.8\\ \underline{-\ \ 4.935} \end{array}$$

STEPS 2 & 3

$$\begin{array}{r} 12.800\\ \underline{-\ \ 4.935}\\ 7.865 \end{array}$$

EXAMPLE E

Subtract 9.4 from 82.113.

STEP 1

$$\begin{array}{r} 82.113\\ \underline{-\ \ 9.4} \end{array}$$

STEPS 2 & 3

$$\begin{array}{r} 82.113\\ \underline{-\ \ 9.400}\\ 72.713 \end{array}$$

CONCEPT CHECK 2.4

Subtract 53.784 from 207.6.

Align:	Write zeros and subtract:
207.6	207.600
53.784	− 53.784
	153.816

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 2.1.

Multiplying Decimal Numbers

To multiply one decimal number by another, follow these steps.

Learning Objective 5

Multiply two decimal numbers.

STEPS to Multiply Decimal Numbers

1. Multiply the two numbers as if they were whole numbers.
2. Count the *total* number of decimal places in the two original numbers.
3. a. In the product, place the decimal point so that the number of decimal places is the same as the number in Step 2. (Count from right to left.)
   b. If necessary, insert zeros in front of the left-hand digit to provide enough decimal places. (See example G.)

EXAMPLE F

3.764 × 2.1

	3.764	(3 places)
	× 2.1	(1 place)
STEP 1	3764	
	+7528	STEP 2
STEP 3	7.9044	(3 + 1 = 4 places)

EXAMPLE G

3.764 × 0.0021

	3.764	(3 places)
	× 0.0021	(4 places)
STEP 1	3764	
	+7528	STEP 2
STEP 3	0.0079044	(3 + 4 = 7 places; insert 2 zeros)

In business applications, zeros that come at the right end of the decimal part of the product are often omitted (example H). Do not omit zeros that appear to the left of the decimal point (example I). When the product is written in dollars and cents, exactly two decimal places are written, including zeros at the right end (example J). Please be aware that some calculators may not display any zeros at the right end of a decimal.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE H

$0.76 \times 0.5 = 0.380$ (3 places)
May be written as 0.38

EXAMPLE I

$12.5 \times 1.6 = 20.00$ (2 places)
May be written as 20

EXAMPLE J

$\$8.40 \times 6.5 = \$54.600$ (3 places)
Should be written as $54.60

CONCEPT CHECK 2.5

a. Multiply 2.36×3.4

$$\begin{array}{rl} 2.36 & \text{(2 places)} \\ \times\ 3.4 & \text{(1 place)} \\ \hline 944 & \\ +708\ & \\ \hline 8.024 & \text{(3 places)} \end{array}$$

b. Multiply 0.236×0.34

$$\begin{array}{rl} 0.236 & \text{(3 places)} \\ \times\ 0.34 & \text{(2 places)} \\ \hline 944 & \\ +708\ & \\ \hline 0.08024 & \text{(5 places; insert 1 zero)} \end{array}$$

Dividing Decimal Numbers

Learning Objective 6

Divide one decimal number by another decimal number.

When dividing decimal numbers, remember that a whole number will have its decimal point immediately to the right of the units digit.

To divide one decimal number by another, follow these steps.

STEPS to Divide one Decimal Number by Another

1. Arrange the divisor, dividend, and division bracket ($\overline{)\quad}$) as in whole-number long division.
2. Move the decimal point in the divisor to the right until the divisor is a whole number. (You won't have to move it if the divisor is already a whole number.)
3. Move the decimal point in the dividend to the right exactly the same number of decimal places as you did in Step 2. If necessary, attach more zeros to the right end of the dividend. (See example K.)
4. Write the decimal point in the quotient directly above the new decimal point in the dividend (in Step 3).
5. Write zeros, if necessary, in the quotient between the decimal point and the first nonzero digit. (See example L.)
6. Divide as you would for whole numbers.

EXAMPLE K

STEP 1 STEP 2 STEP 3 STEP 4 STEP 6

$$2.7 \div 0.15 \quad \textit{is} \quad 0.15\overline{)2.7} \;=\; 0.\underset{\curvearrowright}{15}.\overline{)2.\underset{\curvearrowright}{70}.} \;=\; \begin{array}{r} \cdot \\ 15.\overline{)270.} \end{array} \;=\; \begin{array}{r} 18. \\ 15.\overline{)270.} \\ \underline{-15} \\ 120 \\ \underline{-120} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

EXAMPLE L

STEP 1 STEP 4 STEPS 5 & 6

$$0.096 \div 4 \quad \textit{is} \quad 4\overline{)0.096} \;=\; \begin{array}{r} \cdot \\ 4.\overline{)0.096} \end{array} \;=\; \begin{array}{r} 0.024 \\ 4.\overline{)0.096} \\ \underline{-8} \\ 16 \\ \underline{-16} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

Recall from Chapter 1, example A, that the fraction $\frac{11}{8}$ was changed to $1\frac{3}{8}$ using division. Recall also that in long division with two whole numbers, you get a remainder when the division does not work out evenly. For example, 11 ÷ 8 equals 1 with a remainder of 3. In division with decimals, we do not write remainders. We simply keep dividing until either the division ends evenly (examples K and L), or you reach some desired number of decimal places. You may have to keep attaching zeros to the right end of the dividend. *Note:* When the division does not work out evenly, you must calculate one additional decimal place and then round off the quotient to the desired number of places (example M).

EXAMPLE M

Calculate 19 ÷ 7 to two decimal places.

STEP 1 STEP 4 STEP 6

$$19 \div 7 \quad \textit{is} \quad 7\overline{)19} \;=\; \begin{array}{r} \cdot \\ 7.\overline{)19.} \end{array} \;=\; \begin{array}{r} 2. \\ 7.\overline{)19.} \end{array} \;=\; \begin{array}{r} 2.714 \\ 7.\overline{)19.000} \\ \underline{-14} \\ 50 \\ \underline{-49} \\ 10 \\ \underline{-7} \\ 30 \\ \underline{-28} \\ 2 \end{array}$$

The quotient, 2.714, rounds off to 2.71. 19 ÷ 7 = 2.71 to two decimal places.

CONCEPT CHECK 2.6

a. Divide 1.026 by 15.

$$15\overline{)1.026} \quad = \quad \begin{array}{r} 0.0684 \\ 15\overline{)1.0260} \\ \underline{-90} \\ 126 \\ \underline{-120} \\ 60 \\ \underline{-60} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

b. Divide 0.009 by 0.4.

$$0.4_{\curvearrowright}.\overline{)0.0_{\curvearrowright}.09} \quad = \quad \begin{array}{r} 0.0225 \\ 4\overline{)0.0900} \\ \underline{-8} \\ 10 \\ \underline{-8} \\ 20 \\ \underline{-20} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

Using division, you can verify that 17 ÷ 4 = 4.25. But 17 ÷ 4 can be written as the improper fraction $\frac{17}{4}$. The decimal 4.25 is called the **decimal equivalent** of the fraction $\frac{17}{4}$ and of the mixed number $4\frac{1}{4}$. Decimal equivalents can be useful when you are working with fractions and have a calculator available. Even with simple fractions, and no calculator, it is often simpler to use decimal equivalents because you don't need a common denominator.

EXAMPLE N

Compute $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{4} - \frac{2}{5}$. This requires that all fractions have a common denominator of 20. But $\frac{1}{2} = 0.5$, $\frac{3}{4} = 0.75$, and $\frac{2}{5} = 0.4$. Therefore, we have $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{4} - \frac{2}{5} = 0.5 + 0.75 - 0.4 = 0.85$.

For difficult fractions, use a calculator to convert the fractions to their decimal equivalents. Then use the calculator to perform the required operation. (If possible, you should use the memory of your calculator to store the intermediate answers.)

EXAMPLE O

Compute $\dfrac{8}{15} + \dfrac{7}{12} + \dfrac{3}{7}$.

$$\begin{array}{lr} [\mathbf{8}]\ [\div]\ [\mathbf{15}]\ [=] \text{ gives} & 0.53333333 \\ [7]\ [\div]\ [\mathbf{12}]\ [=] \text{ gives} & 0.58333333 \\ [3]\ [\div]\ [7]\ [=] \text{ gives} & \underline{+\ 0.42857143} \\ & \mathbf{1.54523809} \end{array}$$

The preceeding example assumes that the calculator is displaying eight decimal places. Also, if you use the memory to store the intermediate answers, your calculator may round off the intermediate answers and give you a final answer of 1.54523810 or 1.5452381.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Using Multipliers and Divisors that End with Zeros

Learning Objective 7

Multiply and divide by decimal numbers that end with zeros.

With whole-number arithmetic, there are some simple shortcuts to use when the *multiplier* or the *divisor* is a whole number ending in zeros (e.g., 30, 200, or 1,000). We can use the same shortcuts with decimal numbers. We must remember only to "manage the decimal point."

If the multiplier is 10, 100, 1,000, etc., there is just one step.

Step 1 Move the decimal point in the *multiplicand* to the *right* the same number of places as the number of zeros in the multiplier. (See example P.) If necessary, attach zeros to the *right* end of the multiplicand before multiplying. (See example Q.)

EXAMPLE P

$0.56 \times 10 = 0.\underset{\curvearrowright}{5}.6 = 5.6$

(1 place)

EXAMPLE Q

$4.73 \times 1{,}000 = 4.\underbrace{730}_{\curvearrowright}. = 4{,}730$

(3 places)

If the multiplier ends in zeros but has a first digit that is not 1 (for example, 300 or 2,000), there are two steps.

Step 1 Multiply the multiplicand by the nonzero part of the multiplier.

Step 2 Move the decimal point in the product from Step 1 to the *right* the same number of places as the number of zeros in the multiplier.

EXAMPLE R

Multiply 3.431 by 2,000

Multiply by 2: $3.431 \times 2 = 6.862$

Move the decimal point three places to the right: $6.\underbrace{862}_{\curvearrowright}. \longrightarrow 6{,}862.$

If the divisor is 10, 100, 1,000, etc., there is just one step.

Step 1 Move the decimal point in the dividend to the *left* the same number of places as the number of zeros in the divisor. (See example S.) If necessary, attach zeros to the *left* end of the dividend. (See example T.)

EXAMPLE S

$735.1 \div 100$

$735.1 \div 100 = 7.\underbrace{35}_{\curvearrowleft}.1 = 7.351$

(2 places)

EXAMPLE T

$9.64 \div 1{,}000$

$9.64 \div 1{,}000 = .\underbrace{009}_{\curvearrowleft}.64 = 0.00964$

(3 places)

If the divisor ends in zeros but has a first digit that is not 1 (for example, 300 or 2,000), there are two steps.

Step 1 Divide the dividend by the nonzero part of the divisor.

Step 2 Move the decimal point in the quotient from Step 1 to the *left* the same number of places as the number of zeros in the divisor.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE U

Divide 615.24 by 300

Divide by 3: $615.24 \div 3 = 205.08$

Move the decimal point two places to the left: $2.\underbrace{05}.08 \longrightarrow 2.0508$

CONCEPT CHECK 2.7

a. Multiply 0.413 by 300

$0.413 \times 3 = 1.239$

Move the decimal point two places to the right:

$1.\underbrace{23}.9 \longrightarrow 123.9$

b. Divide 4.375 by 10

Move the decimal point one place to the left:

$4.375 \div 10 = .\underbrace{4}.375 \longrightarrow 0.4375$

Approximating Products and Quotients

Learning Objective 8

Approximate products and quotients.

Business people today almost always use calculators or computers to do important computations. But calculators are perfect only if every single key is pressed correctly. Often, you can discover a calculator error by doing some simple mental approximations. The objective is to determine whether the answer is approximately the right size—that is, whether the decimal point is in the correct position. To do so, we round each decimal number to only one nonzero digit and all the rest to zeros. Follow these steps.

STEPS to Approximate a Multiplication Problem

1. Round the first nonzero digit from the left end in each factor. (How does the digit to its right compare to 5?)
2. Change all the digits to the right of the first nonzero digit to zero.
3. Multiply the two new factors.
4. Place the decimal point in the product.

EXAMPLE V

Approximate 3.764 × 7.4

	STEP 1	STEPS 2 & 3
3.764 →	4.000	4
× 7.4 →	× 7.0	× 7
		28

EXAMPLE W

Approximate 0.089 × 61.18

	STEP 1	STEPS 2 & 3
0.089 →	0.090	0.09
× 61.18 →	× 60.00	× 60
		5.40

The actual answers are 27.8536 and 5.44502.

In division, the mental approximation will be easier if you change the decimal numbers so that the division will end evenly after one step. To do this, first round the divisor to one nonzero digit and then round the dividend to two nonzero digits, evenly divisible by the new divisor.

STEPS to Approximate a Division Problem

1. Round the divisor to a *single nonzero digit* at the left, followed by all zeros.
2. Round the dividend to a *two-digit number* at the left, followed by all zeros. Select the two-digit number so that it is evenly divisible by the new divisor.
3. Divide the new dividend by the new divisor.
4. Place the decimal point correctly in the quotient.

EXAMPLE X

Approximate 4.764 ÷ 8.1

STEP 1 STEP 2 STEPS 3 & 4

$$8.1\overline{)4.764} \longrightarrow 8.0\overline{)4.764} \longrightarrow 8.\overline{)4.800} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{r} 0.6 \\ 8.\overline{)4.8} \\ \underline{-4.8} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

EXAMPLE Y

Approximate 61.18 ÷ 0.089

STEP 1 STEP 2 STEPS 3 & 4

$$0.089\overline{)61.18} \longrightarrow 0.090\overline{)61.18} \longrightarrow 0.09\overline{)63.00} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{r} 700. \\ 9.\overline{)6300.} \\ \underline{-63} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

The actual answers are 0.5881 and 687.4157 (to four decimal places).

CONCEPT CHECK 2.8

a. Approximate 6.891 × 0.614

$6.891 \longrightarrow 7.000$

$0.614 \longrightarrow 0.600$

$$\begin{array}{rl} 0.6 & \text{(1 place)} \\ \underline{\times\ 7} & \text{(0 places)} \\ 4.2 & \text{(1 place)} \end{array}$$

Compare with 6.891 × 0.614 = 4.231074

b. Approximate 0.0738 ÷ 92.65

Remember to round off the divisor first.

$92.65 \longrightarrow 90.00$

$0.0738 \longrightarrow 0.0720$

$$\begin{array}{r} . \\ 90\overline{)0.072} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{r} 0.0008 \\ 90\overline{)0.0720} \\ \underline{720} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

Compare with 0.0738 ÷ 92.65 = 0.000796546

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 2.2 and 2.3.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter Terms for Review

decimal equivalent	mixed decimal
decimal places	pure decimal
decimal point	rounding off

Try Microsoft® Excel

Try working the problems using the Microsoft Excel templates found on the companion website. Solutions for the problems are also shown on the companion website.

1. Set up and complete the following tables using the appropriate Excel formulas.

Date	Auto Sales	Part Sales	Total Sales
6/4/12	$ 36,628.14	$ 1,782.28	
6/5/12	$ 42,789.40	$ 2,047.33	
6/6/12	$ 58,334.98	$ 1,132.48	
6/7/12	$ 96,782.04	$ 3,006.04	
6/8/12	$ 29,765.55	$ 2,333.33	
Total			

Date	Total Receipts	Total Cash	Cash Short
7/15/12	$ 974.58	$ 969.30	
7/16/12	$ 888.07	$ 888.02	
7/17/12	$ 1,384.17	$ 1,350.23	
Total			

Date	Units Sold	Price Per Unit	Total Sales
5/24/12	47	$ 107.16	
5/25/12	63	$ 107.16	
5/26/12	72	$ 107.16	
5/27/12	39	$ 107.16	
Total			

Date	Total Sale	Price Per Unit	Units Sold
5/24/12	$ 5,036.52	$ 107.16	
5/25/12	$ 6,751.08	$ 107.16	
5/26/12	$ 7,715.52	$ 107.16	
5/27/12	$ 4,179.24	$ 107.16	
Total			

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
2.1 Read decimal numbers.	1. Write 8.427 using words. 2. Write forty-one and eleven ten-thousandths using digits.
2.2 Round decimal numbers.	3. Round 0.506489 to the nearest thousandth (that is, to three decimal places). 4. Round up 13.26012 to the *next* hundredth (that is, to two decimal places).
2.3 Add two or more decimal numbers.	5. Add 82.9, 14.872, and 2.09.
2.4 Subtract one decimal number from another.	6. Subtract 14.5977 from 19.34.
2.5 Multiply two decimal numbers.	7. Multiply: 4.68 × 3.5 ______
2.6 Divide one decimal number by another decimal number.	8. Divide: 0.084 ÷ 4 ______ 9. Divide: 0.064 ÷ 2.5 ______
2.7 Multiply and divide by decimals that end with zeros.	10. Multiply: 0.069782 × 1000 ______ 11. Divide: 9.462 by 100 ______ 12. Multiply: 0.0623 × 20 ______ 13. Divide: 84.6 by 300 ______
2.8 Approximate products and quotients.	14. Approximate 48.79 × 0.47 ______ 15. Approximate 0.2688 ÷ 0.713 ______

Answers: **1.** eight and four hundred twenty-seven thousandths **2.** 41.0011 **3.** 0.506 **4.** 13.27 **5.** 99.862
6. 4.7423 **7.** 16.38 **8.** 0.021 **9.** 0.0256 **10.** 69.782 **11.** 0.09462 **12.** 1.246 **13.** 0.282 **14.** 25 **15.** 0.4

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 2

1 Write “one hundred sixteen and fourteen ten-thousandths” as a number __________

2 Write 6,431.719, using words __________

3 Round 3.475 feet to the nearest tenth __________

4 Round $12.667 to the nearest cent __________

5 Add 3.79475 and 739.85 __________

6 Add 12.42, 0.087, and 8.3 __________

7 Subtract 8.693 from 11.41 __________

8 Subtract 287.963 from 410.4511 __________

9 Multiply 3.722 by 0.483 (do not round off) __________

10 Multiply $19.75 by 22.45 (round off to the nearest cent) __________

In problems 11 and 12, divide to three places and round to the nearest hundredth.

11 Divide 45.88 by 14.2 __________

12 Divide $6.25 by 8.41 __________

In problems 13 and 14, use shortcuts to solve each problem and round to the nearest hundredth.

13 Multiply 86.493 by 100 __________

14 Divide $2,762.35 by 1,000 __________

In problems 15 and 16, pick the best approximate answers from the possible answers.

15 Multiply 48.98 by 11.2 __________ **(a)** 0.5 **(b)** 5 **(c)** 50 **(d)** 500 **(e)** 5,000

16 Divide $6.65 by 8.21 __________ **(a)** $0.008 **(b)** $0.08 **(c)** $0.80 **(d)** $8.00 **(e)** $80.0

17 Lois McBryde owns a chain of very large, upscale bookstores. She decides to start selling coffee drinks such as espresso and cappuccino at one of her stores. During the first day, the store has total sales of $4,188.25. Of the total, $362.50 was from coffee drinks. How much of the total was from books and other items? __________

18 Gary Gehlert operates tennis and golf shops at a mountain resort. Last year, he started selling on the Internet as well. He had the following profits last year: Tennis (shop), $52,418.12; Golf (shop), $168,078.51; Tennis (Internet), $28,570.12; and Golf (Internet), $32,904.82. What were the total profits from these sources? __________

19 Dean Treggas, a landscape contractor, needed to plant 226 one-gallon plants and 164 five-gallon plants. Dean uses about 0.8 cubic foot of planting soil for each one-gallon plant and 2.5 cubic feet of planting soil for each five-gallon plant. How many cubic feet of planting soil will Dean need for all these plants? __________

20 Planting soil is sold by the cubic yard. To two decimals, how many cubic yards of planting soil will Dean Treggas need to do his planting in question 19? (*Hint:* 1 cubic yard equals 27 cubic feet.) __________

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 2.1: Addition and Subtraction of Decimal Numbers

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 1 2 3 4

A **(13 points) Use digits to write each number that is expressed in words. Use words to write each number that is expressed in digits. (1 point for each correct answer)**

1. Six hundred thirteen ten-thousandths
2. Two hundred nine thousandths
3. Sixty-four hundredths
4. Seventy-six and ninety-two ten-thousandths
5. Eight hundred sixty and ninety-eight hundred-thousandths
6. Thirty and seventeen thousandths
7. 308.97
8. 0.0014
9. 592.3
10. 0.152
11. 42.0481
12. 6.018
13. 1,007.4

Score for A (13)

B **(24 points) Round as indicated. (1 point for each correct answer)**

Nearest Tenth

14. 3.1508 oz
15. 48.97 mi
16. 3.824 gal
17. 374.29 lb
18. 9.449 ft
19. 6.375 oz

Nearest Cent

20. $4.987
21. $0.098
22. $942.3449
23. $8.1047
24. $0.8948
25. $52.996

Nearest Thousandth

26. 5.37575 pt
27. 0.00549 gal
28. 0.3449 oz
29. 8.1855 in.
30. 8.9989 mi
31. 0.200499 lb

Up to the *Next* Cent

32. $6.462
33. $0.159
34. $72.535
35. $2.0917
36. $4.0404
37. $0.6545

Score for B (24)

C (27 points) Write the following numbers in columns, and then add. (3 points for each correct answer)

38. 3.84, 42.81, 747.114

39. 0.7323, 4.084, 17.42

40. 15.4, 32.574, 9.51, 74.0822

41. 24.78, 71.402, 8.3176

42. 24.183, 546.95, 1.0459

43. 6.4, 3.211, 12.6, 7.07

44. 337.51, 6.1761, 16.078

45. 36.7, 208.51, 3.992

46. 9.7, 0.084, 2.99, 0.089

Score for C (27)

D (36 points) Subtract the following. (3 points for each correct answer)

47. $\begin{array}{r} 0.734 \\ -0.37 \\ \hline \end{array}$

48. $\begin{array}{r} 0.05155 \\ -0.00497 \\ \hline \end{array}$

49. $\begin{array}{r} 26.04 \\ -\ \ 8.625 \\ \hline \end{array}$

50. $\begin{array}{r} 0.7212 \\ -0.034 \\ \hline \end{array}$

51. $\begin{array}{r} 6.1 \\ -2.418 \\ \hline \end{array}$

52. $\begin{array}{r} 724.13 \\ -\ 47.59 \\ \hline \end{array}$

53. $\begin{array}{r} 3.2525 \\ -2.843 \\ \hline \end{array}$

54. $\begin{array}{r} 708.932 \\ -339.999 \\ \hline \end{array}$

55. $\begin{array}{r} 0.365 \\ -0.189 \\ \hline \end{array}$

56. $\begin{array}{r} 4.37 \\ -1.9055 \\ \hline \end{array}$

57. $\begin{array}{r} 7.624 \\ -5.947 \\ \hline \end{array}$

58. $\begin{array}{r} 7.5454 \\ -4.7987 \\ \hline \end{array}$

Score for D (36)

Assignment 2.2: Multiplication and Division of Decimal Numbers

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **5** **6** **7** **8**

A **(32 points) Multiply the following. Round monetary products to the nearest cent. Do not round nonmonetary products. (4 points for each correct answer)**

1. $\begin{array}{r} \$15.67 \\ \underline{\times\ 83.7} \end{array}$ **2.** $\begin{array}{r} \$329.68 \\ \underline{\times\ 4.98} \end{array}$ **3.** $\begin{array}{r} \$420.00 \\ \underline{\times\ 0.806} \end{array}$ **4.** $\begin{array}{r} \$48.40 \\ \underline{\times\ 0.65} \end{array}$

5. $\begin{array}{r} 107.21 \\ \underline{\times\ 0.74} \end{array}$ **6.** $\begin{array}{r} 96.88 \\ \underline{\times\ 0.79} \end{array}$ **7.** $\begin{array}{r} 285.70326 \\ \underline{\times\ 0.28} \end{array}$ **8.** $\begin{array}{r} 816.04 \\ \underline{\times\ 0.403} \end{array}$

Score for A (32)

B **(24 points) Divide the following. Round monetary quotients to the nearest cent. Round nonmonetary quotients to two decimal places. (4 points for each correct answer)**

9. $7\overline{)\$12.95}$ **10.** $0.32\overline{)\$3.60}$ **11.** $1.2\overline{)\$54.30}$

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

12. $1.5\overline{)2.5\,9}$ **13.** $0.11\overline{)0.6735}$ **14.** $2.3\overline{)3.4}$

__________ __________ __________

____

Score for B (24)

C

(12 points) Multiply and/or divide by just moving the decimal point or by doing some simple multiplication/division and moving the decimal point. Round monetary answers to the nearest cent. Do not round nonmonetary answers. (1 point for each correct answer)

15. 0.0625 × 1,000 = __________

16. 41.127 × 100 = __________

17. 0.047 × 10,000 = __________

18. 763 ÷ 100 = __________

19. 6.32 ÷ 10 = __________

20. 432.671 ÷ 1,000 = __________

21. \$72.41 × 300 = __________

22. \$32.25 × 20 = __________

23. \$0.12 × 6,000 = __________

24. \$40.00 × 80 = __________

25. \$86.50 ÷ 200 = __________

26. \$963 ÷ 30 = __________

____

Score for C (12)

D

(32 points) For each of the following problems, underline the estimate that is most nearly correct. (2 points for each correct answer)

27.	0.077 × 0.52	**(a)** 4.0	**(b)** 0.4	**(c)** 0.04	**(d)** 0.004
28.	5.78 × 0.9345	**(a)** 5.4	**(b)** 0.54	**(c)** 0.054	**(d)** 0.0054
29.	0.38 × 71.918	**(a)** 0.28	**(b)** 2.8	**(c)** 28	**(d)** 280
30.	0.00912 × 5.09	**(a)** 0.0045	**(b)** 0.045	**(c)** 0.45	**(d)** 4.5
31.	0.0782 × 0.5503	**(a)** 0.0048	**(b)** 0.048	**(c)** 0.48	**(d)** 4.8
32.	0.0417 × 0.0957	**(a)** 0.04	**(b)** 0.004	**(c)** 0.0004	**(d)** 0.00004
33.	268.25 × 0.9175	**(a)** 27,000	**(b)** 2,700	**(c)** 270	**(d)** 27
34.	0.0487 × 0.0059	**(a)** 0.000003	**(b)** 0.00003	**(c)** 0.0003	**(d)** 0.003
35.	19.1 × 6104	**(a)** 120	**(b)** 1,200	**(c)** 12,000	**(d)** 120,000
36.	6.275 ÷ 0.69	**(a)** 90	**(b)** 9	**(c)** 0.9	**(d)** 0.09
37.	3.575 ÷ 893.12	**(a)** 0.004	**(b)** 0.04	**(c)** 0.4	**(d)** 4
38.	0.0064 ÷ 0.897	**(a)** 7.1	**(b)** 0.71	**(c)** 0.071	**(d)** 0.0071
39.	8.397 ÷ 7.12	**(a)** 0.12	**(b)** 1.2	**(c)** 12	**(d)** 120
40.	0.0492 ÷ 0.794	**(a)** 6.0	**(b)** 0.6	**(c)** 0.06	**(d)** 0.006
41.	5.112 ÷ 0.0692	**(a)** 70	**(b)** 7	**(c)** 0.7	**(d)** 0.07
42.	2.671 ÷ 0.0926	**(a)** 300	**(b)** 30	**(c)** 3	**(d)** 0.3

____

Score for D (32)

Assignment 2.3: Decimal Numbers in Business

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **3** **4** **5** **6**

A **(36 points) Business Applications and Critical Thinking. Solve the following. Do not round your final answers. (6 points for each correct answer)**

1. Charlie Krentz had 24.75 feet of rope. He cut off a piece 16.5 feet long. How much did he have left?

____

2. La Perla Jewelers had only 14.3 ounces of gold on hand, so it bought 27.75 ounces more to make Christmas items. It used 19.95 ounces for gold rings. How much gold did it have left?

____

3. Judy Tyler reads meters for the gas and electric company. She walked 3.6 miles on Monday; 3.7 miles on Tuesday, 2.9 miles on Wednesday, 3.25 miles on Thursday, and 3.4 miles on Friday. What was her total distance for the week?

____

4. Four drivers for Secure Document Delivery need gasoline for their cars. Individually, they buy 9.8, 10.4, 11.7, and 13.9 gallons. How much do they purchase all together?

____

5. Ally Katz owes a total of $226.54 on her department store account. She visits the store to return an item that cost $47.79. While there, she buys two items that cost $55.88 and $67.50. What is Ally's new account balance at the store?

____

6. Perdue Paving Co. delivered 8.5 tons of concrete. It used 5.7 tons for a long driveway and 2.5 tons for a patio. How much concrete was left?

____

____

Score for A (36)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

B **(64 points) Business Applications and Critical Thinking. Solve the following business problems. Use shortcuts where possible. If necessary, round answers to two decimal places. (8 points for each correct answer)**

7. Bill Wells Hardware sells $\frac{5}{8}$-inch plastic tubing for $1.59 per foot and copper tubing for $3.99 per foot. How much will Kathy Fogg save by using plastic tubing if she needs 300 feet of tubing? __________

8. Bay Landscaping sent three truckloads of organic mulch to a job. The mulch cost $38.50 per cubic yard. Two trucks carried 8.75 cubic yards each; a third carried 9.75 cubic yards. What was the total cost of all the mulch? ________

9. Wholesale, 1,000 2-ounce plastic bottles cost 3.5 cents each, and 2,000 4-ounce bottles cost 4.5 cents each. What is the total cost of all 3,000 bottles? __________

10. Evelyn Haynes often used her motorcycle as a delivery vehicle. One Monday, when gasoline was priced at $4.659 per gallon, Evelyn bought 1.64 gallons. The following Thursday, gasoline prices rose to $4.859 per gallon and she bought 1.92 gallons. What was the total amount that Evelyn spent for gasoline those two days? __________

11. Electrician Tom Stewart paid $134.50 for 200 feet of three-strand electrical cable. What was the cost per foot for this particular cable?

____

12. A pizza chef has 24 pounds of flour on hand. He needs 3.75 pounds of flour for one large recipe of pizza dough. How many recipes can he make with the flour on hand? (Round to the nearest tenth.) _________

13. Paint thinner costs $8.47 per gallon. How many gallons can a painting contractor buy for $200? (Round to the nearest tenth.) __________

14. Alma White earns $23.40 per hour. How many hours did she work during a partial day for which her pay was $169.65? __________

____

Score for B (64)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3

Word Problems and Equations

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1 Use a systematic approach to solve word problems.

Learning Objective 2 Apply formulas to solve rate, time, and distance problems.

Learning Objective 3 Solve simple numerical equations.

Learning Objective 4 Recognize numerical relationships in a series.

Learning Objective 5 Do quick mental calculations through a process of rounding numbers.

Solving Word Problems

Learning Objective 1

Use a systematic approach to solve word problems.

Word problems in business are solved by using a three-step approach and applying simple addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division.

EXAMPLE A

A company orders carpeting for three offices measuring 15 square yards, 15 square yards, and 10 square yards, respectively. A carpet dealer sells the carpet for $10 a square yard and gives a $50 discount when the sale is for three or more offices. How much would the company pay to have the three offices carpeted?

15 sq yd + 15 sq yd + 10 sq yd = 40 sq yd
40 sq yd × $10 = $400 gross price
$400 − $50 discount = $350 net price

STEPS to Solve Word Problems

1. Read the problem completely and carefully.
2. Determine what is requested.
3. Determine the processes to use.

Note: It may also be helpful to list and label what is given as you read the problem to help determine the processes to use. For example A:

Office 1 = 15 sq yd
Office 2 = 15 sq yd
Office 3 = 10 sq yd
Price = $10 per sq yd
Discount = $50

We use these steps to solve the word problem in example A.

STEP 1 Read the problem completely and carefully.

STEP 2 Determine what is requested: How much money would the company pay?

STEP 3 Determine the processes to use.
Add square yards in the three offices: 15 + 15 + 10 = 40.
Multiply the total square yards by the $10 per square yard cost: 40 × $10 = $400.
Subtract the $50 discount: $400 − $50 = $350.

Some word problems involve all four fundamental processes: addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division.

EXAMPLE B

Phoebe Elias owns half of a small bakery. Last week she baked 6 cakes on Monday, 9 on Tuesday, 11 on Wednesday, 8 on Thursday, and 6 on Friday. She sold all cakes for $9 each. It cost Phoebe $5 to make each cake; the rest was her profit on each cake.

Phoebe split her profit evenly with her partner. How much did her partner receive from last week's cakes?

STEP 1 Read the problem completely and carefully.

STEP 2 Determine what is requested: How much money did Phoebe's partner receive?

STEP3 Determine the processes to use.
Add the cakes baked: $6 + 9 + 11 + 8 + 6 = 40$.
Subtract the cost from the sales price: \$9 − \$5 = \$4 profit per cake.
Multiply the number of cakes sold by the \$4 profit per cake: 40 × \$4 = \$160.
Divide the total profit by 2: \$160 ÷ 2 = \$80 received by the partner.

CONCEPT CHECK 3.1

Summary of steps for solving word problems:

1. Read the problem completely and carefully.
2. Determine what is requested.
3. Determine the processes to use.

Problem: Maria wants to upholster three chairs. Two chairs will require 4 yards of material each; the third will require 3 yards. One material costs \$32 per yard; the other costs \$15 per yard. What is the difference between the costs of the two materials for upholstering the chairs?

Read the problem completely and carefully.

Determine what is requested: Difference in cost between the two materials.

Determine the processes to use.
Add amount of material needed: 4 yd + 4 yd + 3 yd = 11 yd.
Multiply amount of material needed by cost per yard—first material: 11 yd × \$32 per yd = \$352.
Multiply amount of material needed by cost per yard—second material: 11 yd × \$15 per yd = \$165.
Subtract cost between the two materials: \$352 − \$165 = \$187 difference in cost.

Solving Rate, Time, and Distance Problems

Learning Objective 2

Apply formulas to solve rate, time, and distance problems.

In some business word problems, you must compute how much is done (or distance traveled) in a given amount of time at a specific speed. These rate, time, and distance problems are solved with a simple formula: Rate (speed) × Time = Distance (amount done). If you are given any two factors, it is easy, by formula, to find the third.

Rate × Time = Distance
Distance ÷ Time = Rate
Distance ÷ Rate = Time

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE C

Jan traveled at 35 miles per hour for 5 hours. How far did Jan travel?

35 mph × 5 hr = 175 mi

(Rate × Time = Distance)

EXAMPLE D

Jan traveled 175 miles in 5 hours. How fast was Jan traveling?

175 mi ÷ 5 hr = 35 mph

(Distance ÷ Time = Rate)

©ollirg/Shutterstock.com

EXAMPLE E

At 35 miles per hour, how long would it take Jan to travel a total of 175 miles?

175 mi ÷ 35 mph = 5 hr

(Distance ÷ Rate = Time)

EXAMPLE F

Jan and Ahmed start traveling toward each other from 300 miles apart. Jan is traveling at 35 miles per hour; Ahmed is traveling at 40 miles per hour. How much time will elapse before they meet?

Distance = 300 mi

Total rate = 35 mph (Jan) + 40 mph (Ahmed) = 75 mph

300 mi ÷ 75 mph = 4 hr

(Distance ÷ Rate = Time)

EXAMPLE G

Jan and Ahmed start traveling toward each other from 300 miles apart. Jan is traveling at 35 miles per hour; Ahmed is traveling at 40 miles per hour. How much distance will Jan travel before they meet?

Total rate = 35 mph (Jan) + 40 mph (Ahmed) = 75 mph

Time = 300 mi ÷ 75 mph = 4 hr

Jan's distance = 35 mph (Jan's Rate) × 4 hr (Time) = 140 mi

EXAMPLE H

Mary needs to type a term paper that will be 30 pages long. Each page contains about 200 words. If Mary can type 40 words per minute, how many minutes will it take her to complete the paper?

Choose a formula: We know distance (amount to be done) and speed (rate). Therefore, we choose the formula for time.

Distance (amount done) ÷ Rate (speed) = Time

30 pages × 200 words = 6,000 words ÷ 40 wpm = 150 min

EXAMPLE I

Flora also had a paper to type, but hers was 9,000 words in length. She was able to type it in 150 minutes. How fast did she type?

Choose a formula: We know distance (amount done) and time. Therefore, we choose the formula for rate.

Distance (amount done) ÷ Time = Rate (speed)

9,000 words ÷ 150 min = 60 wpm

EXAMPLE J

It is approximately 400 miles from San Francisco to Los Angeles. Roy's friends tell him that he can make the trip in 6 hours if he averages 60 miles per hour. Is this true?

Choose a formula: We know the rate and the time, so we choose the formula for distance.

Rate (speed) × Time = Distance (amount done)

60 mph × 6 hr = 360 mi

Can he get there in 6 hours? *No.*

CONCEPT CHECK 3.2

The basic formulas:

a. Rate (speed) × Time = Distance (amount done)
   If you know any *two* factors, you can find the *third*.
b. Distance (amount done) ÷ Time = Rate (speed)
c. Distance (amount done) ÷ Rate (speed) = Time

Apply the appropriate formula to answer the following question: A machine that produces tortillas at the Baja Restaurant can produce 200 tortillas per hour, or 1,600 tortillas in an 8-hour day. A new machine can produce 3,000 tortillas in 6 hours. How many more tortillas per hour can the new machine produce than the old one?

Distance (amount done) ÷ Time = Rate
1,600 tortillas ÷ 8 hr = 200 per hr
3,000 tortillas ÷ 6 hr = 500 per hr
Difference: 500 − 200 = 300 more tortillas per hr

Solving Simple Numerical Equations

Learning Objective 3

Solve simple numerical equations.

A **numerical sentence** in which both sides of an equal sign contain calculations is called an **equation.** For example, five plus five equals twelve minus two (5 + 5 = 12 − 2) is an equation, as is seven minus one equals thirty divided by five (7 − 1 = 30 ÷ 5).

For an equation to be true, the numbers on the left of the equal sign must always compute to the same answer as the numbers on the right of the equal sign. Moving a number from one side of the equation to the other changes its sign. A plus sign will change to minus; a minus sign will change to plus. A multiplication sign will change to division; a division sign will change to multiplication.

Rule: When you change sides, you change signs.

EXAMPLE K **Addition—Subtraction**

$6 + 4 + 5 = 17 - 2$ (Move the negative 2 to the other side of the equation.)

Change the − 2:

$6 + 4 + 5 + 2 = 17$

Now change the + 5: (Move the positive 5 to the other side of the equation.)

$6 + 4 + 2 = 17 - 5$

EXAMPLE L **Multiplication—Division**

$3 \times 8 = 48 \div 2$

Change the ÷ 2:

$3 \times 8 \times 2 = 48$

Now change the × 8:

$3 \times 2 = 48 \div 8$

A numerical equation may have one value that is *unknown* but still provide enough information to complete the sentence. To solve for the unknown value, you can *move* any or all of the known values to the other side of the equation by *reversing* their signs.

Move one or more numbers from one side of the equation to the other to leave the unknown alone on one side. Solve for the unknown by doing the calculations on the other side of the equation.

EXAMPLE M

6 + 2 = 5 + ?

Change a number

6 + 2 − 5 = ?

Therefore, ? = 3

EXAMPLE N

15 − 3 = 2 + ?

Change a number

15 − 3 − 2 = ?

Therefore, ? = 10

EXAMPLE O

7 + 3 + 6 = 4 + 4 + ?

Change a number

7 + 3 + 6 − 4 − 4 = ?

Therefore, ? = 8

EXAMPLE P

20 ÷ 5 = 2 × ?

Change a number

20 ÷ 5 ÷ 2 = ?

Therefore, ? = 2

In business, numerical sentences with equations compare items. Note the following example.

EXAMPLE Q

Last year a company had sales of $25,000 in Dept. A and $20,000 in Dept. B. If sales this year were $30,000 in Dept. A, what is the amount needed for Dept. B to equal last year's sales?

Last year: Dept. A $25,000 + Dept. B $20,000 = $45,000
This year: Dept. A $30,000 + Dept. B ? = $45,000
Dept. B = $45,000 − Dept. A $30,000
Therefore, ? = $15,000

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONCEPT CHECK 3.3

Both sides of a true equation are equal. Each side may contain calculations.

$7 + 5 = 14 - 2$

$2 \times 9 = 36 \div 2$

A number may be moved from one side of an equation to the other by reversing its sign.

$8 = 6 + 2$	$8 - 2 = 6$	$7 + 3 = 10$	$7 = 10 - 3$
$12 = 4 \times 3$	$12 \div 3 = 4$	$24 \div 12 = 2$	$24 = 2 \times 12$

Numerical Relationships in a Series

Learning Objective 4

Recognize numerical relationships in a series

Relationships in a series of numbers may be found by comparing the first three or four terms in a series and then extrapolating the numbers that would most logically come next. For example, examining the series 320, 160, 80, 40 indicates that each term is found by dividing the preceding number by 2. The next two numbers in the series would logically be 20 and 10—that is, $40 \div 2 = 20$ and $20 \div 2 = 10$.

Examining the series 7, 14, 21, 28 suggests the addition of 7 to each preceding number. The next two numbers in this series would logically be 35 and 42 ($28 + 7 = 35$ and $35 + 7 = 42$).

In the series 5, 15, 35, 75, 155, seeing a relationship is difficult; however, a relationship does exist. Each number results from multiplying the preceding number by 2 and then adding 5. In this series, the next number would logically be 315 ($155 \times 2 + 5 = 315$).

Recognizing numerical and series relationships can be important in analyzing, communicating, and computing numbers. These relationship series are also used frequently in initial employment tests.

CONCEPT CHECK 3.4

In studying relationships in a numerical series, look for patterns. Patterns most commonly fall into categories:

Addition	2, 7, 12, 17, 22, 27	(+5, or 32)
Alternating addition/subtraction	12, 24, 18, 30, 24, 36, 30	(+12, −6, or 42, 36)
Subtraction	39, 32, 25, 18, 11, 4	(−7, or −3)
Alternating subtraction/addition	64, 59, 61, 56, 58, 53, 55	(−5, +2, or 50, 52)
Multiplication	4, 12, 36, 108, 324, 972	(×3, or 2,916)
Division	384, 192, 96, 48, 24	(÷2, or 12)

You can also devise patterns such as multiplication with addition or subtraction, division with addition or subtraction, and many other combinations.

Making Quick Calculations by Rounding Numbers

Learning Objective 5

Do quick mental calculations through a process of rounding numbers.

Quick calculations are beneficial when working in business situations. *Rounding* odd and difficult-to-compute amounts to even whole numbers that are easier to compute is a technique often used in business. By rounding, you will be able to get quick and accurate answers without having to write out the computations.

EXAMPLE R

How much would 5 items at $2.99 each cost?

To make this computation easily, think "$2.99 is $0.01 less than $3.00." Then think "5 times $3 equals $15." Finally, think "$15.00 less $0.05 (5 × $0.01) is $14.95," which is the correct answer.

©Elena Elisseeva/Shutterstock.Com

EXAMPLE S

The total cost of three equally priced dresses is $119.85. How much does each dress cost?

To figure out this problem easily, think "$119.85 is $0.15 less than $120.00." Then think "$120 divided by 3 = $40, and $40.00 less $0.05 ($0.15 ÷ 3) is $39.95," the correct answer.

EXAMPLE T

At 19 miles per gallon, how many miles would a car go on 9 gallons of gas?

To figure out this problem easily, think "19 is just 1 mile less than 20." Then think "9 times 20 = 180, and 180 minus 9 (9 × 1) is 171," the correct answer.

CONCEPT CHECK 3.5

You may have noticed that making quick calculations is quite similar to making estimations, which you did in Chapter 1. In fact, quick calculation is only an additional step. After estimating an answer, you determine the degree to which the estimated, or rounded, answer differs from the actual answer by mentally correcting for the amount of the estimation or rounding.

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 3.1 AND 3.2.

Chapter Terms for Review

equation

numerical sentence

Notes

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	**Example**
3.1 Use a systematic approach to solve word problems involving basic math processes.	Use the three-step process to solve the word problem. 1. Martha is preparing to make two dresses. One will require 3 yards of material; the other will require 4 yards of material. The material for the first dress costs \$12.00 per yard; the material for the second costs \$15.00 per yard. Buttons and trimming will cost \$8.00 for each dress. What will be the total cost? Read the problem completely and carefully. Determine what is being requested. Determine the processes to be used to solve the problem. Answer: _____
3.2 Apply formulas to solve rate, time, and distance problems.	2. At an average rate of 50 miles per hour, how long would it take to drive 650 miles? _____ 3. At an average rate of 60 miles per hour, how far could you drive in 6 hours? _____ 4. If you drove 70 miles per hour and covered 280 miles, how much time did it take? _____
3.3 Solve simple numerical equations.	5. $5 \times 12 = 120 \div 2$ — Move the 2 to the opposite side of the equation. 6. $7 + 8 - 3 = 5 + 2 + ?$ — Solve for ? amount.

Answers: **1.** \$112 **2.** 13 hr **3.** 360 mi **4.** 4 hr **5.** $5 \times 12 \times 2 = 120$ **6.** 5

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
3.4 Recognize numeric relationships in a series.	Insert the next two numbers. 7. 4, 7, 6, 9, 8, 11, ______, ______ Pattern: ______ 8. 12, 48, 24, 96, 48, ______, ______ Pattern: ______
3.5 Do quick mental calculations through a process of rounding numbers.	9. What is the cost of eight items at $3.99 each? 10. At 59 miles per hour, how far would a car go in 20 hours?

Answers: **7.** (+ 3, − 1) 10, 13 **8.** (× 4, ÷ 2) 192, 96 **9.** (8 × $4.00) = $32.00 − 0.08 = $31.92
10. (60 × 20) = 1200 − 20 = 1180 mi

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 3

1 6 items at \$5.99 each = __________

2 3 items at \$2.48 each = __________

3 24 items at \$1.99 each = __________

4 40 items at \$2.02 each = __________

5 In the first four months of the year, a corporation had monthly earnings of \$12,493, \$6,007, \$3,028, and \$9,728. What were its total earnings in the four months? __________

6 If the corporation in question 5 had earnings of \$74,500 at the end of the year, how much did it earn in the last eight months of the year? __________

7 If a tour bus gets 7 miles per gallon of gas and used 61 gallons in a week, how many miles did it travel in the week? __________

8 An employer earned \$4,000. Half the earnings went into an employee bonus pool. The pool was split among five employees. How much did each employee receive? __________

9 A delivery firm bought 21 gallons of gas on Monday, 15 on Tuesday, 24 on Wednesday, 34 on Thursday, and 11 on Friday. If gas cost \$3.85 per gallon, how much did the delivery firm pay for the week's gas? __________

10 A store owner planned to give away \$1,200 at Christmas. The owner gave \$150 to each of five full-time employees and \$50 to each of four part-time employees. The remainder was given to a local charity. How much did the charity receive? __________

11 How long would it take to travel 1,265 miles at 55 miles per hour? __________

12 Bob and Mary start traveling toward each other from 1,330 miles apart. Bob is traveling at 30 miles per hour, Mary at 40 miles per hour. How many hours elapse before they meet? __________

13 Bob and Mary start traveling toward each other from 960 miles apart. Bob is traveling at 25 miles per hour, Mary at 55 miles per hour. How far had Bob traveled when they met? __________

14 $41 - 6 = 27 +$ __________

15 $72 + 72 = 300 -$ __________

16 $10 \times 3 = 90 \div$ __________

17 Four items at \$9 each = __________ items at \$12 each

18 What is the next number in the series 3, 7, 8, 12, ? __________

19 What is the next number in the series 5, 20, 10, 40, ? __________

20 To find the price of seven items at \$1.99 you would think: 7 times \$__________ less 7 times \$__________ = \$13.93

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Assignment 3.1: Word Problems, Equations, and Series

Name ______________________________

Date ______________ Score ______________

Learning Objectives 1 2 4

A **(20 points) Use the three-step process to solve the following word problems. (5 points for each correct answer)**

1. Budget Lamps and Lighting, Inc., conducted a direct-mail program. The manager determined that $72,000 in new business came from the program. If the profit was 40% of sales, how much profit did the program produce? ________

2. Martha's Beauty Salon charges $40 for a haircut, $48 for a facial, and $60 for hair coloring. If it had 20 haircut, 22 facial, and 18 coloring customers, what were its total sales? ________

3. Juan Lopez sold 11 life insurance policies with premiums totaling $24,200. He sold 15 auto policies with premiums totaling $34,200. Which type of policy had the greater premium per sale? ________

4. The Tulsa Taxi Service had four taxi vehicles. Two got 25 miles per gallon of gas; two got 20 miles per gallon of gas. The vehicles were each driven 8,000 miles per month. The gas cost $3.80 per gallon. What was the amount of the gas bill for the month? ________

____

Score for A (20)

B **(10 points) Do these problems without using scratch paper or an electronic calculator. (2 points for each correct answer)**

5. How much would you pay for 12 gallons of gasoline selling at $4.29 per gallon? ________
6. How many items would you have if you had 98 books, 98 cards, and 98 pencils? ________
7. What is the price of 15 items at $2.99 each? ________
8. How much would you have if you received $3.99 from one person, $7.99 from a second, $11.99 from a third, and $1.99 from a fourth? ________
9. If 24 people were divided into three equal groups and each group added 2 additional members, how many members would be in each group? ________

____

Score for B (10)

C **(10 points) Do the steps in the order in which they occur. Do these problems without using scratch paper or an electronic calculator. (1 point for each correct answer)**

10. 12 items at $3 each plus $2 tax = ________

11. 15 watches at $30 each less a $50 discount = ________

12. 3 lamps at $22 each plus 7 bulbs at $2 each = ________

13. 100 belts at $10 each less discounts of $60 and $30 = ________

14. 3 dozen scissors at $11.20 per dozen plus a $4 shipping charge = ________

15. 6 pounds of pears at $3 per pound plus 50¢ per pound for packaging = ________

16. $38 sale price plus $3 tax less an $11 discount plus a $5 delivery charge = ________

17. 6 bath towels at $8 each and 4 hand towels at $3 each plus $2.50 tax = ________

18. 4 dozen brushes at $25 per dozen plus $5 tax plus $7 shipping charge = ________

19. 2 shirts at $30 each, 4 ties at $10 each, and 7 pairs of socks at $2 each = ________

____
Score for C (10)

D **(40 points) Complete the following equations by supplying the missing items. (4 points for each correct answer)**

20. 42 + 8 = ________ + 9

21. 13 + ________ = 2 + 33

22. ________ + 4 = 4 + 16

23. 400 = 17 − 2 + ________

24. 9 + 17 − 3 = 4 × ________ − 5

25. 160 ÷ 4 + 2 = 7 × 7 − ________

26. 13 − 11 × ________ = 8 × 8 + 16

27. ________ × 3 × 3 = 9 ÷ 3 × 9

28. 68 ÷ 2 = 544 ÷ ________

29. 32 − 12 + 7 = 30 − ________

____
Score for D (40)

E **(20 points) In each of the following problems, a definite relationship exists among the numbers in each series. Extend each series two items by following the correct process. (1 point for each correct line)**

30. Extend each series below through addition.

a. 4, 8, 12, 16, ________

b. 1, 4, 5, 8, ________

c. 5, 8, 10, 13, 15, ________

31. Extend each series below through subtraction.

a. 50, 45, 40, 35, ________

b. 60, 55, 53, 48, ________

c. 100, 90, 81, 73, ________

32. Extend each series below through multiplication.

a. 4, 8, 16, 32, ________

b. 5, 25, 125, ________

c. 2, 4, 20, 40, ________

33. Extend each series below through division.

a. 15,625, 3,125, 625, 125, ________

b. 729, 243, 81, 27, ________

c. 10,000, 2,000, 1,000, 200, ________

34. Extend each series below through combinations of the four processes above.

a. 72, 75, 69, 72, ________

b. 200, 100, 300, 150, ________

c. 5, 7, 14, 16, 32, ________

d. 240, 120, 600, 300, 1,500, ________

e. 7, 4, 8, 5, 9, ________

f. 30, 10, 60, 20, ________

g. 10, 40, 20, 80, ________

h. 100, 50, 40, 20, ________

____
Score for E (20)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 3.2: Word Problems, Formulas, and Equations

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 1 2 3 4 5

A (40 points) Solve the following word problems. (5 points for each correct answer)

1. A store regularly sold 2 cans of soup for $1.30. It advertised a special sale of 6 cans for $3.12. A customer bought 12 cans at the sale. How much did the customer save over the regular price? ________

2. A sales representative's car gets 18 miles to a gallon of gas. It was driven 120 miles each day for 30 days. Gas cost an average of $3.68 per gallon. What was the sales representative's total 30-day cost for gas? ________

3. A store clerk sold a customer a ruler for $1.67, three pencils for $0.23 each, notebook paper for $0.99, and an eraser for $0.35 and was given $10.00 in payment. How much change did the clerk give the customer from the $10.00? (All prices include tax.) ________

4. A college student worked at a local store for $9.00 per hour, as his class schedule permitted. The student worked 3 hours each Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, and Thursday. He also worked 2 hours each Friday and 8 hours each Saturday. How many weeks did the student have to work to earn $792 for a new bicycle?

____

5. A box, a crate, and a trunk weigh a total of 370 pounds. The crate weighs 160 pounds. The trunk weighs 4 pounds more than the box. What does the box weigh? ________

6. A hotel has 15 floors. Each floor has 26 *single-person* rooms and 38 *two-person* rooms. What is the total *guest* capacity of the hotel? ________

7. A department store offers its customers socks for $1.50 per pair or $15.00 per dozen. If two customers buy 1 dozen together and each pays half the cost, how much will each customer save by paying the quantity price? ________

8. Supply Clerk A ordered five staplers at $9 each and two large boxes of staples for $3 each. Supply Clerk B ordered a box of computer disks for $8.50 and a box of computer paper for $39.95. How much less did Clerk B spend than Clerk A? (All prices include tax.) ________

____

Score for A (40)

B **(10 points) Solve the following time, rate, distance problems. (5 points for each correct answer)**

9. Linda leaves Boise to travel the 2,070 miles to Austin, driving at a speed of 55 miles per hour. Mark leaves Austin to travel the same 2,070-mile route to Boise, driving at a speed of 60 miles per hour. How many miles will Mark have traveled when they meet? ________

10. Car A traveled to a destination 845 miles away at 65 miles per hour. Car B traveled to a destination 495 miles away at 55 miles per hour. How much longer did Car A travel than Car B? ________

____

Score for B (10)

C **(40 points) Solve each of the problems without writing any computations on paper and without using a calculator or a computer. (2 points for each correct answer)**

11. 12 items at \$1.99 = ________

12. 2 items at \$5.95 = ________

13. 4 items at \$19.98 = ________

14. 2 items at \$49.96 = ________

15. 15 items at \$0.99 = ________

16. 10 items at \$9.99 = ________

17. 6 items at \$2.95 = ________

18. 5 items at \$1.02 = ________

19. 19 items at \$40 = ________

20. 3 items at \$19.99 = ________

21. 20 items at \$40.05 = ________

22. 30 items at \$1.99 = ________

23. 20 items at \$39.98 = ________

24. 2 items at \$5.99 = ________

25. 48 items at \$5 = ________

26. 5 items at \$1.97 = ________

27. 7 items at \$7.97 = ________

28. 2 items at \$99.98 = ________

29. 30 items at \$2.98 = ________

30. 99 items at \$1.90 = ________

____

Score for C (40)

D **(10 points) In each of the following equations, rewrite the equation by moving the last number on each side of the equal sign to the other side and making appropriate sign changes so that the equation is still true. (Example: Given 13 + 7 + 2 = 10 + 12; Answer 13 + 7 − 12 = 10 − 2) (1 point for each correct equation)**

31. $6 + 4 + 5 = 17 - 2$

32. $6 \times 2 \div 3 = 8 \div 4 \times 2$

33. $9 - 3 - 3 = 2 + 1$

34. $8 \div 2 \times 4 = 24 \div 3 \times 2$

35. $20 + 1 - 7 = 16 - 2$

36. $3 \times 3 \times 3 = 18 \div 2 \times 3$

37. $12 + 3 - 5 = 7 + 3$

38. $7 \times 4 \div 2 = 28 \times 2 \div 4$

39. $64 - 32 - 16 = 8 + 8$

40. $63 \div 7 \times 2 = 3 \times 2 \times 3$

____

Score for D (10)

4

International System of Units (SI): *The Metric System*

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1 Recognize and apply the basic elements of the International System of Units (SI) commonly known as "the metric system."

Learning Objective 2 Understand the SI measurements for length and be able to convert between the US and SI systems.

Learning Objective 3 Understand the SI measurements for volume and be able to convert between the US and SI systems.

Learning Objective 4 Understand the SI measurements for weight and be able to convert between the US and SI systems.

Basic Elements of the International System of Units (SI)

Learning Objective 1

Recognize and apply the basic elements of the International System of Units (SI) commonly known as "the metric system."

In the United States, we measure distances by "inches," "feet," "yards," and "miles." In other parts of the world they use *meters*.

In the United States, we measure weight by "ounces," "pounds," and "tons." In other parts of the world they use *grams*.

In the United States, we measure volume (liquid) by "pints," "quarts," and "gallons." In other parts of the world, they use *liters*.

The measuring system used in the United States is commonly referred to as the "traditional," or the "US Traditional," system. The measuring system used in other parts of the world is called the *International System of Units* (abbreviated SI) and commonly referred to as the *metric system*.

The first metric system of measurement was developed in the late 1700s by the French Academy of Sciences. During the 1800s and early 1900s, the system spread rapidly and was adopted by most of the world's countries, including Spain, Mexico, Germany, and Russia.

The United States has tried but failed to adopt the metric system. An act of Congress passed in 1866 declared the metric system legal for use in the United States, but use of the system did not progress significantly. In 1975, Congress passed the Metric Conversion Act, which officially adopted the policy of changing our system to the metric system. However, once again, it never happened. Today the United States is the only industrialized country in the world which has not adopted the metric system.

Although not officially adopted by the United States today, the metric system is used in many areas of personal and business activities. Companies that export their products outside the United States use the metric system for their export items. Internationally oriented corporations like GM, IBM, and Microsoft have adopted the metric system for use in many of their manufacturing processes for global products.

Many high schools and universities have running tracks and engage in competitive events measured in meters. United States athletes who compete in the Olympic Games and other international contests compete in meters.

Many foreign-made automobiles sold in the United States have speedometers that indicate speed in both miles and kilometers. Virtually all pharmaceutical products manufactured in the United States and imported by pharmaceutical companies are dispensed with their quantities indicated in "grams." Our commonly used music CDs and video DVDs comply with an international metric standard established as 12 centimeters in diameter.

Because our economy is now global and world travel is so popular, it is important that a person is able to understand and use the metric system. To participate in the world economy, one needs to use, calculate, and convert measurements between the US Traditional and the International System of Units (SI).

DECIMAL SYSTEM

The metric system is a decimal system. Prefixes and/or symbols are added to the metric base unit to indicate powers of 10, that is, 10, 100, 1,000. Likewise, prefixes or symbols are added to the base unit to indicate 1/10, 1/100, or 1/1, 000 part of the unit.

Some of the prefixes and symbols used with the metric system are as follows:

Number	US Term	Metric Prefix	Symbol
1,000,000,000	Billion	giga	G
1,000,000	Million	mega	M
1,000	Thousand	kilo	k
100	Hundred	hector	h
10	Ten	deka	da
1	One	(no prefix)	
1/10	One tenth	deci	d
1/100	One hundredth	centi	c
1/1000	One thousandth	milli	m
1/1,000,000	One millionth	micro	u
1/1,000,000,000	One billionth	nano	n

When writing numbers with prefixes in the metric system, we should note that the prefixes are usually written in lowercase and not capitalized. When writing numbers in the metric system, there are spaces but no commas, so 1,000 is 1 000 and 1,000,000 is 1 000 000. Also, when writing numbers with prefixes, there is a “0” before a decimal point such as 0.3 and 0.0007.

METRIC UNITS

The three metric units most widely used are

meter (m) — a measure of length
liter (L) — a measure of liquid capacity (volume)
gram (g) — a measure of weight (mass)

EXAMPLE A

“kilo” means 1 000, so five kilometers = 5 000 meters = (5 km).
“deci” means 1/10, so three decimeters = 0.3 meter = (0.3 m).
“mega” means 1 000 000, so two megameters = 2 000 000 meters = (2 Mm).

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 4.1

Use SI prefixes and symbols to express 3 000 grams.
3 kilogram = 3 kg

Use SI prefixes and symbols to express 6/100 gram.
6 centigram = 6 cg

Use SI prefixes and symbols to express 1/100 liter.
1 centiliter = 1cL

The Measurement of Length

Learning Objective 2

Understand the SI measurements for length and be able to convert between the US and SI systems.

The *meter (m)* is the base unit of the metric measure of length. Some of the multiples of the *meter* are shown below. Of these, the ones most frequently used are the millimeter, centimeter, and kilometer.

kilometer	(km)	=	1 000 meters
hectometer	(hm)	=	100 meters
dekameter	(dam)	=	10 meters
meter	(m)	=	1 meter
decimeter	(dm)	=	0.1 meter
centimeter	(cm)	=	0.01 meter
millimeter	(mm)	=	0.001 meter

CHANGING TO LARGER OR SMALLER UNITS

It is very easy to change from one unit to another in the metric systems, with the exception of numbers one million and above. To change a value to the next higher value, simply divide by 10. To change a value to the next lower value, simply multiply by 10.

EXAMPLE B

To change from meters to kilometers (smaller to larger) the steps are:

6 000 meters (m) ÷ 10 = 600 dekameters (dam)
600 dekameters (dam) ÷ 10 = 60 hectometers (hm)
60 hectometers (hm) ÷ 10 = 6 kilometers (km)

To change from meters to millimeters (larger to smaller) the steps are:

6 meters (m) × 10 = 60 decimeters (dm)
60 decimeters (dm) × 10 = 600 centimeters (cm)
600 centimeters (cm) × 10 = 6 000 millimeters (mm)

COMPARISON OF US AND SI SYSTEMS MEASUREMENT OF LENGTH

It will undoubtedly take some time for those using the "traditional" US system of measurement to learn the metric system. The conversion table below is designed to facilitate calculations to convert values between the US Traditional and the SI systems.

Conversion Tables for Measurement of Length (Approximate)

Metric SI to Traditional US

1 kilometer (km) = 0.621 mile
1 kilometer (km) = 3,280.840 feet
1 hecktometer (hm) = 328.084 feet
1 dekameter (dam) = 32.808 feet
1 meter (m) = 39.370 inches
1 meter (m) = 3.281 feet
1 meter (m) = 1.094 yards
1 decimeter (dm) = 3.937 inches
1 centimeter (cm) = 0.393 inches
1 millimeter (mm) = 0.039 inches

US Traditional to Metric SI

1 inch = 2.540 centimeters (cm)
1 foot = 0.305 meter (m)
1 yard = 0.914 meter (m)
1 mile = 1.609 kilometers (km)

Some of the values in metric/US and US/metric conversion tables can be carried out to many decimal places. For practical use, the values in these conversion tables have been rounded to three decimal places.

For instance, a more accurate conversion between foot and meter would be seven decimal places, or 0.3047997; however, in most personal and business conversions, this is rounded to 0.305 meters per foot. Other examples are one kilometer equals 0.6214 mile and one mile equals 1.6093 kilometers; these have been rounded to 0.621 and 1.609, respectively.

Note: When traveling to almost any country outside the United States, highway signs will show distances and speed by kilometers. For quicker mental conversion, people commonly use a conversion of 6/10 of a mile per kilometer. So for a distance sign that reads "70 kilometers" one would quickly multiply by 0.6 and say 42 miles knowing that it approximates the actual distance computed using the three-decimal number of 0.621 miles per kilometer for an actual distance of 43.47 miles.

A measure of length used in the US system is the yard. The conversion table above shows that one meter is equal to 1.094 yards. To calculate the conversion of 5 meters to yards, one would multiply 1.094 by 5 to calculate that 5 meters equals 5.47 yards.

EXAMPLE C

Convert 20 meters to yards.

Using the conversion table, note that 1 meter equals 1.094 yards.

Multiply: $20 \times 1.094 = 21.88$ (yards)

EXAMPLE D

What is the speed limit in miles per hour on a highway where there is a sign that reads "80 kilometers"?

From the conversion table: 1 kilometer equals 0.621 miles.
Multiply: $80 \times 0.621 = 49.68$ mph

(*Note:* The 49.68 mph calculation is routinely rounded to 50 mph.)

Thinkmetric
MAXIMUM
80
km/h
IS
MAXIMUM
50
MPH

©Jessie Eldora Robertson/Shutterstock.com

CONCEPT CHECK 4.2

If the distance between San Francisco and San Jose is 48 miles, what is the distance measured in kilometers?

One mile = 1.609 kilometers
48 × 1.609 = 77.232 kilometers

Convert 30 meters to yards.
One meter = 1.094 yards
30 × 1.094 = 32.82 yards

Change 2 000 meters to kilometers.

2 000 meters (m) ÷ 10 = 200 dekameters (dam)
200 dekameters (dam) ÷ 10 = 20 hectometers (hm)
20 hectometers (hm) ÷ 10 = 2 kilometers (km)

Learning Objective 3

Understand the SI measurements for volume and be able to convert between the US and SI systems.

Volume and *capacity* simply mean "how much something holds." The terms *volume* and *capacity* are commonly used interchangeably. Basically, the terms refer to cubic units such as the number of cubic inches in a box or cylinder or to liquid capacity such as pints and quarts. This chapter will be limited to and focused on liquid capacity. The basic metric unit for liquid capacity is the *liter*.

Although metric symbols are usually lowercase, the symbol for liter is the capital letter "L" in order to avoid confusion with the number 1. Some multiples of the liter are

kiloliter (kL) = 1 000 liters
hectoliter (hL) = 100 liters
dekaliter (daL) = 10 liters
liter (L) = 1 liter
deciliter (dL) = 0.1 liter
centiliter (cL) = 0.01 liter
milliliter (mL) = 0.001 liter

The liter, milliliter, and kiloliter are the most frequently used of these measures. One liter is about equal to one quart (l.057 quarts). The milliliter is used in the measurement of small quantities such as eye drops while the kiloliter is used in the measurement of large quantities such as swimming pools.

CHANGING TO LARGER OR SMALLER UNITS

As shown in the table above, the liter, like all other metric measurements, is based on the decimal system. To change the value of a unit to the next higher one, divide by 10. To change the value of a unit to the next lower one, multiply by 10.

EXAMPLE E

To change from liters to kiloliters (smaller to larger) or from liters to milliliters (larger to smaller) the steps are as follows:

7 000 L ÷ 10 = 700 daL (dekaliters)
700 daL ÷ 10 = 70 hL (hectoliters)
70 hL ÷ 10 = 7 kL (kiloliters)

7 L × 10 = 70 dL (deciliters)
70 dL × 10 = 700 cL (centiliters)
700 cL × 10 = 7 000 mL (milliliters)

COMPARISON OF US AND SI SYSTEMS
MEASUREMENT OF CAPACITY

The approximate equivalents of the metric liter and the US unit of measurement are shown in the conversion tables below. All items are rounded to three decimal places.

Conversion Tables for Measurement of Capacity (Approximate)

Metric SI to Traditional US

1 kiloliter	kL	=	264,178	gallons
1 hectoliter	hL	=	26,418	gallons
1 dekaliter	daL	=	2,642	gallons
1 liter	L	=	2.113	pints
	L	=	1.057	quarts
	L	=	0.264	gallon
1 deciliter	dL	=	0.211	pint
1 centiliter	cL	=	0.338	ounce
1 milliliter	mL	=	0.034	ounce

US Traditional to Metric SI

1 cup	=	0.237 liter	(L)
1 pint	=	0.473 liter	(L)
1 quart	=	0.946 liter	(L)
1 gallon	=	3.785 liter	(L)
1 ounce	=	29.573 milliliters	(mL)

Every year more and more liquid products sold in the United States are measured by liters. Many soft drinks, wines, dairy products, hard liquors, and specialty products are sold by the liter. One of the factors that brought this about is that the amount of liquid in a quart and a liter are close to the same.

©EIRIK SOLHEIM/Shutterstock.com

EXAMPLE F

Five liters equal how many quarts?
1 liter equals 1.057 quarts. $5 \times 1.057 = 5.285$ quarts

Seven quarts equal how many liters?
1 quart equals 0.946 liter. $7 \times 0.946 = 6.622$ liters

How many liters are there in four gallons?
1 gallon equals 3.785 liters. $4 \times 3.785 = 15.14$ liters

How many gallons are there in 12 liters?
1 liter = 0.264 gallons. $12 \times 0.264 = 3.168$ gallons

CONCEPT CHECK 4.3

Change 15 kiloliters to liters.

15 kiloliters × 10 = 150 hectoliters
150 hectoliters × 10 = 1 500 dekaliters
1 500 dekaliters × 10 = 15 000 liters

How many liters would it take to fill a 20-gallon gas tank?
20 × 3.785 = 75.7 liters

Learning Objective 4

Understand the SI measurements for weight and be able to convert between the US and SI systems.

The metric unit of weight is the *gram,* but because of its small size (0.035 ounce) the kilogram, which is equivalent to 2.205 pounds, is commonly considered as the base unit. The kilogram, the gram, the milligram, and the metric ton are the most frequently used metric units in measuring weight. The following are some of the metric system multiples of weight:

metric ton t = 1 000 kilogram
kilogram kg = 1 000 gram
hectogram hg = 100 gram
dekagram dag = 10 gram
gram g = 1 gram
decigram dg = 0.1 gram
centigram cg = 0.01 gram
milligram mg = 0.001 gram

CHANGING TO LARGER OR SMALLER UNITS

To change the value of a unit to the next higher one, divide by 10. To change the value of a unit to the next lower one, multiply by 10.

EXAMPLE G

Smaller to Larger

4 000 g ÷ 10 = 400 dag (dekagram)
400 dag ÷ 10 = 40 hg (hectogram)
40 hg ÷ 10 = 4 kg (kilogram)

Larger to Smaller

4 g × 10 = 40 dg (decigram)
40 dg × 10 = 400 cg (centigram)
400 cg × 10 = 4 000 mg (milligram)

COMPARISON OF US AND SI SYSTEMS
MEASUREMENT OF WEIGHT

The table below provides a comparison of the US Traditional and SI systems of weight.

Conversion Tables for Measurement of Weight (Approximate)

Metric SI to Traditional US

1 metric ton t = 1.102 short tons
1 metric ton t = 2,204.623 pounds
1 kilogram kg = 2.205 pounds
1 kilogram kg = 35.274 ounces
1 hectogram hg = 3.527 ounces
1 dekagram dag = 0.353 ounces
1 gram g = 0.035 ounce
1 decigram dg = 1.543 grains
1 centigram cg = 0.154 grain
1 milligram mg = 0.015 grain

Traditional US to Metric SI

1 grain = 0.065 gram g
1 ounce = 28.349 gram g
1 pound = 453.592 gram g
1 pound = 0.453 kilogram kg
1 short ton = 0.907 metric ton t

EXAMPLE H

How many pounds are there in 4 metric tons?

4 × 2,204.623 pounds per metric ton = 8,818.492 pounds

EXAMPLE I

What would be the cost of a bag of chips that weighed 0.213 kilogram and sold for $0.40 per ounce?

0.213 × 35.274 = 7.513 ounces × $0.40 = $3.01

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 4.4

Change 1500 milligrams to grams.

1500 milligrams ÷ 10 = 150 centigrams
150 centigrams ÷ 10 = 15 decigrams
15 decigrams ÷ 10 = 1.5 grams

Three European dogs weigh 12, 20, and 40 kilograms. What is their average weight in pounds?

$12 + 20 + 40 = 72 \div 3 = 24$ kilogram average
$24 \times 2.205 = 52.92$ pound average

If Judy weighs 98 pounds and Mary weighs 112 pounds, what is their average weight in kilograms?

$98 + 112 = 210 \div 2 = 105$ pound average
$105 \times 0.453 = 47.565$ kilogram average

In the metric system, food and related products will generally be quoted in milligrams, grams, and kilograms. Milligrams are used for very small items such as aspirin and medical prescriptions; in fact, for many years drugs and prescription medications have been dispensed in the United States in grams and milligrams with no reference to US Traditional weight.

Grams are used to indicate weight for regular cans of food, packages of frozen foods, and other items of this size. The label on a can of green beans will likely state the net weight as 16 ounces (1 pound) or 454 grams.

Kilograms are used to measure larger items such as an animal's weight, a person's weight, or the weight of a piece of household furniture.

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
4.1 Recognize and apply the basic elements of the International System of Units (SI), commonly known as "the metric system."	1. Indicate the most common units of measurement in the SI system to measure: (a) Length ______ (b) Volume ______ (c) Weight ______ 2. Determine the unit of measurement as indicated for each item. (a) 5 meters = ______ decimeters (b) 700 centimeters = ______ decimeters
4.2 Understand the SI measurements for length and be able to convert between the US and SI systems.	3. Convert the following measurements from US Traditional to SI or from SI to US Traditional as indicated. (a) 6 yard = ______ meters (b) 20 kilometers = ______ miles
4.3 Understand the SI measurement for volumn and be able to convert between the US and SI systems.	4. Convert the following measurements from US Traditional to SI or from SI to US Traditional as indicated. (a) 3 quarts = ______ liters (b) 15 liters = ______ gallons
4.4 Understand the SI measurements for weight and be able to convert between the US and SI systems.	5. Convert the following measurements from US Traditional to SI or from IS to US Traditional as indicated. (a) 6 ounces = ______ grams (b) 30 kilograms = ______ pounds

Answers: **1(a)**. meter **1(b)**. liter **1(c)**. gram **2(a)**. 50 **2(b)**. 70 **3(a)**. 5.484 **3(b)**. 12.42 **4(a)**. 2.838 **4(b)**. 3.96 **5(a)**. 170.094 **5(b)**. 66.15

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Review Problems for Chapter 4

Write all answers as proper fractions or mixed numbers in lowest terms.

1 The metric system is a __________ system that uses powers of __________ for all measurements.

2 Indicate the metric symbol and US term or value for the following:

	Symbol	**Value**
(a) giga	__________	__________________
(b) deci	__________	__________________
(c) kilo	__________	__________________

3 12,000 meters = __________ kilometers

4 7.2 grams = __________ centigrams

5 16 miles = __________ kilometers

6 5 inches = __________ centimeters

7 42 meters = __________ yards

8 5L = __________ dL

9 17 liters = __________ gallons

10 35 pounds = __________ kilograms

11 A two-pound box of salt sells for \$3.00. What is the cost per kilogram? __________

12 Mark Goings used 22 gallons of gas to drive 1028 kilometers.
How many miles per liter did he get? __________

13 How many liters are there in 2 quarts of apple juice? __________

14 3 pounds 12 ounces of cat food = __________ grams

15 Three boards measured 2 m, 3 m, and 4 m. What were their
lengths in inches? __________

____

____

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Assignment 4.1: International System of Units (SI) and Capacity

Name ____________________

Date ____________ Score ____________

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **3** **4**

A (30 points)

1. Fill in the missing information: (10 points, 1 point each answer)

Prefix	**Symbol**	**Value**
________	________	________
________	________	________
________	________	________
________	________	________
________	________	________

2. The meter is the base unit of the measure of length. Provide the missing information: (5 points, 1 point each)

a. 1 kilometer = _____ meters

b. 0.001 meter = _____ millimeter

c. 1 dekameter = _____ meters

d. 4 meters = _____ decimeters

e. 240 millimeters = _____ centimeters

3. Convert 120 meters to: (5 points, 1 point each)

a. centimeters _____

b. kilometers _____

c. millimeters _____

Convert 25 kilometers to:

d. meters _____

e. millimeters _____

4. Convert the following lengths to the metric or traditional equivalent units. (10 points, 2 points each)

a. 50 miles per hour to kilometers per hour: ____________

b. 5 meters to feet: _________

c. 100-meter track event to yards: _________

d. 12-inch ruler to centimeters: _______

e. 300-yard roll of tape to meters: ______

____

Score for A (30)

B (40 points) (4 points for each correct answer)

5. A building is 180 feet high.

a. What metric unit would most likely be used to express its height?______

b. How high is it in metric units? ______

6. Iona Valdez plans to build a house on a lot 80 feet wide and 120 feet deep.

a. How many meters wide is the lot? ______

b. How many meters deep is the lot? ______

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

7. If you were to change the highway speed limit signs from miles to kilometers, how would the following read? (Round to nearest km/h)

a. 55 miles per hour: _______

b. 35 miles per hour: _______

8. The height of a basketball player is 183 cm. How tall is this in feet? ____

9. Rick Blanc, a cabinet maker, needs screws 20 mm, 30 mm, and 40 mm, in length. What is the length of the screws in inches? (Round final answer to two decimal places)

a. 20 mm: ________

b. 30 mm: _________

c. 40 mm: _________

____

Score for B (40)

C **(30 points) (2 points for each correct answer)**

10. The liter is the basic unit of the measure of capacity and volume. Provide the missing information:

a. 0.01 liter = ________ cL

b. 10 kiloliters = ________ daL

c. 12 liters = ________ mL

d. 750 milliliters = ________ L

e. 42 hectoliters = ________ kL

11. Which measure probably would be used to express the capacity of the following:

	Metric Name and Symbol
a. Large water tank	____________
b. Quart of orange juice	____________
c. Teaspoon of medicine	____________
d. Gallon of gasoline	____________
e. Swimming pool	____________

12. Convert the following capacities to the equivalents of metric or traditional units:

a. 7 gallons = ____________

b. 6 liters = ____________

c. 32 ounces = ________________

d. $2\frac{1}{2}$ cups = ____________

e. 12 liters = ____________

____

Score for C (30)

Assignment 4.2: International System of Units (SI) Measurement of Capacity and Weight

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 1 2 3 4

A **(35 points) Round final answer to two decimal places. (5 points for each correct answer)**

1. What will be the price of 3 784 mL of milk that sells for $1.19 per quart? ____

2. Mike Mackie used 105 liters of gasoline when he drove from Chicago to New York, a distance of 1 210 kilometers.

a. What was the average number of kilometers per liter? ______________

b. What was the average number of miles per gallon? _________________

3. If an automatic dishwasher used 9 gallons of water, what is the equivalent number of liters?

______

4. The labels on many food products state the volume in both ounces and liters.

a. How many milliliters are in a 12-ounce can of tomato juice?_________________

b. What is the volume in liters of 1 quart, 14 ounces of grapefruit juice? ____

5. A carton containing 1 liter of milk sells for 62¢, while a carton containing 5 deciliters is priced at 37¢. How much is saved by buying a carton containing 1 liter rather than two cartons containing 5 deciliters each?

_____

____

Score for A (35)

B **(25 points)**

6. The kilogram is considered the basic unit of the measurement of weight (mass). Provide the missing information: (1 point each)

a. 1 gram = ________ kg

b. 150 kilograms = ________ dag

c. 300 milligrams = ________ dg

d. 26 hectograms = ________ g

e. 280 centigrams = ________ g

7. Which measure probably would be used to express the weight of the following: (2 points each)

Metric Name and Symbol

a. A student's weight ___________

b. A can of pepper ___________

c. A truckload of iron ___________

d. A turkey ___________

e. One aspirin tablet ___________

8. Convert the following weights to the equivalent metric or traditional units: (2 points each)

a. 482 grams of beans = ________ ounces

b. 12,125 pounds of coal = ________ metric tons

c. 5 kilograms of meat = ________ pounds

d. 5 ounces of soap = ________ grams

e. 0.500 milligrams of medicine = ______ grain

____

Score for B (25)

C (40 points) (5 points for each correct answer to Problems 9–12; 1 point each for Problem 13)

9. A five-pound bag of sugar sells for $1.66. A 16-ounce box sells for 53¢. What is the cost per kilogram for the large bag and the small box?

Large bag: __________

Small box: __________

10. It costs $0.46 for the first ounce (or fraction thereof) and $0.40 for each additional ounce (or fraction thereof) to mail a letter in the United States. How much will the postage be on a letter weighing 80 grams? ______

11. A canning factory packs corn in a small size can weighing $8\frac{3}{4}$ ounces. The cans are packed 48 cans to a carton. What is the metric weight of the carton? __________________

12. What would be the weight in grams of the following items:

a. $2\frac{1}{2}$ pounds of coffee = ______ grams ______

b. 5 pounds, 8 ounces of dog biscuits = ______ grams

c. $5\frac{1}{4}$ ounces of cookies = ______ grams ______

13. What metric measure would you use to express the following:

a. The amount of water necessary to fill a 2-gallon bucket ______

b. The weight of a football player _______

c. A can of corn ______

d. A 2-ounce bottle of cologne _______

e. A small candy bar ______

____

Score for C (40)

Notes

Part 2

Percentage Applications

5 Percents
6 Commissions
7 Discounts
8 Markup

Percents

5

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1 Change percents to decimals.

Learning Objective 2 Change fractions and decimals to percents.

Learning Objective 3 Find Base, Rate, and Percentage.

Learning Objective 4 Use percents to measure increase and decrease.

Learning Objective 5 Use percents to allocate overhead expenses.

Percents and percentages are used extensively in various business and nonbusiness applications. Airlines publish the "on-time percentage" for each of their flights. Every bank publishes its loan rates as percents. The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) says that packaged foods must contain labels with nutritional information, much of which is written in percents. Colleges and universities often describe the ethnic diversity of their student bodies and faculty using percents. Various taxes are calculated using a percent of value or a percent of usage.

Changing Percents to Decimals

Learning Objective 1

Change percents to decimals.

We use percents because the word **percent** often makes verbal and written communication easier and more clear. Consider a state that has a 5% sales tax. Which of these phrases sounds better: (a) "five percent," (b) "five-hundredths," (c) "one-twentieth," or even (d) "point zero five"? Imagine how the latter three phrases would change if the sales tax rate were 5.25%. But by using the word *percent*, we can just say "five point two five percent."

When you use percents in arithmetic, before you can do any calculations, you must first change the percent to a decimal. If you use a calculator with a percent key $\boxed{\%}$, the calculator will convert the percent to a decimal. Using a calculator with a percent key, observe the display closely. To enter 75%, press the three keys $\boxed{7}\ \boxed{5}\ \boxed{\%}$. After pressing the $\boxed{\%}$ key, the display shows **0.75.** There is no percent symbol and the decimal point has moved two places to the left. The calculator will use 0.75 in its calculations.

Sometimes a percent has a fractional part. For example, assume that the state tax rate is $5\frac{1}{2}\%$. To use a calculator, first change the fraction to a decimal, writing it as 5.5%. Using the calculator, press these keys: $\boxed{5}\ \boxed{.}\ \boxed{5}\ \boxed{\%}$. After pressing $\boxed{\%}$, the display shows **0.055**. Notice that to move the decimal point two places to the left, the calculator inserted an extra zero at the left.

STEPS to Change a Percent to a Decimal

1. If the percent has a fractional part, convert the fraction to its decimal equivalent.
2. Remove the percent symbol.
3. Move the decimal point two places to the *left* (insert zeros if needed).

EXAMPLE A

$$45\% \xrightarrow{\text{STEP 2}} 45 \xrightarrow{\text{STEP 3}} .45. = 0.45$$

EXAMPLE B

$$175\% \xrightarrow{\text{STEP 2}} 175 \xrightarrow{\text{STEP 3}} 1.75. = 1.75$$

EXAMPLE C

$$4.5\% \xrightarrow{\text{STEP 2}} 4.5 \xrightarrow{\text{STEP 3}} .04.5 = 0.045$$

EXAMPLE D

$$1\tfrac{3}{4}\% \overset{\text{STEP 1}}{=} 1.75\% \xrightarrow{\text{STEP 2}} 1.75 \xrightarrow{\text{STEP 3}} .01.75 = 0.0175$$

(*Note:* Check the answers to these examples with the percent key on your calculator.)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONCEPT CHECK 5.1

a. Change 250% to a decimal.

$$250\% \longrightarrow 250 \longrightarrow 2.\underbrace{50}. = 2.50 \text{ or } 2.5$$

b. Change $\frac{1}{4}\%$ to a decimal.

$$\frac{1}{4}\% = 0.25\% \longrightarrow 0.25 \longrightarrow .\underbrace{00}.25$$
$$= 0.0025$$

Changing Fractions and Decimals to Percents

Learning Objective 2

Change fractions and decimals to percents.

To change a fraction or decimal number to a percent requires that you move the decimal point two places to the *right*. However, if the number is a fraction or mixed number, you must first change it to a decimal as we reviewed in Chapter 2, and shown in examples E and F below. Then change the decimal to a percent by moving the decimal point. (A decimal point at the extreme right is omitted—examples E, G, and J below.)

STEPS to Change a Fraction or a Decimal to a Percent

1. If the number is a fraction, or a mixed number, convert it to its decimal equivalent.
2. Move the decimal point two places to the *right* (insert zeros if needed).
3. Write a percent symbol at the *right* end of the new number.

EXAMPLE E

STEP 1 STEP 2 STEP 3

$$\frac{4}{5} = 0.8 \longrightarrow 0.\underbrace{80}. \longrightarrow 80\%$$

EXAMPLE F

STEP 1 STEP 2 STEP 3

$$1\frac{3}{8} = 1.375 \longrightarrow 1.\underbrace{37}.5 \longrightarrow 137.5\%$$

EXAMPLE G

STEP 2 STEP 3

$$0.4 \longrightarrow 0.\underbrace{40}. \longrightarrow 40\%$$

EXAMPLE H

STEP 2 STEP 3

$$1.1875 \longrightarrow 1.\underbrace{18}.75 \longrightarrow 118.75\%$$

EXAMPLE I

STEP 2 STEP 3

$$2.5 \longrightarrow 2.\underbrace{50}. \longrightarrow 250\%$$

EXAMPLE J

STEP 2 STEP 3

$$1 = 1. \longrightarrow 1.\underbrace{00}. \longrightarrow 100\%$$

(*Note:* To check these examples with your calculator, you can multiply the decimal number by 100 and write the percent symbol at the right end of the answer.)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONCEPT CHECK 5.2

a. Change $2\frac{7}{10}$ to a percent.

$$2\frac{7}{10} = 2.7 \longrightarrow 2.\underset{\curvearrowright}{70}. \longrightarrow 270\%$$

b. Change 0.075 to a percent.

$$0.075 \longrightarrow 0.\underset{\curvearrowright}{07}.5 \longrightarrow 7.5\%$$

Finding Base, Rate, and Percentage

Learning Objective 3

Find Base, Rate, and Percentage.

Suppose that you have \$5 and spend \$4 for coffee and a muffin. Example E showed that the fraction $\frac{4}{5}$ equals 80%. You can say that "I spent 80% of my money (\$5) for my food (\$4)." Without the context of the food, you have simply "80% of \$5 = \$4." We call 80% the **Rate (*R*)**, \$5 the **Base (*B*)** amount, and \$4 the **Percentage (*P*)** amount. The Base and the Percentage amounts will always have the same units (e.g., dollars, feet, or pounds). The Rate is the percent. (The word *rate* comes from the word *ratio*—in this case, $\frac{4}{5}$.) It may make sense for you to think of the Base amount as the denominator in the rate (that is, ratio = $\frac{4}{5}$) because the denominator is the "base" (i.e., bottom) of the fraction.

Note: In practice, the terms *percent* and *percentage* are often used interchangeably. Sometimes, you will see the word *percentage* used to mean a rate and the word *percent* used to mean an amount. You will even see the two words *percentage rate* to mean the rate. In this text, however, we use only one meaning for each word.

Polka Dot/Getty Images

EXAMPLE K

80% of \$5 = \$4
80% is the Rate
\$5 is the Base
\$4 is the Percentage

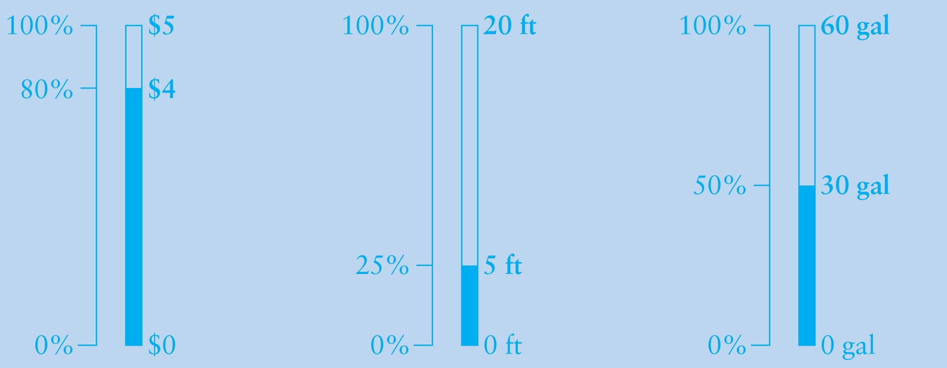
EXAMPLE L

25% of 20 ft = 5 ft
25% is the Rate
20 ft is the Base
5 ft is the Percentage

EXAMPLE M

50% of 60 gal = 30 gal
50% is the Rate
60 gal is the Base
30 gal is the Percentage

Figure 5-1



80% of \$5 is \$4

25% of 20 ft is 5 ft

50% of 60 gal is 30 gal

Figure 5-1 shows three diagrams, one each for examples K, L, and M. In each diagram, the Rate (or percent) is shown in the left-hand column. Each Percentage is represented by the shaded portion of the right-hand column. Each Base is represented by the entire height of the right-hand column.

The word *of* often appears in problems that involve percents. Recall from Chapter 1 that with fractions, *of* often means *multiply*. We just showed that 80% $= \frac{\$4}{\$5}$. Also recall that you can "check" a division problem by multiplication. We will get 80% × \$5 = \$4. In words, we say that "80% *of* \$5 is \$4."

Rule: The number that follows the word *of* is the Base (and is the denominator in the fraction); the number that follows the word *is* is the Percentage amount.

The preceding examples illustrate the basic relationship among the Rate, Base, and Percentage: Rate × Base = Percentage. As a formula, it is written as $R \times B = P$, or as $P = R \times B$.

When you know any two of these three numbers, you can calculate the third by changing the formula:

If you want to find B, the formula becomes $B = P \div R$, or $P \div R = B$.
If you want to find R, the formula becomes $R = P \div B$, or $P \div B = R$.

EXAMPLE N

Find P when
$R = 50\%$ and $B = 300$ yd

EXAMPLE O

Find R when
$B = 30$ lb and $P = 6$ lb

EXAMPLE P

Find B when
$P = \$45$ and $R = 75\%$

Figure 5-2

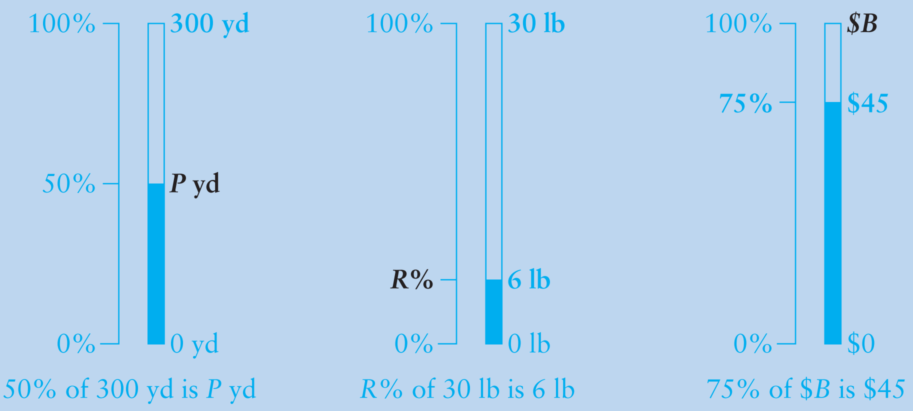


Figure 5-2 illustrates these relationships, which are calculated as follows:

$P = R \times B$	$R = P \div B$	$B = P \div R$
$P = 50\% \times 300$ yd	$R = 6$ lb $\div$ 30 lb	$B = \$45 \div 75\%$
$P = 0.50 \times 300$ yd	$R = 0.20$	$B = \$45 \div 0.75$
$P = 150$ yd	$R = 20\%$	$B = \$60$
$\boxed{5}\boxed{0}\boxed{\%}\boxed{\times}\boxed{3}\boxed{0}\boxed{0}\boxed{=}$	$\boxed{6}\boxed{\div}\boxed{3}\boxed{0}\boxed{=}$	$\boxed{4}\boxed{5}\boxed{\div}\boxed{7}\boxed{5}\boxed{\%}\boxed{=}$

Note that in example O, a calculator does not automatically "move" the decimal point two places to the right. If you want a calculator to do that, you must multiply 0.20 by 100. It is faster to just move the decimal point two places without using a calculator.

USING PERCENTS IN BUSINESS

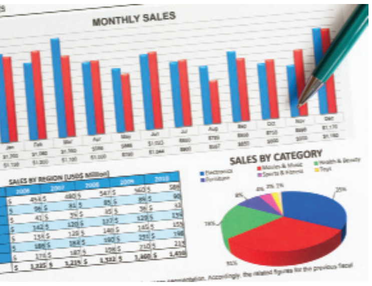
Percent problems occur very frequently in business. Examples Q and R are typical applications in which we solve for the Base (*B*) amount and the Rate (*R*), respectively.

EXAMPLE Q

Lena Hoover is a financial analyst. In December, she received a $600 bonus, which equaled 15% of her monthly salary. What was her monthly salary?

P = amount of bonus = $600
R = rate of bonus = 15%
B = monthly salary = ?
As $P \div R = B$,
$P \div R = \$600 \div 15\% = \$600 \div 0.15 = \$4{,}000$ monthly salary

EXAMPLE R


©Kenishirotie/Shutterstock.Com

Last year Empire Bakery had total expenses of $300,000. Of that total, $210,000 was the expense for employee salaries. Last year at Empire, the employee salary expense was what percent of total expenses?

P = employee salaries = $210,000
R = ?
B = total expenses = $300,000
Since $P \div B = R$,
$P \div B = \$210{,}000 \div \$300{,}000 = 0.70 = 70\%$

CONCEPT CHECK 5.3

a. Find the Base when the Rate is 40% and the Percentage amount is 50 ft.
$B = P \div R = 50 \text{ ft} \div 40\% = 50 \text{ ft} \div 0.40 = 125 \text{ ft}$
b. Find the Rate when the Base is 12 oz and the Percentage amount is 3 oz.
$R = P \div B = 3 \text{ oz} \div 12 \text{ oz} = 0.25 = 25\%$

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 5.1.

Using Percents to Measure Increase and Decrease

Learning Objective 4

Use percents to measure increase and decrease.

In business, percents are used to measure change from one month to the next or from one year to the next. Real estate firms use percents to compare the number of homes sold this year with the number of homes sold last year. Read, and carefully compare, the following four statements about home sales last year and this year:

Joslin Realty sold 40% more homes this year than it did last year, when it sold 135 homes.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Rossi & Shanley Real Estate sold 25 more homes this year than last year, which represents 20% more homes sold this year than last year.

Real estate agent Silvia Jiminez sold 5 fewer homes this year than she did last year, when she sold 40 homes.

Charles Peterson, a real estate broker, sold 30 homes last year; this year he sold 36 homes.

The number of homes sold last year is the Base (B) amount (last year is called the *base year*). The change in homes sold can be reported as a number, which would be the Percentage amount (P), or as a percent, which would be the Rate (R). If any two of the three values are given, the third can be determined using one of the three formulas in this chapter.

EXAMPLE S

Find the number of additional homes (P) that Joslin Realty sold this year.

$B = 135$ and $R = 40\%$. Since $P = R \times B$,
$P = 40\% \times 135 = 0.40 \times 135 = 54$ more homes this year

EXAMPLE T

Find the number of homes that Rossi & Shanley Real Estate sold last year (B).

$P = 25$ and $R = 20\%$. Since $B = P \div R$,
$B = 25 \div 20\% = 25 \div 0.20 = 125$ homes sold last year

EXAMPLE U

Find Silvia Jiminez' rate of decrease (R) from last year's sales.

$P = 5$ and $B = 40$. Since $R = P \div B$,
$R = 5 \div 40 = 0.125 = 12.5\%$ decrease

©iStockphoto.Com/Feverpitched

To find the percent change when the only numbers reported are the amounts (B) for last year and this year, the first step is to find the **amount of increase** or the **amount of decrease.** P is the difference between the amounts for the two years. Then use $R = P \div B$ to find the **rate of increase** or the **rate of decrease.**

EXAMPLE V

Find Charles Peterson's rate of change (R).

Charles sold 30 homes last year (B) and 36 this year. The amount of change is

$P = 36 - 30 = 6$ more homes this year.

The rate of change is

$R = P \div B = 6 \div 30 = 0.20 = 20\%$ increase

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

COMPUTING AMOUNTS OF INCREASE AND DECREASE WITH A CALCULATOR

Review example S. Now consider a variation of example S that says, "Find the total number of homes that Joslin Realty sold this year." Last year it sold 135 homes. There was a 40% increase, which means 54 more homes were sold this year. The total number of homes sold this year was 135 + 54 = 189 homes. Many calculators allow you to calculate 189 with the following keystrokes: 1 3 5 + 4 0 % =. The display will show the answer, 189.

If you need to know the actual amount of the increase, it will usually show in the calculator display immediately after you press the % key, but just before you press the = key.

Similarly, suppose the original example had said, "The real estate agency sold 40% *fewer* homes this year than it did last year, when it sold 135 homes. Find the total number of homes that it sold this year." The amount of the *decrease* is 54 homes. Therefore, the total number sold this year is 135 − 54 = 81 homes. On the calculator, you would use the following keystrokes: 1 3 5 − 4 0 % =. The display will show the answer, 81.

CONCEPT CHECK 5.4

Weil Warehousing Co. had sales of $200,000 this month and $160,000 last month (*B*). Find both the amount of increase (*P*) and the rate of increase (*R*).

The amount of increase is
$P = \$200{,}000 - \$160{,}000 = \$40{,}000$

The rate of increase is
$R = P \div B = \$40{,}000 \div \$160{,}000 = 0.25 = 25\%$

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 5.2 AND 5.3.

Using Percents to Allocate Overhead Expenses

Learning Objective 5

Use percents to allocate overhead expenses.

Many businesses are organized into divisions or departments. Suppose Cotton's Clothing is a retailer of sportswear. It has three departments: women's clothes, men's clothes, and children's clothes. Management and owners of Cotton's need to measure the profitability of each department. Cotton's also knows the amounts it paid for the merchandise sold and the salaries of employees in each department. Cotton's can subtract these departmental costs from the departmental revenues.

But what about rent and other general costs such as electricity? These costs that are not directly related to the types of merchandise sold are called **overhead costs.** For example, Cotton's monthly rental expense might be $15,000 for the entire building. How should that single amount be divided among the three departments? Should each department be assigned $\frac{1}{3}$, or $5,000, of the total rent?

Businesses can **allocate,** or distribute, the total rent based on a measurement related to the total cost. Rent is a cost of using the building; it could be allocated on the basis of floor space, since each department occupies some of that space.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

STEPS to Allocate an Overhead Expense Based on Total Floor Space (or Some Other Measurement)

1. Find the total square feet of floor space.
2. Divide the floor space of each department by total floor space, then change the quotients to percents.
3. Multiply each percent (in fractional or decimal form) by the total rent (or other overhead value).

EXAMPLE W

The total rent is $15,000. Using the floor space of each department as shown below, determine the amount of rent to allocate to each department of Cotton's.

Department	STEP 1 Floor Space	STEP 2 Percent of Total	STEP 3 Distribution of Rent
Women's	100 ft × 50 ft = 5,000 sq ft	5,000 ÷ 10,000 = 50%	0.5 × $15,000 = $ 7,500
Children's	50 ft × 60 ft = 3,000 sq ft	3,000 ÷ 10,000 = 30%	0.3 × $15,000 = $ 4,500
Men's	40 ft × 50 ft = 2,000 sq ft	2,000 ÷ 10,000 = 20%	0.2 × $15,000 = $ 3,000
	10,000 sq ft		$15,000

This same method can be used for many other business expenses, such as utilities, fire insurance, and salaries of office personnel. Examples of other bases that might be used for allocation are number of employees, hours worked, and units produced.

CONCEPT CHECK 5.5

Curtis Landscape Maintenance Company has two different divisions: commercial and residential. Employees spend 1,125 hours working on commercial landscapes and 375 hours working on residential landscapes. Curtis has office expenses of $8,000 that it wants to allocate between the two divisions, based on the percent of employee hours used by each division.

Total hours worked: 1,125 + 375 = 1,500

Commercial: 1,125 ÷ 1,500 = 0.75, or 75% of employee hours
75% of $8,000 = 0.75 × $8,000 = $6,000 of office expenses

Residential: 375 ÷ 1,500 = 0.25 or 25% of employee hours
25% of $8,000 = 0.25 × $8,000 = $2,000 of office expenses

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 5.4.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter Terms for Review

allocate
amount of decrease
amount of increase
Base (*B*)
overhead costs
percent
Percentage (*P*)
Rate (*R*)
rate of decrease
rate of increase

Try Microsoft® Excel

Try working the problems using the Microsoft Excel templates found on the companion website. Solutions for the problems are also shown on the companion website.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
5.1 Change percents to decimals.	1. Change 4.25% to a decimal.
5.2 Change fractions and decimals to percents.	2. Change 0.45 to a percent. 3. Change $\frac{7}{8}$ to a percent.
5.3 Find Base, Rate, and Percentage.	4. Find the Percentage: 35% of 40 = P 5. Find the Rate: R% of 140 = 28 6. Find the Base: 80% of B = 220
5.4 Use percents to measure increase and decrease.	7. Increase a $5,000 salary by 25%. 8. From 300 to 240 is a decrease of what percent?
5.5 Use percents to allocate overhead expenses.	9. A company has three stores, A, B, and C, with 4, 6, and 10 employees, respectively. Based on the number of employees, allocate a $4,000 expense among the stores.

Answers: **1.** 0.0425 **2.** 45% **3.** 87.5% **4.** 14 **5.** 20% **6.** 275 **7.** The increase is $1,250. The new salary is $6,250. **8.** 20% **9.** Store A, $800, Store B, $1,200, Store C, $2,000

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 5

1 Change 14.75% to a decimal __________

2 Change 0.625 to a percent __________

3 Change 150% to a decimal __________

4 Change 0.0075 to a percent __________

5 Change 0.06% to a decimal __________

6 Change $\frac{2}{5}$ to a percent __________

7 16% of 70 = __________

8 250% of 60 = __________

9 25% of __________ = 45

10 100% of __________ = 70

11 __________% of 40 = 35

12 __________% of 90 = 144

13 Sales were $100,000 two months ago and increased by 20% last month. How much were sales last month? __________

14 Sales were $120,000 last month and decreased by 20% this month. How much were sales this month? __________

15 Expenses were $200,000 two years ago and $400,000 last year. What was the percent increase last year? __________

16 Expenses were $400,000 last year and $200,000 this year. What was the percent decrease this year? __________

17 Peggy Covey owns a nursery. This year she sold 195 more rose bushes than she did last year. This represents a 12% increase over the previous year. How many rose bushes did Peggy's nursery sell last year? __________

18 Jim Dukes manages Internet sales for a company that started selling its product over the Internet two years ago. Last year, company sales over the Internet were only about $500,000. This year, sales were $1,625,000. Calculate the company's percent increase in Internet sales this year. __________

19 Ken Chard is a bank teller. When he started this morning, his cash drawer had coins worth $86. The coins represented only 2.5% of all the money that Ken had in his cash drawer. What was the total value of all this money? __________

20 Nancy McGraw is an orthopedic surgeon. Last winter, Dr. McGraw performed 50 emergency surgeries. Thirty-two of those surgeries were the result of ski injuries. What percent of Dr. McGraw's emergency surgeries were the result of ski injuries? __________

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 5.1: Base, Rate, and Percentage

Name ________________

Date ________ Score ________

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **3**

A **(20 points) Change the percents to decimals. Change the nonpercents to percents. Write all answers without using fractions, rounding if necessary. (1 point for each correct answer)**

1. $31\% =$ ________

2. $100\% =$ ________

3. $3\frac{1}{3}\% =$ ________

4. $0.63 =$ ________

5. $3 =$ ________

6. $33\frac{2}{3}\% =$ ________

7. $0.15 =$ ________

8. $0.8 =$ ________

9. $1\frac{3}{4} =$ ________

10. $0.7\% =$ ________

11. $224.5\% =$ ________

12. $0.004\% =$ ________

13. $0.52 =$ ________

14. $2\frac{1}{4}\% =$ ________

15. $0.08\frac{1}{4} =$ ________

16. $\frac{3}{8} =$ ________

17. $4.0 =$ ________

18. $0.000025 =$ ________

19. $0.01\% =$ ________

20. $1{,}200\% =$ ________

____

Score for A (20)

B **(30 points) In the following problems, find each Percentage amount. (2 points for each correct answer)**

21. 0.375% of $56 =$ ________

22. 7.5% of $1{,}200 =$ ________

23. 100% of $11.17 =$ ________

24. 62.5% of $64 =$ ________

25. 40% of $0.85 =$ ________

26. $\frac{1}{2}\%$ of $8{,}000 =$ ________

27. 25% of $\$1.16 =$ ________

28. 150% of $\$84 =$ ________

29. 2.5% of $\$66 =$ ________

30. 12.5% of $\$160 =$ ________

31. 8% of $200 =$ ________

32. 50% of $0.36 =$ ________

33. 187.5% of $40 =$ ________

34. $3\frac{1}{2}\%$ of $\$600 =$ ________

35. 0.2% of $480 =$ ________

____

Score for B (30)

C **(50 points) In each of the following problems, find the Percentage amount, the Rate, or the Base amount. Write rates as percents. Round dollars to the nearest cent. (2 points for each correct answer)**

36. 35% of __________ = $70

37. __________ of $35 = $7

38. __________ of 1.12 = 1.4

39. __________ of 14.2 = 28.4

40. __________ of 600 = 15

41. 80% of __________ = $0.96

42. 3.75% of __________ = 27

43. __________ of 80 = 120

44. __________ of 0.092 = 0.0138

45. 175% of __________ = $84

46. 2.5% of $2,820 = __________

47. 0.25% of __________ = $20

48. __________ of $128 = $57.60

49. 62.5% of __________ = 35

50. 0.025% of $16,400 = __________

51. 140% of __________ = 672

52. 200% of __________ = $75

53. __________ of 5.4 = 2.16

54. __________ of $1,480 = $10,064

55. 15% of $140 = __________

56. 110% of $200 = __________

57. __________ of 85 = 136

58. $1\frac{1}{4}$% of __________ = $8.25

59. 12% of __________ = 3

60. __________ of 400 = 124

____

Score for C (50)

Assignment 5.2: Rate of Increase and Rate of Decrease

Name

Date Score

Learning Objective **4**

A **(40 points) Calculate the missing values. (2½ points for each correct answer)**

1. Decreasing the base value of 280 by 25% gives the new value __________.

2. Increasing the base value of 240 by 40% gives the new value __________.

3. Start with 75, decrease it by 60%, and end up with __________.

4. Start with 96, increase it by 15%, and end up with __________.

5. Sales were $8,000 last month and increased by 4% this month. Sales were __________ this month.

6. Profits were $72,600 last month, but decreased by 5% this month. Profits were __________ this month.

7. Base value = 272; increase = 100%; new (final) value = __________

8. Base value = 240; decrease = 50%; new (final) value = __________

9. A $17 increase is 10% of the base value of __________.

10. A decrease of 60 units is 25% of the base value of __________ units.

11. The price decreased from $450 to $378; the percent decrease was __________ .

12. Production increased from 8,000 units to 10,400 units; the percent increase was __________ .

13. $300 is what percent less than $400?

____

14. 480 is what percent greater than 160? __________

15. Sales were $500,000 in June but only $400,000 in July. The rate of decrease was __________ .

16. Profits were $10,368 last month and $9,600 the previous month. The rate of increase was __________ .

____

Score for A (40)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

B **(30 points) The following table shows the volumes of various items sold by Clyde's Auto Parts during the past two years. Compute the amount of change and the rate of change between this year and last year. Compute the rates to the nearest tenth of a percent. If the amount and rate are increases, write a + in front of them; if they are decreases, enclose them in parentheses (). (1 point for each correct amount; 2 points for each correct rate)**

Clyde's Auto Parts
Volume Sold (number of units)

Description of Item	This Year	Last Year	Amount of Change	Rate of Change
17. Batteries	516	541		
18. Brake fluid (pints)	1,504	1,747		
19. Coolant (gallons)	2,045	1,815		
20. Headlight lamps	5,829	5,294		
21. Oil (quarts)	13,428	14,746		
22. Mufflers	709	813		
23. Shock absorbers	1,224	1,068		
24. Tires, auto	6,742	5,866		
25. Tires, truck	2,115	1,805		
26. Wiper blades	2,472	2,238		

Score for B (30)

C **(30 points) During May and June, Kalman's Paint Superstore had sales in the amounts shown in the following table. Compute the amount of change and the rate of change between May and June. Compute the rates of change to the nearest tenth of a percent. If the amount and rate are increases, write a + in front of them; if they are decreases, enclose them in parentheses (). (1 point for each correct amount; 2 points for each correct rate)**

Kalman's Paint Store
Volume Sold (in dollars)

Description of Item	June	May	Amount of Change	Rate of Change
27. Brush, 2″ wide	$ 611.14	$ 674.67		
28. Brush, 3″ wide	581.92	617.15		
29. Brush, 4″ wide	429.87	374.27		
30. Drop cloth, 9 × 12	143.50	175.66		
31. Drop cloth, 12 × 15	174.29	151.55		
32. Paint, latex (gal)	48,756.16	46,209.61		
33. Paint, latex (qt)	5,072.35	4,878.96		
34. Paint, oil (gal)	7,308.44	7,564.27		
35. Paint, oil (qt)	4,724.68	4,465.67		
36. Paint scraper	97.52	127.09		

Score for C (30)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 5.3: Business Applications

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **3** **4**

A **(50 points) Solve the following problems. Round dollar amounts to the nearest cent. Round other amounts to the nearest tenth. Write rates as percents to the nearest tenth of a percent. (5 points for each correct answer)**

1. Horton Mfg. shipped 5,500 portable generators in May. Clients eventually returned 4% of the generators. How many of the generators shipped in May were eventually returned? __________

2. Julie Horton, CEO of Horton Mfg., wants the company to reduce the percent of generators that customers return. In June, the company shipped 6,400 generators, and 144 were eventually returned. What percent of the June shipment was eventually returned? __________

3. By July of the following year, Horton Mfg. had reduced the percent of generators returned to 2% of the number shipped. If 130 generators were returned from that month's shipment, how many had been shipped? __________

4. A European food importer, Mateski Products, imports 25% of its vinegars from France, 40% from Italy, and the rest from Spain. The total value of all the vinegars that it imports is $1,118,000. What is the value of the vinegars that are imported from Spain? __________

5. Next year, Mateski is planning to import $462,000 worth of vinegars from France, $532,000 worth of vinegars from Italy, and $406,000 worth of vinegars from Spain. If next year's imports occur as currently being planned, what percent of the total imports will be from Italy? __________

6. Rigik Parka Products, Inc., manufactures only parkas for adults and children. Last year, Rigik manufactured all its children's parkas in Asia. Those children's parkas represented 35% of all the Rigik production. If the company made a total of 240,000 parkas, how many children's parkas did it produce? __________

7. This year, Rigik again plans to manufacture all its children's parkas in Asia, and Rigik will expand the children's product line to 40% of the total number of parkas produced. If Rigik plans to produce 112,000 children's parkas, how many parkas does the company plan to produce in total? __________

8. Next year, Rigik plans to keep the percent of children's parkas at 40% but increase the number of children's parkas produced to 136,000. How many parkas does the company plan to produce for adults? (*Hint:* First you need to calculate the total number of all parkas to be produced next year.) __________

9. Ricardo Castíllo is a single father. He tries to save 15% of his monthly salary for his son's education. In August, Ricardo's salary was $4,800. How much should he save to meet his objective? __________

10. In September, Ricardo Castíllo got a promotion and a raise. Because his monthly expenses did not increase very much, Ricardo was able to save more dollars. He saved $1,120, which was 20% of his new salary. How much was Ricardo's new salary? __________

____

Score for A (50)

B **(50 points) Solve the following problems. Round dollar amounts to the nearest cent. Round other amounts to the nearest tenth. Write rates as percents to the nearest tenth of a percent. (5 points for each correct answer)**

11. Norman Brewer, a paralegal, will receive a 4% salary increase this month. Hence he will receive $130 more salary this month than he received last month. What was Norman's salary last month? __________

12. Roberta Coke works in the marketing research department of a soft-drink company. Yesterday Roberta received a raise of $430 per month. Roberta now earns 8% more than she did before the raise. How much does she earn now? __________

13. A farmers' market is held downtown every Saturday. The volume has been increasing by about 3% every week. If the volume was $51,400 this week, what should the volume be next week? __________

14. Marcia Almeida works as a sales analyst for a toy manufacturer. She predicts that toy sales will decrease by 5% from May to June. If the amount of the sales decrease is $175,000, what level of sales is she predicting for June? __________

15. Last month, Fred Gerhardt started working as an apprentice machinist. One of his first projects was to reduce the diameter of a metal shaft from 0.180 inch to 0.162 inch. By what percent did he reduce the diameter of the shaft? __________

16. Judy Gregory, a production engineer, was able to increase the efficiency of a manufacturing facility. By doing so, she decreased the cost to manufacture of a commercial quality lawn mower by $18, which was 15% of the former cost. What will be the new reduced cost to manufacture the lawn mower? __________

17. Richard Phipps is the purchasing manager for a janitorial service. He orders all the supplies used by his company. Because of new contracts to clean three new office buildings, Richard ordered an additional $5,000 worth of supplies this month. This was an 8% increase from last month. What was the value of the supplies that Richard ordered last month? __________

18. Grace Yasui owns a gift shop that had sales of $210,000 in October. Because of the Thanksgiving and Christmas holiday seasons, Grace predicts that the shop will have a 125% increase in sales in November. What total sales is Grace predicting for November? __________

19. Suppose that Yasui's Gift Shop had sales of $235,000 in October and then doubled its sales in November to $470,000. What would be the percent increase for November over October? __________

20. Because of Father's Day, Melvin's Men's Wear had sales of $470,000 in June. Sales decreased by $235,000 in July. What was the percent decrease in Melvin's sales in July? __________

____

Score for B (50)

Assignment 5.4: Allocation of Overhead

Name

Date Score

Learning Objective **5**

A **(20 points) Complete the square feet, percent, and allocation columns below. Round percents to the nearest whole number. (1 point for each correct answer in column 1; 2 points for each correct answer in columns 2 and 3)**

1. Gerry Sher owns small restaurants in four different towns: (a) Alleghany, (b) Delwood, (c) Bangor, and (d) Lakeside. She manages all four restaurants from a central office that she maintains at the Alleghany restaurant. Monthly office expenses are allocated among the four restaurants based on the floor space of each. In the following table, complete the allocation table for monthly expenses of $15,000.

	Store	Space Occupied	Square Feet	Percent of Total	Allocation of Expense
(a)	Alleghany	40 ft × 30 ft			
(b)	Delwood	40 ft × 45 ft			
(c)	Bangor	70 ft × 30 ft			
(d)	Lakeside	60 ft × 40 ft			
	Total		7,500	100%	$15,000

Score for A (20)

B **(16 points) Complete the percent and allocation columns in the following table. Before computing the allocation, round each percent to the nearest whole number. (2 points for each correct answer)**

2. Diane Thrift owns a personnel services company that provides temporary employees in four employment categories: (a) office/clerical; (b) hotel/motel; (c) restaurant/dining; and (d) hospital/medical. Ms. Thrift has organized her company into four departments, one for each category. The lease expense for her company office space is $8,500 per month. She allocates the monthly lease expense among the four departments based on the number of temporary employees in each business category. Calculate the percents and the resulting allocations.

	Department	Number of Employees	Percent of Total	Allocation of Rent
(a)	Office/clerical	136		
(b)	Hotel/motel	72		
(c)	Restaurant/dining	104		
(d)	Hospital/medical	88		
	Total	400	100%	$8,500

Score for B (16)

C **(64 points) The following situations provide practice in allocating monthly overhead expenses at a central office. From the information given in the following table, complete the allocations indicated in problems 3 through 6. Remember: Answers for each problem should sum to the total monthly overhead expense. (4 points for each correct answer)**

			Location				
Monthly Overhead Expense	**Total Expense**	**Basis of Allocation**	**East**	**West**	**North**	**South**	**TOTAL**
Insurance	$39,000	Square feet	23,040	11,520	17,280	20,160	72,000
Utilities	27,000	Machine hours worked	38,400	14,400	24,000	19,200	96,000
Rent	33,000	Units produced	12,240	9,360	6,840	7,560	36,000
Maintenance	30,000	Number of employees	126	90	36	108	360

3. Allocate insurance expense based on the number of square feet at each location.
East __________; West __________; North __________; South __________ Check.

4. Allocate utilities expense based on the number of machine hours worked in each location.
East __________; West __________; North __________; South __________ Check.

5. Allocate rent expense based on the units produced at each location.
East __________; West __________; North __________; South __________ Check.

6. Allocate maintenance expense based on the number of employees at each location.
East __________; West __________; North __________; South __________ Check.

____
Score for C (64)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Commissions

6

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1 Compute sales commissions and gross pay.

Learning Objective 2 Compute graduated sales commissions.

Learning Objective 3 Compute sales and purchases for principals.

A **commission** is a payment to an employee or to an agent for performing a business transaction or service. The most familiar type of commission is that received by a salesperson. Many companies have employees who are paid either totally or partially on a commission basis. People who sell insurance, real estate, and automobiles are typically in this category.

For a business owner, one advantage of using the commission method to pay employees is that the commission is an incentive. Employees are paid on the basis of the volume of business they produce for the company. They can earn more by being more productive.

Besides typical salespersons, other businesspeople provide selling and buying services. These include brokers, agents, and commission merchants, all of whom are paid a commission for their services. The person for whom the services are provided is called the **principal.** A commission merchant will normally take actual possession of the merchandise and make the sales transaction in his or her name. A **broker,** however, will usually make the transaction in the principal's name and will not take possession of the merchandise.

Computing Sales Commissions and Gross Pay

Learning Objective 1

Compute sales commissions and gross pay.

A sales commission paid to a salesperson is usually a stated percent of the dollar value of the goods or services sold. Whether the commission is based on the wholesale or retail value of the goods will depend on the type of business and merchandise sold. The rate used to calculate the commission also will vary among different businesses. In some companies, the salesperson receives both some salary and a commission.

STEPS to Compute Commission and Total Pay

1. Multiply the commission rate by the amount sold to get the commission amount.
2. If there is a salary, add it to the commission amount to get the total gross pay.

EXAMPLE A

Judy Ahlquist sells yachts and marine equipment for Bay Area Marine Sales. She receives a base salary of $5,000 per month and earns a commission that is 2% of the value of all boating equipment that she sells during the month. Find her commission and total pay during September, a month in which she sold $132,000 worth of equipment.

STEP 1 2% × $132,000 = 0.02 × $132,000 = $2,640 commission

STEP 2 $2,640 commission + $5,000 base salary = $7,640 total pay

Total sales are often called **gross sales.** Commissions are normally paid on **net sales,** which are calculated by subtracting the amount of any returned goods, canceled orders, or other sales expenses. The reason for using net sales is to protect the company from loss or possible fraud. Suppose in example A, that Bay Area Marine Sales pays a 2% commission whether or not any goods are ever returned. Judy Ahlquist's commission on $132,000 worth of merchandise is $2,640. But if all of the merchandise is eventually returned, or if the orders are all canceled, the company would lose $2,640 by paying the commission.

STEPS to Compute Commission When a Sale Involves Returned Goods

1. Subtract the value of the returned goods (or canceled orders) from the total sales to determine net sales.
2. Multiply the commission rate by net sales to get the commission amount.

EXAMPLE B

Carl Gowey is a salesperson for Englewood Office Supply. He works on a commission-only basis—he receives a commission of 3.5% on his weekly sales, but no base salary. What are Carl's commission and total pay during a week when he sells $44,000 worth of office products, but one of his customers cancels an order for $5,000?

STEP 1 $44,000 − $5,000 = $39,000 net sales

STEP 2 3.5% × $39,000 = 0.035 × $39,000 = $1,365 commission

Total Pay = $1,365, because he is paid on a commission-only basis

AP Image/Reed Saxon

CONCEPT CHECK 6.1

Compute the commission and gross pay for Pattie Burrows, who is paid a $1,800 salary and earns a 4% commission. Total sales were $88,000, but there were returns of $6,000.

$88,000 − $6,000 = $82,000 net sales

4% × $82,000 = 0.04 × $82,000 =	$3,280	commission
	+ 1,800	salary
	$5,080	gross pay

Computing Graduated Sales Commissions

Commission plans provide incentives for employees because employees can earn more money by selling more products. A company can provide additional incentives for even greater productivity by using **graduated commission rates.** As the level of sales increases, so does the commission rate.

Learning Objective 2

Compute graduated sales commissions.

STEPS to Compute Commission Under a Graduated Rate Plan

1. Compute the dollar amount at each rate level by using subtraction.
2. Multiply each level's sales dollars by that level's commission rate.
3. Add the products computed in Step 2 to determine the total commission.

EXAMPLE C

In addition to a salary, Donna Wu has a monthly commission plan under which she receives 2% on the first $40,000 of sales during the month and 3% on sales above $40,000. If Donna has sales of $75,000 during May, compute her commission for May.

STEP 1

$75,000 total sales
− 40,000 at 2%
$35,000 at 3%

STEP 2

$40,000 × 0.02 = $ 800
35,000 × 0.03 = + 1,050

STEP 3

Total commission = $1,850

EXAMPLE D

Assume that Donna has a monthly commission plan under which she receives 2% on the first $40,000 of sales during the month, 3% on sales from $40,000 to $80,000, and 4% on all sales over $80,000. If Donna has sales of $126,000 during April compute her commission for April.

STEP 1

$126,000 total sales
− 40,000 at 2%
$ 86,000
− 40,000 at 3%
$ 46,000 at 4%

STEP 2

$40,000 × 0.02 = $ 800
40,000 × 0.03 = 1,200
46,000 × 0.04 = + 1,840

STEP 3

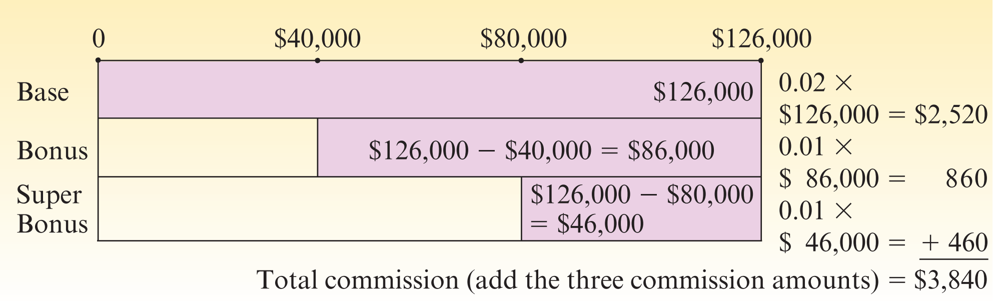
Total commission = $3,840

The same graduated incentive plan can be defined in terms of bonus rates. The calculations are similar.

EXAMPLE E

AP Images/Ed Bailey

Les Flake has a monthly commission plan under which he receives 2% on all sales during the month. If Les has sales above $40,000, he receives a bonus of 1% of everything over $40,000. If he sells more than $80,000, he receives a "super bonus" of an additional 1% of everything over $80,000. What was Les's commission for a month during which he sold $126,000?



0.02 × $126,000 = $2,520
0.01 × $ 86,000 = 860
0.01 × $ 46,000 = + 460

Total commission (add the three commission amounts) = $3,840

Observe that both example D and example E had a total commission of $3,840 on sales of $126,000. The two graduated incentive plans are identical except for the manner in which they are defined and calculated.

CONCEPT CHECK 6.2

Compute the total commission on sales of $184,000. The commission is graduated: 2% on sales to $50,000, 3% on sales from $50,000 to $100,000, and 4% on sales above $100,000.

$184,000 − $50,000 − $50,000 = $84,000

2% × $50,000 = 0.02 × $50,000	=	$1,000
3% × $50,000 = 0.03 × $50,000	=	1,500
4% × $84,000 = 0.04 × $84,000	=	3,360
Total commission	=	$5,860

Computing Sales and Purchases for Principals

Learning Objective 3

Compute sales and purchases for principals.

A producer may send goods to an agent, often called a **commission merchant,** for sale at the best possible price. Such a shipment is a **consignment.** The party who sends the shipment is the **consignor;** the party to whom it is sent—that is, the commission merchant—is the **consignee.**

Whatever amount the commission merchant receives for the consignment is the **gross proceeds.** The commission amount is generally a certain percentage of the gross proceeds. Sometimes it is a certain amount per unit of weight or measure of the goods sold. The commission and any other sales expenses (e.g., transportation, advertising, storage, and insurance) are the **charges.** The charges are deducted from the gross proceeds. The resulting amount, which is sent to the consignor, is the **net proceeds.**

EXAMPLE F

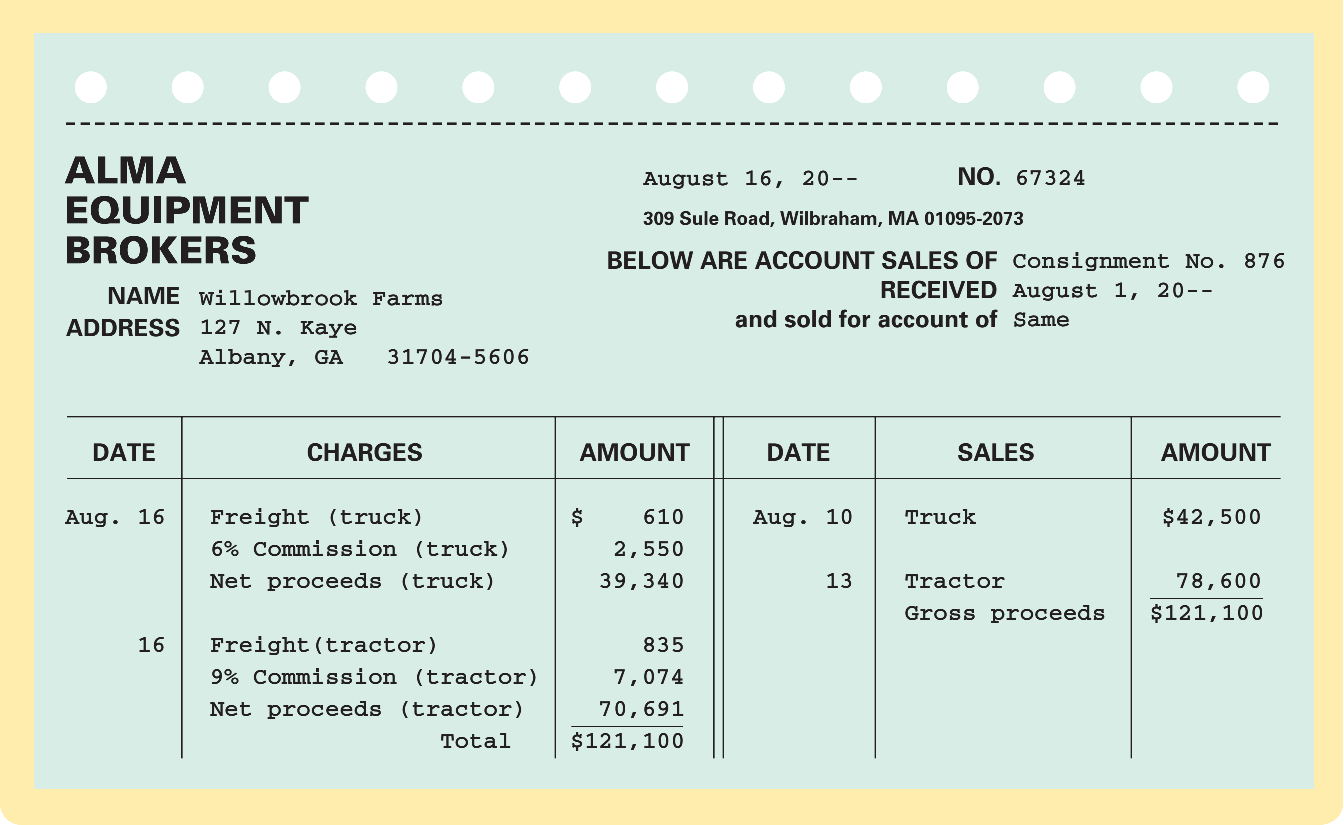
Karen Recht, owner of Willowbrook Farms, has been trying to sell a used livestock truck and a used tractor. Unsuccessful after 3 months, Ms. Recht consigns the items to Alma Equipment Brokers. They agree on commission rates of 6% of the gross proceeds from the truck and 9% of the gross proceeds from the tractor. Alma sells the truck for $42,500 and the tractor for $78,600. Alma also pays $610 to deliver the truck and $835 to deliver the tractor. What are the net proceeds due Willowbrook Farms from the sale of the equipment?

Truck:	Commission: 0.06 × $42,500 =	$2,550	Gross proceeds:	$42,500
	Freight:	+ 610	less charges	− 3,160
	Total charges	$3,160	Net Proceeds:	$39,340
Tractor:	Commission: 0.09 × $78,600 =	$7,074	Gross proceeds:	$78,600
	Freight:	+ 835	less charges	− 7,909
	Total charges	$7,909	Net proceeds:	$70,691

$39,340 + $70,691 = $110,031 Total Net Proceeds

Along with a check for the net proceeds, the commission merchant sends the consignor a form known as an **account sales.** It is a detailed statement of the amount of the sales and the various deductions. Figure 6-1 shows a typical account sales form. Notice that the left side and the right side of the form balance at $121,100. The two sides should always balance.

Figure 6-1 **Account Sales**



ALMA
EQUIPMENT
BROKERS

August 16, 20-- **NO.** 67324

309 Sule Road, Wilbraham, MA 01095-2073

NAME Willowbrook Farms
ADDRESS 127 N. Kaye
Albany, GA 31704-5606

BELOW ARE ACCOUNT SALES OF Consignment No. 876
RECEIVED August 1, 20--
and sold for account of Same

DATE	CHARGES	AMOUNT	DATE	SALES	AMOUNT
Aug. 16	Freight (truck)	$ 610	Aug. 10	Truck	$42,500
	6% Commission (truck)	2,550			
	Net proceeds (truck)	39,340	13	Tractor	78,600
				Gross proceeds	$121,100
16	Freight (tractor)	835			
	9% Commission (tractor)	7,074			
	Net proceeds (tractor)	70,691			
	Total	$121,100			

When commission merchants purchase goods for their principals, the price they pay for the merchandise is the **prime cost.** The prime cost and all charges are the **gross cost,** which is the cost the principal pays.

EXAMPLE G

Asia-Pacific Tours commissioned Specialty Marketing Group to purchase 10,000 vinyl travel bags that will be labeled with Asia-Pacific's logo and used as promotional items. For this size order, Specialty Marketing purchased the bags for $4.29 each. Charges included the commission, which was 6% of the prime cost; storage, $125; and freight, $168. What is the gross cost that Asia-Pacific should pay to Specialty Marketing?

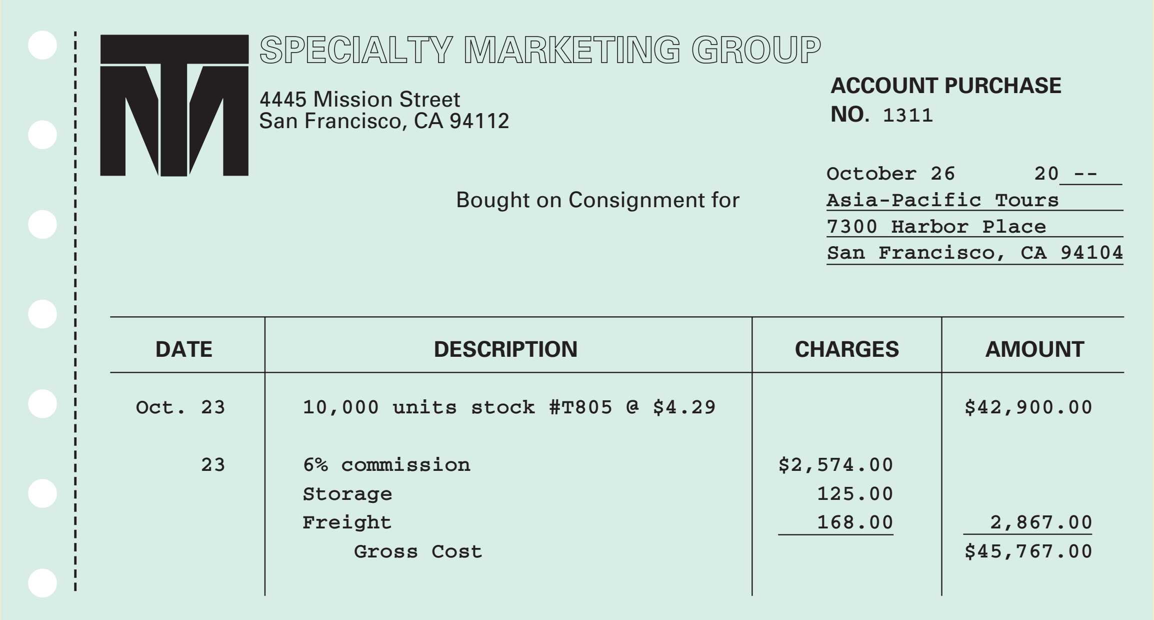
$ 4.29		$42,900	prime cost
× 10,000	units	× 0.06	
$ 42,900	prime cost	$ 2,574	commission

$2,574 commission + $125 storage + $168 freight = $2,867 charges
$42,900 prime cost + $2,867 charges = $45,767 gross cost

An **account purchase** is a detailed statement from the commission merchant to the principal. It shows the cost of goods purchased, including charges. Figure 6-2 shows a typical account purchase, for the transaction in example G.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Figure 6-2 **Account Purchase**



SPECIALTY MARKETING GROUP
4445 Mission Street
San Francisco, CA 94112

ACCOUNT PURCHASE
NO. 1311

October 26 20 --

Bought on Consignment for
Asia-Pacific Tours
7300 Harbor Place
San Francisco, CA 94104

DATE	DESCRIPTION	CHARGES	AMOUNT
Oct. 23	10,000 units stock #T805 @ $4.29		$42,900.00
23	6% commission	$2,574.00	
	Storage	125.00	
	Freight	168.00	2,867.00
	Gross Cost		$45,767.00

CONCEPT CHECK 6.3

a. Compute the commission and the net proceeds on a consignment sale of $7,500. The commission rate is 6%, local delivery charges are $427.72, and storage charges are $145.

$6\% \times \$7{,}500 = 0.06 \times \$7{,}500 = \$450$ commission

$\$7{,}500 - \$450 - \$427.72 - \$145 = \$6{,}477.28$ net proceeds

b. Compute the commission and gross cost on a $12,500 purchase for a principal. The commission rate is 7%, air freight is $138.70, and local delivery charges are $64.60.

$7\% \times \$12{,}500 = 0.07 \times \$12{,}500 = \$875$ commission

$\$12{,}500 + \$875 + \$138.70 + \$64.60 = \$13{,}578.30$ gross cost

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 6.1 AND 6.2.

Chapter Terms for Review

account purchase
account sales
broker
charges
commission
commission merchant
consignee
consignment
consignor
graduated commission rates
gross cost
gross proceeds
gross sales
net proceeds
net sales
prime cost
principal

Try Microsoft® Excel

Try working the problems using the Microsoft Excel templates found on the companion website. Solutions for the problems are also shown on the companion website.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
6.1 Compute sales commissions and gross pay.	1. Sharon Hilliard, a salesperson, earns a $3,750 salary and a 1.75% commission. Find her commission and gross pay when sales are $164,000 and returns are $5,600.
6.2 Compute graduated sales commissions.	2. Melvin Maugh has a graduated commission rate: 1% on sales up to $100,000; 2% on sales from $100,000 to $200,000; and 2.5% on sales above $200,000. Find his commission when his sales are $318,000.
6.3 Compute sales and purchases for principals.	3. A broker sells a principal's merchandise at a gross sales price of $15,600 at a commission rate of 3.5%. There are sales costs of $300 for storage and $119 for delivery. Find the commission and net proceeds. 4. A commission merchant purchases merchandise for a principal at a prime cost of $8,400. The commission rate is 8%, air freight is $139, and local delivery is $75. Find the commission and gross cost.

Answers: **1.** Commission: $2,772; Gross pay: $6,522 **2.** $5,950 **3.** Commission: $546; Net proceeds: $14,635
4. Commission: $672; Gross cost: $9,286

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 6

In problems 1–4, compute both the commission and the total pay based on the information given.

1 Salary, \$3,000; commission rate, 6%; total sales, \$58,000; returns, \$0

a. Commission __________ **b.** Total pay __________

2 Salary, \$2,500; commission rate, 5%; total sales, \$91,000; returns, \$5,000

a. Commission __________ **b.** Total pay __________

3 Salary, \$3,600; commission rate, 4.5%; total sales, \$76,000; returns, \$6,800

a. Commission __________ **b.** Total pay __________

4 Salary, \$0; commission rate, 8%; total sales, \$98,000; returns, \$11,425

a. Commission __________ **b.** Total pay __________

5 Compute the total commission on sales of \$160,000 if the commission rates are 3% on the first \$100,000 and 5% on everything above \$100,000. __________

6 Compute the total commission on sales of \$85,000 if the commission rates are 3% on the first \$100,000 and 5% on everything above \$100,000. __________

7 Compute the total commission on sales of \$250,000 if the commission rates are 2% on the first \$75,000; then 3% on the next \$75,000; and 4% on everything above \$150,000. __________

8 Compute the total commission on sales of \$135,000 if the commission rates are 2% on the first \$75,000; then 3% on the next \$75,000; and 4% on everything above \$150,000. __________

9 Compute the total commission on sales of \$70,000 if the commission rates are 2% on the first \$75,000; then 3% on the next \$75,000; and 4% on everything above \$150,000. __________

10 Compute the total commission on sales of \$115,000 if the commission rates are 4% on the first \$35,000; then 6% on the next \$45,000; and 8% on everything above \$80,000. __________

11 Larry Leong is paid 2.5% on all sales. He is also paid a bonus of an additional 1.5% on any sales above \$70,000. Calculate Larry's total commission on sales of \$120,000. __________

12 Nadia Curto is paid 4% on all sales. She is also paid a bonus of an additional 2% on any sales above \$40,000. Calculate Nadia's total commission on sales of \$105,000. __________

13 Don Davenport sells used logging equipment on consignment. He charges 20% commission plus expenses. Calculate Don's commission on a log truck he sold for \$42,750. __________

14 For the sale in problem 13, Don also paid an additional \$290 to deliver the truck to the new owner. Calculate the net proceeds that Don's principal should receive. __________

15 Sue Lyon is a designer who purchases furniture for clients. She charges 15% of the price, plus expenses. Calculate Sue's commission on furniture priced at \$21,400. __________

16 For the sale in problem 15, calculate the gross cost to the client if Sue also had expenses of \$646.

____

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Notes

Assignment 6.1: Commission

Name ______________________

Date ______________ Score ______________

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **3**

A **(24 points) Find the commission and the total gross pay. (2 points for each correct answer)**

Employee	Monthly Salary	Commission Rate	Monthly Sales	Commission	Gross Pay
1. Cornelius, Jane	$ 0	8%	$84,500	________	________
2. Conway, Sue	4,000	3%	$165,600	________	________
3. Aguire, Luis	3,750	5%	$42,000	________	________
4. Brandon, Carol	3,275	3.5%	$94,600	________	________
5. Rogerro, George	1,800	6%	$64,000	________	________
6. Wang, Jonathan	1,500	8%	$86,000	________	________

Score for A (24)

B **(36 points) Compute the total commission for the following commission payment plans. (6 points for each correct answer)**

Graduated Commission Rates	Sales	Commission
7. 3% on sales to $60,000 6% on sales above $60,000	$137,000	________
8. 1% on sales to $200,000 2% on sales above $200,000	$394,000	________
9. 3% on sales to $80,000 5% on sales above $80,000	$174,000	________
10. 2% on sales to $85,000 3% on sales from $85,000 to $170,000 4% on sales above $170,000	$230,000	________
11. 3% on sales to $50,000 4% on sales from $50,000 to $100,000 5% on sales above $100,000	$128,000	________

12. 2% on sales to $80,000 $156,400 __________
3% on sales from $80,000 to $160,000
4% on sales above $160,000

Score for B (36)

C **(20 points) Patricia Wellington is a commission merchant. She charges different commission rates to sell different types of merchandise. During May, she completed the following consignment sales for consignors. Find Patricia's commission on each sale and the net proceeds sent to each consignor. (2 points for each correct answer)**

Gross Sales	Comm. Rate	Commission	Local Delivery	Storage	Air Freight	Net Proceeds
13. $38,400	3%		$ 68	$ 0	$183	
14. $2,460	5%		72	75	0	
15. $8,400	6%		284	0	0	
16. $14,625	4%		0	0	137	
17. $14,100	7%		75	85	112	

Score for C (20)

D **(20 points) Luis Castillo, a commission merchant in Dallas, buys merchandise exclusively for principals. Listed below are five recent transactions. Compute Luis' commission on each purchase and the gross cost. (2 points for each correct answer)**

Prime Cost	Comm. Rate	Commission	Local Delivery	Storage	Air Freight	Gross Cost
18. $18,850	6%		$93	$ 0	$152	
19. $4,900	11%		0	0	195	
20. $7,280	7.5%		43	75	94	
21. $4,850	8%		0	110	108	
22. $31,600	9.25%		65	80	107	

Score for D (20)

Assignment 6.2: Applications with Commission

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **3**

A **(56 points) Solve each of the following business application problems involving salespeople who are paid partly or entirely on a commission basis. Solve the problems in order, because some of the questions are sequential. (8 points for each correct answer)**

1. Sa-Lei Loi sells memberships to an athletic club. She receives a monthly salary of $2,150 plus a commission of 15% on new membership fees. What was Sa-Lei's monthly pay for May, when she sold new memberships valued at $27,500? __________

2. Syble Washington sells commercial restaurant supplies and equipment. She is paid on a commission-only basis. She receives 3% for her sales up to $75,000. For the next $85,000 of sales, she is paid 4%, and for any sales above $160,000 she is paid 5%. How much commission would Maria earn in a month when her sales were $186,000? __________

3. Syble Washington (problem 2) is not paid commission on any restaurant supplies or equipment that are later returned. If an item is returned, its price is deducted from Syble's total sales to get her net sales. The commission-only rate is applied to her net sales. Suppose that Syble sold merchandise worth $186,000 but that $33,000 of that was later returned. What would be Syble's commission on net sales? __________

4. Luisa Gomes works for Southeast Appliance Mart. She receives a biweekly salary of $1,500 for which she must sell $20,000 worth of appliances. She also receives a commission of 4% on net sales above $20,000. What will be Luisa's pay for two weeks when her net appliance sales were $42,000? __________

5. Southeast Appliance Mart (problem 4) offers service contracts with all appliance sales. To encourage salespeople such as Luisa to sell more service contracts, the company pays a commission of 20% on all service contracts. What will be her total pay for two weeks when she sells $42,000 worth of appliances and $1,200 worth of service contracts? __________

6. Samir Pesah is a stockbroker for an investment firm that pays Samir a 0.6% commission on all the stocks that he buys and sells for his clients. What will be Samir's commission on 1,200 shares of Apple stock that is selling for $475.50 per share? __________

7. Michelle Navarra works in telemarketing. Her job is to make telephone calls from a computerized list of names and try to convince people to make an appointment with a life insurance salesperson. Michelle receives 40¢ for each completed telephone call, $7.00 for each appointment made and kept, and 1% of any initial revenue that results from the appointment. How much would Michelle earn if she completed 968 calls, 153 persons made and kept appointments, and $37,600 in revenue resulted from the appointments? ______

______

Score for A (56)

B **(24 points) Solve each of the following business applications about consignment sales and commission merchants. (8 points for each correct answer)**

8. Darleen Bassey is a commission merchant who charges a 12% commission to sell antique furniture from her showroom. Gale Holfert owns antique furniture, which he transports to her showroom where Darleen sells it for $11,750. Gale agrees to pay Darleen $670 to have the furniture delivered to the buyer from the showroom. What will be Gale's net proceeds from the sale? ______

9. Suppose, in problem 8, that payment of the $670 delivery expense was Darleen's responsibility instead of Gale's. Then what would be Darleen's net earnings from the sale? ______

10. Nancy Duncan makes artistic weavings that are used as wall hangings. She sells her weavings primarily at open-air art shows and street fairs through her agent, Ruth Nielsen. Ruth charges 20% on all sales, plus the fees to operate the sales booths and transportation expenses. After selling at four art shows, Ruth had total sales of $43,750. Each art show charged a booth fee of $650, and Ruth's total transportation expenses were $867. What were Nancy's net proceeds? ______

______

Score for B (24)

C **(20 points) The following problems involve the purchase of a home. (10 points for each correct answer)**

11. JoAnn Andrews has a condominium that she would like to sell and she asks real estate broker Jerry Weekly to sell it. Jerry, co-owner of Counts/Weekly Real Estate, advises JoAnn that she should be able to sell her condominium for $180,000 and the commission rate for selling it will be 6%. If the condominium sells for the expected price, what will be the total commission amount that JoAnn pays? ______

12. See problem 11. To sell her condominium, JoAnn Andrews must also pay some additional fees for inspections, title insurance, and to record the sale. These fees total $3,500 and are added to the 6% commission. What will JoAnn's net proceeds be from the sale of her $180,000 condominium? ______

______

Score for C (20)

Discounts

7

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1 Compute trade discounts.

Learning Objective 2 Compute a series of trade discounts.

Learning Objective 3 Compute the equivalent single discount rate for a series of trade discounts.

Learning Objective 4 Compute cash discounts and remittance amounts for fully paid invoices.

Learning Objective 5 Compute cash discounts and remittance amounts for partially paid invoices.

When one business sells merchandise to another business, the seller, also called the vendor, often offers two types of discounts: trade discounts and cash discounts. Trade discounts affect the agreed-upon selling price *before* the sale happens. Cash discounts affect the amount actually paid *after* the transaction.

Computing Trade Discounts

Learning Objective 1

Compute trade discounts.

Manufacturers, distributors, and wholesalers are all **vendors** who want to attract and keep good customers who make repeated, large-volume, more expensive purchases. To do this, vendors frequently offer **trade discounts** to these customers who are "in the trade." Trade discounts are usually based on the volume purchased.

For example, Northeast Restaurant Supply gives a 40% discount to The Dancing Dog, a regional chain of 68 sidewalk sandwich carts that primarily sell hot dogs, sausage sandwiches, and giant pretzels. Another Northeast customer is Sarah Watterman, founder and proprietor of Gideon's Bagels & Bialys. Sarah's business is still small. She bakes her products between 10 p.m. and 3 a.m. in oven space that she leases from another bakery. Northeast gives Sarah only a 25% discount because she doesn't do as much business with Northeast as The Dancing Dog does. Northeast also sells to people who are "not in the trade." These retail customers pay the regular **list price,** or full price without any trade discount.

Large restaurant chains such as McDonald's and Burger King can go directly to the manufacturer for most items or even do their own manufacturing. They can have items manufactured to their exact specifications for a contracted price. They reduce their costs by eliminating the distributors (the "middle men").

The two traditional methods for computing trade discounts are the discount method and the complement method. You can use either method to find the **net price** that a distributor will charge the customer after the discount. The **discount method** is useful when you want to know both the net price and the actual amount of the trade discount. The **complement method** is used to find only the net price. It gets its name because you use the **complement rate,** which is 100% minus the discount rate. Each method has only two steps.

STEPS to Compute Net Price with the Discount Method

1. Multiply the discount rate by the list price to get the discount amount:
   Discount = Trade discount rate × List price
2. Subtract the discount from the list price to get the net price:
   Net price = List price − Discount

EXAMPLE A

Northeast Restaurant Supply sells a set of stainless steel trays to Gideon's Bagels. The list price is $120, and Gideon qualifies for a 25% trade discount. Compute the net price using the discount method.

STEP 1 Discount = 0.25 × $120 = $30

STEP 2 Net price = $120 − $30 = $90

STEPS to Compute Net Price with the Complement Method

1. Subtract the discount rate from 100% to get the complement rate:
   Complement rate = 100% − Trade discount rate
2. Multiply the complement rate by the list price to get the net price:
   Net price = Complement rate × List price

EXAMPLE B

Using the data in example A, compute the net price, using the complement method.

STEP 1 Complement rate = 100% − 25% = 75%

STEP 2 Net price = 0.75 × $120 = $90

CONCEPT CHECK 7.1

a. Compute the trade discount amount and the net price, using the discount method.

List price = $240 Trade discount = 30%
Discount amount = 0.30 × $240 = $72
Net price = $240 − $72 = $168

b. Compute the complement rate and the net price, using the complement method.

List price = $240 Trade discount = 30%
Complement rate = 100% − 30% = 70%
Net price = 0.70 × $240 = $168

Computing a Series of Trade Discounts

Learning Objective 2

Compute a series of trade discounts.

A distributor or manufacturer may give additional discounts to customers who buy larger volumes. Suppose that Northeast Restaurant Supply gives all food preparation businesses a 25% discount for being in the trade. However, if one business buys twice as much from Northeast, it may be rewarded with additional discounts. For example, Gideon's Bagels may receive its first discount of 25% automatically. Then, Gideon's gets an additional 20% discount if its accumulated purchases were between $10,000 and $25,000 during the previous year and another 10% if accumulated purchases were more than $25,000 during the previous year. Therefore, Gideon's Bagels could have discounts of 25%, 20%, and 10%, called a **series of discounts.**

Both the discount method and the complement method can be used to compute the net price for a series of discounts. *The two methods are the same as shown previously, except that the steps are repeated for each discount in the series.* For example, if there are three discounts, repeat the steps three times. Apply the first **discount rate** to the list price. For the second and third discounts, compute intermediate prices and then apply the discount rates to them.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE C

Northeast Restaurant Supply sells a set of mixing bowls with a list price of $200. Gideon's Bagels qualifies for the series of discounts: 25%, 20%, 10%. Compute the net price using the discount method.

	First Discount	Second Discount	Third Discount
STEP 1	$0.25 \times \$200 = \$50$	$0.20 \times \$150 = \$30$	$0.10 \times \$120 = \$12$
STEP 2	$\$200 - \$50 = \$150$	$\$150 - \$30 = \$120$	$\$120 - \$12 = \$108$

EXAMPLE D

Using the data in example C, calculate the net price using the complement method.

	First Discount	Second Discount	Third Discount
STEP 1	$100\% - 25\% = 75\%$	$100\% - 20\% = 80\%$	$100\% - 10\% = 90\%$
STEP 2	$0.75 \times \$200 = \$150$	$0.80 \times \$150 = \$120$	$0.90 \times \$120 = \$108$

COMPLEMENT METHOD SHORTCUT

When using complement rates, the buyer may not need to know all of the intermediate prices. If not, an efficient shortcut is to multiply the list price by all of the complement rates successively.

EXAMPLE E

Repeat example D, using the shortcut. The list price is $200, and the discounts are 25%, 20%, and 10%. The complement rates are 75%, 80%, and 90%.

Net price $= \$200 \times 0.75 \times 0.80 \times 0.90 = \$108$

Note: Remember that there should be *no rounding* until you reach the final net price. Then round the final net price to the nearest cent.

CONCEPT CHECK 7.2

a. A wholesaler offers a series of trade discounts: 30%, 25%, and 10%. Find each of the discount amounts and the final net price on a $1,500 purchase.

First discount amount: $\$1{,}500 \times 0.30 = \$450$
Second discount amount: $\$1{,}500 - \$450 = \$1{,}050$; $\$1{,}050 \times 0.25 = \$262.50$
Third discount amount: $\$1{,}050 - \$262.50 = \$787.50$; $\$787.50 \times 0.10 = \$78.75$
Net price: $\$787.50 - \$78.75 = \$708.75$

b. A series of trade discounts is 30%, 25%, and 10%. Find each of the complement rates, and use the shortcut to calculate the final net price on a purchase of $1,500.

First complement rate: $100\% - 30\% = 70\%$
Second complement rate: $100\% - 25\% = 75\%$
Third complement rate: $100\% - 10\% = 90\%$
Net price: $\$1{,}500 \times 0.70 \times 0.75 \times 0.90 = \$708.75$

Computing the Equivalent Single Discount Rate

Learning Objective 3

Compute the equivalent single discount rate for a series of trade discounts.

Suppose that a Northeast competitor, New England Food Service, offers a single discount of 45% to Gideon's Bagels. How does that rate compare to the series of discounts from Northeast, 25%, 20%, and 10%? Sarah, or her accountant, could check by calculating the **equivalent single discount rate,** which is the single discount rate that can be used in place of two or more trade discount rates to determine the same discount amount.

The most efficient way to find the single discount rate that is equivalent to a series of discounts is similar to the shortcut used in example E.

STEPS to Compute the Equivalent Single Discount Rate

1. Compute the complement of each rate.
2. Multiply all the complement rates (as decimals), and then write the product as a percent.
3. Subtract the product (Step 2) from 100% to get the equivalent single discount rate.

EXAMPLE F

Find the equivalent single discount rate for Northeast's series of discounts: 25%, 20%, and 10%.

STEP 1

First complement rate = 100% − 25% = 75%
Second complement rate = 100% − 20% = 80%
Third complement rate = 100% − 10% = 90%

STEP 2

Product of complements = 0.75 × 0.80 × 0.90 = 0.54, or 54%

STEP 3

Equivalent single discount = 100% − 54% = 46%

CONCEPT CHECK 7.3

A series of trade discounts is 50%, 30%, and 10%. Find the three complement rates and then find the equivalent single trade discount rate.

Complement rates: 100% − 50% = 50%, 100% − 30% = 70%, 100% − 10% = 90%
Product of the complement rates: 0.50 × 0.70 × 0.90 = 0.315, or 31.5%
Equivalent single discount rate: 100% − 31.5% = 68.5%

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 7.1.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

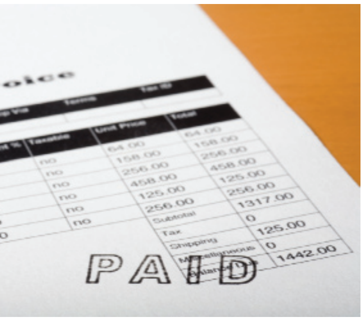
Computing Cash Discounts for Fully Paid Invoices

Learning Objective 4

Compute cash discounts and remittance amounts for fully paid invoices.

When a vendor sells merchandise to a buyer, the vendor usually wants to receive its payment quickly. However, some buyers often try to delay making the payment as long as possible. Vendors can encourage early payment by offering a **cash discount;** they can discourage late payment by assessing an extra interest payment; or they can do both. These stipulations are called the **terms of payment,** or simply the *terms.* The terms describe details about cash discounts and/or penalty periods.

After shipping merchandise to a buyer, the vendor usually sends a document called an invoice, requesting payment. An **invoice** lists each item, its cost, and the total cost (including packaging and freight). The invoice also states the terms of payment. The amount the buyer pays is called the **remittance.** The **net purchase amount** is the price of the merchandise actually purchased, including allowances for returns and excluding handling and freight costs.


©iStock.com/ericsphotography

STEPS to Compute the Remittance

1. Multiply the discount rate by the net purchase amount to get the cash discount:
   Cash discount = Discount rate × Net purchase amount
2. Subtract the cash discount from the net purchase amount to get the remittance:
   Remittance = Net purchase amount − Cash discount

Figure 7-1 shows an invoice from National Automotive Supply, which sold car wax to Broadway Motors for $528. The wax will be shipped via UPS, and National will pay for the shipping. The invoice lists terms of 2/10, n/30. The **invoice date,** or the beginning of the discount period, is May 23.

Figure 7-1 Sales Invoice

INVOICE NO. 782535

NATIONAL AUTOMOTIVE SUPPLY

SOLD TO Broadway Motors
730 W. Columbia Dr.
Peoria, IL 62170-1184

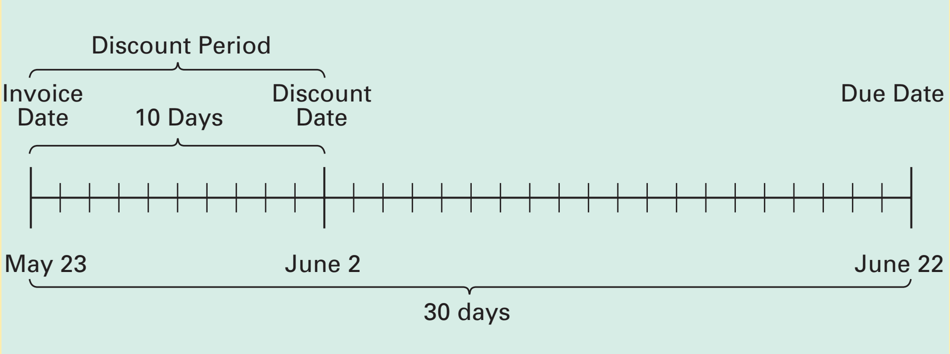
DATE May 23, 20--
TERMS 2/10, n/30
SHIP VIA UPS

QUANTITY	DESCRIPTION	UNIT PRICE	GROSS AMOUNT	NET AMOUNT
24 gals.	Car wax	$22.00	$528.00	$528.00

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The expression *2/10, n/30* means that Broadway Motors can get a 2% discount if it pays the full invoice within 10 days of the invoice date. Ten days after May 23 is June 2, which is called the **discount date.** The 10-day period between May 23 and June 2 is called the **discount period.** The n/30 is short for "net 30," which means that if Broadway Motors does not pay the entire amount within 30 days, National will charge an interest penalty. Thirty days after May 23 is June 22, which is called the **due date.** (See Figure 7-2.)

Figure 7-2 Cash Discount Time Line



EXAMPLE G

Compute the remittance due if Broadway Motors pays National for the $528 invoice amount within the 10-day discount period under the terms 2/10, n/30.

STEP 1 Cash discount = 2% of \$528 = 0.02 × \$528 = \$10.56

STEP 2 Remittance = \$528 − \$10.56 = \$517.44

All companies do not use exactly the same notation for stating their terms; 2/10, n/30 is also written as 2/10, net 30 or as 2-10, n-30. Likewise, there can be more than one discount rate and discount period. For example, 2/5, 1/15, n/30 means that the buyer gets a 2% discount by paying within 5 days, gets a 1% discount by paying between 6 and 15 days, and must pay a penalty after 30 days. To illustrate several different notations, this textbook will write cash discounts in various ways.

RETURNED MERCHANDISE AND FREIGHT CHARGES

The vendor gives a discount only on merchandise that is actually purchased—the net purchases. For example, there is no discount on returned items. Likewise, there is no discount on charges from a third party, such as freight or storage.

STEPS to Compute the Remittance When There Are Merchandise Returns and/or Freight Charges

1. Net purchase = Invoice amount − Merchandise returns − Freight
2. Cash discount = Discount rate × Net purchase
3. Cost of merchandise = Net purchase − Cash discount
4. Remittance = Cost of merchandise + Freight, if any

Agencja Fotograficzna Caro/Alamy

EXAMPLE H

National Automotive Supply sells merchandise to Broadway Motors. The invoice amount is $510, which includes $30 in freight charges. The invoice date is August 13, and the terms are 2/10, n/30. Broadway Motors returns $200 worth of merchandise and pays the balance of the invoice prior to the discount date. Compute the cash discount and the remittance. Also, determine the discount date and due date.

STEP 1 Net purchase = \$510 − \$200 − \$30 = \$280

STEP 2 Cash discount = 0.02 × \$280 = \$5.60

STEP 3 Cost of merchandise = \$280 − \$5.60 = \$274.40

STEP 4 Remittance = \$274.40 + \$30 = \$304.40

Discount date = August 13 + 10 days = August 23
Due date = August 13 + 30 days = September 12

If you do not need to know the actual cost of only the merchandise, you can eliminate Step 3 and calculate the remittance directly:

Remittance = \$280.00 − \$5.60 + \$30.00 = \$304.40

There is also a complement method for cash discounts. However, it is not used universally because many businesses prefer to know the amount of the cash discount before deciding whether to pay the invoice early. In the complement method for cash discounts, only Steps 2 and 3 change.

STEPS to Compute the Remittance with the Complement Method

1. Net purchase = Invoice amount − Merchandise returns − Freight
2. Complement rate = 100% − Cash discount rate
3. Cost of merchandise = Net purchase × Complement rate
4. Remittance = Cost of merchandise + Freight, if any

EXAMPLE I

Solve example H by using the complement method for cash discounts. The invoice amount is $510, merchandise returns are $200, and freight is $30.

STEP 1 Net purchase = \$510 − \$200 − \$30 = \$280

STEP 2 Complement rate = 100% − 2% = 98%

STEP 3 Cost of merchandise = 0.98 × \$280 = \$274.40

STEP 4 Remittance = \$274.40 + \$30 = \$304.40

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONCEPT CHECK 7.4

a. Use the given information to calculate the discount date, due date, cash discount, and remittance.

Terms:	1/10, n/60	Discount date = August 24 + 10 days = September 3
Invoice date:	August 24	Due date = August 24 + 60 days = October 23
Invoice amount:	$852.43	Net purchases = $852.43 − $187.23 − $47.20 = $618.00
Returned goods:	$187.23	Cash discount = 0.01 × $618 = $6.18
Freight:	$47.20	Remittance = $618 − $6.18 + $47.20 = $659.02

b. Calculate the remittance for the problem in part (a), using the complement method.

Net purchases = $852.43 − $187.23 − $47.20 = $618.00
Complement rate = 100% − 1% = 99%
Cost of merchandise = 0.99 × $618 = $611.82
Remittance = $611.82 + $47.20 = $659.02

Computing Cash Discounts for Partially Paid Invoices

Sometimes a buyer would like to take advantage of a cash discount but wants to pay only part of the invoice within the discount period. If the vendor allows discounts for partial payment, the invoice will be reduced by the amount paid (remittance) plus the amount of the discount. The total of the amount paid plus the amount of cash discount is called the **amount credited** to the buyer's account. To compute the amount credited, you need to know the complement rate: 100% − Discount rate.

Learning Objective 5

Compute cash discounts and remittance amounts for partially paid invoices.

STEPS to Compute the Unpaid Balance

1. Compute the complement of the discount rate (100% − Discount rate).
2. Compute the amount credited by dividing the dollar amount paid (remittance) by the complement rate.
3. Compute the unpaid balance by subtracting the amount credited (Step 2) from the invoice amount.

EXAMPLE J

Ike's Storage Center is a do-it-yourself center for closet and storage materials. The owner, Larry Eickworth, buys shelving supplies with an invoice price of $484 and terms of 2/10, net 60. Within the 10-day discount period, he sends in a check for $300. With a discount for the partial payment, how much credit should Larry receive, and what will be his new unpaid balance?

STEP 1 Complement rate = 100% − 2% = 98%

STEP 2 Amount credited = \$300 ÷ 0.98 = \$306.1224, or \$306.12

STEP 3 Unpaid balance = \$484.00 − \$306.12 = \$177.88

Note that, in example J, Larry receives \$1.00 credit for every \$0.98 paid. In other words, the \$300 actually remitted is 98% of the total amount credited. We can check this result with multiplication:

Cash discount = 0.02 × \$306.12 = \$6.1224, or \$6.12
Remittance = \$306.12 − \$6.12 = \$300.00

A slightly different situation, which arises less frequently, is when a buyer decides in advance the total amount that he or she wants to have credited to the account. This problem is exactly like the original cash discount problems.

EXAMPLE K

Suppose that Ike's Storage Center buys \$484 worth of shelving materials. The terms are 2/10, net 60. Ike wants to pay enough within the 10-day discount period to reduce the unpaid balance by exactly \$300. What amount should Ike remit to the seller? What will be the new unpaid balance?

STEP 1 Cash discount = 2% × \$300 = \$6

STEP 2 Remittance = \$300 − \$6 = \$294

STEP 3 Unpaid balance = \$484 − \$300 = \$184

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 7.5

a. An invoice for \$476 has terms of 1/15, net 25. How much is the unpaid balance after a \$350 remittance is made within the discount period?
Complement rate = 100% − 1% = 99%
Amount credited = \$350 ÷ 0.99 = \$353.54
Unpaid balance = \$476.00 − \$353.54 = \$122.46

b. An invoice for \$476 has terms of 1/15, net 25. What size remittance should be made in order to have a total of \$350 credited to the account?
Cash discount = \$350 × 0.01 = \$3.50
Remittance = \$350.00 − \$3.50 = \$346.50

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 7.2.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter Terms for Review

- amount credited
- cash discount
- complement method
- complement rate
- discount date
- discount method
- discount period
- discount rate
- due date
- equivalent single discount rate
- invoice
- invoice date
- list price
- net price
- net purchase amount
- remittance
- series of discounts
- terms of payment
- trade discounts
- vendor

Try Microsoft® Excel

Try working the problems using the Microsoft Excel templates found on the companion website. Solutions for the problems are also shown on the companion website.

1. Find the required remittance for goods with a list price of \$240, a trade discount of 25%, and a cash discount of 5%.

The formula is List Price × (1 − Trade Discount %) × (1 − Cash Discount %) = Remittance. Enter the values in the columns as labeled, and enter the formula in the Remittance cell. Format the Remittance cell for Currency with two digits after the decimal point.

List Price	Trade Discount	Cash Discount	Remittance

2. What is the net price for goods with a list price of \$2,200, a trade discount of 40%, and another trade discount of 25%?

List Price	Trade Discount	Trade Discount	Net Price

3. What is the net price for goods with a list price of \$1,650, a trade discount of 30%, and another trade discount of 20%?

List Price	Trade Discount	Trade Discount	Net Price

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
7.1 Compute trade discounts.	1. Find the net price on a list price of $280 with a 25% trade discount, using the discount and the complement methods.
7.2 Compute a series of trade discounts.	2. Find the net price on a list price of $800 with a series of trade discounts of 25% and 10%. Use both the discount method and the complement method.
7.3 Compute the equivalent single discount rate for a series of trade discounts.	3. A series of trade discounts is 25%, 20%, 15%. Use complement rates to find the equivalent single discount rate.
7.4 Compute cash discounts and remittance amounts for fully paid invoices.	An invoice is dated May 26 and has terms of 2/10, n/25. The total invoice is $826.44, with $108.12 of returned goods and $67.37 freight. 4. Compute the discount date, due date, cash discount, and remittance. 5. Compute the remittance using the complement rate.
7.5 Compute cash discounts and remittance amounts for partially paid invoices.	An invoice for $500 has terms of 3/5, net 45. 6. Compute the unpaid balance after a $400 payment within the discount period. 7. Compute the remittance required within the discount period in order to have $400 credited to the account.

Answers: **1.** Discount method: $280 − $70 = $210; complement method: 0.75 × $280 = $210
2. Discount method: $800 − $200 = $600, $600 − $60 = $540; complement method: 0.75 × 0.90 × $800 = $540
3. 49% **4.** Discount date: June 5; due date: June 20; cash discount: $13.02; remittance: $705.30 **5.** $705.30
6. $87.63 **7.** $388.00

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 7

In problems 1 and 2, use the discount method to compute the missing terms.

① List price, $760; trade discount, 25%

a. Discount amount __________

b. Net price __________

② List price, $1,200; trade discounts, 30% and 20%

a. First discount amount __________

b. Second discount amount __________

c. Net price __________

In problems 3 and 4, use the complement method to compute the missing terms.

③ List price, $875; trade discount, 40%

a. Complement rate __________

b. Net price __________

④ List price, $1,800; trade discounts, 30% and 15%

a. First complement rate __________

b. Second complement rate __________

c. Net price __________

⑤ Patty Duncan is a broker of hotel rooms in Europe. To tour directors, she offers a standard trade discount of 40% off the list price. She has additional discounts of 20% and 10%, which are based on the number of tours in a season and the total number of tourists. Compute the equivalent single discount rate for a major tour organizer, Kristi Atchison, who qualifies for all three discounts.

a. First complement rate __________

b. Second complement rate __________

c. Third complement rate __________

d. Equivalent single discount rate __________

Use the invoice information given in problems 6 and 7 to compute the missing terms.

⑥

Terms:	2/10, n/30
Invoice Date:	July 25
Invoice Amount:	$874.55
Freight:	0
Returned Goods:	0

a. Discount date __________

b. Due date __________

c. Discount amount __________

d. Remittance __________

⑦

Terms:	3/5, net 45
Invoice Date:	December 28
Invoice Amount:	$2,480
Freight:	$143
Returned Goods:	$642

a. Discount date __________

b. Due date __________

c. Complement rate __________

d. Remittance __________

⑧ Joyce Thompson purchased some new pieces of office furniture for her Internet consulting firm. The invoice amount was $16,540 with terms of 2/10, net 60 and the discount would apply to any partial payment made within the discount period. Joyce sent in a check for $10,000 by the discount date. Find: (a) the amount credited to Joyce's account __________; and (b) the unpaid balance __________.

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Notes

Assignment 7.1: Trade Discounts

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **3**

A **(24 points) Problems 1–3: Find the dollar amount of the trade discount and the net price, using the discount method. Problems 4–6: Find the complement rate and the net price, using the complement method. (2 points for each correct answer)**

Trade Discount	List Price	Discount Amount	Net Price
1. 35%	$1,260		
2. 30%	$4,052		
3. 25%	$8,480		

Trade Discount	List Price	Complement Rate	Net Price
4. 30%	$1,670		
5. 20%	$6,990		
6. 32%	$5,400		

Score for A (24)

B **(16 points) Find the amount of each discount in the given series of trade discounts. Then find the net price. Where a discount amount doesn't exist write a dash. (2 points for each correct answer)**

List Price	Trade Discounts	Trade Discount Amounts			Net Price
		First	Second	Third	
7. $2,400	30%, 25%				
8. $1,800	40%, 30%, 25%				

Score for B (16)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

C **(20 points) Find the complement rate for each discount in the given series of trade discounts. Then find the net price, using the complement method. Where a complement rate doesn't exist write a dash. (2.5 points for each correct answer)**

	List Price	Trade Discounts	Complement Rates			Net Price
			First	Second	Third	
9.	$1,800	40%, 20%	________	________	________	________
10.	$3,400	35%, 20%, 10%	________	________	________	________

____

Score for C (20)

D **(20 points) Find the complement rate for each discount in the given series of trade discounts. Then find the equivalent single discount rate, to the nearest $\frac{1}{10}$ of a percent. (2.5 points for each correct answer)**

	Trade Discounts	Complement Rates			Equivalent Single Discount Rates
		First	Second	Third	
11.	30%, 20%, 5%	________	________	________	________
12.	20%, 10%, 5%	________	________	________	________

____

Score for D (20)

E **(20 points) Solve each of the following business applications about trade discounts. Use either the discount method or the complement method. (10 points for each correct answer)**

13. Gifford Landscaping, Inc., purchased $425 worth of plants and $180 worth of soil and fertilizer from a garden supply wholesaler. The wholesaler gives Gifford a 20% trade discount on the plants and a 30% trade discount on the other items. Compute the net price that Gifford Landscaping will be required to pay. ______

14. Hackett Roofing Company is purchasing cedar shingles to reroof a house. The shingles have a list price of $11,820. The Kalman Roofing Supply gives Hackett the normal trade discount of 40%. In addition, Kalman gives Hackett two further trade discounts of 25% and 15% because of the large volume of business that the company has done with Kalman so far this year. What is Hackett's net price on the order of cedar shingles? ________

____

Score for E (20)

Assignment 7.2: Cash Discounts

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **4** **5**

A **(64 points) For the following problems, find the discount date, the due date, the amount of the cash discount, and the amount of the remittance. (2 points for each correct date and 6 points for each correct amount)**

1.	Terms:	3/5, n/25	Discount date:	________
	Invoice date:	May 27	Due date:	________
	Invoice amount:	$2,875.12	Discount amount:	________
			Remittance:	________

2.	Terms:	2-10, n-30	Discount date:	________
	Invoice date:	Mar. 28	Due date:	________
	Invoice amount:	$3,241.94	Discount amount:	________
	Returned goods:	$1,012.59	Remittance:	________

3.	Terms:	1.5/15, net 45	Discount date:	________
	Invoice date:	Aug. 20	Due date:	________
	Invoice amount:	$692.00	Discount amount:	________
	Freight:	$84.00	Remittance:	________

4.	Terms:	2.5/20, n/60	Discount date:	________
	Invoice date:	July 29	Due date:	________
	Invoice amount:	$1,645.55	Discount amount:	________
	Returned goods:	$498.75	Remittance:	________
	Freight:	$90.00		

Score for A (64)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

B **(16 points) For the following problems, find the discount date, the complement rate, and the amount of the remittance. (2 points for each date and rate; 4 points for each correct remittance)**

5. Terms:	2/10, n/35	Discount date:	________
Invoice date:	March 29	Complement rate:	________
Invoice amount:	$582.50	Remittance:	________

6. Terms:	2.5-20, net 30	Discount date:	________
Invoice date:	Aug. 19	Complement rate:	________
Invoice amount:	$3,424.50	Remittance:	________
Returned goods:	$797.38		
Freight:	$77.50		

____

Score for B (16)

C **(20 points) The following problems involve partial payments made within the discount period. Solve for the items indicated. (5 points for each correct answer)**

7. Terms:	4/5, n/20	Amount credited:	________
Invoice date:	Feb. 28	Remittance:	$600
Invoice amount:	$981.94	Unpaid balance:	________

8. Terms:	3/10, net 25	Amount credited:	________
Invoice date:	Feb. 12	Remittance:	$650
Invoice amount:	$967.27	Unpaid balance:	________
Returned goods:	$82.75		

____

Score for C (20)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

8

Markup

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1	Compute the variables in the basic markup formula.
Learning Objective 2	Compute the markup variables when the markup percent is based on cost.
Learning Objective 3	Compute markup percent based on cost.
Learning Objective 4	Compute the markup variables when the markup percent is based on selling price.
Learning Objective 5	Compute markup percent based on selling price.

Computing Markup Variables

Learning Objective 1

Compute the variables in the basic markup formula.

Some businesses manufacture products and sell them. Other businesses buy products from someone else and then resell them. Both types of businesses must sell their products for more than it costs to produce or purchase them. This price increase is called the **markup.**

Athletes' World is a chain of discount stores that sells sporting equipment and clothing. The store buys running shoes directly from a manufacturer. Suppose that the manufacturer charges $43.00 per pair for one particular type of running shoe. The prorated amount to deliver one pair to the store is $0.50. The total cost of the shoes, with delivery, is $43.50. $43.50 is called the **cost of goods sold,** or just the cost.

If Athletes' World sells the shoes for exactly the cost, $43.50, it will actually lose money on the sale. The store has many other expenses—such as rent, utilities, and salaries—that are not part of the cost of acquiring the shoes. Athletes' World must mark up the selling price far enough above the cost of the shoes to cover all these additional costs—and also leave some profit for the owners.

The total amount that Athletes' World marks up the selling price is called the **dollar markup.** (*Note:* Markup is expressed both in dollars and in percents. To eliminate confusion, in this book we use two separate terms: *dollar markup* and *markup percent*.)

Suppose that the accountants for Athletes' World estimate that $18.80 of additional expenses should be allocated to each pair of athletic shoes. Also, suppose that the store would like a profit of $16.00 on each pair of shoes. Then the total dollar markup that it should give the shoes is $18.80 + $16.00 = $34.80.

To determine the selling price of the shoes, Athletes' World adds the dollar markup to the cost of goods sold (cost), using the basic markup formula:

George Doyle/Getty Images

Selling price = Cost + Dollar markup = $43.50 + $34.80 = $78.30

Because the dollar markup is the difference between the selling price and the cost of goods sold, it is sometimes useful to rewrite the formula as

Dollar markup = Selling price − Cost = $78.30 − $43.50 = $34.80

Likewise, cost is the difference between selling price and dollar markup. Thus,

Cost = Selling price − Dollar markup = $78.30 − $34.80 = $43.50

CONCEPT CHECK 8.1

Compute the missing terms in the three markup formulas:

a. Cost = $384.39; Dollar markup = $195.50	Selling price = Cost + Dollar markup = $384.39 + $195.50 = $579.89
b. Cost = $154.40; Selling price = $392.12	Dollar markup = Selling price − Cost = $392.12 − $154.40 = $237.72
c. Dollar markup = $41.26; Selling price = $93.20	Cost = Selling price − Dollar markup = $93.20 − $41.26 = $51.94

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Computing Markup Based on Cost

Learning Objective 2

Compute the markup variables when the markup percent is based on cost.

In the example, Athletes' World computed its markup directly by determining its expenses and the desired profit. However, this method isn't practical when a business has hundreds or thousands of items. Allocating expenses and profit to each item would be too tedious. A more practical method is for the owner, an analyst, or an accountant to analyze prior sales of the company or a similar company. The analyst can look at the costs of goods, additional expenses, and desired profit to determine a percent to use to mark up various items, called the **markup percent.**

One company may use different markup percents for different types of items. For example, an appliance store often performs repair services and sells replacement parts for the appliances it sells. The store may have one markup percent for the actual appliance, a second markup percent for repair services, and a third markup percent for replacement parts.

In Chapter 5 on percents, we introduced three terms: rate, base, and percentage. In this chapter, rate is the *markup percent,* or **markup rate.** Percentage is the *dollar markup*. Determining the base is different because sometimes *cost* is the base and sometimes *selling price* is the base. For some businesses, cost is the more logical base for calculating dollar markup. However, calculating dollar markup based on selling price can be advantageous method for many retail stores.

The accountant for Athletes' World says that, in order to pay all expenses and have a reasonable profit, and based upon their cost of $43.50, the company's markup percent should be 80% of the cost. When the cost and the markup percent are known, the dollar markup and the selling price can be computed.

STEPS to Compute the Selling Price Based on Cost

1. Multiply the cost by the markup percent to get the dollar markup.
2. Add the dollar markup to the cost to get the selling price.

For Athletes' World's running shoes:

STEP 1 Dollar markup = Markup percent × Cost = 0.80 × $43.50 = $34.80

STEP 2 Selling price = Cost + Dollar markup = $43.50 + $34.80 = $78.30

EXAMPLE A

Using markup based on cost, what are the dollar markup and the selling price for merchandise that costs $60 and has a 35% markup?

STEP 1 Dollar markup = Markup percent × Cost = 0.35 × $60 = $21

STEP 2 Selling price = Cost + Dollar markup = $60 + $21 = $81

COMPUTING SELLING PRICE DIRECTLY FROM COST

When you know the cost and markup percent (based on cost), you can compute the selling price directly, without computing the dollar markup.

STEPS to Compute the Selling Price Directly from the Cost

1. Add the markup percent to 100%.
2. Multiply this sum by the cost to get the selling price.

EXAMPLE B

What is the selling price of a large camping tent that has a cost of $250 and a markup percent of 40% based on cost?

STEP 1 $100\% + \text{Markup percent} = 100\% + 40\% = 140\%$

STEP 2 $\text{Selling price} = (100\% + \text{Markup percent}) \times \text{Cost} = 1.40 \times \$250 = \$350$

COMPUTING COST DIRECTLY FROM SELLING PRICE

Likewise, you can use the reverse procedure to compute the cost directly from the selling price and the markup percent (based on cost), without computing the dollar markup.

STEPS to Compute the Cost Directly from the Selling Price

1. Add the markup percent to 100%.
2. Divide the selling price by this sum to get the cost.

EXAMPLE C

The selling price of a hiking vest is $65. The markup percent based on cost is 30%. Find the cost.

STEP 1 $100\% + \text{Markup percent} = 100\% + 30\% = 130\%$

STEP 2 $\text{Cost} = \text{Selling price} \div (100\% + \text{Markup percent}) = \$65 \div 1.30 = \$50$

You can always check your work in markup problems.

Cost is $50, and markup percent is 30%.

$\text{Dollar markup} = \text{Cost} \times \text{Markup percent} = \$50 \times 0.30 = \$15$

$\text{Selling Price} = \text{Cost} + \text{Dollar markup} = \$50 + \$15 = \$65$

It checks!

CONCEPT CHECK 8.2

Compute the required values when the markup percent is based on cost.

a. Cost = $1,240; Markup percent = 40% Find dollar markup, and then find selling price.	$\text{Dollar markup} = 0.40 \times \$1{,}240 = \$496$ $\text{Selling price} = \$1{,}240 + \$496 = \$1{,}736$
b. Cost = $330; Markup percent = 50% Find 100% + Markup percent, and then find selling price directly.	$100\% + \text{Markup percent} = 100\% + 50\% = 150\%$ $\text{Selling price} = 1.50 \times \$330 = \$495$
c. Selling price = $780; Markup percent = 25% Find 100% + Markup percent, and then find cost directly.	$100\% + \text{Markup percent} = 100\% + 25\% = 125\%$ $\text{Cost} = \$780 \div 1.25 = \$624$

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Computing Markup Percent Based on Cost

Learning Objective 3

Compute markup percent based on cost.

In the illustration for Athletes' World, the accountant determined that the markup percent needed to be 80% of cost, which meant that the selling price needed to be $78.30. However, management may simply decide to price the running shoes at $79.95. Now, the markup is no longer 80% of cost. The **markup percent based on cost** can be computed in two steps.

STEPS to Compute the Markup Percent Based on Cost

1. Subtract the cost from the selling price to get the dollar markup.
2. Divide the dollar markup by the cost to get the markup percent.

AP IMAGES

For the running shoes from Athletes' World, now priced at $79.95:

STEP 1 Dollar markup = Selling price − Cost = $79.95 − $43.50 = $36.45

STEP 2 Markup percent = Dollar markup ÷ Cost = $36.45 ÷ $43.50 = 0.838, or 83.8% (as a percent, rounded to one decimal place)

EXAMPLE D

What is the markup percent based on cost when the selling price of an exercise machine is $480 and the cost is $320?

STEP 1 Dollar markup = Selling price − Cost = $480 − $320 = $160

STEP 2 Markup percent = Dollar markup ÷ Cost = $160 ÷ $320 = 0.50, or 50%

EXAMPLE E

What is the markup percent based on cost when the dollar markup is already known to be $30 and the cost is $75? (Step 1 is not necessary.)

STEP 2 Markup percent = Dollar markup ÷ Cost = $30 ÷ $75 = 0.40, or 40%

CONCEPT CHECK 8.3

Cost = $1,600; Selling price = $2,560 Find the markup percent based on cost.	Dollar markup = $2,560 − $1,600 = $960 Markup percent = $960 ÷ $1,600 = 0.60, or 60%

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 8.1.

Computing Markup Based on Selling Price

Learning Objective 4

Compute the markup variables when the markup percent is based on selling price.

Although many businesses base their markup on cost, many others, often retailers, commonly use a percent of selling price—that is, they use **markup based on selling price.** That doesn't mean that selling price is determined without considering cost or even before considering cost. It merely means that the dollar markup is computed by multiplying the markup percent by the selling price.

Many individuals start their own business when they observe another successful business selling a product. New owners believe that they can acquire the product, pay all expenses, and still sell it for less than the existing business is selling its product. Instead of basing the selling price on costs, expenses, and satisfactory profit, the new owners could price their product just under the competition's price. They base their selling price on the competition's selling price rather than marking up from their own costs.

Basing markup calculations on selling price can be an advantage in a retail store where the salesperson or sales manager has the authority to lower the sales price immediately in order to make a sale. In a larger business, these persons may not even know the exact cost.

STEPS to Compute the Cost Based on Selling Price

1. Multiply the selling price by the markup percent to get the dollar markup.
2. Subtract the dollar markup from the selling price to get the cost.

EXAMPLE F

Rosa Buckles enters Mel's Appliance Store to buy a washing machine. She finds one with a selling price of $400. She knows that she can buy it for $375 at another store, but she prefers this store because of its reputation for good service. She tells the sales manager, "I would buy it for $375." The manager, Mike Haynes, knows that the markup percent is 40% based on selling price. Based on $400, what was Mike's cost for the washing machine?

STEP 1 Dollar markup = Markup percent × Selling price = 0.40 × $400 = $160

STEP 2 Cost = Selling price − Dollar markup = $400 − $160 = $240

Mike can then decide whether he prefers a sale for which he gets a $135 markup or no sale at all for which he was hoping to have a $160 markup. Although it would be helpful if Mike knew how much markup he would need to pay for expenses, at least he would know the cost.

EXAMPLE G

Find the dollar markup and the cost of microwave oven that sells for $140 and has a markup percent that is 35% based on selling price.

STEP 1 Dollar markup = Markup percent × Selling price = 0.35 × $140 = $49

STEP 2 Cost = Selling price − Dollar markup = $140 − $49 = $91

COMPUTING COST DIRECTLY FROM SELLING PRICE

When you know the selling price and the markup percent (based on selling price), you can compute the cost directly, wihout computing the dollar markup.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

STEPS to Compute the Cost Directly from the Selling Price

1. Subtract the markup percent from 100%.
2. Multiply this difference by the selling price to get the cost.

EXAMPLE H

What is the cost of a clothes dryer that has a selling price of \$340 and a markup percent of 60% based on selling price?

STEP 1 100% − Markup percent = 100% − 60% = 40%

STEP 2 Cost = (100% − Markup percent) × Selling price = 0.40 × \$340 = \$136

COMPUTING SELLING PRICE DIRECTLY FROM COST

Likewise, you can use the reverse procedure to compute the selling price directly from the cost and the markup percent (based on selling price), without computing the dollar markup.

STEPS to Compute the Selling Price Directly from the Cost

1. Subtract the markup percent from 100%.
2. Divide the cost by this difference to get the selling price.

EXAMPLE I

The cost of a new mountain bike is \$210. The markup percent based on selling price is 40%. Find the selling price.

STEP 1 100% − Markup percent = 100% − 40% = 60%

STEP 2 Selling price = Cost ÷ (100% − Markup percent) = \$210 ÷ 0.60 = \$350

You can always check your work in markup problems:

Selling price is \$350, and markup percent is 40% based on selling price.

Dollar markup = Markup percent × Selling price = 0.40 × \$350 = \$140

Cost = Selling price − Dollar markup = \$350 − \$140 = \$210

It checks!

©iStock.Com/David Chadwick

CONCEPT CHECK 8.4

Compute the required values when the markup percent is based on selling price.

a. Selling price = \$750; Markup percent = 50% Find dollar markup, and then find cost.	Dollar markup = 0.50 × \$750 = \$375 Cost = \$750 − \$375 = \$375
b. Selling price = \$40; Markup percent = 30% Find 100% − Markup percent, and then find cost directly.	100% − Markup percent = 100% − 30% = 70% Cost = 0.70 × \$40 = \$28
c. Cost = \$150; Markup percent = 40% Find 100% − Markup percent, and then find selling price directly.	100% − Markup percent = 100% − 40% = 60% Selling price = \$150 ÷ 0.60 = \$250

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Computing Markup Percent Based on Selling Price

Learning Objective 5

Compute markup percent based on selling price.

In the illustration for Athletes' World, the pair of running shoes had a cost of \$43.50. Management had decided that the selling price of the running shoes should be \$79.95. The markup percent based on selling price can be calculated in two steps.

STEPS to Compute the Markup Percent from the Selling Price

1. Subtract the cost from the selling price to get the dollar markup.
2. Divide the dollar markup by the selling price to get the markup percent.

For Athletes' World's running shoes,

STEP 1 Dollar markup = Selling price − Cost = \$79.95 − \$43.50 = \$36.45

STEP 2 Markup percent = Dollar markup ÷ Selling price = \$36.45 ÷ \$79.95 = 0.456, or 45.6% (as a percent, rounded to one decimal place)

EXAMPLE J

What is the markup percent based on selling price when the selling price is \$80 and the cost is \$50?

STEP 1 Dollar markup = Selling price − Cost = \$80 − \$50 = \$30

STEP 2 Markup percent = Dollar markup ÷ Selling price = \$30 ÷ \$80 = 0.375, or 37.5%

EXAMPLE K

What is the markup percent based on selling price when the dollar markup is already known to be \$150 and the selling price is \$375? (Step 1 is not necessary.)

STEP 2 Markup percent = Dollar markup ÷ Selling price = \$150 ÷ \$375 = 0.40, or 40%

CONCEPT CHECK 8.5

Cost = \$1,600; Selling price = \$2,560 Find the markup percent based on selling price.	Dollar markup = \$2,560 − \$1,600 = \$960 Markup percent = \$960 ÷ \$2,560 = 0.375, or 37.5%

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 8.2.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter Terms for Review

cost of goods sold

dollar markup

markup

markup based on selling price

markup percent

markup percent based on cost

markup rate

Try Microsoft® Excel

Try working the problems using the Microsoft Excel templates found on the companion website. Solutions for the problems are also shown on the companion website.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
8.1 Compute the variables in the basic markup formula.	Find the missing variables in the basic markup formula: 1. Cost = \$231.50; Dollar markup = \$109.12 2. Cost = \$34.20; Selling price = \$59.95 3. Dollar markup = \$475; Selling price = \$900
8.2 Compute the markup variables when the markup percent is based on cost.	4. Cost = \$800; Markup percent = 35% a. Find the dollar markup and then find the selling price. b. Find 100% + Markup percent, and then find the selling price. 5. Selling price = \$2,100; Markup percent = 40% Find 100% + Markup percent, and then find the cost.
8.3 Compute the markup percent based on cost.	6. Cost = \$80; Selling price = \$108 Find the markup percent based on cost.
8.4 Compute the markup variables when the markup percent is based on selling price.	7. Selling price = \$820; Markup percent = 25% a. Find the dollar markup and then find the cost. b. Find 100% − Markup percent and then find the cost. 8. Cost = \$1,350; Markup percent = 40% Find 100% − Markup percent, and then find the selling price.
8.5 Compute the markup percent based on selling price.	9. Cost = \$825; Selling price = \$1,100 Find the markup percent based on the selling price.

Answers: **1.** Selling price = \$340.62 **2.** Dollar markup = \$25.75 **3.** Cost = \$425 **4.** a. \$280; \$1,080 b. 135%; \$1,080
5. 140%; \$1,500 **6.** 35% **7.** a. \$205; \$615 b. 75%; \$615 **8.** 60%; \$2,250 **9.** 25%

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 8

1 Find the missing terms.

	Cost of Goods Sold	Dollar Markup	Selling Price		Cost of Goods Sold	Dollar Markup	Selling Price
a.	$28.90	$14.45	_______	**c.**	_______	$1,405	$2,975
b.	$188.12	_______	$399.95	**d.**	$426.25	_______	$998.88

In problems 2–9, the markup percent is based on cost. Find the missing terms. Round all percents to the nearest one tenth of a percent.

	Cost	Markup Percent	Dollar Markup	Selling Price		Cost	Markup Percent	100% + Markup Percent	Selling Price
2	$500	50%	**a.** _______	**b.** _______	4	$225	60%	**a.** _______	**b.** _______
3	$36	65%	**a.** _______	**b.** _______	5	$240	75%	**a.** _______	**b.** _______

	Selling Price	Markup Percent	100% + Markup Percent	Cost		Selling Price	Cost	Dollar Markup	Markup Percent
6	$1,012	100%	**a.** _______	**b.** _______	8	$540	$240	**a.** _______	**b.** _______
7	$98	40%	**a.** _______	**b.** _______	9	$2,000	$1,600	**a.** _______	**b.** _______

In problems 10–17 the markup percent is based on selling price. Find the missing terms. Round all percents to the nearest one tenth of a percent.

	Selling Price	Markup Percent	Dollar Markup	Cost		Selling Price	Markup Percent	100% − Markup Percent	Cost
10	$240	30%	**a.** _______	**b.** _______	12	$1,240	40%	**a.** _______	**b.** _______
11	$144	25%	**a.** _______	**b.** _______	13	$528	75%	**a.** _______	**b.** _______

	Cost	Markup Percent	100% − Markup Percent	Selling Price		Selling Price	Cost	Dollar Markup	Markup Percent
14	$960	60%	**a.** _______	**b.** _______	16	$800	$480	**a.** _______	**b.** _______
15	$36	25%	**a.** _______	**b.** _______	17	$3,750	$1,500	**a.** _______	**b.** _______

18 Carol Wilson sells high-end toys, specializing in all wooden toys for preschool children. She pays $40 for a toy truck. Carol sells the toy truck for $50. a. Find the dollar markup. _______ b. Find the markup percent based on cost. _______ c. Find the markup percent based on selling price. _______

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Notes

Assignment 8.1: Markup Based on Cost

Name ________________________________

Date ________________ Score ________________

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **3**

A **(12 points) Calculate the missing terms. (2 points for each correct answer)**

	Cost	Dollar Markup	Selling Price		Cost	Dollar Markup	Selling Price
1.	$480.70	$175.25	________	**2.**	$51.37	________	$74.95
3.	________	$374.50	$829.98	**4.**	$273.40	$93.55	________
5.	$629.00	________	$909.99	**6.**	________	$415.50	$799.49

____

Score for A (12)

B **(32 points) In the following problems, the markup percent is based on *cost*. Find the missing terms. (2 points for each correct answer)**

	Cost	Markup Percent	Dollar Markup	Selling Price		Cost	Markup Percent	100% + Markup Percent	Selling Price
7.	$850	40%	________	________	**8.**	$780	140%	________	________
9.	$1,500	70%	________	________	**10.**	$240	100%	________	________
11.	$640	75%	________	________	**12.**	$1,740	125%	________	________
13.	$2,500	90%	________	________	**14.**	$150	210%	________	________

____

Score for B (32)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

C **(32 points) In the following problems, the markup percent is based on cost. Find the missing terms. Round all percents to the nearest tenth of a percent. (2 points for each correct answer)**

	Selling Price	Markup Percent	100% + Markup Percent	Cost		Selling Price	Cost	Dollar Markup	Markup Percent
15.	$1,240	60%	________	________	**16.**	$252	$120	________	________
17.	$110	120%	________	________	**18.**	$1,683	$1,100	________	________
19.	$594	35%	________	________	**20.**	$679	$388	________	________
21.	$2,250	50%	________	________	**22.**	$600	$240	________	________

____

Score for C (32)

D **(24 points) Business Applications. In the following problems, the markup percent is based on cost. Round all percents to the nearest tenth of a percent. (3 points for each correct answer)**

23. Patty Wales owns a firm that sells office furniture to regional businesses. One set of six matched pieces costs Patty $2,100. To cover her own business expenses and allow a reasonable profit, Patty marks up this set by 75% of the cost. Find the dollar markup and the selling price.

Dollar markup ________

Selling price ________

24. Lew Devlin manufactures a handheld heart monitoring device. He sells it for $960, which represents a markup of 275% on his production cost. Lew marks it up this much to cover additional business expenses and profit as well as his product development. Find Lew's production cost and the dollar markup.

Cost ________

Dollar markup ________

25. Digital Alarm Company sells burglar and fire alarm systems for homes and small businesses. One new system costs Digital $720. Digital marks up the alarm system by $396. Find the selling price, and find the markup percent based on cost.

Selling price ________

Markup percent ________

26. After Buzz Landles drove his pickup truck in a desert race, the truck needed a new motor. A local mechanic charged Buzz $3,600 for a rebuilt motor that had cost the mechanic $2,250. All labor was additional. Compute the dollar markup and the markup percent based on the cost of the rebuilt motor.

Dollar markup ________

Markup percent ________

____

Score for D (24)

Assignment 8.2: Markup Based on Selling Price

Name ________________________________

Date ______________ Score ______________

Learning Objectives **1** **4** **5**

A **(12 points) Calculate the missing terms. (2 points for each correct answer)**

Cost	Dollar Markup	Selling Price	Cost	Dollar Markup	Selling Price
1. $67.34	$82.15	________	**2.** $274.47	________	$532.98
3. ________	$840	$2,659	**4.** $632.75	$325.40	________
5. $62.50	________	$99.99	**6.** ________	$483.27	$749.59

____
Score for A (12)

B **(32 points) In the following problems, the markup percent is based on selling price. Find the missing terms. (2 points for each correct answer)**

Selling Price	Markup Percent	Dollar Markup	Cost	Selling Price	Markup Percent	100% − Markup Percent	Cost
7. $120	55%	________	________	**8.** $150	25%	________	________
9. $360	40%	________	________	**10.** $1,248	65%	________	________
11. $1,998	50%	________	________	**12.** $75	70%	________	________
13. $824	60%	________	________	**14.** $2,260	35%	________	________

____
Score for B (32)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

C **(32 points) In the following problems, the markup percent is based on selling price. Find the missing terms. (2 points for each correct answer)**

	Cost	Markup Percent	100% − Markup Percent	Selling Price		Selling Price	Cost	Dollar Markup	Markup Percent
15.	$855	40%	________	________	**16.**	$1,040	$676	________	________
17.	$143	45%	________	________	**18.**	$156	$39	________	________
19.	$2,520	30%	________	________	**20.**	$1,400	$924	________	________
21.	$533	35%	________	________	**22.**	$640	$256	________	________

____
Score for C (32)

D **(24 points) Business Applications. In the following problems, the markup percent is based on selling price. Round all percents to the nearest tenth of a percent. (3 points for each correct answer)**

23. At the start of spring, Portola Hardware features garden equipment specials. One rototiller has a selling price of $348. The markup to cover expenses and profit is 50% based on the selling price. Calculate the dollar markup and the cost.

Dollar markup ________

Cost ________

24. Lakefront Cycling is a retail bicycle store. For last year's summer racing season, Lakefront purchased one new model of racing bike to use in a special promotion. The bicycles cost $366 each. For the promotion, Lakefront's markup was 40% of the selling price. Find the selling price and the dollar markup.

Selling price ________

Dollar markup ________

25. Blenz TV & Stereo sells telephones, along with televisions and stereos. A two-line cordless telephone set with a speaker phone base, four extra remote handsets, and an answering machine is priced at $182.40. This price includes a markup of $109.44. If this set actually sells for $182.40, what are the cost and the markup percent based on selling price?

Cost ________

Markup percent ________

26. Patio World, a volume discount store, purchased a large quantity of cedar picnic chairs for $66 each. Seating pads were included in the price. To sell the chairs and pads quickly, the store priced the chairs at $110 each. Compute the dollar markup and the markup percent based on selling price.

Dollar markup ________

Markup percent ________

____
Score for D (24)

Notes

Part 3

Accounting Applications

9 Banking
10 Payroll Records
11 Taxes
12 Insurance

Banking

9

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1 Maintain a checking account.

Learning Objective 2 Reconcile a bank statement with a checkbook balance.

Using Deposit Slips and Bank Checks

Learning Objective 1

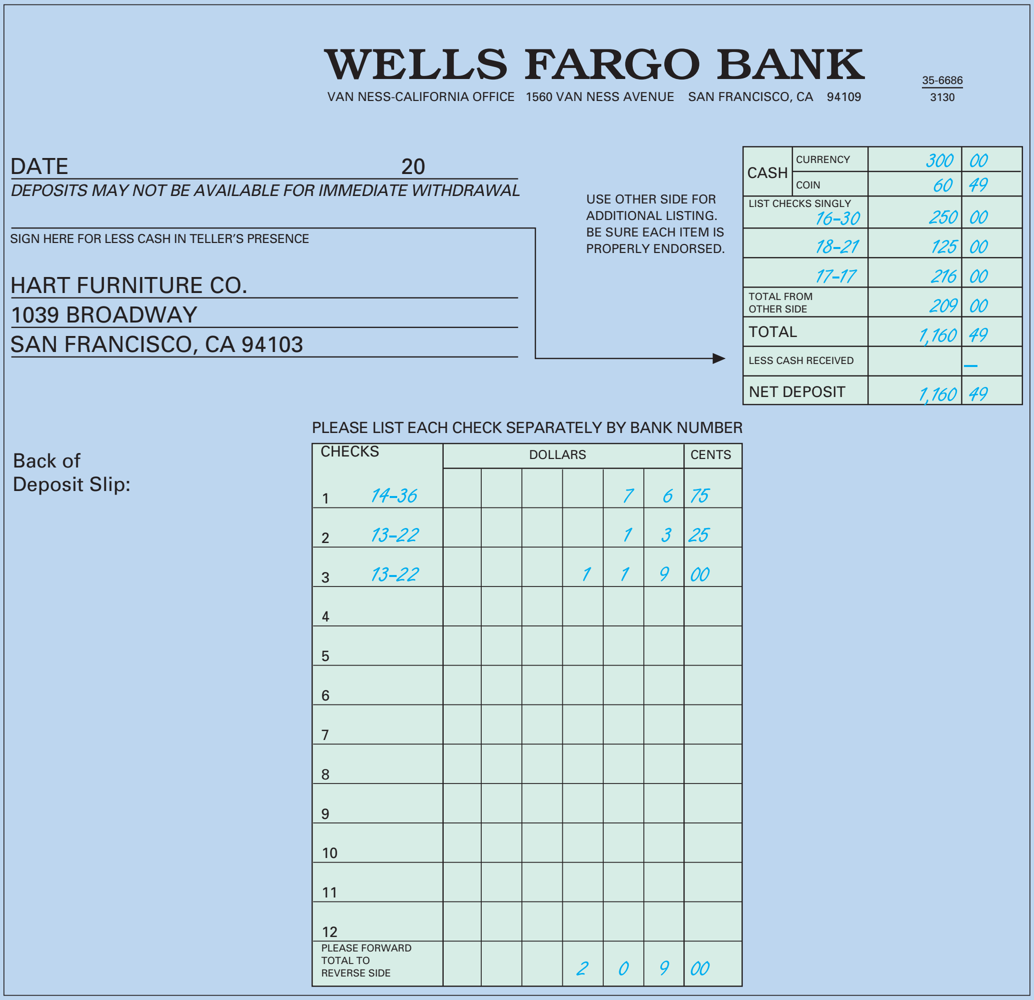
Maintain a checking account.

Bank customers usually make deposits to their checking accounts by using **deposit slips.** Figure 9-1 shows a typical deposit slip, with spaces to list cash and checks being deposited.

In most businesses, each deposit will include a number of checks. Each check is individually listed on each deposit slip. Deposits are also made electronically. Many employees have their pay electronically transmitted directly from their employer's bank accounts to their individual bank accounts.

A bank **check** is a written order directing the bank to pay a certain sum to a designated party, called the **payee.** Banks normally provide checkbooks to their customers. Figure 9-2 shows a typical business check. These usually come in a binder with three checks on each page. Figure 9-3 shows a typical bank check, with the stub on the top used for individual personal checks.

Figure 9-1 Deposit Slip



WELLS FARGO BANK

VAN NESS-CALIFORNIA OFFICE 1560 VAN NESS AVENUE SAN FRANCISCO, CA 94109

35-6686
3130

DATE 20

DEPOSITS MAY NOT BE AVAILABLE FOR IMMEDIATE WITHDRAWAL

SIGN HERE FOR LESS CASH IN TELLER'S PRESENCE

HART FURNITURE CO.
1039 BROADWAY
SAN FRANCISCO, CA 94103

USE OTHER SIDE FOR ADDITIONAL LISTING. BE SURE EACH ITEM IS PROPERLY ENDORSED.

CASH	CURRENCY	300	00
	COIN	60	49
LIST CHECKS SINGLY	16-30	250	00
	18-21	125	00
	17-17	216	00
TOTAL FROM OTHER SIDE		209	00
TOTAL		1,160	49
LESS CASH RECEIVED			—
NET DEPOSIT		1,160	49

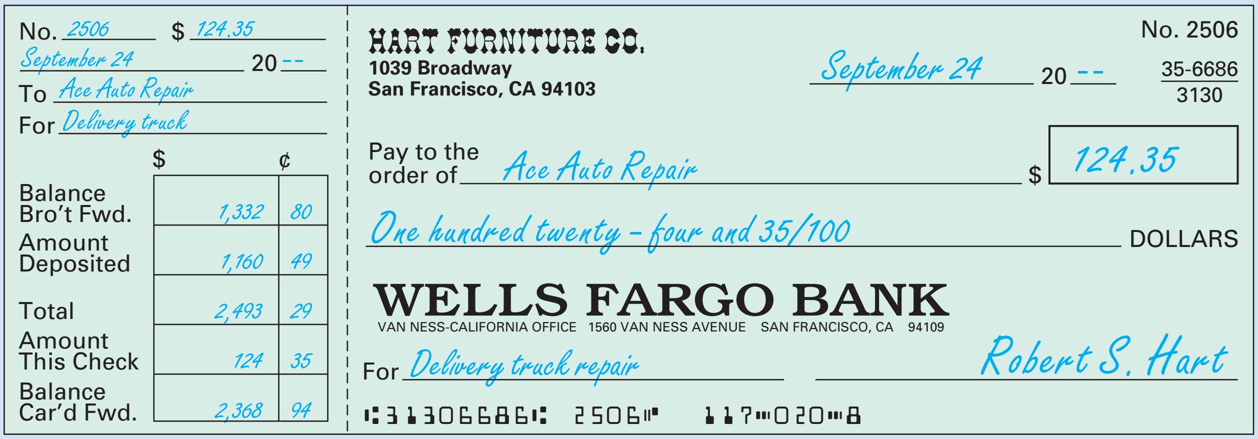
Back of Deposit Slip:

PLEASE LIST EACH CHECK SEPARATELY BY BANK NUMBER

CHECKS		DOLLARS						CENTS
1	14-36					7	6	75
2	13-22					1	3	25
3	13-22				1	1	9	00
4								
5								
6								
7								
8								
9								
10								
11								
12								
PLEASE FORWARD TOTAL TO REVERSE SIDE					2	0	9	00

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Figure 9-2 Check with Check Stub on Left



No. 2506 $ 124.35
September 24 20 --
To Ace Auto Repair
For Delivery truck

	$	¢
Balance Bro't Fwd.	1,332	80
Amount Deposited	1,160	49
Total	2,493	29
Amount This Check	124	35
Balance Car'd Fwd.	2,368	94

HART FURNITURE CO.
1039 Broadway
San Francisco, CA 94103

No. 2506
September 24 20 --
35-6686
3130

Pay to the order of Ace Auto Repair $ 124.35
One hundred twenty-four and 35/100 DOLLARS

WELLS FARGO BANK
VAN NESS-CALIFORNIA OFFICE 1560 VAN NESS AVENUE SAN FRANCISCO, CA 94109

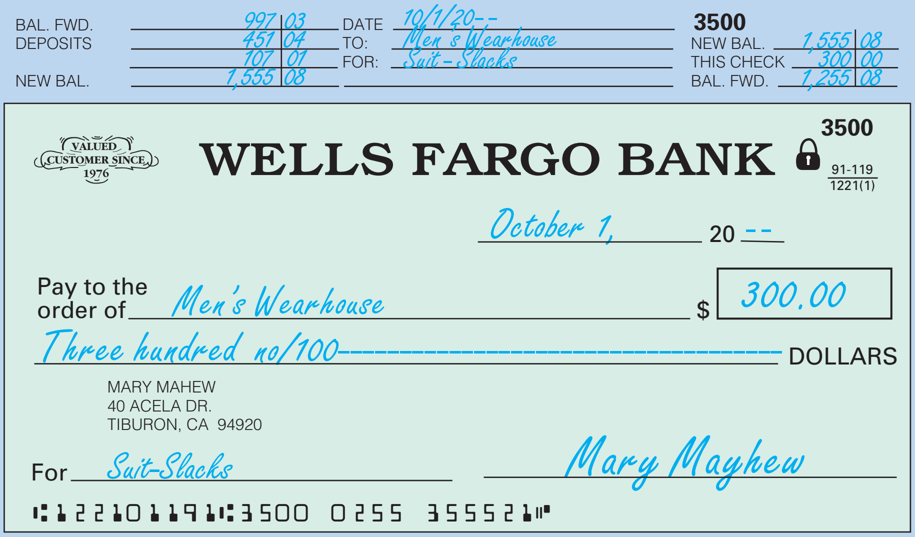
For Delivery truck repair
Robert S. Hart

⑆313066861⑆ 2506⑈ 117⑉020⑉8

Today, many bank transactions are completed electronically. Funds that are transmitted electronically, primarily via computers, are called **electronic fund transfers (EFTs).** They include **automatic teller machine (ATM)** and computer-generated transactions by which customers can check their balances, make deposits, transfer funds between accounts, make payments and withdraw funds from their accounts using the ATM machine or their personal computer. Computer programs also initiate many electronic fund transfers. These transactions are processed through the Automated Clearing House Association and include direct deposits of payroll, government, and other payments specified for direct deposit.

Inti St. Clair/Photodisc/Getty Images

Figure 9-3 Check with Check Stub on Top



BAL. FWD.	997	03
DEPOSITS	451	04
	107	01
NEW BAL.	1,555	08

DATE 10/1/20--
TO: Men's Wearhouse
FOR: Suit-Slacks

3500

NEW BAL.	1,555	08
THIS CHECK	300	00
BAL. FWD.	1,255	08

VALUED CUSTOMER SINCE 1976

WELLS FARGO BANK

3500
91-119
1221(1)

October 1, 20 --

Pay to the order of Men's Wearhouse $ 300.00
Three hundred no/100------------------------------------ DOLLARS

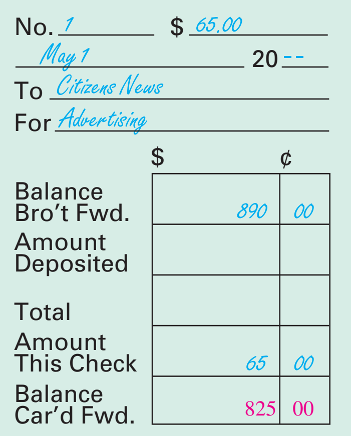
MARY MAHEW
40 ACELA DR.
TIBURON, CA 94920

For Suit-Slacks
Mary Mayhew

⑆122101191⑆3500 0255 355521⑈

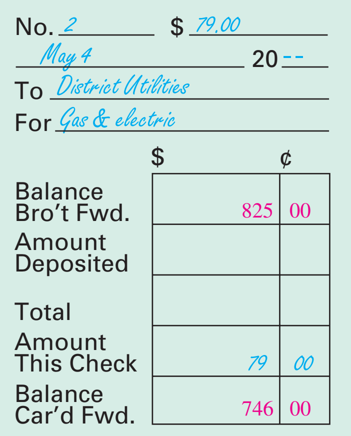
CONCEPT CHECK 9.1

Fill in the total (as necessary) and balance on each check stub. Carry each balance forward to the next stub.



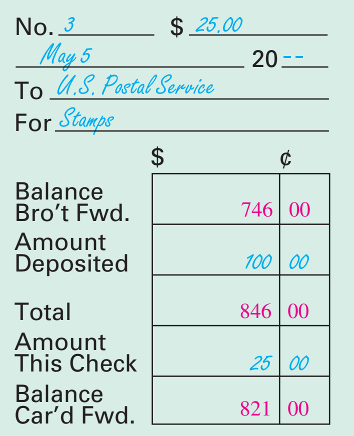
No. 1 $ 65.00
May 1 20 --
To Citizens News
For Advertising

	$	¢
Balance Bro't Fwd.	890	00
Amount Deposited		
Total		
Amount This Check	65	00
Balance Car'd Fwd.	825	00



No. 2 $ 79.00
May 4 20 --
To District Utilities
For Gas & electric

	$	¢
Balance Bro't Fwd.	825	00
Amount Deposited		
Total		
Amount This Check	79	00
Balance Car'd Fwd.	746	00



No. 3 $ 25.00
May 5 20 --
To U.S. Postal Service
For Stamps

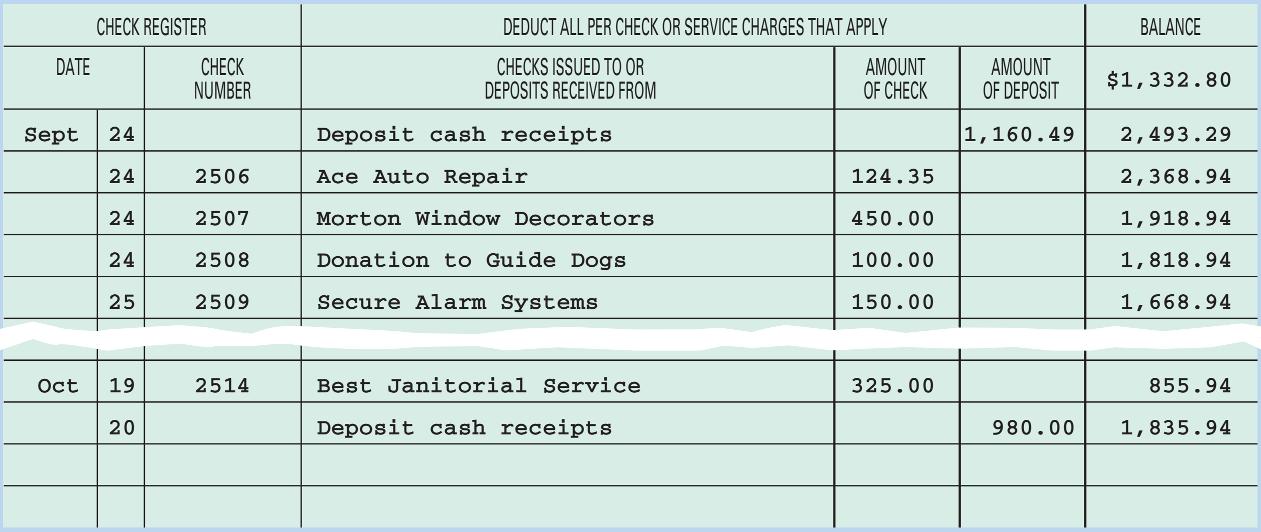
	$	¢
Balance Bro't Fwd.	746	00
Amount Deposited	100	00
Total	846	00
Amount This Check	25	00
Balance Car'd Fwd.	821	00

Using Checkbooks and Check Registers

A bank **checkbook** provides check stubs or a special page on which to record deposits, withdrawals, check numbers, dates, check amounts, other additions and subtractions, and account balances.

Figure 9-2 shows that check number 2506 was written against the account of Hart Furniture Co. on September 24 to Ace Auto Repair. The check was for $124.35 for repairs

Figure 9-4 Check Register



CHECK REGISTER			DEDUCT ALL PER CHECK OR SERVICE CHARGES THAT APPLY			BALANCE
DATE		CHECK NUMBER	CHECKS ISSUED TO OR DEPOSITS RECEIVED FROM	AMOUNT OF CHECK	AMOUNT OF DEPOSIT	$1,332.80
Sept	24		Deposit cash receipts		1,160.49	2,493.29
	24	2506	Ace Auto Repair	124.35		2,368.94
	24	2507	Morton Window Decorators	450.00		1,918.94
	24	2508	Donation to Guide Dogs	100.00		1,818.94
	25	2509	Secure Alarm Systems	150.00		1,668.94
Oct	19	2514	Best Janitorial Service	325.00		855.94
	20		Deposit cash receipts		980.00	1,835.94

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

to the delivery truck. The stub shows a balance brought forward of $1,332.80, a deposit on September 24 of $1,160.49, the amount of this check ($124.35), and the available balance carried forward of $2,368.94.

Today, most small businesses and many individuals use a **check register.** Like a check stub, a check register provides a place to record information about each bank transaction. Figure 9-4 shows a typical check register. Note that a continuous balance is maintained.

CONCEPT CHECK 9.2

In this check register, fill in the cash balance resulting from each transaction.

CHECK REGISTER			DEDUCT ALL PER CHECK OR SERVICE CHARGES THAT APPLY			BALANCE
DATE		CHECK NUMBER	CHECKS ISSUED TO OR DEPOSITS RECEIVED FROM	AMOUNT OF CHECK	AMOUNT OF DEPOSIT	$520.42
Mar	27	123	Replenish petty cash	$ 65.20		455.22
	31	124	Jiffy Janitorial Service	150.00		305.22
Apr	01	125	Sun County Water District	96.72		208.50
	03	-	Deposit weekly receipts		$2,470.80	2,679.30
	03	126	Midtown Mortgage Co.	835.20		1,844.10
	03	127	Sun Gas and Electric Co.	72.18		1,771.92
	04	128	Midtown Weekly Advertiser	32.80		1,739.12
	04	129	Trash Disposal, Inc.	60.00		1,679.12
	04	130	Pacific Plumbing Supplies	906.97		772.15
	10	-	Deposit weekly receipts		2,942.50	3,714.65

Reconciling Bank Statements

Learning Objective 2

Reconcile a bank statement with a checkbook balance.

Checking account customers receive an electronic or a printed **bank statement** every month. The bank statement shows an opening balance; deposits and credits, including EFTs; checks paid; withdrawals, including EFTs; service charges; general information about the account; and the balance at the end of the period. In addition, most banks now provide electronic banking that allows you to view your current account activity and bank statement at any time. Figure 9-5 shows a typical bank statement.

The balance shown in your checkbook or check register is usually different from the balance shown on the bank statement. Some of the items that cause this difference are as follows:

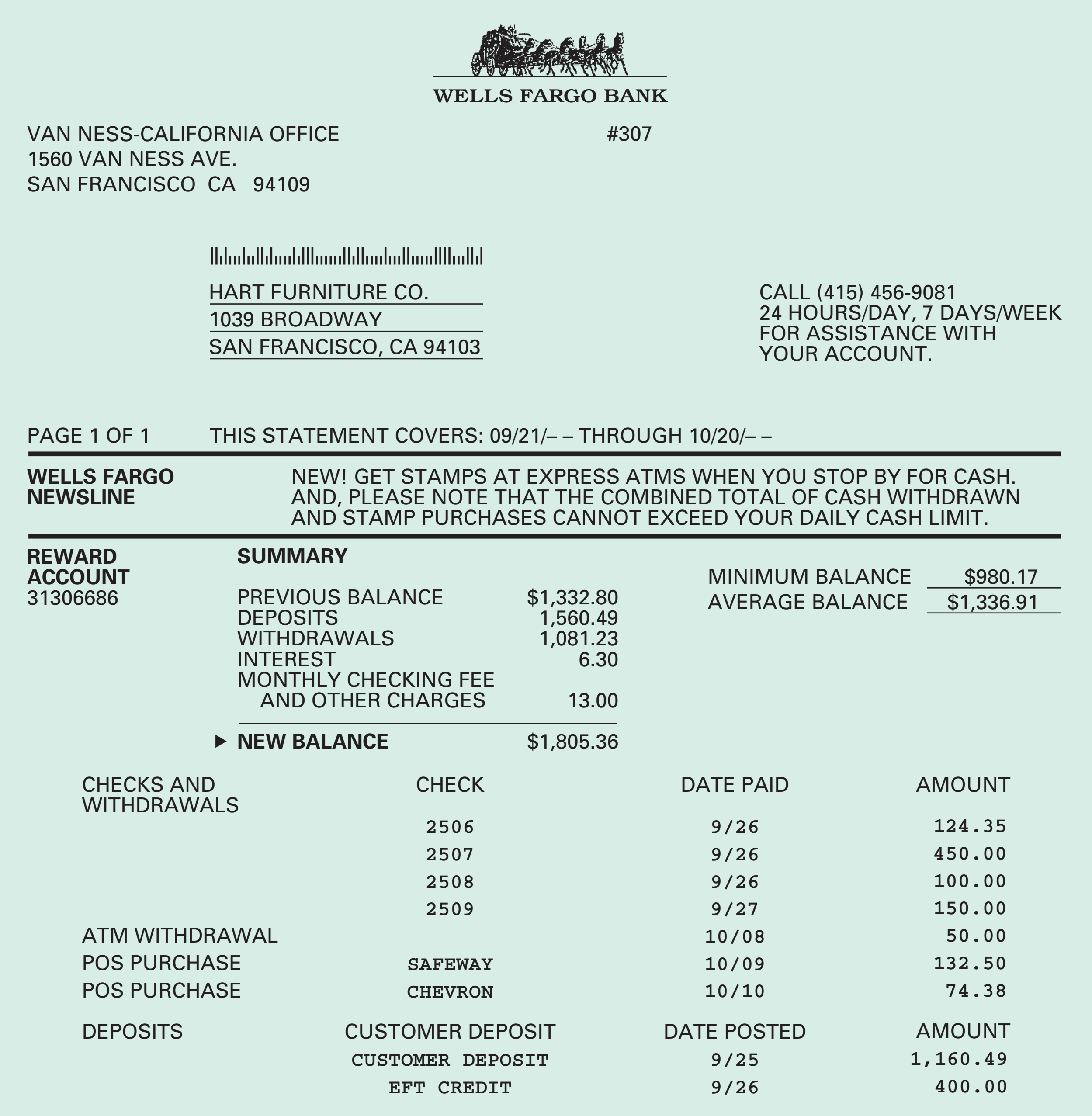
An **outstanding check** is one that has been written but hasn't yet cleared the bank. Almost always you will have written and recorded some checks that haven't yet been presented to or processed by the bank for payment and charged to the customer's account.

A **bank charge** is a fee for services performed by the bank. At the time the bank statement is made up, your account may have been charged for bank service fees, printing checks, extra copies of statements, wired funds, traveler's checks, cashier's checks, safe-deposit box rentals, bad checks returned, or EFTs that you haven't yet recorded. These charges would therefore not yet be deducted from your checkbook or check register balance.

Banking
Credit
Checking
Savings

©iStock.Com/Martin McCarthy

Figure 9-5 Bank Statement



WELLS FARGO BANK

VAN NESS-CALIFORNIA OFFICE
1560 VAN NESS AVE.
SAN FRANCISCO CA 94109

#307

HART FURNITURE CO.
1039 BROADWAY
SAN FRANCISCO, CA 94103

CALL (415) 456-9081
24 HOURS/DAY, 7 DAYS/WEEK
FOR ASSISTANCE WITH
YOUR ACCOUNT.

PAGE 1 OF 1 THIS STATEMENT COVERS: 09/21/– – THROUGH 10/20/– –

WELLS FARGO NEWSLINE NEW! GET STAMPS AT EXPRESS ATMS WHEN YOU STOP BY FOR CASH. AND, PLEASE NOTE THAT THE COMBINED TOTAL OF CASH WITHDRAWN AND STAMP PURCHASES CANNOT EXCEED YOUR DAILY CASH LIMIT.

REWARD ACCOUNT
31306686

SUMMARY

PREVIOUS BALANCE	$1,332.80
DEPOSITS	1,560.49
WITHDRAWALS	1,081.23
INTEREST	6.30
MONTHLY CHECKING FEE AND OTHER CHARGES	13.00
▶ **NEW BALANCE**	$1,805.36

MINIMUM BALANCE	$980.17
AVERAGE BALANCE	$1,336.91

CHECKS AND WITHDRAWALS	CHECK	DATE PAID	AMOUNT
	2506	9/26	124.35
	2507	9/26	450.00
	2508	9/26	100.00
	2509	9/27	150.00
ATM WITHDRAWAL		10/08	50.00
POS PURCHASE	SAFEWAY	10/09	132.50
POS PURCHASE	CHEVRON	10/10	74.38

DEPOSITS	CUSTOMER DEPOSIT	DATE POSTED	AMOUNT
	CUSTOMER DEPOSIT	9/25	1,160.49
	EFT CREDIT	9/26	400.00

A **debit card** (sometimes referred to as a "check card") is a plastic card that is used much like a bank check or cash where the amount of a purchase, ATM withdrawal, or other debit use is instantly deducted from the bank account. These **POS (Point of Sale)** transactions are posted to the bank account immediately and must be considered for daily and monthly reconciliations.

A **credit** is a deposit or addition to a bank account. In many cases, the bank will have credited your account for an item such as an EFT deposited into the account or interest earned on the account. You, the customer, don't know the amount of these credits until the bank statement arrives, so the credits haven't yet been entered in your checkbook or check register.

An **outstanding deposit** is a credit that hasn't yet been recorded by the bank. A deposit that you made near the end of the statement period may have been recorded in your checkbook or check register but not recorded by the bank in time to appear on the statement.

Because these items cause a difference between the bank statement balance and your checkbook or check register balance, you should always reconcile the two balances immediately upon receipt of the statement.

To start the reconciliation, compare the check stubs or check register, all deposit slips, and any company records of ATM transactions with the bank statement. Such a comparison is called a **reconciliation of the bank balance.**

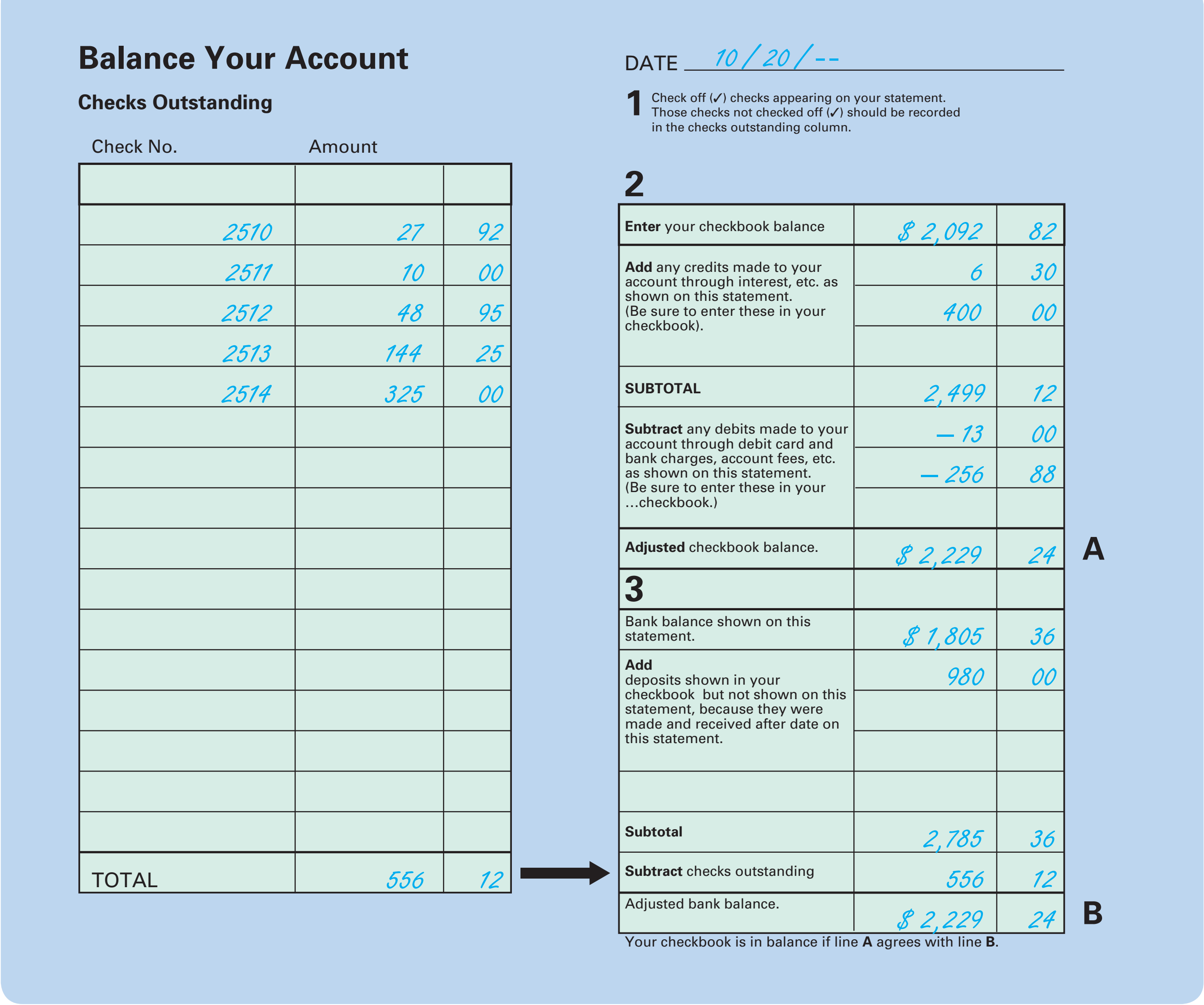
When Hart Furniture Company received its monthly bank statement, the bookkeeper noted that the ending balance was $1,805.36 but that the balance in the company checkbook was $2092.82. To determine the correct balance, the bookkeeper noted the following differences:

1. An EFT credit for $400 had been made to the account but not recorded by Hart.
2. A bank service charge of $13 had been subtracted from Hart's account by the bank. Three ATM debit card charges ($50; $132.50; $74.38) with a total of $256.88 had been subtracted from the account by the bank.
3. Interest earnings of $6.30 had been added to Hart's account.
4. A deposit on October 20 of $980 had not yet been recorded by the bank.
5. Checks for $27.92, $10, $48.95, $144.25, and $325 had not yet been processed and deducted by the bank.

Most bank statements have printed on the back of the statement a form that can be used to quickly and easily reconcile the customer's checkbook or check register balance with the statement balance. Figure 9-6 shows this form as completed by the Hart Furniture bookkeeper using the information just noted. Note that the adjusted checkbook balance and the adjusted bank balance now agree, showing the correct cash balance of $2,229.24.

DIGITAL VISION/GETTY IMAGES

Figure 9-6 Reconciliation Form



Balance Your Account

DATE 10/20/--

Checks Outstanding

Check No.	Amount	
2510	27	92
2511	10	00
2512	48	95
2513	144	25
2514	325	00
TOTAL	556	12

1 Check off (✓) checks appearing on your statement. Those checks not checked off (✓) should be recorded in the checks outstanding column.

2

Enter your checkbook balance	$ 2,092	82	
Add any credits made to your account through interest, etc. as shown on this statement. (Be sure to enter these in your checkbook).	6	30	
	400	00	
SUBTOTAL	2,499	12	
Subtract any debits made to your account through debit card and bank charges, account fees, etc. as shown on this statement. (Be sure to enter these in your ...checkbook.)	– 13	00	
	– 256	88	
Adjusted checkbook balance.	$ 2,229	24	**A**

3

Bank balance shown on this statement.	$ 1,805	36	
Add deposits shown in your checkbook but not shown on this statement, because they were made and received after date on this statement.	980	00	
Subtotal	2,785	36	
Subtract checks outstanding	556	12	
Adjusted bank balance.	$ 2,229	24	**B**

Your checkbook is in balance if line **A** agrees with line **B**.

STEPS to Reconcile Bank Balances

1. Reconcile the checkbook (check register) balance. Start with the last balance as recorded in the checkbook.
    - **a.** Add any bank statement credits, such as interest earned or EFT deposits not yet recorded in the checkbook.
    - **b.** Subtract any charges or debits made by the bank, such as debit card charges including ATM withdrawals service charges, check printing charges, returned check charges, or EFT charges not yet recorded in the checkbook.

   This gives you your **adjusted checkbook balance.**
2. Reconcile the bank balance. Start with the balance as presented on the statement.
    - **a.** Add any deposits or other credits not yet recorded by the bank.
    - **b.** Subtract all outstanding checks.

   This gives you your **adjusted bank balance.**
3. Be sure that the two adjusted balances agree.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONCEPT CHECK 9.3

At month end, Johnson Hardware received the following bank statement. Use the forms that follow the statement to reconcile the check register shown in Concept Check 9.2 and the bank statement.

MIDTOWN
BANK

MIDTOWN BANK

JOHNSON HARDWARE COMPANY
346 POPLAR STREET
MIDTOWN, CA 94872

THIS STATEMENT COVERS: 3/27/-- THROUGH 4/24/--

SUMMARY	
PREVIOUS BALANCE	$ 520.42
DEPOSITS	2,470.80+
WITHDRAWALS	2,062.35-
INTEREST	5.60+
SERVICE CHARGES	7.00-
NEW BALANCE	$ 927.47

CHECKS AND WITHDRAWALS	CHECK	DATE PAID	AMOUNT	CHECK	DATE PAID	AMOUNT
	123	3/29	65.20	130*	4/06	906.97
	124	4/02	150.00			
	126*	4/03	835.20			
	127	4/05	72.18			
	128	4/05	32.80			

DEPOSITS	CUSTOMER DEPOSIT	DATE POSTED	AMOUNT
	CUSTOMER DEPOSIT	4/05	2,470.80

* Indicates checks out of sequence

Enter your checkbook balance	$ 3,714	65
Add any credits made to your account through interest, etc. as shown on this statement. (Be sure to enter these in your checkbook).	5	60
SUBTOTAL	3,720	25
Subtract any debits made to your account through bank charges, account fees, etc. as shown on this statement. (Be sure to enter these in your checkbook).	7	00
Adjusted checkbook balance.	$ 3,713	25

Bank balance shown on this statement.	$ 927	47
Add deposits shown in your checkbook but not shown on this statement, because they were made and received after date on this statement.	2,942	50
Subtotal	3,869	97
Subtract checks outstanding	156	72
Adjusted bank balance.	$ 3,713	25

Your checkbook is in balance if line **A** agrees with line **B**.

Checks Outstanding

Check No.	Amount	
125	$ 96	72
129	60	00
TOTAL	$ 156	72

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 9.1, 9.2, AND 9.3.

Chapter Terms for Review

- adjusted bank balance
- adjusted checkbook balance
- automatic teller machine (ATM)
- bank charge
- bank statement
- check
- checkbook
- check register
- credit
- debit card
- deposit slip
- electronic fund transfer (EFT)
- outstanding check
- outstanding deposit
- payee
- POS—Point of Sale
- reconciliation of the bank balance

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Try Microsoft® Excel

Try working the following problems using the Microsoft Excel templates found on the companion website. Solutions for the problems are also shown on the companion website.

1. Complete the following worksheet by adding formulas in shaded cells to calculate the balance after each transaction in the check register. Formulas should work for either the addition of a deposit or subtraction of a check and be able to be copied down the **Balance** column.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	Check Register					Balance
2	Date	Check Number	Checks Issued to or Deposits Received from	Amount of Check	Amount of Deposit	895.42
3	May 4	237	Echo Computer Repair Service	235.00		
4	5		Deposit cash sales		1,569.12	
5	6	238	Glendale Gas Co.	127.90		
6	6	239	Yellow Pages - ad	212.33		
7	8	240	City Stationers - supplies	582.91		
8	10		Deposit cash sales		1,243.32	
9	12	241	Acme Cleaning Service	450.00		
10	13	242	General Telephone	82.57		
11	15		Deposit tax refund		750.00	

2. Jessica Flint's monthly bank statement balance was $1,753.04. Her checkbook balance was $2,590.24. She noted that the following checks were outstanding: #134 for $17.35, #137 for $128.45, and #138 for $52.00. She also noted that a deposit of $974.50 was not yet recorded by the bank. The bank statement lists a service charge of $15 and a bad check of $45.50 returned to Jessica by the bank from a recent deposit.

   Enter the data given above in the appropriate cells and complete the worksheet to reconcile the bank statement and checkbook balances by adding formulas in shaded cells.

	A	B	C
1	Checkbook balance		
2	Less bank charges:		
3	Service charge		
4	Bad check		
5	Total subtractions		
6	Adjusted checkbook balance		
7			
8	Bank statement balance		
9	Add unrecorded deposit		
10	Subtotal		
11	Less outstanding checks: #134		
12	#137		
13	#138		
14	Total outstanding check		
15	Adjusted bank balance		

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example

9.1

Maintain a checking account.

1. Fill in the New Bal. and Bal. Fwd. on each check stub. Carry Bal. Fwd. to the next stub.

#1		#2	
Bal. Fwd. $100.00	Date 01/17	Bal. Fwd. ________	Date 01/22
Deposit 350.50	To AAA	Deposit 375.00	To CVS
New Bal. ________		New Bal. ________	
This Ck 175.09	For Ins.	This Ck 78.88	For Misc
Bal. Fwd. ________		Bal. Fwd. ________	

9.2

Reconcile a bank statement with a checkbook balance.

2. Fill in the cash balance for each date.

CHECK REGISTER

DATE	CHECK NUMBER	CHECK TO—DEPOSIT INFORMATION	DEPOSIT AMOUNT	CHECK AMOUNT	BALANCE
					$453.90
12/11	100	Albertsons		$85.92	
12/12		Monthly Salary Check	$1,580.65		
12/13	101	C.Dobbs-Rent		$850.00	
12/14	102	TJ Max		$ 99.97	
12/15	103	Ace Hardware		$ 107.16	
12/17		Income from Stocks	$212.37		

9.2

Reconcile a bank statement with a checkbook balance.

3. Mike Kent's monthly bank statement balance was $1,418. His checkbook balance was $1,620. He noted the following checks outstanding: #119 for $350 and #125 for $197. He noted a deposit of $1,600 as not recorded by the bank. The bank had charged him $17 for checks and $32 for a bad check he had deposited. The bank had credited his account with an electronic transfer for $900. Reconcile the bank and checkbook balances.

Checkbook balance:		$1,620
Add electronic transfer:		________
Subtotal		________
Less bank charges:	________	
	________	________
Adjusted checkbook balance:		________
Bank balance on statement:		$1,418
Add unrecorded deposit:		________
Subtotal		________
Less outstanding checks: #119	________	
#125	________	________
Adjusted bank balance		________

Answers: 1. $450.50; $275.41; $275.41; $650.41; $571.53 2. $367.98; $1,948.63; $1,098.63; $998.66; $891.50; $1,103.87 3. $2,471

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 9

1 Each of the following items requires an adjustment to either the bank statement balance or the check register balance. Indicate the correct handling of each item by writing the appropriate letter in the blank.

A = add to bank statement balance
B = subtract from bank statement balance
C = add to checkbook balance
D = subtract from checkbook balance

__________ (a) Outstanding check written to the landlord for rent

__________ (b) Bank charge for printing checks

__________ (c) A deposit made at the end of the period that was not included on the bank statement

__________ (d) A customer's check that was returned by the bank for insufficient funds (a bounced check)

__________ (e) An error in recording a check in the check register. A check written to Acme Services for $92.20 was recorded in the check register as $95.50

__________ (f) Interest on the checking account

__________ (g) A bank fee of $20 for the bounced check

__________ (h) Bank fees for ATM withdrawals

__________ (i) A debit card purchase shown on the monthly bank statement

2 The balance in Ferndale Construction Company's check register May 31 was $12,583.40. The bank statement for Ferndale Construction Company listed the following information:

Previous balance (May 1)	$12,620.10
Deposits	16,265.00
Checks and withdrawals	17,805.95
Interest	52.50
Service charges	20.00
Check returned for insufficient funds	150.00
New balance (May 31)	$10,961.65

By comparing the bank statement and the check register, the company's bookkeeper determined that a deposit of $1,850.15 was not included on the statement and that the following checks were outstanding:

No. 602	$ 35.80
No. 610	212.00
No. 612	95.10

While preparing the reconciliation, the company's bookkeeper noted that check number 585, which had been written for $82.50, had been recorded in the check register as $85.50.

Prepare a bank reconciliation statement for Ferndale Construction Company.

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Assignment 9.1: Check Register and Check Stubs

Name

Date Score

Learning Objective 1

A **(20 points) In the following check register, fill in the cash balance resulting from each transaction. (2 points for each correct answer)**

1.

CHECK REGISTER			DEDUCT ALL PER CHECK OR SERVICE CHARGES THAT APPLY			BALANCE
DATE		CHECK NUMBER	CHECKS ISSUED TO OR DEPOSITS RECEIVED FROM	AMOUNT OF CHECK	AMOUNT OF DEPOSIT	$1,450.00
Apr	04	842	Alliance Mortgage Company	865.00		
	04	-	Deposit weekly cash receipts		4,197.50	
	05	843	U.S. Treasury	1,520.00		
	06	844	State Income Tax	990.00		
	07	845	General Telephone	65.30		
	08	846	Maxwell Office Supply	289.70		
	12	-	Deposit weekly cash receipts		3,845.25	
	12	847	Eastwood Water Co.	126.42		
	12	848	Central Advertising, Inc.	965.00		
	12	849	Johnson Tax Services	650.00		

Score for A (20)

B **(15 points) Fill in the new balance (New. Bal.) and balance forward (Bal. Fwd.) on each check stub, carrying each balance forward to the next stub. ($1\frac{1}{2}$ points for each correct New Bal. answer)**

2.

#101

Bal. Fwd.	920.15	Date	6-1	New Bal.	
Deposit	300.00	To	ACE	This Ck	29.30
New Bal.		For	REPAIR	Bal. Fwd.	

3.

#102

Bal. Fwd.		Date	6-5	New Bal.	
Deposit		To	DON	This Ck	312.80
New Bal.		For	NOTE	Bal. Fwd.	

4.

#103

Bal. Fwd.		Date	6-8	New Bal.	
Deposit	862.13	To	NEC	This Ck	862.42
New Bal.		For	COMPUTER	Bal. Fwd.	

5.

#104

Bal. Fwd.		Date	6-10	New Bal.	
Deposit	2,160.00	To	CHRON	This Ck	1,200.27
New Bal.		For	AD	Bal. Fwd.	

6.

#105

Bal. Fwd.		Date	6-15	New Bal.	
Deposit	907.16	To	B/A	This Ck	317.77
New Bal.		For	CAR PAYMENT	Bal. Fwd.	

Score for B (15)

C **(20 points) According to the check register of Pendrack Systems, the cash balance on July 1 was $1,862.50. During the month, deposits of $281.75, $681.10, and $385.60 were made. Checks for $135.10, $307.53, $32.12, $212.40, $287.60, and $88.62 were recorded. (15 points for a correct answer in 7; 5 points for a correct answer in 8)**

7. What was the cash balance shown in the check register on July 31? __________

8. After entering all the items in the check register, the bookkeeper found that the check recorded as $212.40 was actually written as $224.20. What is the correct cash balance? __________

____

Score for C (20)

D **(45 points) The following problems show the deposits and checks that were recorded on a series of check stubs. In each problem, find the bank balance after each deposit or check. (3 points for each correct answer)**

9.

Balance	$2,420	80
Check #1	279	10
Balance		
Check #2	148	20
Balance		
Deposit	976	80
Balance		
Check #3	814	00
Balance		
Check #4	285	17
Balance		

10.

Balance	$205	55
Check #21	25	00
Balance		
Deposit	721	45
Balance		
Check #22	188	14
Balance		
Check #23	415	92
Balance		
Check #24	72	38
Balance		

11.

Balance	$2,670	10
Deposit	350	00
Balance		
Check #31	265	72
Balance		
Check #32	85	70
Balance		
Deposit	935	62
Balance		
Check #33	1,230	14
Balance		

____

Score for D (45)

Assignment 9.2: Check Register and Bank Statements

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 1 2

A **(40 points) Solve the following problems. (10 points for a correct final balance in 1; 30 points for a correct final answer in 2)**

1. On October 31, the balance of the account of Hobbies Unlimited at the Citizens Bank was $922.10. This amount was also the balance on the check register at that time. Company checks written and deposits made during November are shown on the check register. Fill in the cash balance for each transaction.

CHECK REGISTER			DEDUCT ALL PER CHECK OR SERVICE CHARGES THAT APPLY			BALANCE
DATE		CHECK NUMBER	CHECKS ISSUED TO OR DEPOSITS RECEIVED FROM	AMOUNT OF CHECK	AMOUNT OF DEPOSIT	$922.10
Nov	01	551	Muni. Water, Inc. (2 mos)	119.60		
	06	552	Fenton Gas Co.	49.60		
	07	553	Olympia Telephone	74.19		
	07	-	Deposit cash receipts		225.50	
	21	554	City Trash Disposal (3 mos)	112.32		
	21	555	Jack's Janitorial Service	33.33		
	24	556	United Fund	12.00		
	24	557	Guide Dogs for the Blind	67.77		
	26	558	Wilson Insurance	212.00		
	28	559	Security Systems, Inc.	138.00		
	28	-	Deposit cash receipts		94.00	

2. On December 3, Hobbies Unlimited, whose check register you completed in problem 1, received the following bank statement. Reconcile the balance on the check register at the end of the month with the final balance on the bank statement. In reconciling the bank statement, you can find which of the checks are outstanding by comparing the list of checks on the statement with the register. Interest and a service charge were recorded on the statement.

CB *CITIZEN'S BANK*

STATEMENT OF ACCOUNT

HOBBIES UNLIMITED
4617 GILMORE ROAD
WHEATLAND, WI 54828-6075

ACCOUNT NUMBER
072 4736
11/30/--
DATE OF STATEMENT

Balance From Previous Statement	Number of Debits	Amount of Checks and Debits	No. of Credits	Amount of Deposits and Credits	Service Charge	Statement Balance
922.10	8	594.81	2	229.70	9.00	547.99

DATE	CHECKS - DEBITS	CHECKS - DEBITS	DEPOSITS - CREDITS	BALANCE
11/03	119.60			802.50
11/05	49.60			752.90
11/09	9.00 SC			743.90
11/09	74.19			669.71
11/09			225.50 ATM	895.21
11/23	112.32	33.33		749.56
11/26	67.77			681.79
11/30	138.00			543.79
11/30			4.20 INT	547.99

PLEASE EXAMINE AND REPORT ANY DISCREPANCIES WITHIN 10 DAYS
DM-Debit Memo ATM-Automated Teller Machine CM-Credit Memo
OD-Overdraft INT-Interest Paid SC-Service Charge

HOBBIES UNLIMITED
Reconciliation of Bank Statement
November 30

Bank balance on statement
Plus deposit not recorded by bank

Minus outstanding checks:

Checkbook balance
Plus bank interest

Minus service charge

Score for A (40)

B **(60 points) Solve the following problems. (12 points for each correct answer)**

3. Compute the reconciled balance for each of the problems from the information given.

	Bank Statement Balance	**Checkbook Balance**	**Other Information**	**Reconciled Balance**
a.	$ 781.62	$ 806.97	Outstanding checks: $9.50, $31.15 Automatic transfer to savings: $50.00 Automatic charge, safe-deposit box: $16.00	
b.	$1,559.39	$1,672.00	Outstanding checks: $84.62, $14.20, $55.00 Outstanding deposit: $224.70 Automatic transfer to savings: $50.00 Bank interest credited: $8.27	
c.	$ 893.17	$ 944.73	Outstanding checks: $7.50, $4.18, $62.40 Outstanding deposits: $12.32, $120.00 Bank interest credited: $24.18 Charge for printing new checks: $17.50	
d.	$ 824.90	$ 759.47	Outstanding checks: $67.50 Deposit of $76.89 shown in check register as $78.96	
e.	$ 412.50	$1,274.18	Outstanding checks: $150.00, $37.82 Outstanding deposit: $440.00 Deposit of $312.00 shown twice in check register Debit card charges deducted by bank: $224.00 ATM withdrawal: $73.50	

Score for B (60)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 9.3: Bank Balance Reconciliation Statements

Name

Date   Score

Learning Objective 2

A **(50 points) Using the data provided, prepare a bank reconciliation statement in each of the following problems. Space is provided for your solutions. (25 points for each correct reconciliation)**

1. The balance shown in the bank statement of Cogswell Cooling, Inc., on November 30 was $1,050.82. The balance shown on the check register was $480.77. The following checks were outstanding:

No. 148	$13.90	No. 161	$ 96.35
No. 156	235.10	No. 165	222.20

There was a bank interest credit of $12.00 and a service charge of $9.50 that had not been entered on Cogswell Cooling's check register.

2. The June 30 bank statement for Furgison Electric Company shows that a customer's bad check in the amount of $960 was returned and charged against Furgison Electric Company's account by the bank. This is the first knowledge the company had that one of the checks deposited was not good.

The balance shown on Furgison Electric Company's bank statement was $22,367.14. The balance shown on the check register was $24,696.83. The following checks were outstanding:

No. 363	$1,066.20	No. 396	$1,544.14
No. 387	1,972.81	No. 397	772.86

The following items required adjustment on the bank reconciliation statement:

Outstanding deposit:	$3,001.87
Automatic transfer to note payment:	$4,000.00
Bad check returned and charged to Furgison Electric Company's account by the bank:	$ 960.00
Bank interest credit:	$ 276.17

Score for A (50)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

B **(50 points) Using the data provided, prepare a bank reconciliation statement in each of the following problems. Space is provided for your solutions. (25 points for each correct reconciliation)**

3. The balance shown on the May 31 bank statement of Jason Flooring was $16,775.59. The balance shown in the checkbook was $17,764.42. A deposit of $2,004.35 had not been credited by the bank, and the following checks were outstanding:

No. 730	$85.17	No. 753	$462.95	No. 761	$262.50
No. 749	1,216.20	No. 757	512.80	No. 768	982.90

The following items required adjustment on the bank reconciliation statement:

An ATM withdrawal on May 20	$ 50.00
Charge for printing checks	$ 18.50
Automatic insurance payment charged to depositor's account by the bank	$1,235.00
Check deposited by Linberg Floors, returned by bank as bad check	$ 775.00
Interest on bank account credited by the bank	$ 16.40
Debit card charges: $38.50; $29.30; $365.00; $12.10	$ 444.90

4. The balance shown on the June 30 bank statement of Greenwood Stables was $9,527.72. The balance shown on the check register was $7,124.13. The following checks were outstanding:

No. 516	$621.50	No. 521	$93.21	No. 523	$144.80
No. 526	935.11	No. 527	250.00	No. 528	416.35

The following items were listed on the bank statement:

Charge made by the bank for safe-deposit box	$ 20.00
Bank error: AA Realty's check was charged in error to Greenwood Stables' account	$ 82.50
Interest on bank account credited by the bank	$ 72.12
Bank charge for printing checks	$ 27.00

Score for B (50)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

10

Payroll Records

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1 Prepare a payroll register.

Learning Objective 2 Compute federal income tax withholding amounts.

Learning Objective 3 Compute Social Security, Medicare, and other withholdings.

Learning Objective 4 Complete an employee's earnings record.

Learning Objective 5 Compute an employer's quarterly federal tax return.

Learning Objective 6 Compute an employer's federal and state unemployment tax liability.

Employers must keep payroll records, withhold and pay payroll taxes, and file quarterly and annual reports with state and federal government offices. The payroll records and processes described in this chapter are common to all employers.

Federal taxes paid by all employees include the federal income tax and the two contributions (commonly referred to as taxes) required by the Federal Insurance Contributions Act (FICA): Old-Age, Survivors, and Disability Insurance, commonly called Social Security; and Hospital Insurance, commonly called Medicare.

When hiring new employees, employers must verify each employee's eligibility to work in the United States, get the employee's Social Security number, and have the employee complete a **Form W-4.** The W-4 form shown in Figure 10-1 indicates that Kyle Abrum is married and claims four exemptions, which constitutes his **withholding allowance.**

Preparing a Payroll Register

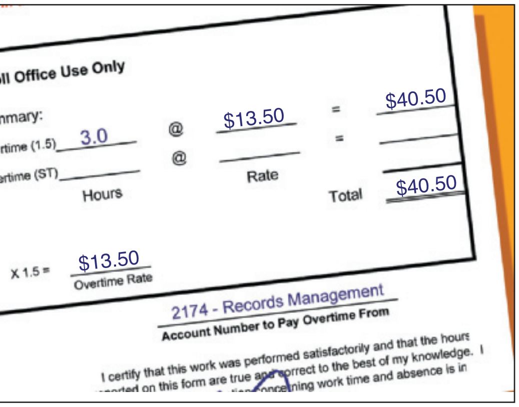
Learning Objective 1

Prepare a payroll register.

A **payroll register** is a summary of employee status information, wages earned, payroll deductions, and take-home pay. Whether they do it manually or by computer, all employers maintain some form of payroll register.

A payroll register is prepared for each payroll period. Payroll periods are weekly, biweekly, semimonthly, or monthly. Figure 10-2 shows a payroll register for one weekly period. The line for Kyle Abrum shows that he is married, claims four withholding allowances, and is paid on an hourly basis at the rate of $17 per hour ($25.50 for overtime hours). For the current week, he worked 40 regular hours and 3 overtime hours, for gross earnings of $756.50. From his gross pay he had deductions for Social Security ($46.90), Medicare ($10.97), Federal Income Tax ($28.95), Group Medical Insurance ($39), Group Dental Insurance ($12), and Other ($42), totaling $179.82. His net pay was $576.68.

The Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA), commonly called the federal wage and hour law, requires that nonexempt employees be paid 1½ times their regular hourly rate for all hours worked in excess of 40 per week. Following the FLSA requirements, the calculations for gross pay are as follows:



ll Office Use Only

nmary:

rtime (1.5) 3.0 @ $13.50 = $40.50

ertime (ST) @ =

Hours Rate Total $40.50

X 1.5 = $13.50
Overtime Rate

2174 - Records Management
Account Number to Pay Overtime From

I certify that this work was performed satisfactorily and that the hours
on this form are true and correct to the best of my knowledge. I
ning work time and absence is in

Rose Alcorn

STEP 1 Multiply hours worked (up to 40) times the regular rate.

STEP 2 Multiply the regular rate times 1.5 to calculate the overtime rate.

STEP 3 Multiply the hours in excess of 40 times the overtime rate.

STEP 4 Add the results of Steps 1 and 3 to determine gross pay.

Gross pay calculations for Kyle Abrum:

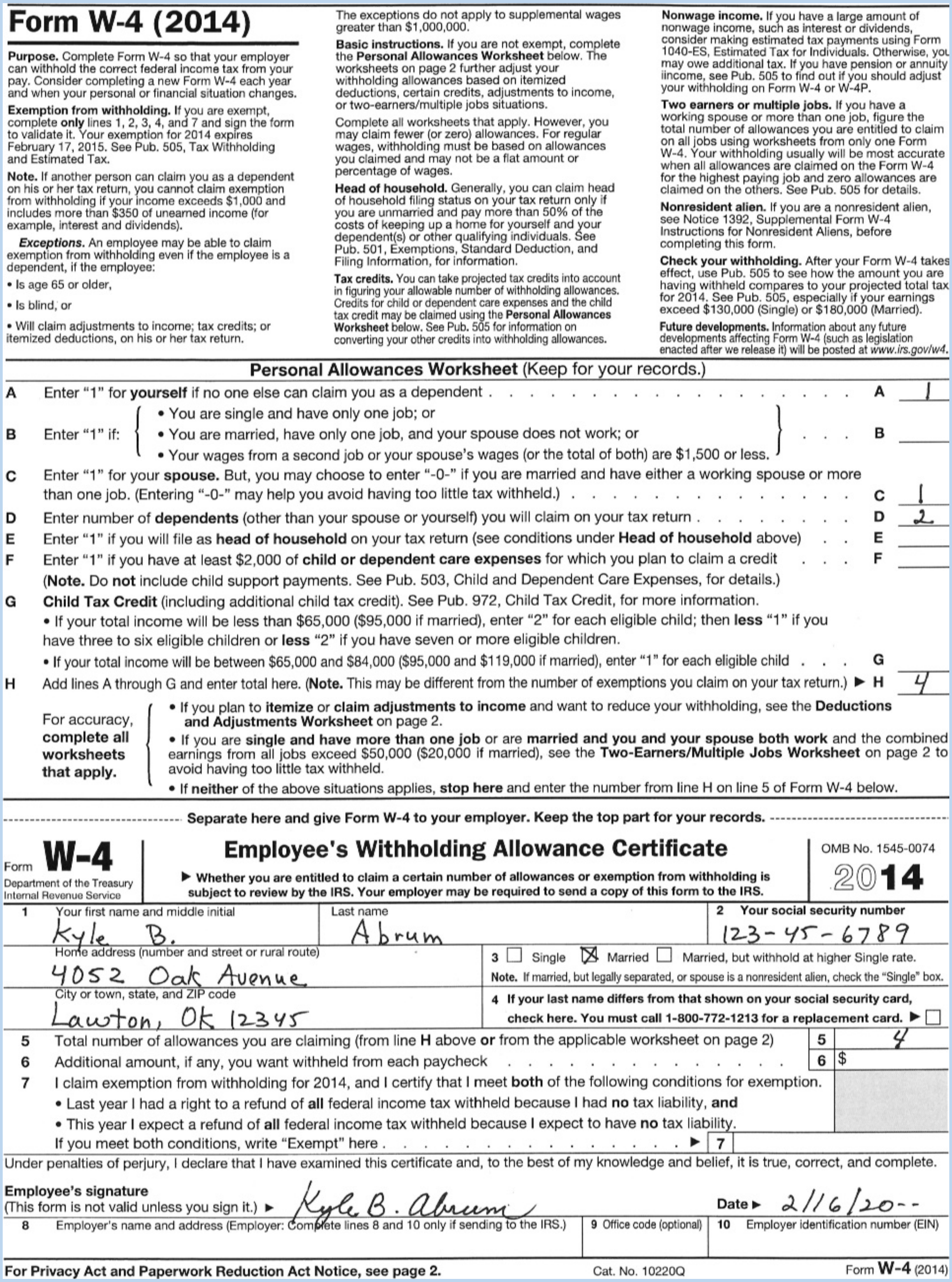
STEP 1 40 hours × $17 = $680 regular pay

STEP 2 $17 × 1.5 = $25.50 overtime rate

STEP 3 3 hours × $25.50 = $76.50 overtime pay

STEP 4 $680 + $76.50 = $756.50

Figure 10-1 Form W-4 (2014)



Form W-4 (2014)

Purpose. Complete Form W-4 so that your employer can withhold the correct federal income tax from your pay. Consider completing a new Form W-4 each year and when your personal or financial situation changes.

Exemption from withholding. If you are exempt, complete **only** lines 1, 2, 3, 4, and 7 and sign the form to validate it. Your exemption for 2014 expires February 17, 2015. See Pub. 505, Tax Withholding and Estimated Tax.

Note. If another person can claim you as a dependent on his or her tax return, you cannot claim exemption from withholding if your income exceeds $1,000 and includes more than $350 of unearned income (for example, interest and dividends).

Exceptions. An employee may be able to claim exemption from withholding even if the employee is a dependent, if the employee:

- Is age 65 or older,
- Is blind, or
- Will claim adjustments to income; tax credits; or itemized deductions, on his or her tax return.

The exceptions do not apply to supplemental wages greater than $1,000,000.

Basic instructions. If you are not exempt, complete the **Personal Allowances Worksheet** below. The worksheets on page 2 further adjust your withholding allowances based on itemized deductions, certain credits, adjustments to income, or two-earners/multiple jobs situations.

Complete all worksheets that apply. However, you may claim fewer (or zero) allowances. For regular wages, withholding must be based on allowances you claimed and may not be a flat amount or percentage of wages.

Head of household. Generally, you can claim head of household filing status on your tax return only if you are unmarried and pay more than 50% of the costs of keeping up a home for yourself and your dependent(s) or other qualifying individuals. See Pub. 501, Exemptions, Standard Deduction, and Filing Information, for information.

Tax credits. You can take projected tax credits into account in figuring your allowable number of withholding allowances. Credits for child or dependent care expenses and the child tax credit may be claimed using the **Personal Allowances Worksheet** below. See Pub. 505 for information on converting your other credits into withholding allowances.

Nonwage income. If you have a large amount of nonwage income, such as interest or dividends, consider making estimated tax payments using Form 1040-ES, Estimated Tax for Individuals. Otherwise, you may owe additional tax. If you have pension or annuity income, see Pub. 505 to find out if you should adjust your withholding on Form W-4 or W-4P.

Two earners or multiple jobs. If you have a working spouse or more than one job, figure the total number of allowances you are entitled to claim on all jobs using worksheets from only one Form W-4. Your withholding usually will be most accurate when all allowances are claimed on the Form W-4 for the highest paying job and zero allowances are claimed on the others. See Pub. 505 for details.

Nonresident alien. If you are a nonresident alien, see Notice 1392, Supplemental Form W-4 Instructions for Nonresident Aliens, before completing this form.

Check your withholding. After your Form W-4 takes effect, use Pub. 505 to see how the amount you are having withheld compares to your projected total tax for 2014. See Pub. 505, especially if your earnings exceed $130,000 (Single) or $180,000 (Married).

Future developments. Information about any future developments affecting Form W-4 (such as legislation enacted after we release it) will be posted at *www.irs.gov/w4*.

Personal Allowances Worksheet (Keep for your records.)

A Enter "1" for **yourself** if no one else can claim you as a dependent . . . . . A 1

B Enter "1" if:
- You are single and have only one job; or
- You are married, have only one job, and your spouse does not work; or
- Your wages from a second job or your spouse's wages (or the total of both) are $1,500 or less.

. . . B

C Enter "1" for your **spouse.** But, you may choose to enter "-0-" if you are married and have either a working spouse or more than one job. (Entering "-0-" may help you avoid having too little tax withheld.) . . . . . C 1

D Enter number of **dependents** (other than your spouse or yourself) you will claim on your tax return . . . . . D 2

E Enter "1" if you will file as **head of household** on your tax return (see conditions under **Head of household** above) . . E

F Enter "1" if you have at least $2,000 of **child or dependent care expenses** for which you plan to claim a credit . . . F

(**Note.** Do **not** include child support payments. See Pub. 503, Child and Dependent Care Expenses, for details.)

G **Child Tax Credit** (including additional child tax credit). See Pub. 972, Child Tax Credit, for more information.
- If your total income will be less than $65,000 ($95,000 if married), enter "2" for each eligible child; then **less** "1" if you have three to six eligible children or **less** "2" if you have seven or more eligible children.
- If your total income will be between $65,000 and $84,000 ($95,000 and $119,000 if married), enter "1" for each eligible child . . . G

H Add lines A through G and enter total here. (**Note.** This may be different from the number of exemptions you claim on your tax return.) ▶ H 4

For accuracy, **complete all worksheets that apply.**
- If you plan to **itemize** or **claim adjustments to income** and want to reduce your withholding, see the **Deductions and Adjustments Worksheet** on page 2.
- If you are **single and have more than one job** or are **married and you and your spouse both work** and the combined earnings from all jobs exceed $50,000 ($20,000 if married), see the **Two-Earners/Multiple Jobs Worksheet** on page 2 to avoid having too little tax withheld.
- If **neither** of the above situations applies, **stop here** and enter the number from line H on line 5 of Form W-4 below.

Separate here and give Form W-4 to your employer. Keep the top part for your records.

Form **W-4**
Department of the Treasury
Internal Revenue Service

Employee's Withholding Allowance Certificate

▶ **Whether you are entitled to claim a certain number of allowances or exemption from withholding is subject to review by the IRS. Your employer may be required to send a copy of this form to the IRS.**

OMB No. 1545-0074
2014

1 Your first name and middle initial: Kyle B.
Last name: Abrum
2 **Your social security number:** 123-45-6789

Home address (number and street or rural route): 4052 Oak Avenue
3 ☐ Single ☒ Married ☐ Married, but withhold at higher Single rate.
Note. If married, but legally separated, or spouse is a nonresident alien, check the "Single" box.

City or town, state, and ZIP code: Lawton, Ok 12345
4 **If your last name differs from that shown on your social security card, check here. You must call 1-800-772-1213 for a replacement card.** ▶ ☐

5 Total number of allowances you are claiming (from line **H** above **or** from the applicable worksheet on page 2) 5 4

6 Additional amount, if any, you want withheld from each paycheck . . . . . 6 $

7 I claim exemption from withholding for 2014, and I certify that I meet **both** of the following conditions for exemption.
- Last year I had a right to a refund of **all** federal income tax withheld because I had **no** tax liability, **and**
- This year I expect a refund of **all** federal income tax withheld because I expect to have **no** tax liability.

If you meet both conditions, write "Exempt" here . . . . . ▶ 7

Under penalties of perjury, I declare that I have examined this certificate and, to the best of my knowledge and belief, it is true, correct, and complete.

Employee's signature
(This form is not valid unless you sign it.) ▶ Kyle B. Abrum
Date ▶ 2/16/20--

8 Employer's name and address (Employer: Complete lines 8 and 10 only if sending to the IRS.)
9 Office code (optional)
10 Employer identification number (EIN)

For Privacy Act and Paperwork Reduction Act Notice, see page 2. Cat. No. 10220Q Form **W-4** (2014)

INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE, HTTP://WWW.IRS.GOV

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Figure 10-2 Weekly Payroll Register

Name	Marital Status	Withholding Allowances	W = Weekly H = Hourly	Rate	Hours		Gross Earnings	Deductions							Net Earnings
					Reg.	O/T		Social Security	Medi-care	Fed. Inc. Tax	Group Med. Ins.	Group Dental Ins.	Other	Total Deduc-tions	
Abrum, Kyle	M	4	H	17.00	40	3	756.50	46.90	10.97	28.95	39.00	12.00	42.00	179.82	576.68
Garcia, Fran	S	2	W	680.00	40		680.00	42.16	9.86	64.00	18.00	9.00	—	143.02	536.98
Parker, Marie	S	1	H	12.10	32		387.20	24.01	5.61	31.48	18.00	—	—	79.10	308.10
Thomas, Robert	M	5	H	15.70	40	4	722.20	44.78	10.47	17.92	39.00	12.00	13.10	137.27	584.93
Weber, James	S	1	H	16.80	40		672.00	41.66	9.74	74.65	18.00	9.00	—	153.05	518.95
TOTALS							3,217.90	199.51	46.65	217.00	132.00	42.00	55.10	692.26	2,525.64

CONCEPT CHECK 10.1

After completion of the payroll register entries, one way to check on the accuracy of computations is to subtract the Total Deductions column from the Gross Earnings total; the difference should equal the total of the Net Earnings column. From the payroll register shown in Figure 10-2, check the accuracy of the column totals:

Total of Gross Earnings column	$3,217.90
Less Total Deductions column	− 692.26
Total of Net Earnings column	$2,525.64

Computing Federal Income Tax Withholding Amounts

Learning Objective 2

Compute federal income tax withholding amounts.

The federal income tax is a payroll tax that the employer must withhold from the employee's pay and turn over to the Internal Revenue Service (IRS). The amount of the deduction varies with the amount of earnings, the employee's marital status, and the number of withholding allowances claimed.

The *Employer's Tax Guide,* published annually by the Internal Revenue Service, gives employers two primary methods to figure how much income tax to withhold from their employees. These two methods are the **percentage method** and the **wage-bracket method.**

Figure 10-2 shows that Kyle Abrum's federal income tax withholding amount was $28.95, computed by the percentage method. With the percentage method, a deduction is granted for each withholding allowance claimed, based on a chart in the *Employer's Tax Guide*. The amount for each withholding allowance is provided in a table labeled Income Tax Withholding Percentage Method Table. Figure 10-3 illustrates a recent

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

table. It shows that, for weekly pay, a deduction of $76.00 is allowed for each withholding allowance. (For monthly pay, a deduction of $329.20 is allowed for each withholding allowance.)

Figure 10-3 Percentage Method Amount for One Withholding Allowance

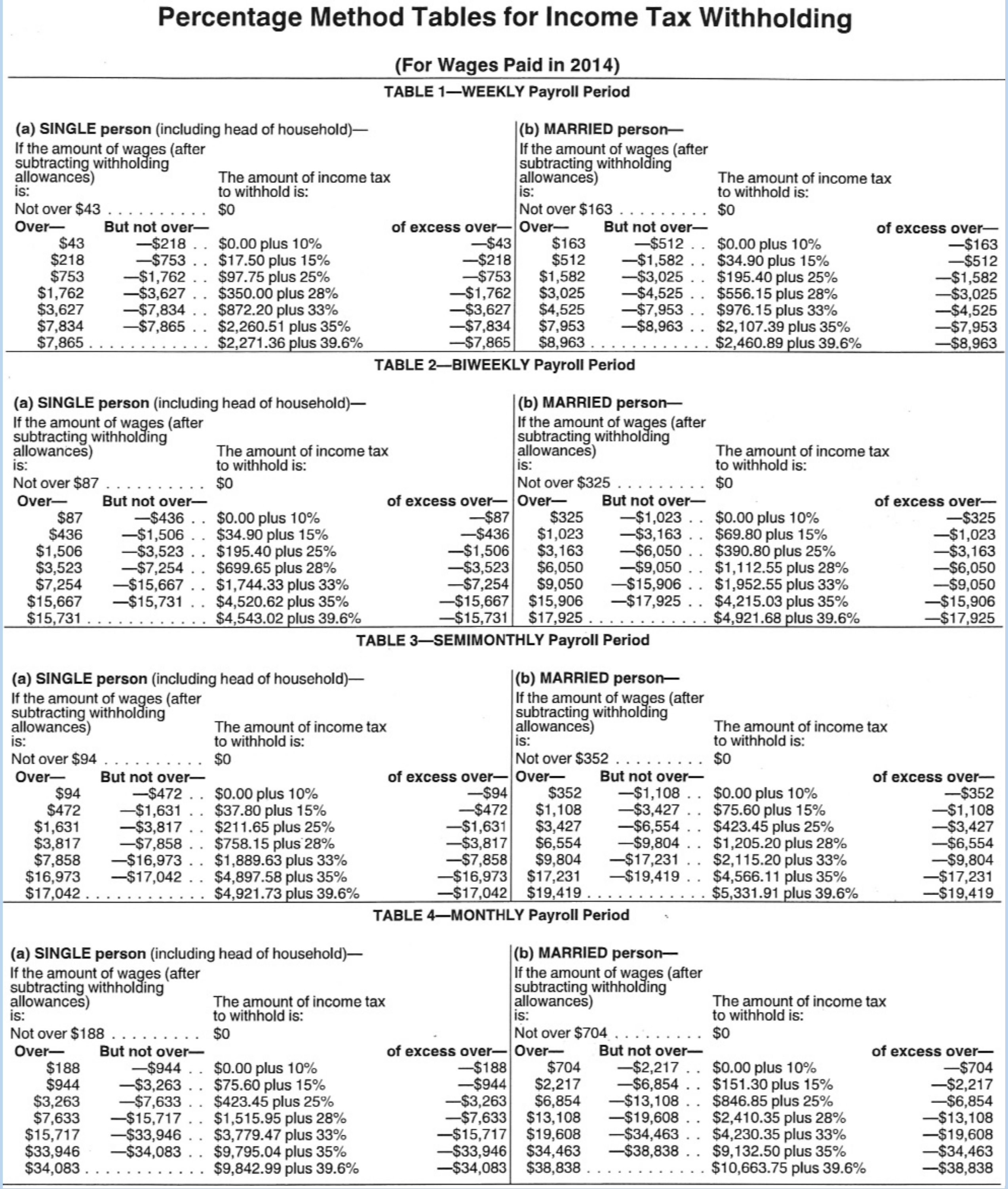
Payroll Period	One Withholding Allowance
Weekly	$ 76.00
Biweekly	$151.90
Semimonthly	$164.60
Monthly	$329.20

After the total withholding allowance is subtracted from an employee's gross earnings, the amount to be withheld is computed by taking a percentage of the difference. The percentage to be used is given by the IRS in the Tables for Percentage Method of Withholding. Figure 10-4 illustrates a recent table for weekly, biweekly, semimonthly, and monthly payroll periods.

STEPS to Figure the Amount of Federal Income Tax Withholding, Using the Percentage Method

1. Determine the employee's gross earnings.
2. Multiply the appropriate (weekly/monthly) "one withholding allowance" amount (from the withholding table in Figure 10-3) by the number of allowances the employee claims.
3. Subtract that amount from the employee's gross earnings.
4. From the appropriate (weekly/monthly and single/married) percentage method table, subtract the "of excess over" figure to get the amount subject to the tax.
5. Multiply the amount from Step 4 by the appropriate percentage from the percentage method table.
6. If required, add the base tax amount (if any) shown next to the percentage from the percentage method table. (For example, see Table 1, WEEKLY Payroll Period, Married, the second line of the table: $34.90 plus 15% of excess over $512.)

Figure 10-4 Tables for Percentage Method of Withholding



Percentage Method Tables for Income Tax Withholding

(For Wages Paid in 2014)

TABLE 1—WEEKLY Payroll Period

(a) SINGLE person (including head of household)—

If the amount of wages (after subtracting withholding allowances) is: / The amount of income tax to withhold is:

Not over $43 . . . . $0

Over—	But not over—		of excess over—
$43	—$218	$0.00 plus 10%	—$43
$218	—$753	$17.50 plus 15%	—$218
$753	—$1,762	$97.75 plus 25%	—$753
$1,762	—$3,627	$350.00 plus 28%	—$1,762
$3,627	—$7,834	$872.20 plus 33%	—$3,627
$7,834	—$7,865	$2,260.51 plus 35%	—$7,834
$7,865		$2,271.36 plus 39.6%	—$7,865

(b) MARRIED person—

If the amount of wages (after subtracting withholding allowances) is: / The amount of income tax to withhold is:

Not over $163 . . . . $0

Over—	But not over—		of excess over—
$163	—$512	$0.00 plus 10%	—$163
$512	—$1,582	$34.90 plus 15%	—$512
$1,582	—$3,025	$195.40 plus 25%	—$1,582
$3,025	—$4,525	$556.15 plus 28%	—$3,025
$4,525	—$7,953	$976.15 plus 33%	—$4,525
$7,953	—$8,963	$2,107.39 plus 35%	—$7,953
$8,963		$2,460.89 plus 39.6%	—$8,963

TABLE 2—BIWEEKLY Payroll Period

(a) SINGLE person (including head of household)—

If the amount of wages (after subtracting withholding allowances) is: / The amount of income tax to withhold is:

Not over $87 . . . . $0

Over—	But not over—		of excess over—
$87	—$436	$0.00 plus 10%	—$87
$436	—$1,506	$34.90 plus 15%	—$436
$1,506	—$3,523	$195.40 plus 25%	—$1,506
$3,523	—$7,254	$699.65 plus 28%	—$3,523
$7,254	—$15,667	$1,744.33 plus 33%	—$7,254
$15,667	—$15,731	$4,520.62 plus 35%	—$15,667
$15,731		$4,543.02 plus 39.6%	—$15,731

(b) MARRIED person—

If the amount of wages (after subtracting withholding allowances) is: / The amount of income tax to withhold is:

Not over $325 . . . . $0

Over—	But not over—		of excess over—
$325	—$1,023	$0.00 plus 10%	—$325
$1,023	—$3,163	$69.80 plus 15%	—$1,023
$3,163	—$6,050	$390.80 plus 25%	—$3,163
$6,050	—$9,050	$1,112.55 plus 28%	—$6,050
$9,050	—$15,906	$1,952.55 plus 33%	—$9,050
$15,906	—$17,925	$4,215.03 plus 35%	—$15,906
$17,925		$4,921.68 plus 39.6%	—$17,925

TABLE 3—SEMIMONTHLY Payroll Period

(a) SINGLE person (including head of household)—

If the amount of wages (after subtracting withholding allowances) is: / The amount of income tax to withhold is:

Not over $94 . . . . $0

Over—	But not over—		of excess over—
$94	—$472	$0.00 plus 10%	—$94
$472	—$1,631	$37.80 plus 15%	—$472
$1,631	—$3,817	$211.65 plus 25%	—$1,631
$3,817	—$7,858	$758.15 plus 28%	—$3,817
$7,858	—$16,973	$1,889.63 plus 33%	—$7,858
$16,973	—$17,042	$4,897.58 plus 35%	—$16,973
$17,042		$4,921.73 plus 39.6%	—$17,042

(b) MARRIED person—

If the amount of wages (after subtracting withholding allowances) is: / The amount of income tax to withhold is:

Not over $352 . . . . $0

Over—	But not over—		of excess over—
$352	—$1,108	$0.00 plus 10%	—$352
$1,108	—$3,427	$75.60 plus 15%	—$1,108
$3,427	—$6,554	$423.45 plus 25%	—$3,427
$6,554	—$9,804	$1,205.20 plus 28%	—$6,554
$9,804	—$17,231	$2,115.20 plus 33%	—$9,804
$17,231	—$19,419	$4,566.11 plus 35%	—$17,231
$19,419		$5,331.91 plus 39.6%	—$19,419

TABLE 4—MONTHLY Payroll Period

(a) SINGLE person (including head of household)—

If the amount of wages (after subtracting withholding allowances) is: / The amount of income tax to withhold is:

Not over $188 . . . . $0

Over—	But not over—		of excess over—
$188	—$944	$0.00 plus 10%	—$188
$944	—$3,263	$75.60 plus 15%	—$944
$3,263	—$7,633	$423.45 plus 25%	—$3,263
$7,633	—$15,717	$1,515.95 plus 28%	—$7,633
$15,717	—$33,946	$3,779.47 plus 33%	—$15,717
$33,946	—$34,083	$9,795.04 plus 35%	—$33,946
$34,083		$9,842.99 plus 39.6%	—$34,083

(b) MARRIED person—

If the amount of wages (after subtracting withholding allowances) is: / The amount of income tax to withhold is:

Not over $704 . . . . $0

Over—	But not over—		of excess over—
$704	—$2,217	$0.00 plus 10%	—$704
$2,217	—$6,854	$151.30 plus 15%	—$2,217
$6,854	—$13,108	$846.85 plus 25%	—$6,854
$13,108	—$19,608	$2,410.35 plus 28%	—$13,108
$19,608	—$34,463	$4,230.35 plus 33%	—$19,608
$34,463	—$38,838	$9,132.50 plus 35%	—$34,463
$38,838		$10,663.75 plus 39.6%	—$38,838

INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE, HTTP://WWW.IRS.GOV

EXAMPLE A

Using the six steps given, we compute Kyle Abrum's withholding as follows:

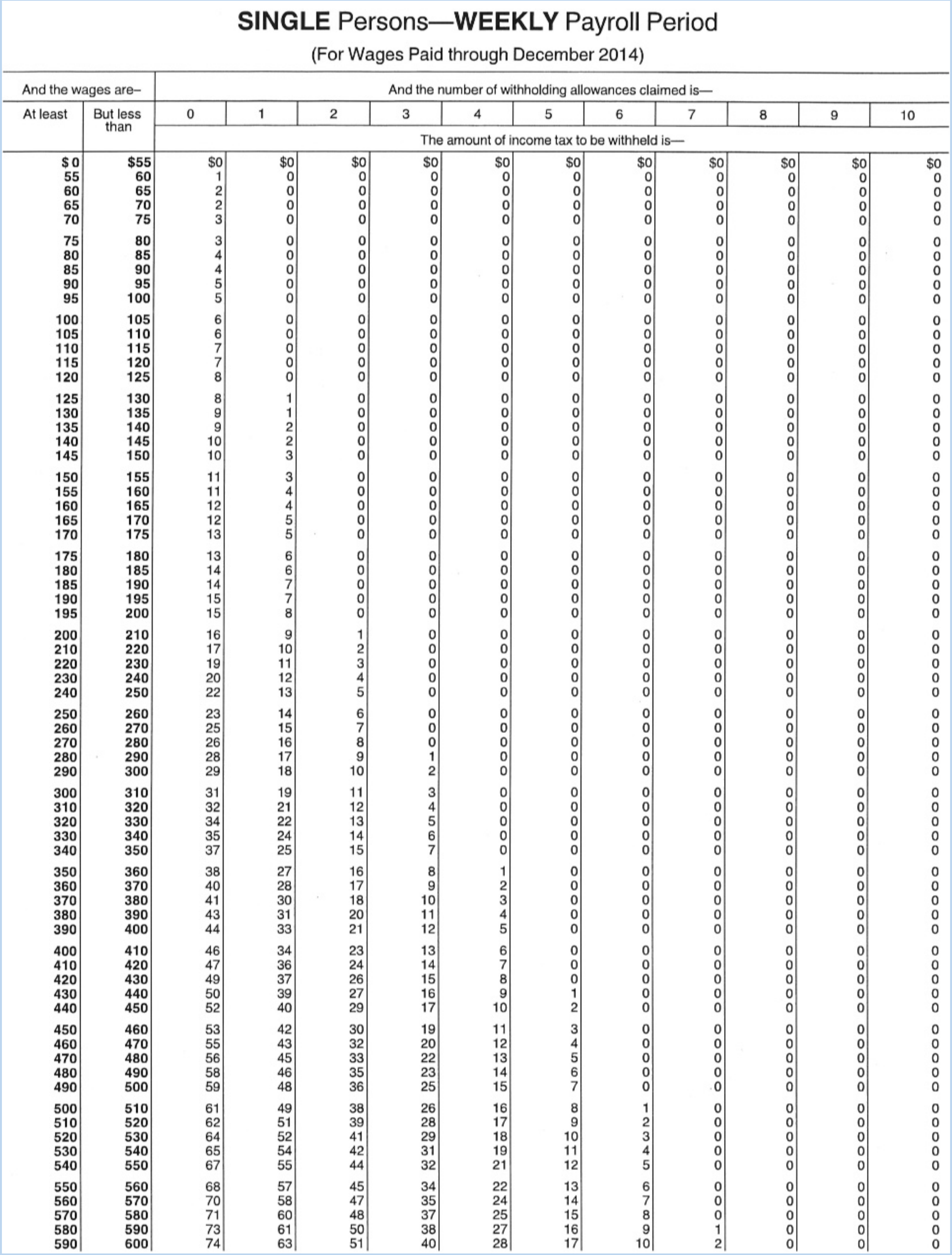
STEP 1	$756.50	(gross earnings from payroll register)
STEP 2	$ 76.00	(one withholding allowance)
	× 4	(number of withholding allowances)
	$304.00	(total withholding allowance amount)
STEP 3	$756.50	(gross earnings)
	304.00	(total withholding allowance amount)
	$452.50	(amount subject to withholding)
STEP 4	$452.50	(amount subject to withholding)
	163.00	(less "excess over" amount in Figure 10-4)
	$289.50	(amount subject to percentage computation)
STEP 5	$289.50	(amount subject to percentage computation)
	× 0.1	(10% computation)
	$ 28.95	(amount of tax withheld)
STEP 6	The wage range $163–$512 doesn't have a base tax amount and therefore doesn't apply in the case of Kyle Abrum.	

Pascal Broze/Getty Images

The second method of figuring the amount of tax to be withheld from an employee's pay, the wage-bracket method, involves use of a series of wage-bracket tables published in the IRS *Employer's Tax Guide*. Figures 10-5 and 10-6 illustrate the tables for single and married persons, respectively, who are paid on a weekly basis.

Using the tables from Figure 10-6, we see that a married employee earning a weekly wage of between $750 and $760 and claiming four withholding allowances will have $29 withheld. Note that the amount of federal income tax withheld from Kyle Abrum's pay, using the wage-bracket method, is approximately the same as the amount withheld using the percentage method: $29 versus $28.95. Small differences will frequently result because the wage-bracket method uses tables based on $10 divisions and rounded amounts. Over a period of a year, these differences tend to be relatively insignificant and are accepted by the IRS.

Figure 10-5 Single Persons—Weekly Payroll Period



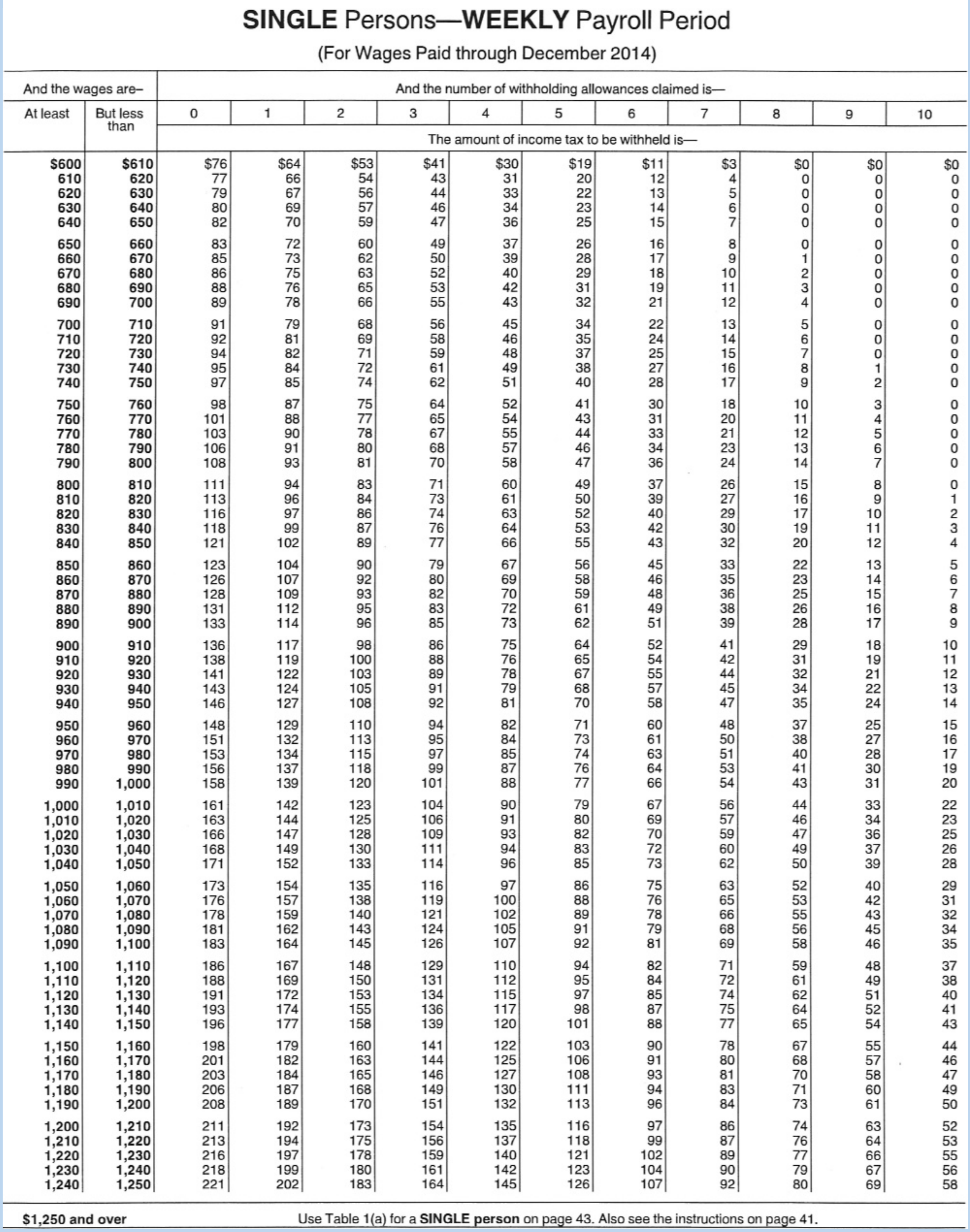
SINGLE Persons—**WEEKLY** Payroll Period

(For Wages Paid through December 2014)

And the wages are–		And the number of withholding allowances claimed is—										
At least	But less than	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
		The amount of income tax to be withheld is—										
$ 0	$55	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0
55	60	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
60	65	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
65	70	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
70	75	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
75	80	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
80	85	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
85	90	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
90	95	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
95	100	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
100	105	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
105	110	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
110	115	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
115	120	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
120	125	8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
125	130	8	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
130	135	9	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
135	140	9	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
140	145	10	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
145	150	10	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
150	155	11	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
155	160	11	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
160	165	12	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
165	170	12	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
170	175	13	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
175	180	13	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
180	185	14	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
185	190	14	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
190	195	15	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
195	200	15	8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
200	210	16	9	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
210	220	17	10	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
220	230	19	11	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
230	240	20	12	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
240	250	22	13	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
250	260	23	14	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
260	270	25	15	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
270	280	26	16	8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
280	290	28	17	9	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
290	300	29	18	10	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
300	310	31	19	11	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
310	320	32	21	12	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
320	330	34	22	13	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
330	340	35	24	14	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
340	350	37	25	15	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
350	360	38	27	16	8	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
360	370	40	28	17	9	2	0	0	0	0	0	0
370	380	41	30	18	10	3	0	0	0	0	0	0
380	390	43	31	20	11	4	0	0	0	0	0	0
390	400	44	33	21	12	5	0	0	0	0	0	0
400	410	46	34	23	13	6	0	0	0	0	0	0
410	420	47	36	24	14	7	0	0	0	0	0	0
420	430	49	37	26	15	8	0	0	0	0	0	0
430	440	50	39	27	16	9	1	0	0	0	0	0
440	450	52	40	29	17	10	2	0	0	0	0	0
450	460	53	42	30	19	11	3	0	0	0	0	0
460	470	55	43	32	20	12	4	0	0	0	0	0
470	480	56	45	33	22	13	5	0	0	0	0	0
480	490	58	46	35	23	14	6	0	0	0	0	0
490	500	59	48	36	25	15	7	0	0	0	0	0
500	510	61	49	38	26	16	8	1	0	0	0	0
510	520	62	51	39	28	17	9	2	0	0	0	0
520	530	64	52	41	29	18	10	3	0	0	0	0
530	540	65	54	42	31	19	11	4	0	0	0	0
540	550	67	55	44	32	21	12	5	0	0	0	0
550	560	68	57	45	34	22	13	6	0	0	0	0
560	570	70	58	47	35	24	14	7	0	0	0	0
570	580	71	60	48	37	25	15	8	0	0	0	0
580	590	73	61	50	38	27	16	9	1	0	0	0
590	600	74	63	51	40	28	17	10	2	0	0	0

INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE, HTTP://WWW.IRS.GOV

Figure 10-5 *(Continued)*



SINGLE Persons—WEEKLY Payroll Period

(For Wages Paid through December 2014)

And the wages are–		And the number of withholding allowances claimed is—										
At least	But less than	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
		The amount of income tax to be withheld is—										
$600	$610	$76	$64	$53	$41	$30	$19	$11	$3	$0	$0	$0
610	620	77	66	54	43	31	20	12	4	0	0	0
620	630	79	67	56	44	33	22	13	5	0	0	0
630	640	80	69	57	46	34	23	14	6	0	0	0
640	650	82	70	59	47	36	25	15	7	0	0	0
650	660	83	72	60	49	37	26	16	8	0	0	0
660	670	85	73	62	50	39	28	17	9	1	0	0
670	680	86	75	63	52	40	29	18	10	2	0	0
680	690	88	76	65	53	42	31	19	11	3	0	0
690	700	89	78	66	55	43	32	21	12	4	0	0
700	710	91	79	68	56	45	34	22	13	5	0	0
710	720	92	81	69	58	46	35	24	14	6	0	0
720	730	94	82	71	59	48	37	25	15	7	0	0
730	740	95	84	72	61	49	38	27	16	8	1	0
740	750	97	85	74	62	51	40	28	17	9	2	0
750	760	98	87	75	64	52	41	30	18	10	3	0
760	770	101	88	77	65	54	43	31	20	11	4	0
770	780	103	90	78	67	55	44	33	21	12	5	0
780	790	106	91	80	68	57	46	34	23	13	6	0
790	800	108	93	81	70	58	47	36	24	14	7	0
800	810	111	94	83	71	60	49	37	26	15	8	0
810	820	113	96	84	73	61	50	39	27	16	9	1
820	830	116	97	86	74	63	52	40	29	17	10	2
830	840	118	99	87	76	64	53	42	30	19	11	3
840	850	121	102	89	77	66	55	43	32	20	12	4
850	860	123	104	90	79	67	56	45	33	22	13	5
860	870	126	107	92	80	69	58	46	35	23	14	6
870	880	128	109	93	82	70	59	48	36	25	15	7
880	890	131	112	95	83	72	61	49	38	26	16	8
890	900	133	114	96	85	73	62	51	39	28	17	9
900	910	136	117	98	86	75	64	52	41	29	18	10
910	920	138	119	100	88	76	65	54	42	31	19	11
920	930	141	122	103	89	78	67	55	44	32	21	12
930	940	143	124	105	91	79	68	57	45	34	22	13
940	950	146	127	108	92	81	70	58	47	35	24	14
950	960	148	129	110	94	82	71	60	48	37	25	15
960	970	151	132	113	95	84	73	61	50	38	27	16
970	980	153	134	115	97	85	74	63	51	40	28	17
980	990	156	137	118	99	87	76	64	53	41	30	19
990	1,000	158	139	120	101	88	77	66	54	43	31	20
1,000	1,010	161	142	123	104	90	79	67	56	44	33	22
1,010	1,020	163	144	125	106	91	80	69	57	46	34	23
1,020	1,030	166	147	128	109	93	82	70	59	47	36	25
1,030	1,040	168	149	130	111	94	83	72	60	49	37	26
1,040	1,050	171	152	133	114	96	85	73	62	50	39	28
1,050	1,060	173	154	135	116	97	86	75	63	52	40	29
1,060	1,070	176	157	138	119	100	88	76	65	53	42	31
1,070	1,080	178	159	140	121	102	89	78	66	55	43	32
1,080	1,090	181	162	143	124	105	91	79	68	56	45	34
1,090	1,100	183	164	145	126	107	92	81	69	58	46	35
1,100	1,110	186	167	148	129	110	94	82	71	59	48	37
1,110	1,120	188	169	150	131	112	95	84	72	61	49	38
1,120	1,130	191	172	153	134	115	97	85	74	62	51	40
1,130	1,140	193	174	155	136	117	98	87	75	64	52	41
1,140	1,150	196	177	158	139	120	101	88	77	65	54	43
1,150	1,160	198	179	160	141	122	103	90	78	67	55	44
1,160	1,170	201	182	163	144	125	106	91	80	68	57	46
1,170	1,180	203	184	165	146	127	108	93	81	70	58	47
1,180	1,190	206	187	168	149	130	111	94	83	71	60	49
1,190	1,200	208	189	170	151	132	113	96	84	73	61	50
1,200	1,210	211	192	173	154	135	116	97	86	74	63	52
1,210	1,220	213	194	175	156	137	118	99	87	76	64	53
1,220	1,230	216	197	178	159	140	121	102	89	77	66	55
1,230	1,240	218	199	180	161	142	123	104	90	79	67	56
1,240	1,250	221	202	183	164	145	126	107	92	80	69	58
$1,250 and over		Use Table 1(a) for a **SINGLE person** on page 43. Also see the instructions on page 41.										

INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE, HTTP://WWW.IRS.GOV

Figure 10-6 Married Persons—Weekly Payroll Period

MARRIED Persons—**WEEKLY** Payroll Period

(For Wages Paid through December 2014)

And the wages are–		And the number of withholding allowances claimed is—										
At least	But less than	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
		The amount of income tax to be withheld is—										
$ 0	$165	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0
165	170	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
170	175	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
175	180	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
180	185	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
185	190	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
190	195	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
195	200	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
200	210	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
210	220	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
220	230	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
230	240	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
240	250	8	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
250	260	9	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
260	270	10	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
270	280	11	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
280	290	12	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
290	300	13	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
300	310	14	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
310	320	15	8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
320	330	16	9	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
330	340	17	10	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
340	350	18	11	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
350	360	19	12	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
360	370	20	13	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
370	380	21	14	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
380	390	22	15	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
390	400	23	16	8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
400	410	24	17	9	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
410	420	25	18	10	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
420	430	26	19	11	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
430	440	27	20	12	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
440	450	28	21	13	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
450	460	29	22	14	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
460	470	30	23	15	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
470	480	31	24	16	8	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
480	490	32	25	17	9	2	0	0	0	0	0	0
490	500	33	26	18	10	3	0	0	0	0	0	0
500	510	34	27	19	11	4	0	0	0	0	0	0
510	520	35	28	20	12	5	0	0	0	0	0	0
520	530	37	29	21	13	6	0	0	0	0	0	0
530	540	38	30	22	14	7	0	0	0	0	0	0
540	550	40	31	23	15	8	0	0	0	0	0	0
550	560	41	32	24	16	9	1	0	0	0	0	0
560	570	43	33	25	17	10	2	0	0	0	0	0
570	580	44	34	26	18	11	3	0	0	0	0	0
580	590	46	35	27	19	12	4	0	0	0	0	0
590	600	47	36	28	20	13	5	0	0	0	0	0
600	610	49	38	29	21	14	6	0	0	0	0	0
610	620	50	39	30	22	15	7	0	0	0	0	0
620	630	52	41	31	23	16	8	1	0	0	0	0
630	640	53	42	32	24	17	9	2	0	0	0	0
640	650	55	44	33	25	18	10	3	0	0	0	0
650	660	56	45	34	26	19	11	4	0	0	0	0
660	670	58	47	35	27	20	12	5	0	0	0	0
670	680	59	48	37	28	21	13	6	0	0	0	0
680	690	61	50	38	29	22	14	7	0	0	0	0
690	700	62	51	40	30	23	15	8	0	0	0	0
700	710	64	53	41	31	24	16	9	1	0	0	0
710	720	65	54	43	32	25	17	10	2	0	0	0
720	730	67	56	44	33	26	18	11	3	0	0	0
730	740	68	57	46	34	27	19	12	4	0	0	0
740	750	70	59	47	36	28	20	13	5	0	0	0
750	760	71	60	49	37	29	21	14	6	0	0	0
760	770	73	62	50	39	30	22	15	7	0	0	0
770	780	74	63	52	40	31	23	16	8	0	0	0
780	790	76	65	53	42	32	24	17	9	1	0	0
790	800	77	66	55	43	33	25	18	10	2	0	0

INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE, HTTP://WWW.IRS.GOV

Figure 10-6 *(Continued)*

MARRIED Persons—WEEKLY Payroll Period

(For Wages Paid through December 2014)

And the wages are–		And the number of withholding allowances claimed is—										
At least	But less than	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
		The amount of income tax to be withheld is—										
$800	$810	$79	$68	$56	$45	$34	$26	$19	$11	$3	$0	$0
810	820	80	69	58	46	35	27	20	12	4	0	0
820	830	82	71	59	48	36	28	21	13	5	0	0
830	840	83	72	61	49	38	29	22	14	6	0	0
840	850	85	74	62	51	39	30	23	15	7	0	0
850	860	86	75	64	52	41	31	24	16	8	1	0
860	870	88	77	65	54	42	32	25	17	9	2	0
870	880	89	78	67	55	44	33	26	18	10	3	0
880	890	91	80	68	57	45	34	27	19	11	4	0
890	900	92	81	70	58	47	35	28	20	12	5	0
900	910	94	83	71	60	48	37	29	21	13	6	0
910	920	95	84	73	61	50	38	30	22	14	7	0
920	930	97	86	74	63	51	40	31	23	15	8	0
930	940	98	87	76	64	53	41	32	24	16	9	1
940	950	100	89	77	66	54	43	33	25	17	10	2
950	960	101	90	79	67	56	44	34	26	18	11	3
960	970	103	92	80	69	57	46	35	27	19	12	4
970	980	104	93	82	70	59	47	36	28	20	13	5
980	990	106	95	83	72	60	49	38	29	21	14	6
990	1,000	107	96	85	73	62	50	39	30	22	15	7
1,000	1,010	109	98	86	75	63	52	41	31	23	16	8
1,010	1,020	110	99	88	76	65	53	42	32	24	17	9
1,020	1,030	112	101	89	78	66	55	44	33	25	18	10
1,030	1,040	113	102	91	79	68	56	45	34	26	19	11
1,040	1,050	115	104	92	81	69	58	47	35	27	20	12
1,050	1,060	116	105	94	82	71	59	48	37	28	21	13
1,060	1,070	118	107	95	84	72	61	50	38	29	22	14
1,070	1,080	119	108	97	85	74	62	51	40	30	23	15
1,080	1,090	121	110	98	87	75	64	53	41	31	24	16
1,090	1,100	122	111	100	88	77	65	54	43	32	25	17
1,100	1,110	124	113	101	90	78	67	56	44	33	26	18
1,110	1,120	125	114	103	91	80	68	57	46	34	27	19
1,120	1,130	127	116	104	93	81	70	59	47	36	28	20
1,130	1,140	128	117	106	94	83	71	60	49	37	29	21
1,140	1,150	130	119	107	96	84	73	62	50	39	30	22
1,150	1,160	131	120	109	97	86	74	63	52	40	31	23
1,160	1,170	133	122	110	99	87	76	65	53	42	32	24
1,170	1,180	134	123	112	100	89	77	66	55	43	33	25
1,180	1,190	136	125	113	102	90	79	68	56	45	34	26
1,190	1,200	137	126	115	103	92	80	69	58	46	35	27
1,200	1,210	139	128	116	105	93	82	71	59	48	36	28
1,210	1,220	140	129	118	106	95	83	72	61	49	38	29
1,220	1,230	142	131	119	108	96	85	74	62	51	39	30
1,230	1,240	143	132	121	109	98	86	75	64	52	41	31
1,240	1,250	145	134	122	111	99	88	77	65	54	42	32
1,250	1,260	146	135	124	112	101	89	78	67	55	44	33
1,260	1,270	148	137	125	114	102	91	80	68	57	45	34
1,270	1,280	149	138	127	115	104	92	81	70	58	47	35
1,280	1,290	151	140	128	117	105	94	83	71	60	48	37
1,290	1,300	152	141	130	118	107	95	84	73	61	50	38
1,300	1,310	154	143	131	120	108	97	86	74	63	51	40
1,310	1,320	155	144	133	121	110	98	87	76	64	53	41
1,320	1,330	157	146	134	123	111	100	89	77	66	54	43
1,330	1,340	158	147	136	124	113	101	90	79	67	56	44
1,340	1,350	160	149	137	126	114	103	92	80	69	57	46
1,350	1,360	161	150	139	127	116	104	93	82	70	59	47
1,360	1,370	163	152	140	129	117	106	95	83	72	60	49
1,370	1,380	164	153	142	130	119	107	96	85	73	62	50
1,380	1,390	166	155	143	132	120	109	98	86	75	63	52
1,390	1,400	167	156	145	133	122	110	99	88	76	65	53
1,400	1,410	169	158	146	135	123	112	101	89	78	66	55
1,410	1,420	170	159	148	136	125	113	102	91	79	68	56
1,420	1,430	172	161	149	138	126	115	104	92	81	69	58
1,430	1,440	173	162	151	139	128	116	105	94	82	71	59
1,440	1,450	175	164	152	141	129	118	107	95	84	72	61
1,450	1,460	176	165	154	142	131	119	108	97	85	74	62
1,460	1,470	178	167	155	144	132	121	110	98	87	75	64
1,470	1,480	179	168	157	145	134	122	111	100	88	77	65

$1,480 and over Use Table 1(b) for a **MARRIED person** on page 43. Also see the instructions on page 41.

INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE, HTTP://WWW.IRS.GOV

CONCEPT CHECK 10.2

Using the percentage method steps given, verify the federal income tax withholding for Fran Garcia as recorded in the payroll register.

STEP 1	$680.00	(gross earnings from payroll register)
STEP 2	$ 76.00	(one withholding allowance)
	× 2	(number of withholding allowances)
	$152.00	(total withholding allowance amount)
STEP 3	$680.00	(gross earnings)
	152.00	(total withholding allowance amount)
	$528.00	(amount subject to withholding)
STEP 4	$528.00	(amount subject to withholding)
	−218.00	(less “excess over” amount in Figure 10-4)
	$310.00	(amount subject to percentage computation)
STEP 5	$310.00	(amount subject to percentage computation)
	× 0.15	(15% computation)
	$ 46.50	(amount of tax withheld on percentage computation)
STEP 6	$ 46.50	(amount of tax withhold on percentage computation)
	+17.50	(base tax amount)
	$ 64.00	(total amount of tax withheld)

Use the wage-bracket method to find the federal income tax withholding for Fran Garcia. Then compute the difference between the percentage method and the wage-bracket method.

Percentage method (Step 6)	$64.00
Wage-bracket method (Figure 10-5 because she is single)	−65.00
Difference	$ 1.00

Computing Social Security, Medicare, and Other Withholdings

Learning Objective 3

Compute Social Security, Medicare, and other withholdings.

The **Federal Insurance Contributions Act (FICA)** provides for a federal system of old-age, survivors, disability, and hospital insurance. The old-age, survivors, and disability insurance part of FICA is financed by the *Social Security tax*. The hospital insurance part of FICA is financed by the *Medicare tax*. These taxes are reported separately and are levied on both the employer and the employee. These taxes have different rates, but only the Social Security tax has a wage base, which is the *maximum* wage that is subject to the tax for the year.

The Social Security tax rate of 6.2% is levied on both the employer and the employee. For 2014, the wage base was $117,000.

The Medicare tax rate of 1.45% is levied on both the employer and the employee. There is no wage-base limit for Medicare; all covered wages are subject to the Medicare tax.

Although both rates are subject to change by legislation, they were current when we compiled the payroll register illustrated in this chapter. All amounts are rounded to the nearest cent. The amounts for Kyle Abrum were $46.90 for Social Security and $10.97 for Medicare.

EXAMPLE B

Social Security deduction:

$756.50	(gross earnings)
× 0.062	(Social Security rate)
$ 46.90	(Social Security amount)

EXAMPLE C

Medicare deduction:

$756.50	(gross earnings)
× .0145	(Medicare rate)
$ 10.97	(Medicare amount)

Many employers today provide some form of group medical insurance for their employees. Frequently, the employee is asked to pay a portion of the premium charged for such insurance, based on the number of dependents the employee has named to be insured. For the payroll register shown in Figure 10-2, we assumed the weekly rates for medical and dental plans shown in Figure 10-7.

Figure 10-7 Weekly Medical and Dental Plan Rates

	Weekly Medical Plan Premium Paid by Employee	Weekly Dental Plan Premium Paid by Employee
Employee only	$18.00	$9.00
Employee plus one dependent	$22.00	$10.00
Employee plus 2 or more dependents	$39.00	$12.00

The payroll register presented in Figure 10-2 showed that Kyle Abrum subscribed to both the medical and the dental programs. Because of his three dependents, the amounts of his deductions were $39 and $12, respectively.

Frequently, employees will arrange to have special payroll deductions made by the employer to pay union dues, put money into special retirement or savings plans, or make contributions to charitable organizations.

In addition, 42 of the 50 states have some form of state income tax, which normally requires withholding in the same manner as the federal income tax. In such states, state income tax withholding columns are added to the payroll register and withholdings are made according to wage-bracket or percentage charts established by the state, in the same manner as federal income tax withholdings.

The payroll register illustrated in Figure 10-2 reflects a $42 weekly deduction that Kyle Abrum requested be made for payment of his union dues (other).

CONCEPT CHECK 10.3

Using the format in examples B and C, compute Social Security and Medicare amounts for Fran Garcia, based on her gross weekly earnings of $680.

Social Security deduction:		Medicare deduction:	
$ 680	(gross earnings)	$ 680	(gross earnings)
× 0.062	(Social Security rate)	× 0.0145	(Medicare rate)
$42.16	(Social Security amount)	$9.86	(Medicare amount)

Completing an Employee's Earnings Record

Learning Objective 4

Complete an employee's earnings record.

An employer must submit quarterly and annual reports to the federal government and appropriate state government and pay the amount of taxes withheld from employees' earnings for the period. To obtain the necessary information, most employers keep an **employee's earnings record** for each employee. The employee's earnings record summarizes by quarter the employee's gross earnings, deductions, and net pay.

EXAMPLE D

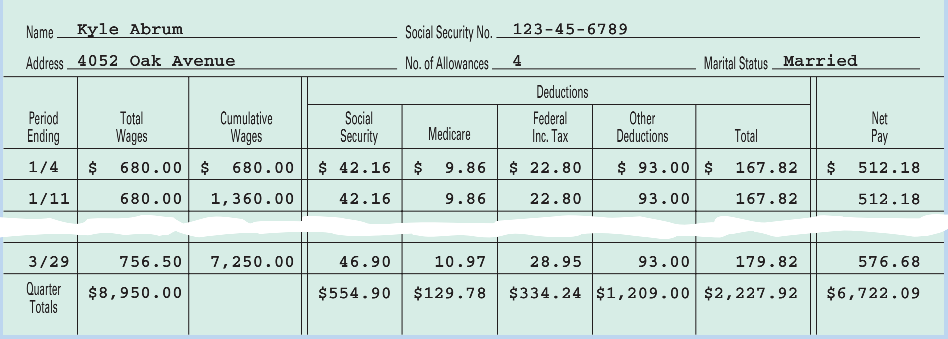


Figure 10-8 Employee's Earnings Record

Name Kyle Abrum
Social Security No. 123-45-6789
Address 4052 Oak Avenue
No. of Allowances 4
Marital Status Married

			Deductions					
Period Ending	Total Wages	Cumulative Wages	Social Security	Medicare	Federal Inc. Tax	Other Deductions	Total	Net Pay
1/4	$ 680.00	$ 680.00	$ 42.16	$ 9.86	$ 22.80	$ 93.00	$ 167.82	$ 512.18
1/11	680.00	1,360.00	42.16	9.86	22.80	93.00	167.82	512.18
3/29	756.50	7,250.00	46.90	10.97	28.95	93.00	179.82	576.68
Quarter Totals	$8,950.00		$554.90	$129.78	$334.24	$1,209.00	$2,227.92	$6,722.09

The employee's earnings record presented in Figure 10-8 shows that Kyle Abrum is married, claims four allowances, and for the first quarter of the year earned total wages of $8,950. His net pay was $6,722.09 after first-quarter withholdings as follows:

Federal income tax withholding	$ 334.24
Social Security withholding	554.90
Medicare withholding	129.78
Other deductions	+1,209.00
Total deductions	$2,227.92

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONCEPT CHECK 10.4

Assuming that Fran Garcia's weekly earnings and deductions have remained constant for each of the 13 weeks in the first quarter of the year, compute the following totals, which would appear on her employee's earnings record for the first quarter:

Total wages	$8,840.00	($680.00 × 13)
Federal income tax withholding	832.00	($64.00 × 13)
Social Security withholding	548.08	($42.16 × 13)
Medicare withholding	128.18	($9.86 × 13)
Group medical insurance deductions	234.00	($18.00 × 13)
Group dental insurance deductions	117.00	($9.00 × 13)
Total deductions	$1,859.26	
Net pay	$6,980.74	

Computing an Employer's Quarterly Federal Tax Return

Learning Objective 5

Compute an employer's quarterly federal tax return.

Every employer who withholds federal income tax and FICA taxes (Social Security and Medicare) must file a quarterly return, Form 941—**Employer's Quarterly Federal Tax Return.** Figure 10-9 shows the data that the employer must include on Form 941 (the completed form is slightly abbreviated here). The return must be filed with the IRS within one month after the end of the quarter.

The employer obtains Social Security and Medicare amounts by multiplying the taxable wages paid by 12.4% for the first $117,000 for Social Security and by 2.9% for all wages for Medicare. These amounts represent the employees' deductions and matching amounts required to be paid by the employer.

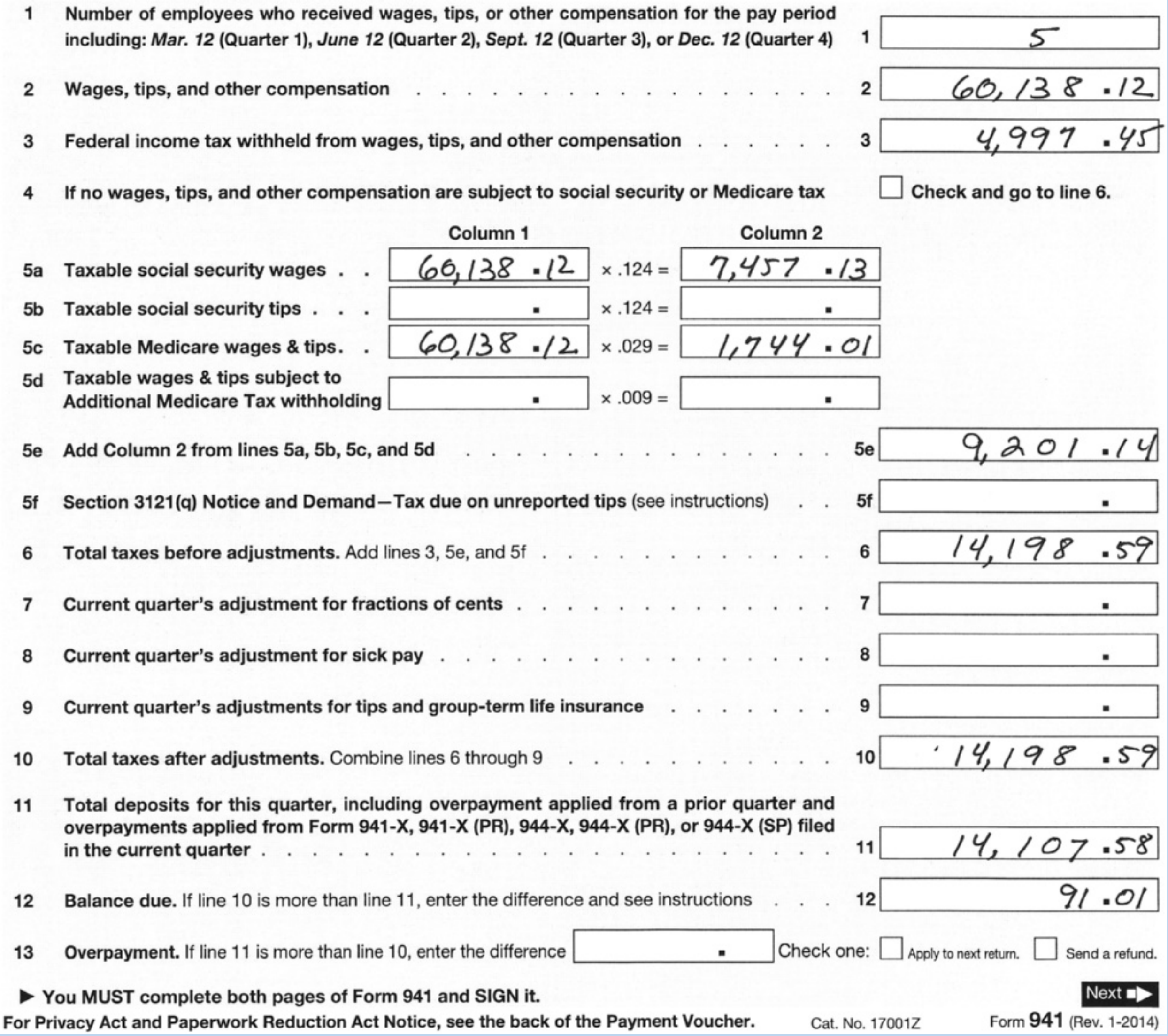
EXAMPLE E

For the first quarter of 2014, Yeager Manufacturing paid total wages of $2,132,684.27. The company withheld $372,486.20 for federal income tax. Since no employee earned more than $117,000 in taxable wages, all wages paid were subject to Social Security and Medicare taxes. If during the quarter Yeager had deposited $680,000 toward its taxes due, how much would it be required to send in with its first-quarter Form 941?

Gross wages $2,132,684.27 × 12.4% (Social Security)	$264,452.85
Gross wages $2,132,684.27 × 2.9% (Medicare)	+ 61,847.84
Subtotal	326,300.69
Income taxes withheld	+372,486.20
Total	698,786.89
Less deposit	−680,000.00
Balance due	$ 18,786.89

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Figure 10-9 Form 941 Employer's Quarterly Federal Tax Return (extract)



1 **Number of employees who received wages, tips, or other compensation for the pay period including:** ***Mar. 12*** **(Quarter 1),** ***June 12*** **(Quarter 2),** ***Sept. 12*** **(Quarter 3), or** ***Dec. 12*** **(Quarter 4)** 1 5

2 **Wages, tips, and other compensation** 2 60,138.12

3 **Federal income tax withheld from wages, tips, and other compensation** 3 4,997.45

4 **If no wages, tips, and other compensation are subject to social security or Medicare tax** ☐ **Check and go to line 6.**

	Column 1		Column 2
5a **Taxable social security wages** . .	60,138.12	× .124 =	7,457.13
5b **Taxable social security tips** . . .	.	× .124 =	.
5c **Taxable Medicare wages & tips** . .	60,138.12	× .029 =	1,744.01
5d **Taxable wages & tips subject to Additional Medicare Tax withholding**	.	× .009 =	.

5e **Add Column 2 from lines 5a, 5b, 5c, and 5d** 5e 9,201.14

5f **Section 3121(q) Notice and Demand—Tax due on unreported tips** (see instructions) . . 5f .

6 **Total taxes before adjustments.** Add lines 3, 5e, and 5f 6 14,198.59

7 **Current quarter's adjustment for fractions of cents** . . . . 7 .

8 **Current quarter's adjustment for sick pay** . . . . 8 .

9 **Current quarter's adjustments for tips and group-term life insurance** . . . . 9 .

10 **Total taxes after adjustments.** Combine lines 6 through 9 . . . . 10 14,198.59

11 **Total deposits for this quarter, including overpayment applied from a prior quarter and overpayments applied from Form 941-X, 941-X (PR), 944-X, 944-X (PR), or 944-X (SP) filed in the current quarter** 11 14,107.58

12 **Balance due.** If line 10 is more than line 11, enter the difference and see instructions . . . 12 91.01

13 **Overpayment.** If line 11 is more than line 10, enter the difference . Check one: ☐ Apply to next return. ☐ Send a refund.

▶ **You MUST complete both pages of Form 941 and SIGN it.** Next ▶

For Privacy Act and Paperwork Reduction Act Notice, see the back of the Payment Voucher. Cat. No. 17001Z Form **941** (Rev. 1-2014)

INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE, HTTP://WWW.IRS.GOV

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 10.5

As displayed in Figure 10-9, the total taxes due the IRS consist of the $4,997.45 in federal income taxes withheld from employees, plus $7,457.13 and $1,744.01 for Social Security and Medicare taxes, respectively, half of which is withheld from the employees' paychecks and half of which is paid by the employer. Although the employer files Form 941 quarterly, the amount of taxes due is usually deposited in a qualified depository (bank) monthly or more often, and it is only the difference between the monthly deposits and the total taxes due that is sent with the Form 941 report.

Computing an Employer's Federal and State Unemployment Tax Liability

Learning Objective 6

Compute an employer's federal and state unemployment tax liability.

In the preceding section, you learned that the employer must match the employee's contributions to Social Security and Medicare taxes. In addition, employers must pay two payroll taxes for federal and state unemployment programs.

The **Federal Unemployment Tax Act (FUTA)** annually requires the employer to pay a 6.2% tax on the first $7,000 paid to each employee to fund the federal unemployment compensation program for those who have lost their jobs. Most states have also passed a **State Unemployment Tax Act (SUTA),** requiring the employer to pay at least 5.4% tax on the first $7,000 paid to each employee to fund state programs for the unemployed. This 5.4% state tax is *deductible* from the federal tax payment. Thus, in most cases, employers pay the federal government just 0.8% FUTA tax: 6.2% FUTA − 5.4% SUTA = 0.8% requirement.

EXAMPLE F

During the first quarter, Johnson and Johnson paid wages of $976,550.80. Of this amount, $172,400.60 was paid to employees who had been paid $7,000 earlier in the quarter. What was the employer's liability for FUTA and SUTA taxes, assuming that the state rate was 5.4%?

$976,550.80 − $172,400.60 = $804,150.20 subject to FUTA and SUTA taxes
$804,150.20 × 0.008 = $6,433.20 FUTA tax payment
$804,150.20 × 0.054 = $43,424.11 SUTA tax payment
$6,433.20 + $43,424.11 = $49,857.31

CONCEPT CHECK 10.6

Warner-Lambert Company employed Rojas Perez for 13 weeks during the period January 1 through March 31, 2014. His salary was $1,350 per week. At the end of the quarter, how much in FUTA and SUTA taxes did the company have to pay to the federal and state governments based on Rojas's income?

$1,350 per week × 13 weeks = $17,550 total wage
$7,000 maximum × 0.008 = $56 FUTA tax
$7,000 maximum × 0.054 = $378 SUTA tax
$56 + $378 = $434 total federal and state unemployment taxes

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 10.1 AND 10.2.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter Terms for Review

employee's earnings record

Employer's Quarterly Federal Tax Return

Federal Insurance Contributions Act (FICA)

Federal Unemployment Tax Act (FUTA)

Form W-4

payroll register

percentage method

State Unemployment Tax Act (SUTA)

wage-bracket method

withholding allowance

Try Microsoft® Excel

Try working the following problems using the Microsoft Excel templates found on the companion website. Solutions for the problems are also shown on the companion website.

1. Brighton Company pays its employees at the regular hourly rate for all hours worked up to 40 hours per week. Hours in excess of 40 are paid at $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the regular rate. Set up the following spreadsheet in Excel and add formulas to calculate **Overtime Hours, Regular Pay, Overtime Pay,** and **Total Gross Pay** for each employee in the shaded cells.

   Hint: Use the IF function to determine overtime hours.

Employees	Total Hours Worked	Regular Hourly Rate	Overtime Hours	Regular Pay	Overtime Pay	Total Gross Pay
Baker, Jason	42	$12.80				
Castro, Jill	38	15.70				
Dobson, Jack	40	12.00				
Ellis, Jennifer	45	14.50				

2. Set up the following worksheet and add formulas in the shaded cells to calculate the **Social Security, Medicare, Total Deductions,** and **Net Pay** for each employee. Assume all wages are taxable and use the following rates: Social Security = 6.2%, Medicare = 1.45%.

Employees	Wages	Social Security	Medicare	Income Tax	Total Deductions	Net Pay
Carter, Janes	$460.35			$45.80		
Edison, Alice	289.50			25.00		
Garcia, Joseph	375.00			36.90		
Kilmer, Martha	450.70			52.00		

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
10.1 Prepare a payroll register.	Based on the data presented below, complete the following payroll register. Fill out the total wages section and then compute the federal income tax, Social Security, Medicare, and other withholdings. Total all columns and check. Use the percentage method for federal income tax.
10.2 Compute federal income tax withholding amounts.	1. G. Lee is paid $14.20 per hour. He worked 40 regular hours and 6 overtime hours during the week ending January 7. He is single and claims one withholding allowance. He takes a weekly medical deduction of $7. 2. E. Berg is paid $13 per hour. He worked 40 regular hours and 8 overtime hours during the week of January 7. He is married and claims four withholding allowances. He takes a weekly medical deduction of $15.
10.3 Compute Social Security, Medicare, and other withholdings.	

Name	Marital Status	W/H Allow	Total Hours	Regular Earnings		Overtime Earnings			Total Wages	Deductions					Net Pay
				Rate per Hour	Amt	Hours Worked	Rate per Hour	Amt		Social Security	Medi-care	Fed. Inc. Tax	Med. Insurance	Total	
Lee, G.															
Berg, E.															

Learning Objective	Example
10.4 Complete an employee's earnings record.	3. Complete the earnings record for D. Chan. Use 6.2% for Social Security and 1.45% for Medicare taxes. Use the percentage method for federal income tax withholding, on the monthly wages.

Name D. Chan
Social Security No. 125-11-3296
Address 7821 Oak Ave.
No. of Allowances 2
Marital Status Married

Period Ending	Total Wages	Cumulative Total	Deductions					Net Pay
			Social Security	Medicare	Federal Inc. Tax	Other Deductions	Total	
1/31	$3,100	$3,100				$18.00		
2/28	3,000	6,100				18.00		
3/31	3,450	$9,550				18.00		
Quarter Total	$9,550					$54.00		

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
10.5 Compute an employer's quarterly federal tax return.	4. The Frazer Company had a total payroll of $279,440 for the first quarter of the year. It withheld $29,700 for federal income tax. It made monthly tax deposits of $24,100. Frazer is now filing its quarterly Form 941. Complete the following to determine the amount of the check that Frazer must send to the IRS for undeposited taxes due. a. Social Security tax due for the quarter _____ b. Medicare tax due for the quarter _____ c. Total taxes due for the quarter _____ d. Total deposits for the quarter _____ e. Undeposited taxes due IRS _____
10.6 Compute an employer's federal and state unemployment tax liability.	5. Miller Outfitters employed R. Rehnquist for the period from January 1 through March 31, 13 weeks, at a salary of $1,230 per week. At the end of the quarter, how much in FUTA and SUTA taxes are owed to the federal and state governments if the state had a 0.8% FUTA rate and a 5.4% SUTA rate? a. Total wages b. FUTA tax c. SUTA tax d. Total federal and state unemployment taxes paid

Answers: **1, 2 and 3.** Lee: Regular Earnings $568.00; O/T Earnings $127.80; Total $695.80; Deductions: SS-$43.14; MC-$10.09; FIT-$77.77; MI-$7.00. Total Deductions $138.00; Net Pay $557.80. Berg: Regular Earnings $520.00; O/T Earnings $156.00; Total $676.00; Deductions: SS-$41.91; MC-$9.80; FIT-$20.90; MI-$15.00. Total Deductions $87.61; Net Pay $588.39. **4.** 1/31: $192.20; $44.95; $184.99; $440.14; $2,659.86. 2/28: $186.00; $43.50; $169.99; $417.49; $2,582.51. 3/31: $213.90; $50.03; $237.49; $519.42; $2,930.58. **5. a.** $34,650.56 **b.** $8,103.76 **c.** $72,454.32 **d.** $72,300.00 **e.** $154.32 **6. a.** $15,990.00 **b.** $56.00 **c.** $378.00 **d.** $434.00

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 10

1. Alex Muñoz is paid $20 per hour for the first 40 hours and $1\frac{1}{2}$ times his regular rate for all hours worked over 40 per week.

   a. Determine Alex's gross pay for the week if he works 45 hours.
   b. Calculate the amount to be deducted for Social Security and Medicare taxes for the week.
   c. Determine the amount to be withheld for federal income tax, using the percentage method, if Alex is single and claims one withholding allowance.
   d. What is Alex's net pay for the week, assuming that his only payroll deductions are for Social Security, Medicare, and federal income tax?

2. Determine the amount to be withheld for federal income tax for each of the following, using both the percentage and the wage-bracket methods.

   a. A married employee, claiming two allowances, has weekly gross pay of $650.
   b. A single employee, with one allowance, has weekly gross pay of $525.

3. Calculate the employer's payroll taxes for each of the first three months of the year for three employees who are paid as follows:

Albertson, K.	$3,000 per month
Becket, W.	$4,000 per month
Jones, C.	$2,100 per month

   Include FUTA (0.8%), SUTA (5.4%), Social Security (6.2%), and Medicare (1.45%) taxes. Be sure to consider the maximum taxable amount for unemployment taxes ($7,000) per employee.

4. Determine the taxes to be reported on the quarterly 941 form for an employer who paid total gross wages of $62,000 and withheld $7,800 for federal income tax.

   Social Security __________
   Medicare __________
   Federal income tax __________
   Total __________

5. Determine the amount to be withheld from the current period's gross pay of $9,800 for Social Security and Medicare for an employee whose cumulative wages were $111,800, not including pay for the current period. Use the rates and taxable maximum given in the chapter.

6. Employees of Xper Co. are paid at their regular rate for the first 40 hours, at $1\frac{1}{2}$ times their regular rate for hours worked between 40 and 48, and double their regular rate for all hours worked over 48, per week. Calculate each employee's gross pay for the week.

   John Kowalski, regular rate $12.16, worked 47 hours
   Martha Madison, regular rate $15.50, worked 50 hours
   Joy Weston, regular rate $10.80, worked 42 hours

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Notes

Assignment 10.1: Payroll Problems

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 1 2

A **(52 points) Complete the payroll. (1 point for each correct answer)**

1. In this company, employees are paid $1\frac{1}{2}$ times their regular rate for overtime hours between 40 and 48 and 2 times their regular rate for overtime hours over 48 per week.

Name	Total Hours	Regular Rate Per Hour	Regular Earnings		Time and a Half		Double Time		Total Earnings
			Hours	Amount	Hours	Amount	Hours	Amount	
Akerman, Gail	49	12.80	40		8		1		
Carson, James	40	15.60	40		—		—		
Kula, Mary	50	13.50	40		8		2		
Murphy, Tom	46	18.00	40		6		—		
Norton, Alice	40	17.40	40		—		—		
Payton, Alan	36	15.00	36		—		—		
Perry, Lance	47	12.80	40		7		—		
Ponce, Barbara	41	12.00	40		1		—		
Quinn, Carl	49	18.00	40		8		1		
Reston, Sally	40	13.50	40		—		—		
Sacco, Dom	43	12.80	40		3		—		
Wilson, Ken	50	17.40	40		8		2		
TOTALS									

Score for A (52)

B **(28 points) Solve the following problems. (7 points for each correct answer)**

2. Mark Johnston is employed at a monthly salary of $2,980. How much is deducted from his monthly salary for FICA taxes (Social Security and Medicare)? ________

3. Joleen Dole is employed by a company that pays her $3,600 a month. She is single and claims one withholding allowance. What is her net pay after Social Security, Medicare, and federal income tax withholding? Use the percentage method for federal income tax. ________

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4. On April 1, the company in problem 3 changed its pay plan from monthly to weekly and began paying Joleen $830.77 per week. What is her net weekly pay after Social Security, Medicare, and income tax deductions? Use the percentage method. ________

5. William Diggs is married and claims four withholding allowances. His weekly wages are $725. Calculate his Social Security and Medicare deductions and, using the wage-bracket method, his federal income tax withholding. Find his weekly net pay. ________

Score for B (28)

C **(20 points) Compute and compare the federal income tax withholding amounts for each of the following individuals using the percentage method and the wage-bracket method. (Follow the steps in Section 10.2 for the percentage method.) (5 points for each correct difference)**

6. Susan Blake: weekly wages, $520; single; 1 withholding allowance
Percentage method: ________
Wage-bracket method: ________
Difference: ________

7. George Wilson: weekly wages, $445; married; 3 withholding allowances
Percentage method: ________
Wage-bracket method: ________
Difference: ________

8. Fred Greys: weekly wages, $387; single; 2 withholding allowances
Percentage method: ________
Wage-bracket method: ________
Difference: ________

9. Josephine Creighton: weekly wages, $732; married; 1 withholding allowance
Percentage method: ________
Wage-bracket method: ________
Difference: ________

Score for C (20)

Assignment 10.2: Payroll, Earnings Record, Payroll Tax Returns

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 1 2 3 4 5 6

A **(40 points) Solve the following problems. (1 point for each correct answer in the Total Wages column in 1; 2 points for each correct answer in the Net Pay column in 1 and 2)**

1. Complete the following weekly payroll register. Workers receive overtime pay for any time worked in excess of 40 hours per week at the rate of 1 1/2 their regular rate per hour. There is a 6.2% deduction for Social Security and a 1.45% deduction for Medicare taxes. Use the wage-bracket method for federal income tax withholding. Be sure to use the correct table based on the marital status of each employee.

Name	Marital Status	W/H Allow.	Total Hours	Regular Earnings		Overtime Earnings			Total Wages	Deductions					Net Pay
				Rate Per Hour	Amount	Hours Worked	Rate Per Hour	Amount		Social Security	Medi-care	Fed. Inc. Tax	Med. Ins.	Total	
Baker, C.	S	1	40	$14.90									$ 15.00		
Clark, T.	M	2	42	14.20									12.00		
Frank, B.	S	0	32	13.50									12.00		
Hawn, K.	M	3	40	15.00									18.00		
Jung, S.	M	2	45	15.50									18.00		
Kiber, J.	M	4	43	14.80									18.00		
Nelson, R.	S	1	40	14.50									12.00		
Oliver, B.	M	5	42	18.00									12.00		
Valdez, M.	M	1	40	16.80									15.00		
TOTALS													$132.00		

2. The total monthly wages of four employees are listed below. Determine the amount of the deductions and the net pay due to each employee. Use 6.2% for Social Security and 1.45% for Medicare tax deductions, and use the percentage method for federal income tax withholding. Determine the deductions and totals.

Name	Marital Status	W/H Allow.	Total Wages	Deductions				Net Pay
				Social Security	Medicare	Federal Income Tax	Total	
Ali, Kyber	S	1	$ 2,650.00					
Dawson, William	M	3	3,480.00					
Rivers, Lydia	S	0	3,200.00					
Stevenson, Robert	M	2	3,195.00					
TOTALS								

Score for A (40)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

B **(20 points) Solve the following problems. (1 point for each correct answer in the Net Pay column and 2 points for the correct Net Pay quarter total in 3; 1 point for each correct answer in 4)**

3. Complete the employee's earnings record for Alyssa Kirby. Use 6.2% for Social Security and 1.45% for Medicare taxes. Use the percentage method for federal income tax withholding.

Name Alyssa Kirby
Social Security No. 333-55-7452
Address 327 Blake Drive
No. of Allowances 3
Marital Status Married

Period Ending	Total Wages	Cumulative Wages	Deductions					Net Pay
			Social Security	Medicare	Federal Inc. Tax	Union Dues	Total	
1/6	$ 585.00	$ 585.00				$ 5.00		
1/13	620.00	1,205.00				5.00		
1/20	550.00	1,755.00				5.00		
1/27	635.80	2,390.80				5.00		
2/3	550.00	2,940.80				5.00		
2/10	598.27	3,539.07				5.00		
2/17	620.00	4,159.07				5.00		
2/24	597.50	4,756.57				5.00		
3/3	678.00	5,434.57				5.00		
3/10	650.00	6,084.57				5.00		
3/17	582.90	6,667.47				5.00		
3/24	620.00	7,287.47				5.00		
3/31	550.00	7,837.47				5.00		
Quarter Totals	$7,837.47	$54,642.86				$65.00		

4. The following is a summary of quarterly earnings of a company's employees. Determine the information requested for the employer's quarterly federal tax return.

Name	Total Wages	Taxes Withheld		
		Social Security	Medi-care	Fed. Inc. Tax
Carter, M.	$ 6,084.85	$ 377.27	$ 88.22	$ 451.42
Davis, L.	5,368.00	332.82	77.84	437.50
Gordon, J.	4,266.35	264.51	61.86	398.65
McBride, C.	7,230.00	448.26	104.84	595.80
Taggert, L.	6,240.50	386.91	90.49	465.50
Walton, N.	5,285.92	327.73	76.65	566.00
TOTALS				

a. Total earnings paid ____________
b. Federal income tax withheld ____________
c. Total Social Security tax paid ____________
d. Total Medicare tax paid ____________
e. Total taxes withheld ____________

____
Score for B (20)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

C **(40 points) Solve the following problems. (4 points for each correct answer in 5 and 6; 1 point for each correct answer in 7)**

5. The quarterly earnings of the employees of the Alpha Company are listed in the following table. Determine the employee information needed for the employer's quarterly federal tax return (Form 941).

		Taxes Withheld		
Name	Total Wages	Social Security	Medicare	Fed. Inc. Tax
Caldwell, Janice	$ 3,420.00	$ 212.04	$ 49.59	$ 423.90
Dorman, J.A.	3,600.00	223.20	52.20	473.67
Eagie, T.W.	4,016.50	249.02	58.24	433.33
Fortune, Mark	3,774.90	234.04	54.74	410.05
Morris, Regina	3,605.40	223.53	52.28	399.83
Tracy, Joseph	4,111.60	254.92	59.62	360.17
TOTALS				

a. Total earnings paid ____________

b. Employee's contribution of Social Security tax ____________

c. Employee's contribution of Medicare tax ____________

d. Federal income tax withheld from wages ____________

e. Total taxes withheld ____________

6. The Primo Company had a total payroll of $148,600.34 for the first quarter of the current year. It withheld $28,531.27 from the employees for federal income tax during this quarter. The company made the following deposits in a qualified bank depository for the amount of the income and Social Security and Medicare taxes withheld from the employees and for the company's contribution to the FICA tax: $17,050 on February 6; $17,050 on March 4; and $17,050 on April 5. Primo Company's bookkeeper is now filling out Form 941 (quarterly return), which is due by the end of April. Complete the following to determine the amount of the check that the company must send to the IRS for the undeposited taxes due.

a. Total Social Security and Medicare taxes to be paid for quarter ____________

b. Total taxes ____________

c. Total deposits for quarter (sent to qualified bank depository) ____________

d. Undeposited taxes due IRS ____________

7. Jordan Mills employed Ruth Liebowitz for the period January 1 through March 31 (13 weeks) at a salary of $1,500 per week. At the end of the first quarter of the year, how much in FUTA and SUTA taxes did the company owe to the federal and state governments if the state had an 0.8% FUTA rate and a 5.4% SUTA rate?

a. Total wages and taxable wages ________ ________

b. FUTA tax ____________

c. SUTA tax ____________

d. Total federal and state unemployment taxes paid ____________

____

Score for C (40)

Notes

11

Taxes

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1 Compute sales taxes, using rate tables and percents.

Learning Objective 2 Compute assessed valuations and property taxes based on assessed valuation.

Learning Objective 3 Compute tax rates in percents.

Learning Objective 4 Compute property tax payments involving special assessments, prorations, and exemptions.

Learning Objective 5 Make basic computations to determine taxable income for taxpayers who use the standard federal income tax Form 1040.

Learning Objective 6 Make basic computations to determine the tax liability for taxpayers who use the standard federal income tax Form 1040.

Most retail businesses collect a sales tax from customers when a sale occurs. The tax money must be turned over to the government. People and companies owning property usually pay taxes on the property's value. In this chapter we explain calculations involving sales, property, and income taxes.

Computing Sales Taxes

Learning Objective 1

Compute sales taxes, using rate tables and percents.

A **sales tax** is a government **levy,** or charge, on retail sales of certain goods and services. Most states and many cities and other local government entities levy sales taxes. State **tax rates**—the percent used to compute the amount of sales tax—currently range from 2.9% to 7.5%, and city and county rates range from 0.25% to 4.89%.

Retail sales taxes, which usually are a combination of state and local taxes, are calculated as a single percent of taxable sales. For example, a sale is subject to a state sales tax of 5% and a local sales tax of 1%. The combined rate of 6% is applied to all taxable sales in that locality.

SALES TAX AS A PERCENT OF PRICE

Sales taxes generally are rounded to the nearest cent. For example, sales taxes of 4% and 5% on amounts of up to $1 are charged as shown in Figure 11-1.

Figure 11-1 Sales Taxes

4% on Sales of	Tax Due	5% on Sales of	Tax Due
$0.01 to $0.12	none	$0.01 to $0.09	none
$0.13 to $0.37	$0.01	$0.10 to $0.29	$0.01
$0.38 to $0.62	$0.02	$0.30 to $0.49	$0.02
$0.63 to $0.87	$0.03	$0.50 to $0.69	$0.03
$0.88 to $1.00	$0.04	$0.70 to $0.89	$0.04
		$0.90 to $1.00	$0.05

STEPS to Compute Sales Tax and Total Sales Amount

1. Multiply the taxable sales amount by the tax rate.
2. Add the sales tax amount to the taxable sales amount to get the total sales amount.

EXAMPLE A

If taxable merchandise of $60.39 is sold in a state with a 5% sales tax, what are the amount of tax and the total amount to be paid?

Amount of tax: $\$60.39 \times 0.05 = \$3.0195$, which rounds to $3.02
Total amount to be paid: $\$60.39 + \$3.02 = \$63.41$

Most retail stores have cash registers that recognize a code such as the Uniform Product Code (UPC) to determine taxable sales and to calculate the sales tax automatically. The sales receipt usually shows the total taxable sales as a subtotal, the sales tax, and the total sales plus tax. Usually, discounts on a sale are subtracted from the sale price before the tax is figured. Shipping and installation labor charges are generally not taxed.

EXAMPLE B

A customer living in a city with a 6% state sales tax and a 1.5% city sales tax purchased a refrigerator regularly priced at $850. He was given a 10% discount. Delivery charges were $45. What were the amount of tax and the total cost to the buyer?

Discount amount: $850 × 10% = $850 × 0.10 = $85
Price after discount: $850 − $85 = $765, or $850 × 0.90 = $765
Sales tax: $765 × (0.06 + 0.015) = $57.38
Cost to buyer: $765 + $57.38 tax + $45 delivery = $867.38

State laws regarding the items subject to sales tax vary. Most states do not tax groceries; however, most do tax meals served in restaurants. Certain nonfood items also sold in grocery stores (such as laundry detergent) are generally taxed. When nontaxable and taxable items are purchased together, the register usually computes the total price of items purchased and automatically adds the correct amount of tax for each taxable item. The taxable items are clearly marked on the register tape along with the total amount of tax charged.

EXAMPLE C

A customer living in a state in which the tax rate is 7% went to a grocery store and purchased a quart of milk for $1.29, a loaf of bread for $2.79, potatoes for $3.85, and two taxable items—laundry detergent for $10.35 and fabric softener for $5.30. What was her total charge at the checkout counter?

Taxable items: $10.35 + $5.30 = $15.65
Tax: $15.65 × 0.07 = $1.0955 = $1.10
Total: $1.29 + $2.79 + $3.85 + $10.35 + $5.30 + $1.10 = $24.68

DIGITAL VISION/GETTY IMAGES

SALES TAX AS AN AMOUNT PER UNIT

All of the states and the District of Columbia levy special taxes on gasoline and cigarettes, usually stated in cents per unit (gallon or pack). State taxes on gasoline vary widely, from $0.08 in Alaska to $0.465 in California; in addition, the federal tax is currently $0.184 per gallon. State taxes on cigarettes currently range from $0.30 (Virginia) to $4.35 (New York) per pack; the federal tax is currently $1.01 per pack.

EXCISE TAX AS AN AMOUNT PER UNIT

An **excise tax** is a tax assessed on each unit. In some states both the excise tax and the general sales tax apply to items such as gasoline, cigarettes, and alcoholic beverages. In such instances, the excise tax may be part of the taxable sales price for general sales tax purposes. For example, in a certain locality gasoline costs $3.40 per gallon, plus state and federal excise taxes of $0.48, and is subject to a general sales tax of 6%. The total price per gallon is $4.11 ($3.40 + $0.48 excise tax + $0.23 general sales tax). The general sales tax is calculated as 6% of $3.88.

CONCEPT CHECK 11.1

In a state in which the combined state and city sales tax rate is 6%, a customer went to a convenience store and purchased the following items: bread, $2.50; ground meat, $6.79; cheese, $4.79; lightbulbs, $4.25; and motor oil, $5.80. Only the last two items are taxable. Rounding the tax to the nearest cent, compute the total cost of all items and tax.

Nontaxable items: $2.50 + $6.79 + $4.79 = $14.08
Taxable items: $4.25 + $5.80 = $10.05
Total tax: $10.05 × 0.06 tax rate = $0.60

$14.08	Nontaxable items
10.05	Taxable items
+ 0.60	Tax
$24.73	Total

Computing Assessed Valuations and Property Taxes

Learning Objective 2

Compute assessed valuations and property taxes based on assessed valuation.

A **property tax** for a business is a tax on real estate or other property, such as machinery, owned by the business. Businesses usually pay property tax bills semiannually. Taxes are based on a value, known as the **assessed valuation,** determined by a representative of the local or state government.

Assessed valuation ordinarily is based on the current **market value** of the property (what the property could be sold for). In many states it is fixed by law at 100%, but it is a fraction of that value in other states. Thus a particular community may use 60% of property values as the basis for tax billing. In most instances, land and buildings are assessed separately.

EXAMPLE D

The Kinsey family lives in a town in which assessed valuation is 60% of market value. The Bailey family lives in a town in which assessed valuation is 75% of market value. Each home has a market value of $260,000. What is the assessed valuation of each home?

Kinsey: $260,000 × 0.60 = $156,000
Bailey: $260,000 × 0.75 = $195,000

Assessed valuation often is increased by improvements to the property, such as the addition of an enclosed porch, a pool, or landscaping: Ordinary maintenance—a new coat of paint, for instance, or repairs to the roof—isn't justification for an increased assessment.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE E

The Lee family and the Kelly family live in a town in which assessed valuation is set by law at 80% of market value. They live in identical houses having a market value of $220,000. The Lee family added an enclosed deck costing $10,500 and a family room costing $32,000. The Kelly family made extensive repairs and repainted the house a new color at a total cost of $15,000. What was the assessed valuation on each home the following year?

Lee: $220,000 + $10,500 + $32,000 = $262,500 × 0.8 = $210,000
Kelly: $220,000 × 0.8 = $176,000 (repairs and painting are not considered improvements)

©Inger Anne Hulbækdal/Shutterstock.Com

CONCEPT CHECK 11.2

a. The Coles family owns a home with a market value of $300,000 in a community that assesses property at 100% of market value. The Jensen family owns a home with a market value of $400,000 in a community that assesses property at 60% of market value. What is the difference between the actual assessments of the two homes?
Coles: $300,000 × 1 = $300,000
Jensen: $400,000 × 0.6 = $240,000
Difference = $60,000

b. The Bay family home has a present market value of $280,000 in a community that assesses property at 80% of market value. If they add a family room and an additional bathroom at a cost of $42,000, what will be the new assessed valuation?
Revised market value: $280,000 + $42,000 = $322,000
New assessed value: $322,000 × 0.80 = $257,600

Computing Tax Rates in Percents

PERCENTS

Learning Objective 3

Compute tax rates in percents.

For a city, county, or special district, the tax rate is found by dividing the amount of money the government unit needs to raise by the total assessed valuation of the particular unit.

EXAMPLE F

The town of Lakeside has a total assessed valuation of $570,000,000. The amount to be raised by taxation is $9,975,000. What is the tax rate?

The tax rate is

$9,975,000 ÷ $570,000,000 = 0.0175, or 1.75%.

This rate is usually written as 1.75% of value, or $1.75 on each $100 of value.

EXAMPLE G

If a property in Lakeside is assessed for $160,000, what is the tax?

The tax can be found by multiplying the assessed amount by the rate:

$160,000 × 0.0175 = $2,800

CONCEPT CHECK 11.3

a. A town has a total assessed valuation of $960,000,000. A total of $12,000,000 must be raised by taxation for the operating expenses of the town. What will be the tax rate?
$12,000,000 ÷ $960,000,000 = 0.0125, or 1.25%

b. If property in a town is assessed at the rate of $0.74 per $100 of assessed value, how much tax will be due on property assessed at $475,000?
$475,000 ÷ 100 = $4,750
$4,750 × $0.74 = $3,515 tax due or $475,000 × .0074

Computing Special Assessments, Prorations, and Exemptions

Learning Objective 4

Compute property tax payments involving special assessments, prorations, and exemptions.

Communities can levy special assessments for improvements such as sewers, roads, or sidewalks. Sometimes the cost is spread over a period of years and added to the annual property tax bill of each property owner.

EXAMPLE H

The residents of Sonora voted to widen their roads and add sidewalks at a cost of $480 per residence, with the cost to be spread over a 12-year period. The Walker family had an annual tax bill of $1,230 before the improvements. If they pay their property taxes semiannually, what will be the amount of their next tax payment?

Annual cost for improvement: $480 ÷ 12 = $40
Annual property tax and improvement payment:
$1,230 + $40 = $1,270
Next semiannual tax payment: $1,270 ÷ 2 = $635

Whenever property is sold, it is customary to *prorate,* or distribute, the taxes between seller and buyer as of the date of the settlement.

EXAMPLE I

A home having an annual tax bill of $1,440 was sold at the end of the seventh month of the taxable year. The seller had already paid the tax for the full year. How much tax was the seller reimbursed on proration of taxes at the time of the sale?

Months prepaid by seller: 12 − 7 = 5

Tax reimbursed by buyer: $\$1{,}440 \times \frac{5}{12} = \$600$

In almost all states, property used exclusively by nonprofit organizations, such as schools, churches, governments, and charities, is exempt from taxation. Some states also allow partial exemptions for veterans and the elderly.

EXAMPLE J

The town of Baxter assesses property at 75% of market value. The tax rate is 2.1%. A church has a total market value of $560,000. How much does the church save each year by being exempt from property taxes?

$560,000 × 0.75 = $420,000 $420,000 × 0.021 = $8,820 saved

EXAMPLE K

A veteran living in Conton receives a partial exemption of 15% of regular property taxes. The veteran owns property valued at $380,000. If the property is assessed at 80% of value and the current rate is 1.3%, how much tax is due each six months?

Assessed value: $380,000 × 0.80 = $304,000
Regular taxes: $304,000 × 0.013 = $3,952
Taxes due after exemption: $3,952 × 0.85 (100% − 15%) = $3,359.20
Taxes due each six months: $3,359.20 ÷ 2 = $1,679.60

CONCEPT CHECK 11.4

a. The city of Belton voted to build a new library at a cost of $540 per residence, to be spread over a period of 15 years. If the Douglas family presently has a yearly tax bill of $2,600, paid semiannually, what will be the amount of their next tax payment?
$540 per residence ÷ 15 years = $36 per year
$2,600 present yearly tax amount + $36 = $2,636 new yearly tax amount
$2,636 ÷ 2 = $1,318 new semiannual tax amount

b. If a home with an annual tax bill of $780 is sold at the end of the third month of the tax year, after taxes have already been paid for the full year, how much will the buyer reimburse the seller when taxes are prorated?
12 − 3 = 9 months prepaid by seller

$\$780 \times \frac{9}{12} = \$585$ reimbursed by buyer

c. A 70-year-old man lives in a state that grants senior citizens a 10% exemption from property taxes. If his home has a market value of $250,000 and the tax rate is 1.3%, how much will his yearly taxes be? The county in which he resides assesses property at 70% of market value.
$250,000 market value × 0.7 = $175,000 assessed valuation
$175,000 assessed valuation × 0.013 = $2,275 regular taxes
$2,275 regular taxes × 0.10 = $227.50 reduction
$2,275 regular taxes − $227.50 reduction = $2,047.50 revised taxes

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 11.1 AND 11.2.

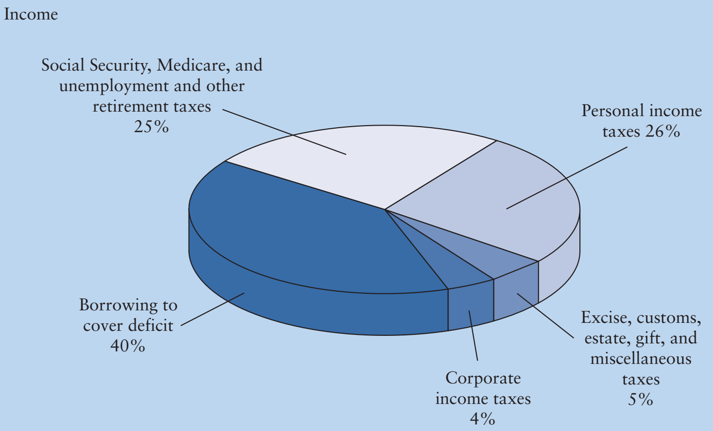
Personal income taxes provide 42% of all tax revenue of the federal government. Social Security and Medicare taxes, which you studied in Chapter 10, provide another 40%. Together, these three taxes make up 82% of all federal government income from taxation.

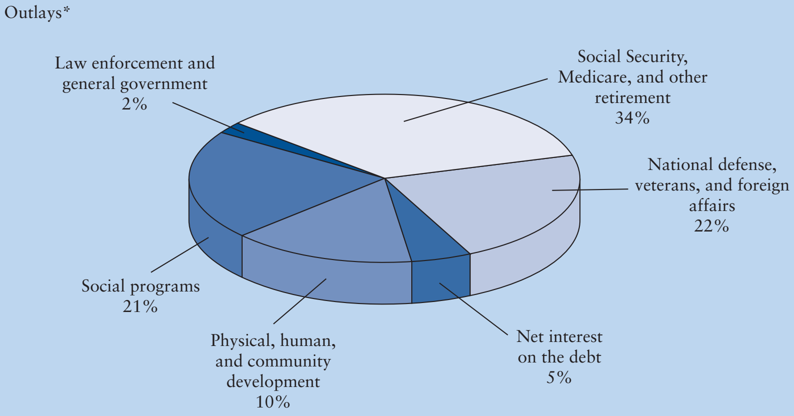
Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Outlays for Social Security, Medicare, and retirement programs constitute 34% of all government expenditures. Payment of interest on government debt represents 5% of all government expenditures.

Figure 11-2 shows the breakdown of federal government income and the allocation of federal government spending.

Figure 11-2 Income and Outlays. These pie charts show the relative sizes of the major categories of federal income and outlays for fiscal year 2009.





**The percentages for outlays do not total 100% due to rounding*

Determining Taxable Income, Using Standard Form 1040

Learning Objective 5

Make basic computations to determine taxable income for taxpayers who use the standard federal income tax Form 1040.

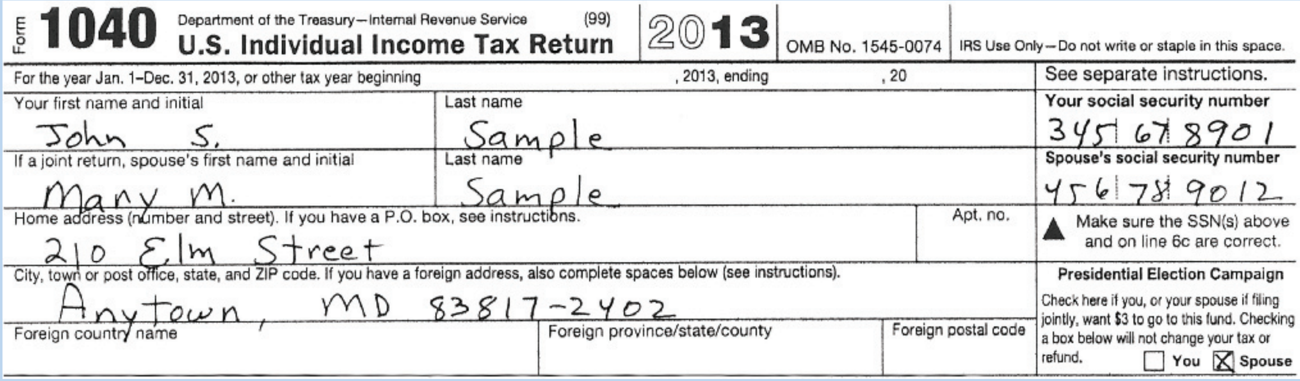
Form 1040 is the basic form filed by the majority of taxpayers. There are two simplified variations of this form: Form 1040A and Form 1040EZ. The income tax calculation process is illustrated for Form 1040 in Figures 11-3 through 11-8. The label in Figure 11-3 contains spaces for names, address, and Social Security numbers, as well as boxes to check to designate $3 to finance presidential elections.

A taxpayer's current **filing status** is indicated in the second section of Form 1040, shown in Figure 11-4. Five choices are given. The one selected determines the tax rate the taxpayer uses, as well as many of the taxpayer's deductions.

Personal exemptions, shown in Figure 11-5, are reductions to taxable income for the primary taxpayer and a spouse. One **dependency exemption** is granted for each dependent. The amount deducted for each exemption was $3,900 for 2013. This amount is usually adjusted for inflation each year.

Taxable income, shown in Figure 11-6, includes wages, salaries, tips, dividends, interest, commissions, back pay, bonuses and awards, refunds of state and local taxes, alimony received, property received for services, severance pay, accrued leave payments, sick pay, unemployment compensation payments, capital gains, and any other income not specifically exempted by statute. Taxable income may include a portion of Social Security payments, IRA distributions, and pensions and annuities. It also includes income from businesses, professions, farming, partnerships, rents, royalties, estates, trusts, and other sources. It does not include income from gifts, inheritances, bequests, interest on tax-exempt state and local municipal bonds, life insurance proceeds at death, workers' compensation benefits, and certain income items for veterans.

Figure 11-3 Form 1040 Label Section



Form **1040** Department of the Treasury—Internal Revenue Service (99) **U.S. Individual Income Tax Return** **2013** OMB No. 1545-0074 IRS Use Only—Do not write or staple in this space.

For the year Jan. 1–Dec. 31, 2013, or other tax year beginning , 2013, ending , 20 See separate instructions.

Your first name and initial: John S.
Last name: Sample
Your social security number: 345 67 8901

If a joint return, spouse's first name and initial: Mary M.
Last name: Sample
Spouse's social security number: 456 78 9012

Home address (number and street). If you have a P.O. box, see instructions.: 210 Elm Street
Apt. no.

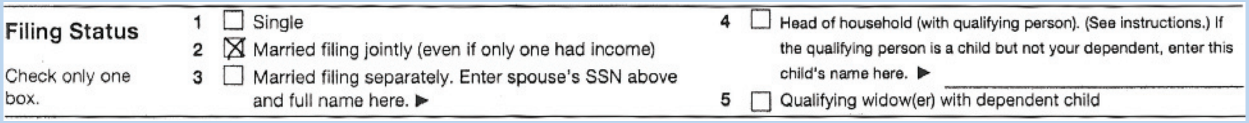
▲ Make sure the SSN(s) above and on line 6c are correct.

City, town or post office, state, and ZIP code. If you have a foreign address, also complete spaces below (see instructions).: Anytown, MD 83817-2402

Foreign country name
Foreign province/state/county
Foreign postal code

Presidential Election Campaign
Check here if you, or your spouse if filing jointly, want $3 to go to this fund. Checking a box below will not change your tax or refund. ☐ You ☒ Spouse

Figure 11-4 Form 1040 Filing Status Section

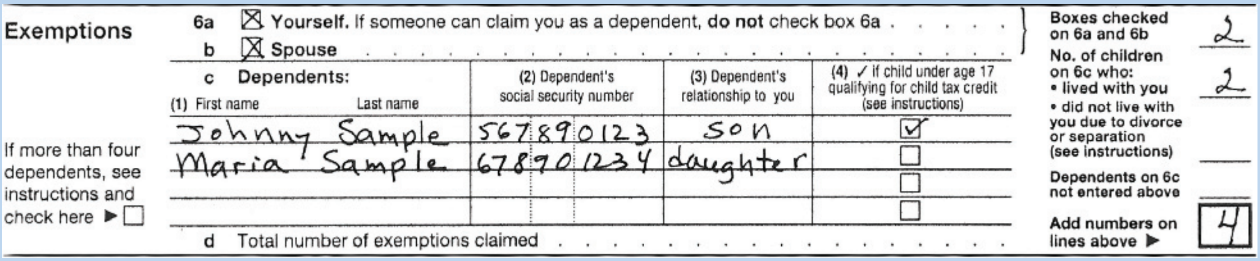


Filing Status

Check only one box.

1 ☐ Single
2 ☒ Married filing jointly (even if only one had income)
3 ☐ Married filing separately. Enter spouse's SSN above and full name here. ▶
4 ☐ Head of household (with qualifying person). (See instructions.) If the qualifying person is a child but not your dependent, enter this child's name here. ▶
5 ☐ Qualifying widow(er) with dependent child

Figure 11-5 Form 1040 Exemptions Section



Exemptions

6a ☒ **Yourself.** If someone can claim you as a dependent, **do not** check box 6a
b ☒ **Spouse**

Boxes checked on 6a and 6b: 2

c **Dependents:**

(1) First name Last name	(2) Dependent's social security number	(3) Dependent's relationship to you	(4) ✓ if child under age 17 qualifying for child tax credit (see instructions)
Johnny Sample	567 89 0123	son	☑
Maria Sample	678 90 1234	daughter	☐
			☐
			☐

If more than four dependents, see instructions and check here ▶ ☐

No. of children on 6c who:
• lived with you: 2
• did not live with you due to divorce or separation (see instructions)

Dependents on 6c not entered above

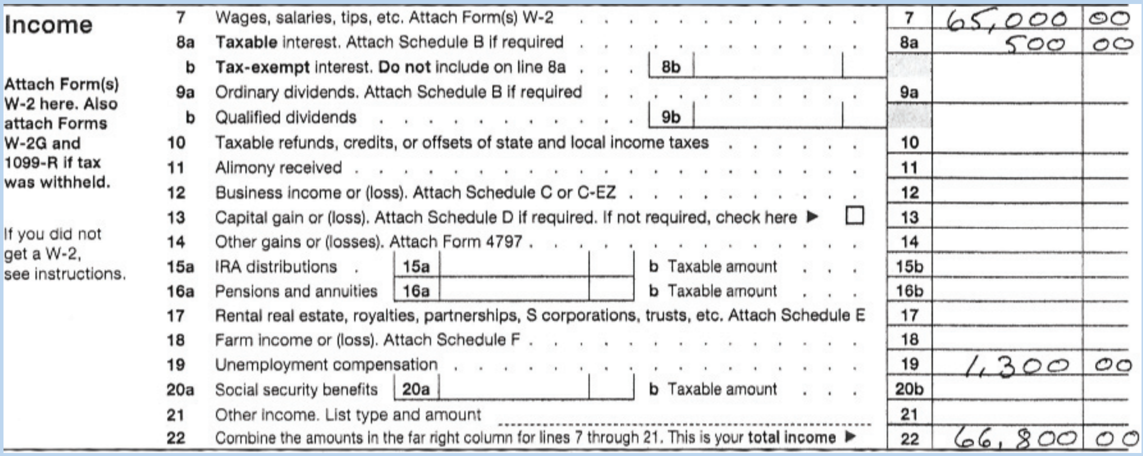
d Total number of exemptions claimed

Add numbers on lines above ▶ 4

INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE, HTTP://WWW.IRS.GOV

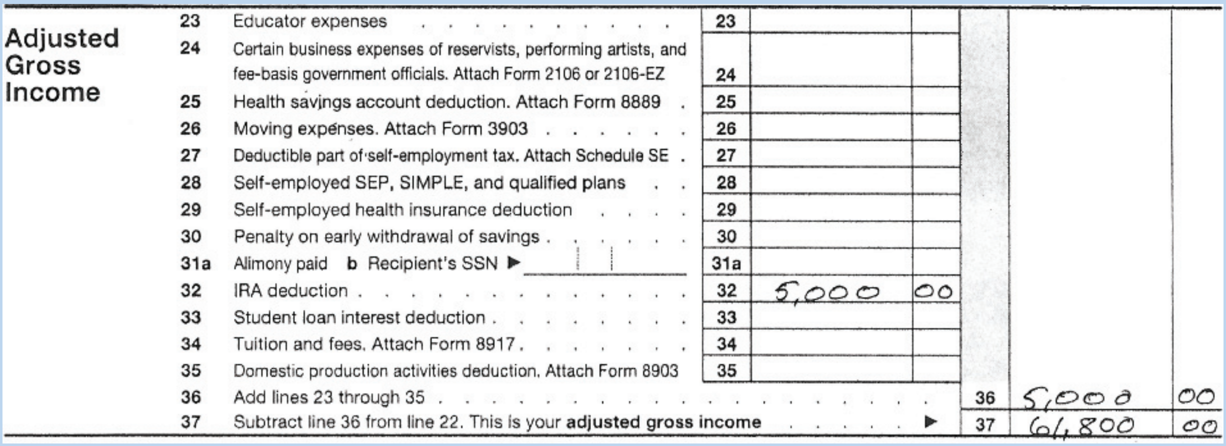
Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Figure 11-6 Form 1040 Income Section



Income	7	Wages, salaries, tips, etc. Attach Form(s) W-2		7	65,000	00
	8a	**Taxable** interest. Attach Schedule B if required		8a	500	00
Attach Form(s) W-2 here. Also attach Forms W-2G and 1099-R if tax was withheld.	b	**Tax-exempt** interest. **Do not** include on line 8a	8b			
	9a	Ordinary dividends. Attach Schedule B if required		9a		
	b	Qualified dividends	9b			
	10	Taxable refunds, credits, or offsets of state and local income taxes		10		
	11	Alimony received		11		
	12	Business income or (loss). Attach Schedule C or C-EZ		12		
	13	Capital gain or (loss). Attach Schedule D if required. If not required, check here ▶ ☐		13		
If you did not get a W-2, see instructions.	14	Other gains or (losses). Attach Form 4797		14		
	15a	IRA distributions	15a	15b		
		b Taxable amount				
	16a	Pensions and annuities	16a	16b		
		b Taxable amount				
	17	Rental real estate, royalties, partnerships, S corporations, trusts, etc. Attach Schedule E		17		
	18	Farm income or (loss). Attach Schedule F		18		
	19	Unemployment compensation		19	1,300	00
	20a	Social security benefits	20a	20b		
		b Taxable amount				
	21	Other income. List type and amount		21		
	22	Combine the amounts in the far right column for lines 7 through 21. This is your **total income** ▶		22	66,800	00

Figure 11-7 Form 1040 Adjustments to Income Section/Adjusted Gross Income



Adjusted Gross Income	23	Educator expenses	23					
	24	Certain business expenses of reservists, performing artists, and fee-basis government officials. Attach Form 2106 or 2106-EZ	24					
	25	Health savings account deduction. Attach Form 8889	25					
	26	Moving expenses. Attach Form 3903	26					
	27	Deductible part of self-employment tax. Attach Schedule SE	27					
	28	Self-employed SEP, SIMPLE, and qualified plans	28					
	29	Self-employed health insurance deduction	29					
	30	Penalty on early withdrawal of savings	30					
	31a	Alimony paid **b** Recipient's SSN ▶	31a					
	32	IRA deduction	32	5,000	00			
	33	Student loan interest deduction	33					
	34	Tuition and fees. Attach Form 8917	34					
	35	Domestic production activities deduction. Attach Form 8903	35					
	36	Add lines 23 through 35				36	5,000	00
	37	Subtract line 36 from line 22. This is your **adjusted gross income** ▶				37	61,800	00

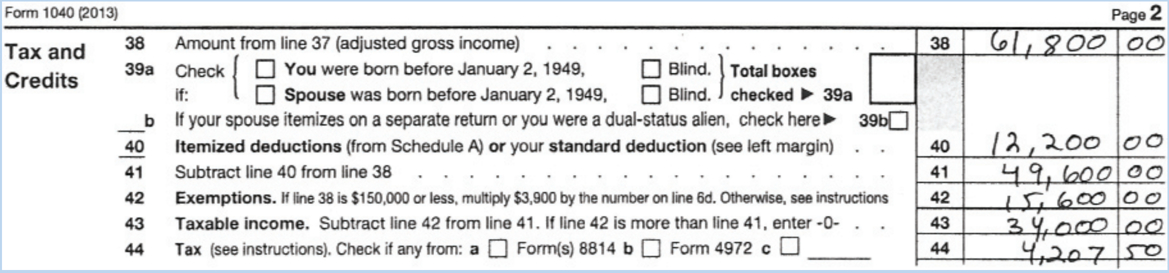
INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE, HTTP://WWW.IRS.GOV

The Adjustments to Income section, shown in Figure 11-7, allows the taxpayer to list certain items that are allowed as reductions to the total income. These adjustments include payments by the taxpayer or spouse to an individual retirement account (IRA), student loan interest, payments into a health savings account, moving expenses, one half of self-employment tax paid, and payments to a retirement plan for the self-employed, penalty on early withdrawal of savings, and alimony paid. **Adjusted gross income (AGI)** is a taxpayer's income after subtraction of adjustments to income from total income. (See line 37 of Adjusted Gross Income in Figure 11-7.)

After the adjusted gross income figure is computed, *deductions*—either the standard deduction or itemized deductions—are subtracted in order to figure taxable income (see Figure 11-8). The standard deductions for most taxpayers are shown in Figure 11-9. There are higher standard deductions for individuals who are 65 or over and for individuals who are blind.

Some taxpayers choose to itemize deductions rather than use the IRS-approved standard deduction. **Itemized deductions** are deductions allowed for specific payments made by the taxpayer during the tax year. These deductions include charitable

Figure 11-8 Form 1040 Taxable Income and Income Tax Section



Form 1040 (2013) Page 2

Tax and Credits	38	Amount from line 37 (adjusted gross income)	38	61,800	00
	39a	Check if: { ☐ **You** were born before January 2, 1949, ☐ Blind. } **Total boxes**			
		☐ **Spouse** was born before January 2, 1949, ☐ Blind. } **checked ▶ 39a** ☐			
	b	If your spouse itemizes on a separate return or you were a dual-status alien, check here ▶ **39b** ☐			
	40	**Itemized deductions** (from Schedule A) **or** your **standard deduction** (see left margin) . .	40	12,200	00
	41	Subtract line 40 from line 38	41	49,600	00
	42	**Exemptions.** If line 38 is $150,000 or less, multiply $3,900 by the number on line 6d. Otherwise, see instructions	42	15,600	00
	43	**Taxable income.** Subtract line 42 from line 41. If line 42 is more than line 41, enter -0- . .	43	34,000	00
	44	**Tax** (see instructions). Check if any from: **a** ☐ Form(s) 8814 **b** ☐ Form 4972 **c** ☐ ______	44	4,207	50

INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE, HTTP://WWW.IRS.GOV

Figure 11-9 Standard Deduction Chart for Most People

Single or Married Filing Separately	$6,100
Married Filing Jointly or Qualifying Widow(er)	$12,200
Head of Househlod	$8,950

contributions, certain interest payments, state and local income (or sales) and property taxes, a portion of medical and dental expenses, casualty and theft losses, tax preparation fees, and other annually identified deductions. Illustrations, examples, and problems in this book are based on the assumption that all state and local taxes and all donations to charity are deductible.

COMPUTING TAXABLE INCOME

Line 43 of Form 1040 shows "taxable income." Taxable income is the amount of income on which the income tax is based. Taxable income for most taxpayers is computed as follows (amounts from the preceding figures):

Total income (income from all sources) (line 22)	$66,800
Less adjustments to income (reductions of Total Income) (line 36)	− 5,000
Adjusted gross income (line 37)	61,800
Less deductions (line 40)(from Figure 11-9)	−12,200
Less exemptions (line 6d × $3,900, per line 42)	−15,600
Taxable income (the amount on which taxes are computed) (line 43)	$34,000

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 11.5

Catherine, age 25, had an annual adjusted gross income of $34,000. She filed a return claiming a single exemption and standard deduction. What is her taxable income?

Adjusted gross income	$34,000
Less standard deduction: single	− 6,100
	27,900
Less 1 exemption	− 3,900
Taxable income	$24,000

Determining Taxes Due, Using Standard Form 1040

Learning Objective 6

Make basic computations to determine the tax liability for taxpayers who use the standard federal income tax Form 1040.

Taxes are computed from taxable income (line 43). **Tax Rate Schedules** (Figure 11–10) show the tax rate for (1) single, (2) married filing joint return (even if only one had income), (3) married filing separate returns, (4) head of household, and (5) qualifying widow or widower. The Tax Rate Schedules shown are used for all illustrations, examples, and problems in this book.

The remaining sections of Form 1040 permit listing of special credits, other taxes, and payments to arrive at the final refund or amount owed, and have spaces for signatures of the taxpayers and of paid preparers.

EXAMPLE L

For the Form 1040 illustrated in the text, the tax is computed as follows:

Line 43—Taxable income	$34,000.00
From Schedule Y-1: (married filing jointly):	
Tax on the first $17,850	1,785.00
Plus 15% of amount over $17,850	
$34,000 − $17,850 = $16,150 × 0.15	+ 2,422.50
Total tax	$4,207.50

moodboard/Getty Images

EXAMPLE M

Filing as head of household, Dave has an adjusted gross income of $110,000. He itemizes the following deductions: $700 to Goodwill, $900 to his church, $8,200 interest on his mortgage, and $3,300 state taxes. He claims two exemptions. Compute his federal tax.

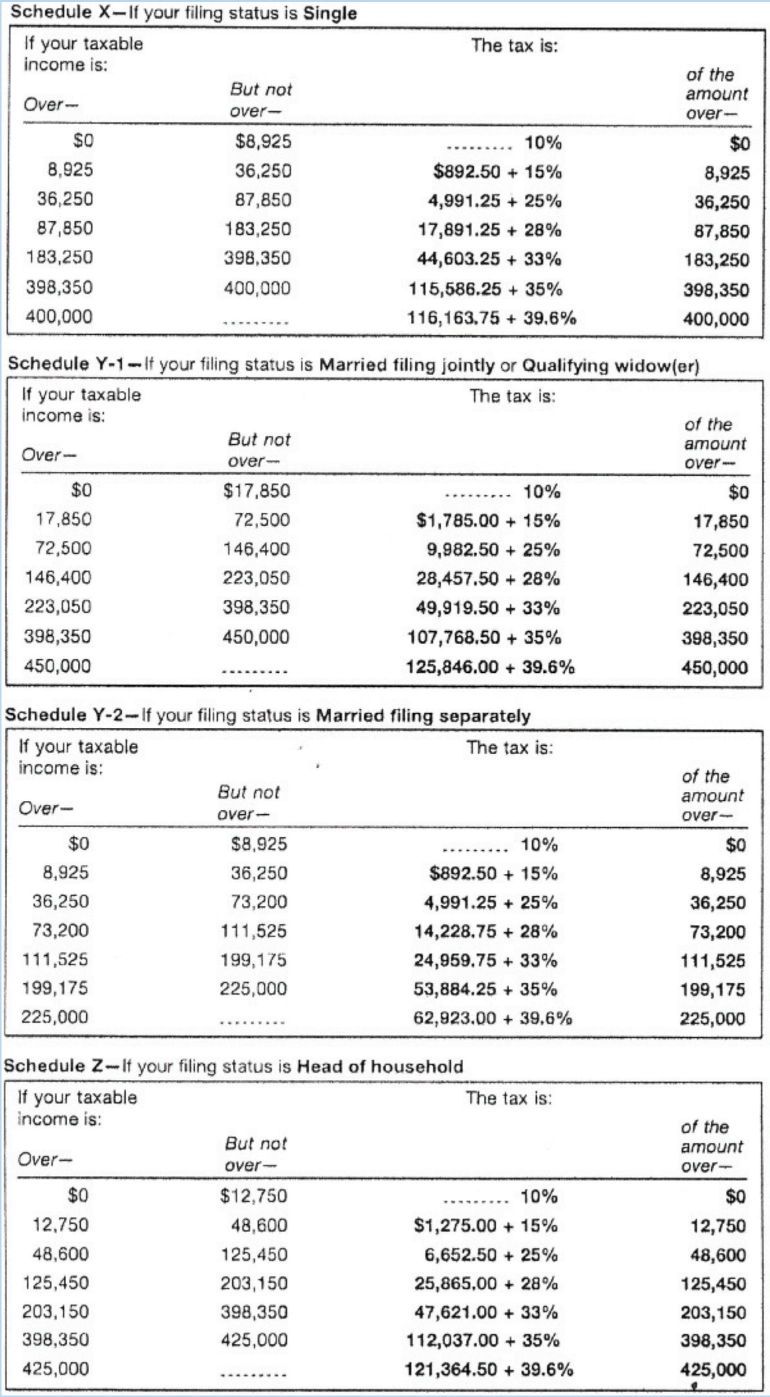
Adjusted gross income	$110,000
Minus itemized deductions	− 13,100
	96,900
Minus 2 exemptions	− 7,800
Taxable income	$ 89,100
From Schedule Z Head of Household:	
Tax on the first $48,600	$ 6,652.50
Plus 25% (0.25) of excess over $48,600	
$89,100 − $48,000 = $41,100 × 0.25	+ 10,275.00
Total tax	$ 16,927.50

TAX CREDITS AND NET TAX

Credits allowed are subtracted from the tax to calculate the net tax. One of the most common credits is the **Child Tax Credit** (line 51). Taxpayers with dependent children under age 17 can receive a credit of $1,000 per qualifying child. The credit phases out at higher income levels.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Figure 11-10 Tax Rate Schedules



Schedule X—If your filing status is **Single**

If your taxable income is: Over—	But not over—	The tax is:	of the amount over—
$0	$8,925	.... 10%	$0
8,925	36,250	$892.50 + 15%	8,925
36,250	87,850	4,991.25 + 25%	36,250
87,850	183,250	17,891.25 + 28%	87,850
183,250	398,350	44,603.25 + 33%	183,250
398,350	400,000	115,586.25 + 35%	398,350
400,000	....	116,163.75 + 39.6%	400,000

Schedule Y-1—If your filing status is **Married filing jointly** or **Qualifying widow(er)**

If your taxable income is: Over—	But not over—	The tax is:	of the amount over—
$0	$17,850	.... 10%	$0
17,850	72,500	$1,785.00 + 15%	17,850
72,500	146,400	9,982.50 + 25%	72,500
146,400	223,050	28,457.50 + 28%	146,400
223,050	398,350	49,919.50 + 33%	223,050
398,350	450,000	107,768.50 + 35%	398,350
450,000	....	125,846.00 + 39.6%	450,000

Schedule Y-2—If your filing status is **Married filing separately**

If your taxable income is: Over—	But not over—	The tax is:	of the amount over—
$0	$8,925	.... 10%	$0
8,925	36,250	$892.50 + 15%	8,925
36,250	73,200	4,991.25 + 25%	36,250
73,200	111,525	14,228.75 + 28%	73,200
111,525	199,175	24,959.75 + 33%	111,525
199,175	225,000	53,884.25 + 35%	199,175
225,000	....	62,923.00 + 39.6%	225,000

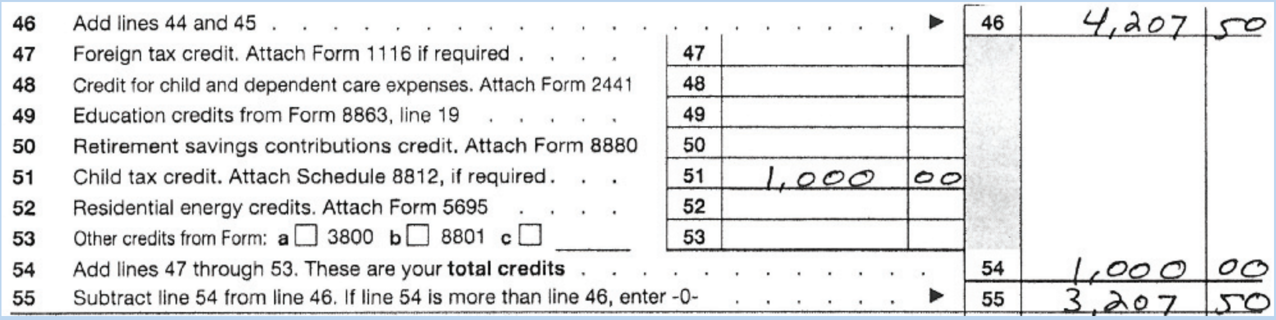
Schedule Z—If your filing status is **Head of household**

If your taxable income is: Over—	But not over—	The tax is:	of the amount over—
$0	$12,750	.... 10%	$0
12,750	48,600	$1,275.00 + 15%	12,750
48,600	125,450	6,652.50 + 25%	48,600
125,450	203,150	25,865.00 + 28%	125,450
203,150	398,350	47,621.00 + 33%	203,150
398,350	425,000	112,037.00 + 35%	398,350
425,000	....	121,364.50 + 39.6%	425,000

INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE, HTTP://WWW.IRS.GOV

Figure 11-11 shows that John and Mary Sample received a Child Tax Credit of $1,000. Look back at Figure 11-5 and note a check mark in the “qualifying child” box for Johnny Sample but not for Maria Sample. This distinction means that the son qualified for the credit because he was under age 17. The daughter qualifies as a dependent for exemption purposes, but no Child Tax Credit is allowed because she is age 17 or older.

Figure 11-11 Form 1040 Credits Section



46	Add lines 44 and 45 . . . . ▶				46	4,207	50
47	Foreign tax credit. Attach Form 1116 if required	47					
48	Credit for child and dependent care expenses. Attach Form 2441	48					
49	Education credits from Form 8863, line 19	49					
50	Retirement savings contributions credit. Attach Form 8880	50					
51	Child tax credit. Attach Schedule 8812, if required . . .	51	1,000	00			
52	Residential energy credits. Attach Form 5695	52					
53	Other credits from Form: a ☐ 3800 b ☐ 8801 c ☐ ______	53					
54	Add lines 47 through 53. These are your **total credits**				54	1,000	00
55	Subtract line 54 from line 46. If line 54 is more than line 46, enter -0- . . . . ▶				55	3,207	50

INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE, HTTP://WWW.IRS.GOV

EXAMPLE N

Eric and Audrey Vaughn file a joint return. Their adjusted gross income is $52,900, and they take the standard deduction. They have three children, aged 12, 15, and 17, and claim five exemptions. Compute their net federal income tax after credits.

Adjusted gross income	$52,900	
Standard deduction (joint)	−12,200	
	40,700	
Minus 5 exemptions × $3,900	−19,500	
Taxable income	$21,200	
From Schedule Y-1:		
Tax on the first $17,850		$ 1,785.00
Plus 15% on amount over $17,850		
($21,200 − $17,850 = $3,350 × 0.15)		+ 502.50
Total		$ 2,287.50
Minus child tax credit ($1,000 × 2)		− 2,000.00
Net tax after credit		$ 287.50

The final step is to determine whether there is a refund or a balance due. If more has been paid (usually through withholding by the employer) than the net tax, the difference is a refund. Conversely, if the net tax exceeds the amount already paid, the difference is the balance due with the return.

CONCEPT CHECK 11.6

Brian and Margaret Lee had wages of $38,200 and interest income of $2,400. They put $3,000 into a deductible IRA. They filed a joint return—claiming three exemptions (Brian, Margaret, and their daughter, aged 5)—and used the standard deduction. During the year, $950 in federal income tax had been withheld from their wages. What was the refund or tax due with the return?

Total income ($38,200 + 2,400)	$38,200
Adjustments to income: IRA deduction	− 3,000
Adjusted gross income	35,200
Standard deduction: married, filing jointly	−12,200
	23,000
Minus 3 exemptions: 3 × $3,650	−11,700
Taxable income	$11,300
From Schedule Y-1:	
$11,300 × 0.10	$ 1,130
Minus child tax credit for one child	−1,000
Net tax due after credits	$ 130
Minus federal income tax withheld	−950
Refund	$ 820

Chapter Terms for Review

adjusted gross income (AGI)

assessed valuation

Child Tax Credit

dependency exemption

excise tax

filing status

Form 1040

itemized deductions

levy

market value

personal exemptions

property tax

sales tax

tax rate

Tax Rate Schedules

taxable income

Try Microsoft® Excel

Try working the following problems using the Microsoft Excel templates found on the companion website. Solutions for the problems are also shown on the companion website.

1. Set up the table on the next page and complete using Excel formulas to calculate the values in the **Sales Tax Amount** and **Total Sale with Tax** columns using the sales tax rate indicated.

Hint: Use an absolute cell reference for the sales tax rate so that the formula can be copied. Cell references are changed to absolute by adding a $ before both the column letter and the row number. Example: D9

Sales tax rate:	**7.25%**

Taxable sale	**Sales tax amount**	**Total sale with tax**
$12.83		
$81.91		
$20.11		
$111.92		
$0.55		
$7.20		
$328.90		
$1,552.44		
$62.00		

2. Adams Company purchased a new copy machine priced at $2,650 less a 10% discount plus delivery and setup charges of $150. Determine the amount of the discount, the sales tax at 6.5%, and the total amount of the sale including delivery and setup costs. Set up the table below on a Excel worksheet and complete by adding formulas for calculations. *Hint:* Discounts are subtracted before and delivery costs are added after calculating sales tax.

Original price of copy machine	
Discount amount	
Net price after discount	
Sales tax at 6.5%	
Delivery and setup	
Total sale amount	

3. Kingstrom Corporation is located in an area in which assessed valuation is 70% of market value. The current tax rate is 1.35%. Determine Kingstrom's property tax for the year on property with a market value of $652.000. Enter the data below into an Excel worksheet and complete by adding formulas for calculations.

Market value of property	
Assessed valuation at 70%	
Property tax at 1.35%	

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
11.1 Compute sales taxes, using rate tables and percents.	1. The Farley family lives in a state in which the sales tax rate is 6%. When they purchased a dining room table and chairs regularly priced at $990, they were given a discount of 15%. Shipping charges were $50. What was the total cost to the Farleys? 2. Wanda Green lives in a state in which the state tax on gasoline is $0.22 a gallon. Federal tax is $0.19 a gallon. If she purchased an average of 12 gallons per week during the 52-week year, how much did she pay in state and federal taxes combined?
11.2 Compute assessed valuations and property taxes based on assessed valuation.	3. The Nguyen family lives in a town in which the assessed valuation on property is 65% of market value. The Parker family lives in a town in which the assessed valuation on property is 80% of market value. Each home has a market value of $162,000. How much is the assessed valuation of each home?
11.3 Compute tax rates in percents.	4. The town of Tyler has a total assessed valuation of $850,000,000. For the coming year the city must raise $11,730,000 for operating expenses. a. What will the tax rate be? b. What will the semiannual taxes be on a home with an assessed valuation of $135,000?
11.4 Compute property tax payments involving special assessments, prorations, and exemptions.	5. A home with annual tax payments of $510 was sold at the end of the tenth month of the taxable year. What was the amount of tax prorated to the buyer? 6. A veteran living in Alameda receives a partial exemption of 10% of regular property taxes. The veteran owns property valued at $312,000. If the property is assessed at 70% of value and the current rate is 1.5%, how much tax is due each six months?

Answers: **1.** $941.99 **2.** $255.84 **3.** $105,300 (Nguyen), $129,600 (Parker) **4. a.** 1.38% **b.** $931.50
5. $85 **6.** $1,474.20

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
11.5 Make basic computations to determine taxable income for taxpayers who use the standard federal income tax Form 1040.	7. Gilbert Black is 28 years old and single. He claimed one exemption. In 20XX he earned $47,000 in wages and $675 in taxable interest income. During the year he invested $1,800 in an individual retirement account. Because of a change of jobs, he also had $1,200 in moving expenses, which qualified as an adjustment to income. He had qualifying deductions of $1,000 in deductible medical bills, $300 in church donations, and $9,600 in interest on the condominium he owned. He also paid $150 in state taxes. He had $2,500 in federal income tax withheld during the year. What was the amount of tax due with his return? Income: Less adjustments to income: Adjusted gross income Less deductions: Less exemption: Taxable income Tax computation Less tax withheld during the year Tax due with return
11.6 Make basic computations to determine the tax liability for taxpayers who use the standard federal income tax Form 1040.	8. Donald and Judy Mason are 60 and 62 years of age, respectively. They filed as married, filing jointly. Last year they had a total income of $35,000 from investments. They filed a return and claimed the standard deduction. During the year they made quarterly payments of estimated tax totaling $1,000. What was the amount of tax due with their return? Adjusted gross income Less standard deduction Less exemptions: Taxable income Tax computation Less payments made during the year on estimated tax Tax due with return

Answers: 7. $1,512.50 8. $500

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 11

1. The Dupree Company is considering the purchase of some equipment from two different suppliers. If the sales tax rate is 6%, which of the following offers should Johnson Company accept?

   Company A: Equipment price of $65,000 plus installation and shipping costs of $1,200.

   Company B: Equipment price of $73,500 less 10% discount, no additional charge for installation or shipping.

2. Georgetown needs to raise $7,800,000 in property taxes on property with a total market value of $650,000,000.

   a. What will the tax rate be if property is assessed at 80% of market value?

   b. Determine the amount of semiannual property tax to be paid by each of the following property owners who live in Georgetown:

   Juan Garcia's home in Georgetown has a market value of $350,000.

   Margaret Smith is a senior citizen who receives a 10% exemption from property tax. Her home in Georgetown has a market value of $215,000.

3. The residents of Hunterville voted to add street lights and sidewalks to their city at a cost per residence of $324 to be spread over 12 years.

   a. If Mary Nowitski, a resident of Hunterville, had an annual tax bill of $860 before the special assessment, how much must she now pay semiannually for her property taxes?

   b. If Mary Nowitski sells her home at the end of the eighth month of the tax year and has already paid the property taxes for the full year, including the special assessment, how much of the prepaid property tax should be allocated to the purchaser?

4. Samantha Jones works as a waitress. Last year she earned $15,800 in wages, $8,600 in tips, and $1,500 catering on weekends. She also received $600 interest from her credit union, $800 from a corporate bond, and an inheritance of $10,000. What was her gross income for federal income tax purposes?

5. Pete and Angel Romero are married and have two children aged 5 and 8. They also support Pete's sister, who lives with them. How much can Pete and Angel subtract from their gross income for exemptions?

6. Jan and Kirsten Bjorg, aged 42 and 40, are married filing a joint tax return. They have itemized deductions totaling $8,500. Should they itemize or use the standard deduction?

7. Eva Jung files as a head of household, has an adjusted gross income of $38,000, claims two exemptions, and uses the standard deduction on her federal return. What is her taxable income?

8. Brad and Justine O'Riley are married, filing a joint return, and have taxable income of $65,000. What is the amount of their income tax?

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Notes

Assignment 11.1: Sales Tax

Name

Date Score

Learning Objective **1**

A **(50 points) Solve the following problems. (1 point for each correct answer)**

1. The Country Corner store is in a state with a sales tax rate of 7%. Compute the sales tax, the total sale, and the change given for each transaction.

Amount of Sale	Sales Tax	Total Sale	Cash Paid	Amount of Change
$8.37			$10.00	
2.35			5.01	
34.85			40.00	
19.56			25.00	
5.12			10.00	
16.50			20.00	
18.55			20.00	
0.98			1.25	
9.98			15.00	
17.78			20.00	

2. Bill's Hardware is in a city where the state sales tax is 3.5% and the city tax is 2%. Determine the sales tax, the total sale, and the change given for each transaction. Then compute the total sales taxes and total sales.

Amount of Sale	Sales Tax	Total Sale	Cash Paid	Amount of Change
$165.20			$180.00	
37.12			40.00	
15.85			20.00	
130.00			150.00	
82.50			90.00	
65.80			80.00	
Total				

Score for A (50)

B **(30 points) Solve the following problems. Use Figure 11-1 for problems 3 and 4. (points for correct answers as marked)**

3. A candy store, operating in a state with a sales tax of 4%, made 658 sales at 10¢, 935 sales at 35¢, 720 sales at 49¢, 985 sales at 65¢, 612 sales at 75¢, and 865 sales at 90¢. How much did the store receive in sales taxes? (8 points) ________

4. If the candy store in problem 3 computed the amount of state sales tax submitted to the state based on 4% of gross sales, what would be the difference between the amount of tax the store collected and the amount it submitted to the state? (8 points) ________

5. Discount Carpets Company and Oriental Rugs, Inc., each purchased a new delivery van. Discount Carpets is located in a state that has a 5% sales tax and paid the regular price of $21,800 plus tax. Oriental Rugs is located in a state that has a 6% sales tax and received a special discount of $500 off the regular $21,800 price.

a. Including sales tax, which company paid more for its van? (8 points) ____________

b. How much more? (6 points) ________

Score for B (30)

C **(20 points) Solve the following problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

6. Calico Books has stores in four states. Sales tax rates for the four states are as follows: state A, 8%; state B, 6.2%; state C, $5\frac{1}{2}$%; state D, 3%. Annual sales for the four states last year were as follows: state A, $865,000; state B, $925,000; state C, $539,000; state D, $632,000.

a. How much did Calico Books pay in sales taxes during the year? (10 points) ________

b. If all four states had the same lower sales tax rate of 3%, how much would Calico Books have collected in sales taxes during the year? (5 points) ________

c. If all four states had the same higher tax rate of 8%, how much would Calico Books have collected in sales taxes during the year? (5 points) _______

Score for C (20)

Assignment 11.2: Property Taxes

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 2 3 4

A **(40 points) Solve the following problems. (4 points for each correct answer)**

1. Find the assessed valuation for each of the following towns.

Town	Property Value	Basis for Tax Billing	Assessed Valuation
A	$625,000,000	100%	________
B	$862,350,000	85%	________
C	$516,800,000	70%	________

2. Find the tax rate for each of the following towns. Show your answer as a percent.

Town	Assessed Valuation	Amount to Be Raised	Tax Rate
F	$860,000,000	$13,932,000	________
G	$645,000,000	10,965,000	________
H	$732,000,000	9,150,000	________

3. Convert the following percentage tax rates into dollars and cents per $100 of assessed valuation.

Tax Rate	Dollars and cents
1.2%	________
0.83%	________

4. Convert the following tax rates per $100 of assessed valuation into percents.

Tax Rate	Percent
$1.87	________
$0.90	________

____

Score for A (40)

B (28 points) Solve the following problems. (7 points for each correct answer)

5. The Griffin Company is located in a state in which assessed valuation is 100% of market value. The tax rate this year is $1.35 on each $100 of market value. The market value of the company building is $190,000. How much property tax will Griffin pay this year? ________

6. The Balford Corp. is located in an area in which assessed valuation is 75% of market value. The tax rate this year is 1.4%. The market value of Balford's property is $685,000. How much property tax will Balford pay this year? ________

7. Next year, the assessed valuation in Balford's area (problem 6) will decrease to 70% of market value and the tax rate will remain the same as this year. How much less tax will Balford pay next year than it paid this year?

____

8. Perez, Inc., is headquartered in an area in which assessed valuation is 80% of market value. The tax rate this year is $1.40 on each $100 of assessed valuation. Its property has a market value of $320,000. How much property tax will Perez pay this year? ________

____
Score for B (28)

C (16 points) Solve the following problems. Round to the nearest dollar. (4 points for each correct answer)

9. There are four towns in Hogan county: Lawton, Johnsville, Dover, and Gault. Using the total assessed valuations given and the amount of money the town must raise for operating expenses, compute the necessary tax rate for each town.

Town	Total Assessed Valuation	Money That Must Be Raised	Tax Rate as a Percent
Lawton	$200,000,000	$3,400,000	________
Johnsville	$340,000,000	$5,100,000	________
Dover	$280,000,000	$3,780,000	________
Gault	$620,000,000	$12,400,000	________

____
Score for C (16)

D **(16 points) Solve the following problems. Round to the nearest dollar. (8 points for each correct answer)**

10. A home with annual tax payments of $624 was sold at the end of the fifth month of the taxable year. The seller had already paid the entire tax for the year. How much tax was the seller reimbursed on proration of taxes at the time of the sale? ________

11. A senior citizen lives in a state that grants a 20% exemption on property taxes. Her property is valued at $290,000 and is assessed at 75% of value. The current tax rate is 1.6%. How much tax is due each six months? ________

____
Score for D (16)

Notes

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 11.3: Federal Income Tax

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 5 6

A **(52 points) Complete all problems, using the exemptions, deductions, and tax rates given in the chapter. Round all amounts to the nearest dollar. (Rounding is allowed so long as it is done consistently.) (12 points for correct answers to 2a and 3a; 4 points for other correct answers)**

1. Determine the taxable income for each of the following taxpayers.

Adjusted Gross Income	Number of Exemptions	Type of Return	Deductions	Taxable Income
a. $28,700	1	Single	Standard	________
b. $52,450	4	Head of household	Standard	________
c. $34,700	2	Joint	Standard	________
d. $16,452	1	Single	$8,200	________
e. $43,700	6	Joint	$14,120	________

2. Sadie Gilford is single, age 30, with no dependents. She takes the standard deduction. Her income during the year was $32,600.

a. What is Sadie's taxable income? ________

____

____

b. What is Sadie's tax? ________

3. George Sampson is 52 years old. His wife Marcia is 49. They have $34,300 total income. They file a joint return and take the standard deduction.

a. What is the Sampsons' taxable income? ________

____

____

b. What is the Sampsons' income tax? ________

____

Score for A (52)

B **(48 points) Solve the following problems. (12 points for correct taxable income; 4 points for correct income tax)**

4. Alfred Wild is 32 years old; his wife Silvia is 34. They file a joint return. Alfred's salary for the year was $45,000. Silvia's salary was $47,000. They paid mortgage interest of $10,400 and property tax of $1,200 on their home. They paid state income tax of $3,800 during the year. They itemize their deductions.

a. What is their taxable income? ______

b. What is their income tax? ______

5. Michael and Martha Miller are married and have three dependents living with them: their children, aged 17 and 19, and Martha's mother. Michael's salary for the year was $30,000, and Martha's salary was $32,000. They received taxable interest of $1,250 and $500 interest from a state bond. They take the standard deduction and file a joint return.

a. What is their taxable income? ______

b. What is their net tax after credits? ______

6. Renaldo and Rita Hernandez have three children aged 17, 18, and 12. Renaldo's father lives with them and has no income. Renaldo earned a salary of $52,000 during the year. Rita is not employed. They paid $3,100 property tax and $6,200 mortgage interest on their home. They paid $2,600 principal on their mortgage. They paid state income tax of $2,175. They donated $500 to their church and $500 to the Salvation Army. They spent $5,600 on groceries and $1,100 on utilities. They itemize their deductions.

a. What is their taxable income? ______

b. What is their net income tax after credits? ________

Score for B (48)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Insurance

12

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1	Compute costs and savings for auto insurance.
Learning Objective 2	Compute auto insurance premium rates for high- and low-risk drivers.
Learning Objective 3	Compute short-rate refunds.
Learning Objective 4	Compute coinsurance on property losses.
Learning Objective 5	Compute life insurance premiums.
Learning Objective 6	Compute cash surrender and loan values.
Learning Objective 7	Compute medical insurance contributions and reimbursements.

Computing Auto Insurance Costs

Learning Objective 1

Compute costs and savings for auto insurance.

Auto insurance falls into three categories: liability and property damage, comprehensive, and collision. A policy that fully protects the insured will contain all three types.

Auto liability and property damage insurance protects the insured against claims resulting from personal injuries and property damage. Some states require all drivers to carry auto liability and property damage insurance. The amount of protection generally ranges from $50,000 to $1,000,000 per accident.

Auto comprehensive insurance protects the vehicle of the insured against water, theft, vandalism, falling objects, and other damage not caused by collision.

Auto collision insurance protects the vehicle of the insured against collision damage. Such damage may result from a collision with another vehicle or a one-car accident, such as hitting a tree.

The payment for an insurance policy is called a **premium.** Premium rates for auto insurance depend primarily on the coverage included in the policy, the driving record of the insured, the geographical area where the driver lives, and government laws and regulations.

Auto collision insurance policies usually contain a **deductible clause,** which stipulates that the insured will pay the first portion of collision damage, usually $50 to $500, and that the insurance company will pay the remainder up to the value of the insured vehicle. A deductible clause not only reduces the amount of damages for which the insurance company must pay but also keeps the insurance company from having to get involved in and do paperwork for small repairs costing less than the deductible. Therefore, a deductible clause lowers the premium for collision insurance.

EXAMPLE A

Fred Baker's car was insured for collision damage with a $250 deductible. The premium was $1,750 per year. Fred hit a tree, causing $2,530 damage to his car. How much more did he receive than he paid in premiums for that year?

$2,530 damage − $250 deductible = $2,280 paid by insurance
$2,280 received by insured − $1,750 premium paid = $530.

EXAMPLE B

The driver of car A carried auto liability and property damage insurance only. She struck car B, causing $1,400 damage to car B and $700 in injuries to the driver. Car A suffered $940 damage.

a. How much did the insurance company pay for this accident?
   $1,400 for damage to car B + $700 for injuries to driver = $2,100

b. How much did this accident cost the driver of car A?
   $940 in uncovered damage to her own car

©Vuk Vukmirovic/Shutterstock.com

No-fault insurance is a term that is used to describe an auto insurance system that requires drivers to carry insurance for their own protection and that limits their ability to sue other drivers for damages. No-fault insurance requires that the driver of each vehicle involved in an injury accident submit a claim to *his or her own insurance company* to cover medical costs for injuries to the driver and passengers in that person's own vehicle. No-fault insurance is mandatory in some states. No-fault insurance doesn't cover damage to either vehicle involved in an accident.

EXAMPLE C

Drivers A and B live in a state in which no-fault insurance is mandatory. Their two cars collided. Driver A and his passengers incurred medical expenses of $3,500. Driver B and her passengers incurred $1,700 in medical expenses. Car A required $1,400 in repairs. Car B required $948 in repairs. How much did the insurance companies pay under the no-fault insurance coverage?

Driver A's insurance company paid $3,500 in medical expenses.
Driver B's insurance company paid $1,700 in medical expenses.
Car repairs are not covered under no-fault insurance.

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 12.1

Driver A lives in a state in which no-fault insurance is mandatory. He carries all three classifications of insurance to be fully protected. His total insurance premium is $2,400, with a collision deductible of $500. Driver A is involved in a major accident when he loses control of his car and hits two parked cars (cars B and C) before colliding with an oncoming car (car D) containing a driver and three passengers. Driver A is alone.

Damage to driver A's car is $3,200.
Damages to cars B, C, and D total $8,600.
Medical expenses for driver A are $2,800.
Medical expenses for the driver and passengers of car D are $7,300.

a. How much does driver A's insurance company pay?
   Damage to car A: $3,200 − $500 deductible = $2,700 covered by collision
   Damage to cars B, C, and D: $8,600 covered by liability
   Medical expenses for driver A under no-fault: $2,800
   $2,700 + $8,600 + $2,800 = $14,100 paid by driver A's insurance
b. How much does driver D's insurance company pay?
   Medical expenses paid for driver D and passengers (no-fault): $7,300
c. How much more did driver A's insurance company pay to him and on his behalf for this accident than he paid in insurance expenses for the year? (This is the amount driver A saved this year by being fully insured.)
   $2,400 premium + $500 deductible for repairs in this accident = $2,900 paid by driver A
   $14,100 from insurance − $2,900 = $11,200
   Driver A saved $11,200 this year by being fully insured with a $500 deductible clause.

Computing Low-Risk and High-Risk Rates

Auto insurance premium rates reflect the risk involved. Insurance companies study the statistics on automobile accidents relative to driving records. Premium rates are adjusted according to the driving record of the insured. A driver with a clear record of long standing is considered to be a **low-risk driver** and may be rewarded with a discount in the premium rate. Conversely, a driver with a record of numerous citations or accidents is considered to be a **high-risk driver** and may pay double, triple, or even a higher multiple than the normal premium rate.

Learning Objective 2

Compute auto insurance premium rates for high- and low-risk drivers.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE D

Drivers A and B have identical automobiles and amounts of insurance coverage. The normal premium rate for each is $2,000 per year. Driver A is a low-risk driver and receives a 15% discount on the premium rate. Driver B is a high-risk driver and must pay double the normal rate. How much more does driver B pay for insurance than driver A?

Driver A pays $2,000 × 85% = $1,700 (100% − 15% discount)
Driver B pays $2,000 × 2 = $4,000
Driver B pays $4,000 − $1,700 = $2,300 more

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 12.2

Alice, a very careful driver, has had the same insurance company for 5 years and has not had a ticket during that 5-year period. Each year, she has received a 10% reduction in her premium. Bob has a record of speeding tickets. He has had one or more every year for 5 years. His premium for year 1 was normal, for years 2 and 3 it was 150%, and for years 4 and 5 it was 200%. The normal annual premium rate for each driver would be $980.

a. How much did Alice pay in premiums over the 5-year period?
   $980 × 90% = $882
   $882 × 5 = $4,410
b. How much did Bob pay in premiums over the 5-year period?
   Year 1: $980
   Years 2 and 3: $980 × 1.5 × 2 = $2,940
   Years 4 and 5: $980 × 2 × 2 = $3,920
   $980 + $2,940 + $3,920 = $7,840
c. How much more did Bob pay during the 5-year period than Alice?
   $7,840 − $4,410 = $3,430

Computing Short Rates

Learning Objective 3

Compute short-rate refunds.

Short rates are rates charged for less than a full term of insurance. If an insurance policy is canceled by the **insured** (the person who receives the benefit of the insurance) before the policy's full term is complete, the insured will receive a short-rate return of premium. If a policy is canceled by the insurance company rather than by the insured, the company must refund the entire unused premium.

EXAMPLE E

A driver paid an annual premium of $1,960 for auto insurance. After 3 months, the vehicle was sold and the insurance canceled. The insurance company refunded the remaining portion of the premium at the short rate, based on a penalty of 10% of the full-year premium. What was the refund?

Unused premium: $1,960 × $\frac{3}{4}$ = $1,470 (9 months canceled = $\frac{9}{12} = \frac{3}{4}$ year)

Penalty: $1,960 × 10% = $196
Short-rate refund: $1,470 − $196 = $1,274

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONCEPT CHECK 12.3

Davis Company purchased two cars. Each car was insured at an annual premium of $1,780. At the end of 6 months, Davis Company sold one car and canceled the insurance on that car. The insurance company imposes a 10% penalty on the premium for short-rate premiums. At the end of 9 months, the insurance company decided to cancel the insurance on the second car. Compute the refunds the insurance company paid for car 1 and car 2.

Car 1: $\$1{,}780 \times \frac{1}{2}$ year $= \$890$ unused premium

$\$1{,}780 \times 10\% = \$178$ penalty
$\$890 - \$178 = \$712$ refunded

Car 2: $\$1{,}780 \times \frac{1}{4}$ year $= \$445$ unused and refunded premium
(3 months canceled $= \frac{3}{12} = \frac{1}{4}$ year)

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 12.1.

Computing Coinsurance on Property Losses

Learning Objective 4

Compute coinsurance on property losses.

Property insurance is insurance against loss of or damage to property. A policy can be written to protect the insured against loss from fire, casualty, liability, and theft.

Premium rates, which are quoted in terms of dollars per $1,000 of insurance, depend on the nature of the risk, the location of the property, and the length of time covered by the policy. Short rates and short-rate penalties for less than a full term of insurance apply to property insurance as they do to auto insurance.

EXAMPLE F

A building worth $350,000 is insured for $210,000. The annual premium for the policy is $5,000. A fire causes $80,000 in damage.

a. How much does the insurance company pay?
$80,000 in damage is less than the $210,000 policy. The insurance company pays the entire $80,000.

b. How much does the property owner pay?
The property owner does not pay for damages.

c. How much does the property owner pay that year in damages and insurance?
$5,000 for the insurance premium only.

In an ordinary fire insurance policy, the insured will be paid for the loss up to the amount of the insurance. Policies may be obtained at lower rates if they contain a **coinsurance clause.** This clause specifies that if a property is not insured up to a specified percentage of its value, the owner is responsible for part of the loss and will not be covered for the full amount of damages.

It is common practice for a fire insurance policy to have an 80% coinsurance clause. Under this clause, the full amount of the loss will be paid by the insurance company only if the policy amount equals at least 80% of the property value.

STEPS to Determine the Owner's Share of Property Loss Under Coinsurance

1. Compute the amount of insurance required by multiplying the entire value of the property by the percentage of coinsurance specified.
2. Compute the **recovery amount,** the maximum amount the insurance company will pay, by using the formula

$$\frac{\text{Amount of insurance carried}}{\text{Amount of insurance required}} \times \text{Loss} = \text{Recovery amount.}$$

3. Compare the recovery amount with the amount of the insurance policy.
   - **a.** If the recovery amount is greater than the amount of the policy, the insurance company will limit its payment to the amount of the policy.
   - **b.** If the recovery amount is less than the amount of the policy, the insurance company will pay the recovery amount.

   Note: The insurance company will never pay more than the amount of the loss.
4. Determine the owner's share of the property loss by subtracting the amount the insurance company will pay from the loss amount.

EXAMPLE G

A building valued at $400,000 is insured for $200,000 under a policy with an 80% coinsurance clause. The annual premium is $2,800. A fire causes $100,000 damage to the building.

a. How much will the insurance company pay the insured?

STEP 1 $400,000 × 80% = $320,000 insurance required

STEPS 2 & 3

$$\frac{\$200{,}000 \text{ amount of insurance carried}}{\$320{,}000 \text{ amount of insurance required}} \times \$100{,}000 = \$62{,}500 \text{ insurance pays}$$

b. How much must the owner pay if the building is repaired for $100,000?

STEP 4 $100,000 − $62,500 = $37,500 paid by owner

c. How much does the property owner pay that year for damages and insurance?
$37,500 damages + $2,800 premium = $40,300

d. How much would the insurance company pay if the fire caused $300,000 damage to the building?

$$\frac{\$200{,}000}{\$320{,}000} \times \$300{,}000 = \$187{,}500 \text{ recovery amount}$$

The insurance company would pay $187,500 (because the recovery amount is within the policy's coverage).

e. How much would the insurance company pay if the fire caused $360,000 damage to the building?

$$\frac{\$200{,}000}{\$320{,}000} \times \$360{,}000 = \$225{,}000$$

The insurance company would pay $200,000, the maximum coverage.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE H

If the amount of insurance carried in example G had been $320,000, how much would the insured have paid for damages and insurance that year?

$2,800 premium only (the 80% coinsurance requirement would have been met)

CONCEPT CHECK 12.4

A building worth $100,000 is insured for $60,000 with an 80% coinsurance clause. A fire causes $70,000 in damage. How much of the repair cost will the insurance company pay, and how much will the insured pay?

$\$100{,}000 \times 80\% = \$80{,}000$ insurance required

$\frac{\$60{,}000}{\$80{,}000} \times \$70{,}000 = \$52{,}500$ insurance pays

$\$70{,}000 - \$52{,}500 = \$17{,}500$ insured pays

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 12.2.

Computing Life Insurance Premiums

Learning Objective 5

Compute life insurance premiums.

The policies most commonly issued by life insurance companies are term insurance, straight life (sometimes called ordinary life), limited-payment life, endowment, and annuity.

Term insurance is protection issued for a limited time. A certain premium is paid every year *during the specified time period,* or term. The policy is payable only in case of death of the insured during the term. Otherwise, neither the insured nor the specified beneficiaries receive any payment, and the protection stops at the end of the term.

For **straight (ordinary) life insurance** coverage, a certain premium, or fee, is paid every year *until the death of the insured.* The policy then becomes payable to the **beneficiary.** A policy beneficiary can be a person, a company, or an organization.

Limited-payment life insurance (such as 20-payment life) requires the payment of a specified premium each year for a certain number of years or until the death of the insured, whichever comes first. Should the insured live longer than the specified number of years, the policy requires no further payments for the remainder of the insured's life and is payable to the beneficiary on the death of the insured.

Endowment insurance provides insurance payable on the insured's death if it occurs within a specified period. If the insured is alive at the end of the specified period, an endowment of the same amount as the policy is payable.

Annuity insurance pays a certain sum of money to the insured every year after the insured reaches a specified age, and is paid until the insured's death.

An **additional death benefit (ADB)**, sometimes referred to as an *accidental death benefit*, accompanies some policies. ADB allows the insured to purchase, at a low rate per thousand dollars of coverage, additional insurance up to the full face value of the policy. In case of death of the insured by accident, both the full value of the policy and the ADB are paid to the beneficiaries. If death occurs other than by accident, the full value of the policy is paid, but no ADB is paid.

BRONWYN KIDD/PHOTODISC/GETTY IMAGES

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Figure 12-1 shows typical annual, semiannual, and quarterly premiums (ages 25–28) for straight life, 20-payment life, and 20-year endowment policies.

Figure 12-1 **Insurance Premium per $1,000**

	Straight Life			20-Payment Life			20-Year Endowment		
Age	**Annual**	**Semi-annual**	**Quarterly**	**Annual**	**Semi-annual**	**Quarterly**	**Annual**	**Semi-annual**	**Quarterly**
25	$17.20	$ 8.94	$4.73	$31.20	$16.26	$8.26	$52.00	$27.04	$14.30
26	17.85	9.28	4.91	31.81	16.52	8.45	52.60	27.35	14.47
27	18.60	9.67	5.11	32.41	16.83	8.64	53.20	27.66	14.63
28	19.30	10.04	5.31	33.06	17.31	8.85	53.86	28.01	14.81

EXAMPLE I

Using the premiums shown in Figure 12-1, determine the yearly premiums for each of the following $50,000 life insurance policies purchased at age 27. First, find the age, 27. Then, read across the table to the type of insurance and frequency of payment. Finally, multiply the table amount of 50 ($50,000 ÷ 1,000) to determine the premium.

Type of Insurance	Method of Payment	Premium Computation
Straight Life	Annual	$\$18.60 \times 50 = \$930$
20-Year Endowment	Quarterly	$\$14.63 \times 4 \times 50 = \$2{,}926$
20-Payment Life	Semiannual	$\$16.83 \times 2 \times 50 = \$1{,}683$
20-Year Endowment	Semiannual	$\$27.66 \times 2 \times 50 = \$2{,}766$
Straight Life	Quarterly	$\$5.11 \times 4 \times 50 = \$1{,}022$

CONCEPT CHECK 12.5

(Use the premiums in Figure 12-1.)

a. If a person at age 28 purchases a straight life insurance policy having a face value of $150,000 with quarterly premiums, what is the yearly premium?
$\$5.31 \times 4 \times 150 = \$3{,}186$

b. If a person at age 25 purchases a 20-payment life insurance policy having a face value of $100,000 with semiannual premiums, what is the yearly premium?
$\$16.26 \times 2 \times 100 = \$3{,}252$

c. If a person at age 25 purchases a 20-year endowment insurance policy having a face value of $75,000 with annual premiums, what is the yearly premium?
$\$52 \times 75 = \$3{,}900$

Computing Cash Surrender and Loan Values

Learning Objective 6

Compute cash surrender and loan values.

Except for term insurance, insurance usually has a **cash surrender value,** which is the amount of cash that the company will pay the insured on the surrender, or “cashing in,” of the policy. The **loan value** of a policy is the amount that the insured may borrow on the policy from the insurance company. Interest is charged on such loans. The values, often quoted after the third year of the policy, are stated in the policy and increase every

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

year. Figure 12-2 shows typical cash surrender and loan values for policies issued at age 25 per $1,000 of life insurance.

Figure 12-2 **Insurance Values per $1,000**

End of Policy Year	Cash Surrender and Loan Values		
	Straight Life	20-Payment Life	20-Year Endowment
3	$ 10	$ 43	$ 88
4	22	68	130
5	35	93	173
10	104	228	411
15	181	380	684
20	264	552	1,000

EXAMPLE J

Use the values shown in Figure 12-2 to determine the cash surrender or loan value for each of the following policies.

Policy Year	Type of Policy	Amount of Policy	Cash Surrender or Loan Value
10	Straight Life	$ 75,000	75 × $104 = $ 7,800
5	20-Year Endowment	$ 15,000	15 × $173 = $ 2,595
10	20-Payment Life	$ 50,000	50 × $228 = $11,400
20	Straight Life	$200,000	200 × $264 = $52,800
15	20-Year Endowment	$ 50,000	50 × $684 = $34,200

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 12.6

Use the values shown in Figure 12-2 to determine the cash surrender or loan value for each of the following policies.

a. Third policy year of a $50,000 20-year endowment policy
   50 × $88 = $4,400

b. Twentieth policy year of a $100,000 straight life policy
   100 × $264 = $26,400

c. Tenth policy year of a $25,000 20-payment life policy
   25 × $228 = $5,700

Computing Medical Insurance Contributions and Reimbursements

Learning Objective 7

Compute medical insurance contributions and reimbursements.

Most large employers and many small employers subscribe to a group plan on behalf of their employees. **Group insurance** plans provide medical insurance coverage to large numbers of people at lower premium rates than individuals could obtain separately. Employers generally pay most of the premium for employees and a smaller portion of the premium for family members of employees. Many employers now use group plans known as a **health maintenance organization (HMO)** or a **preferred provider organization (PPO)**. The Federal Government also provides insurance under the **Affordable Care Act (ACA)**. Under provisions of ACA people who cannot afford to pay the full premium amount are given subsidies to pay all or a part of the cost.

EXAMPLE K

Employer A selected a basic health care plan to cover employees who want to participate. Monthly premiums are as follows: employee only, $520; employee with one dependent, $680; and employee with multiple dependents, $740. Employees pay a portion of the premium as follows: employee only, $0; employee with one dependent, $80; and employee with multiple dependents, $120. How much does the employer pay during the year for each category of employee?

Employee only: $520 × 12 = $6,240
Employee with one dependent: ($680 − $80) × 12 = $7,200
Employee with multiple dependents: ($740 − $120) × 12 = $7,440

Masterfile Corporation

EXAMPLE L

Employer B selected a total care health plan to cover employees who want to participate. Monthly premiums are as follows: employee only, $400; employee with one dependent, $500; and employee with multiple dependents, $580. The employer pays most of the premium, but employees pay a portion as follows: employee only, $60; employee with one dependent, $160; and employee with multiple dependents, $240. What percent of the premium will be paid by a single employee, an employee with one dependent, and an employee with six dependents?

A single employee: $60 ÷ 400 = 0.15, or 15%
An employee with 1 dependent: $160 ÷ 500 = 0.32, or 32%
An employee with 6 dependents: $240 ÷ 580 = .4137, or 41.4%

Many group plans include a provision for an annual deductible, which is the cost that must be paid by the employee before any cost is paid by the insurance company. Group medical plans also frequently provide for the payment by the insurance company of a percent of costs over the deductible, usually 70% to 90%, with the remaining 30% to 10% paid by the insured.

EXAMPLE M

Employer C provides group health coverage that includes a $500 annual deductible per family and payment of 70% of the medical charges exceeding the deductible. How much would an employee with three dependents pay if her medical bills for the year were $1,500?

$1,500 − $500 deductible = $1,000
$1,000 × 30% paid by employee = $300
$500 deductible + $300 payments = $800 paid by the employee

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 12.7

An employer provides group health coverage that includes a $300 annual deductible per family and payment of 80% of costs over the deductible.

a. How much would an employee with two dependents pay if his medical bills for the year were $460?
   $460 − $300 deductible = $160
   $160 × 20% = $32
   $300 deductible + $32 = $332 paid by the employee

b. How much would that employee have paid if his total medical bills for the year had been $4,300?
   $4,300 medical costs − $300 deductible = $4,000
   $4,000 × 20% = $800
   $300 deductible + $800 = $1,100

c. How much of the $4,300 in medical bills would that employee have paid if his employer did not provide medical insurance and he did not have other coverage?
   $4,300

d. How much would the employer pay if the monthly premium for an employee with multiple dependents was $480?
   $480 × 12 = $5,760

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 12.3.

Chapter Terms for Review

additional death benefit (ADB)
affordable care act (ACA)
annuity insurance
auto collision insurance
auto comprehensive insurance
auto liability and property damage insurance
beneficiary
cash surrender value
coinsurance clause
deductible clause
endowment insurance
group insurance
health maintenance organization (HMO)
high-risk driver
insured
limited-payment life insurance
loan value
low-risk driver
no-fault insurance
preferred provider organization (PPO)
premium
property insurance
recovery amount
short rates
straight (ordinary) life insurance
term insurance

Try Microsoft® Excel

Try working the problems using the Microsoft Excel templates found on the companion website. Solutions for the problems are also shown on the companion website.

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
12.1 Compute costs and savings for auto insurance.	Drivers A and B live in a state in which no-fault insurance is mandatory. Both drivers carry all three classifications of insurance. Driver A has a deductible of $500; driver B has a deductible of $200. Driver A crashes into driver B. Neither auto has any passengers. Car A has $1,800 in damages; car B has $2,000 in damages. Driver A is not hurt; driver B has $900 in medical bills. 1. How much does driver A's insurance company pay? 2. How much does driver B's insurance company pay?
12.2 Compute auto insurance premium rates for high- and low-risk drivers.	3. Juan has an excellent driving record and receives a 20% discount on his annual premium. Dave has a record of numerous tickets and must pay 2 times the normal annual premium rate. If the normal premium for each driver is $1,500, how much more does Dave pay for his insurance than Juan pays?
12.3 Compute short-rate refunds.	4. XYZ company purchased a delivery truck and paid an annual insurance premium of $3,600. XYZ company sold the truck at the end of 8 months and canceled the policy. The insurance company charges a 10% penalty for short-rate refunds. What was the amount of the short-rate refund to XYZ company?
12.4 Compute coinsurance on property losses.	5. A building worth $400,000 is insured for $300,000 with an 80% coinsurance clause. Fire causes $200,000 in damage. How much does the insurance company pay?
12.5 Compute life insurance premiums.	6. Premiums per $1,000 of straight life insurance at the age of 25 are as follows: annual, $17.20; semiannual, $8.94; and quarterly, $4.73. What will be the total yearly premiums for the following three policies: $50,000, annual; $25,000, semiannual; and $20,000, quarterly?

Answers: **1.** $3,300 **2.** $900 **3.** $1,800 **4.** $840 **5.** $187,500 **6.** $1,685.40

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
12.6 Compute cash surrender and loan values.	7. If cash surrender values for year 15 of a policy are $200 per thousand dollars of coverage for straight life and $380 per thousand dollars of coverage for 20-payment life, what is the total cash surrender value of these two policies: $50,000 straight life and $50,000 20-payment life?
12.7 Compute medical insurance contributions and reimbursements.	8a. An employer provides group health coverage that includes a $200 annual deductible per family and payment of 80% of costs over deductible. How much would an employee with four dependents pay if his medical bills for the year were as follows: self, $240; dependent 1, $170; dependent 2, $30; dependent 3, $460; and dependent 4, $2,200? b. How much would the employee pay if the annual deductible were $50 per person?

Answers: **7.** $29,000 **8a.** $780 **8b.** $804

Review Problems for Chapter 12

1. Drivers Jim Olson and Joshua Stein live in a state having no-fault auto insurance. Joshua causes an accident by hitting Jim's car. Joshua isn't hurt. Jim spends 3 days in the hospital at a cost of $5,300. Compute the amount that each driver's insurance company pays toward medical expenses.___________

2. IXP insured an office building for $290,000 for 1 year at a premium rate of $7.20 per thousand. At the end of 9 months, IXP sold the building and canceled the policy. If the insurance company has a short-rate refund policy that includes a 10% penalty, how much refund did IXP receive?___________

3. Driver Devon Cooper has a poor driving record and pays double the usual premium as a high-risk driver. The regular premium would be $490 for a year. If Devon must pay the high-risk premium every year for 5 years, how much more will he pay for insurance premiums than a low-risk driver receiving a 10% discount over the same 5-year period? ___________

4. Insurance company A has a standard 90% coinsurance clause for all fire insurance coverage. Insurance company B has a standard 75% coinsurance clause for all fire insurance coverage. A building is valued at $195,000. How much more insurance coverage would insurance company A require than insurance company B for full coinsurance coverage?___________

5. The Morgan Company warehouse was valued at $425,000. The building was insured for $170,000. The policy contained an 80% coinsurance clause. A fire caused $60,000 in damages. Compute the amount of the fire damage The Morgan Company had to pay.___________

6. Mike Jankowski, age 27, purchased a $35,000, 20-payment life policy with premiums payable annually. John Jamison, also age 27, purchased a $35,000 straight life policy with premiums payable semiannually. Both Mike and John lived 40 more years. How much more in premiums did John pay the insurance company during his lifetime than Mike paid during his? (Use values from Figure 12-1.) ___________

7. Sally Munson, age 25, purchased a $35,000, 20-payment life policy. Five years later she needed cash. Compute the maximum amount she could borrow on the policy. (Use values from Figure 12-2.)

   ____

8. An employer provides group health coverage that includes a $600 annual deductible per family and payment of 80% of costs exceeding the deductible amount. An employee with no dependents incurs $4,800 in medical expenses during the year. How much of the medical costs must the employee pay?

   ____

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Assignment 12.1: Auto Insurance

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **1** **2**

A **(50 points) Solve the following problems. (5 points for each correct answer)**

1. Susan Li had full insurance coverage. Her liability and property damage coverage was $100,000 per accident. Her collision insurance had a $500 deductible clause. She struck two cars. Damages to the cars were $840 and $320. Damage to her own car was $370. Her annual insurance premium was $1,180.

a. What are the total costs to the insurance company for Susan's accident?__________

b. If this was the only accident that Susan had this year, did the insurance company profit after paying for Susan's accident? __________

c. What are Susan's total costs this year for insurance and the accident?__________

d. What would Susan's total costs for the accident have been without insurance?__________

2. Renaldo Garcia paid an annual premium of $2,700 for auto collision insurance with a $500 deductible clause. His steering went out and he hit a tree, causing $4,000 damage to his car. How much did he save this year by having insurance? __________

3. Sean O'Day received his driver's license 1 year ago. He has had three citations for speeding, but no accidents. His insurance premium last year was $2,350. This year his premium will be 100% higher because of his driving record.

a. What will be the amount of his premium this year? __________

b. Four months into the next year, Sean has continued his unsafe driving habits. The insurance company is canceling his policy. What will be the amount of the refund? __________

c. Sean O'Day has found an insurance company that will insure him as a high-risk driver at triple the standard annual rate of $1,600. What will be his average monthly insurance premium for the first 28 months of his driving career? (Round your answer to the nearest dollar.) __________

d. If Sean had been a careful driver and kept the amount of his premium unchanged, how much would he have saved in these first 28 months? (Round your computations to the nearest dollar.) __________

4. Drivers A and B have identical insurance coverage. Driver A has an excellent driving record and receives a 15% discount on the standard premium. Driver B has numerous citations and pays 50% above the standard rate. The standard rate in both cases is $1,800. How much more does driver B pay for insurance than driver A? __________

Score for A (50)

B **(50 points) Solve the following problems. (5 points for each correct answer)**

5. Tom Barton carries liability and property damage insurance coverage up to $50,000 per accident, comprehensive insurance, and collision insurance with a $100 deductible clause. He lost control of his car and drove through the display window of a furniture store. Damage to the building was $17,200 and the damage to the inventory was $34,300. Damage to a bike rack on the sidewalk and three bicycles in the rack was $1,840. Damage to his own car was $6,100.

a. What was the total property damage, excluding damage to Tom's car?__________

b. How much did the insurance company pay for property damage, excluding damage to Tom's car? __________

c. How much did the insurance company pay for damage to Tom Barton's car?__________

d. How much did the accident cost Tom Barton? __________

e. If Tom Barton had been in a previous accident this year in which there had been property damage to a parked car of $12,700, how much would the insurance company have paid for damages to everything in the current accident, including Tom Barton's car?__________

6. Amy Tan and John Rogers live in a state in which no-fault insurance is mandatory. They have identical full coverage of $50,000 liability and property damage per accident, comprehensive insurance, and collision insurance with a $350 deductible. John lost control of his car on an icy street and struck Amy's car, a parked motorcycle, and a fence. Amy had medical expenses of $780. John had medical expenses of $560. Amy's car had damages of $1,350. John's car had damages of $1,750. Damage to the parked motorcycle was $650 and damage to the fence was $320.

a. What did Amy's insurance company pay under the no-fault provision?__________

b. What did John's insurance company pay under the no-fault provision?__________

c. How much did John's insurance company pay under his liability and property damage coverage?__________

d. How much did John's insurance company pay under his comprehensive coverage?__________

e. How much would John's insurance company have paid under his liability and property damage if he had hit Amy's car and five parked cars, with total damage to the six cars of $56,700? __________

Score for B (50)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 12.2: Property Insurance

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **3** **4**

A **(42 points) Solve the following problems. (6 points for each correct answer)**

1. A building valued at $760,000 is insured for its full value. The annual premium is $12 per thousand dollars of coverage.

a. How much does the insured pay to insure his building? __________

b. If the insurance company cancels the policy at the end of 3 months, how much refund does the insured receive? __________

c. If the insurance company has a 10% penalty clause for short-rate refunds and the insured cancels the policy after 9 months, how much refund does the insured receive? __________

2. If a company pays an annual premium of $6,000 and the insurance company charges $30 per thousand dollars of insurance, how much insurance does the company carry? __________

3. A company carries property insurance of $200,000 with no coinsurance clause. A fire causes $210,000 in damage. How much does the insurance company pay the insured? __________

4. A company carries property insurance of $300,000 with a premium of $13.10 per thousand dollars of coverage. A fire causes $120,000 in damage.

a. How much does the insurance company pay the insured? __________

b. What did the company save by carrying insurance? __________

Score for A (42)

B **(58 points) Solve the following problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

5. A building worth $300,000 is insured for $180,000, and the policy carries an 80% coinsurance clause. A fire causes $220,000 in damage.

a. How much will the insurance company pay? (10 points) __________

b. How much will the insured pay if the building is repaired for $220,000? (6 points) __________

c. How much would the insurance company pay if damage to the building totaled $300,000? (10 points)

____

d. If the damage totaled $300,000, how much would the insured pay if the building were rebuilt for $300,000? (6 points) __________

6. A building worth $1,800,000 is insured for $1,200,000, and the policy carries an 80% coinsurance clause. A fire causes $300,000 in damage. (Round to the nearest dollar.)

a. How much does the insurance company pay if the building is repaired for $300,000? (10 points) __________

b. How much of the repair cost must the insured pay? (6 points) __________

7. If an insurance company issues insurance on property valued at $400,000 with a 90% coinsurance clause, what is the amount required to be carried by the insured? (5 points) __________

8. If an insurance company issues insurance on property valued at $3,000,000 with a 75% coinsurance clause, what is the amount required to be carried by the insured? (5 points) __________

____

Score for B (58)

Assignment 12.3: Life and Medical Insurance

Name ______________________________

Date ______________ Score ______________

Learning Objectives **5** **6** **7**

A **(50 points) Refer to Figures 12-1 and 12-2 for the premium and surrender rates in solving the following problems. Assume that every year is a full 12 months long. (points for correct answers as marked)**

1. Find the rates per thousand dollars and the premiums for the following policies. (1 point for each correct answer)

Age	Type	Payments Made	Face Value of Policy	Rate per $1,000	Premium Paid Each Year
28	Straight Life	Annually	$200,000	________	________
25	20-Payment Life	Quarterly	80,000	________	________
25	20-Year Endowment	Semiannually	10,000	________	________
26	Straight Life	Quarterly	120,000	________	________
27	20-Payment Life	Semiannually	100,000	________	________
28	20-Year Endowment	Annually	85,000	________	________

2. Find the cash surrender or loan value for each of the following policies issued at age 25. (1 point for each correct answer)

Policy Year	Type of Policy	Amount of Policy	Cash Surrender or Loan Value
10	Straight Life	$50,000	________
15	20-Payment Life	$25,000	________
10	20-Year Endowment	$50,000	________
3	Straight Life	$20,000	________
5	20-Payment Life	$75,000	________
4	20-Year Endowment	$60,000	________

3. When Jo Yager was 27 years old, she took out a $80,000, 20-year endowment policy. She paid the premiums annually and survived the endowment period. How much more did she pay in annual premiums than she received from the insurance company at the end of 20 years? (4 points) ________

4. Roy Boatman purchased a $50,000 ordinary life policy and an ADB for 50% of the value of the policy. In addition, he purchased a 5-year, $50,000 term policy. He died in an accident 3 years later.

a. How much money did Roy's beneficiaries receive? (4 points)________

b. How much money would Roy's beneficiaries have received if he had died in an accident 7 years after purchasing the policies? (4 points) ________

c. How much money would Roy's beneficiaries have received if he had died of natural causes 10 years after purchasing the policies? (4 points) ________

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5. At the age of 25, Carlos Baker purchased a $50,000 straight life policy, with premiums payable annually. He also purchased a $25,000 20-payment life policy, with premiums payable semiannually. At the end of 15 years, he decided to cash in both policies.

a. How much did Carlos receive for the straight life policy? (4 points) __________

b. How much did Carlos receive for the 20-payment life policy? (4 points) __________

c. How much more did Carlos pay in premiums than the total amount received for both policies? (8 points) __________

____

Score for A (50)

B **(50 points) Solve the following problems. (10 points for a correct answer to problem 6; 8 points for each other correct answer)**

6. An employer provides group health coverage that includes a $500 annual deductible per family and payment of 80% of costs exceeding the deductible. How much would an employee with two dependents pay if her medical bills for the year were $1,200 for herself; $920 for dependent 1; and $690 for dependent 2? __________

7. An employer provides group health coverage that includes a $500 annual deductible per family and 80% of costs over the deductible.

a. How much would an employee with no dependents pay if his medical bills were $2,850 this year? __________

b. How much would that employee have paid this year if his medical bills were $7,480? __________

8. An employer provides group health coverage with the following monthly premiums: employee only, $450; employee with one dependent, $550; and employee with multiple dependents, $650.

a. How much does the employer pay over a 5-year period for an employee with multiple dependents? __________

b. If that employee had a dependent with a catastrophic illness that cost $97,000 for hospitalization and treatments during that 5-year period, how much would the insurance company lose on that employee, assuming that she had no other medical claims? __________

c. If an employee with no dependents had no illnesses during that same 5-year period, how much would the insurance company make on that employee? __________

____

Score for B (50)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Notes

Part 4

Interest Applications

13 Simple Interest
14 Installment Purchases
15 Promissory Notes and Discounting
16 Compound Interest

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

13

Simple Interest

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1	Compute simple interest with time in years or months.
Learning Objective 2	Compute ordinary simple interest, using a 360-day year.
Learning Objective 3	Compute exact simple interest, using a 365-day year.
Learning Objective 4	Compare ordinary simple interest and exact simple interest.
Learning Objective 5	Estimate exact simple interest computations.
Learning Objective 6	Compute the Principal, Rate, and Time from the basic interest formula.

Most businesses and individuals buy at least some assets without making full payment at the time of the purchase. The seller gives immediate possession to the buyer but does not require payment until some later date. For example, large retailers such as Macy's Department Store may receive merchandise for the Christmas season but may not be required to pay the seller until January. The seller, who *extends credit* to the buyer, may or may not charge for this privilege. The charge is called **interest,** and it is usually quoted as a percent of the amount of credit extended (the principal). When part of the price is paid at the time of purchase, that part is called a **down payment.**

If the seller charges too much interest or does not extend credit, the buyer might borrow money from a third party, such as a bank. The buyer would then sell the merchandise to repay the bank loan. The amount borrowed is called the **principal,** and the interest charged is a percent of the principal. The bank will charge interest between the loan date and the repayment date. This period of **time** is called the **interest period** or the **term of the loan.**

The promise to repay a loan or pay for merchandise may be oral or written. If it is written, it may be in the form of a letter or it could be one of several special documents known collectively as **commercial paper. Short-term credit** transactions are those whose term is between 1 day and 1 year. **Long-term credit** transactions are those for longer than 1 year. Normally, long-term credit transactions involve major items such as new buildings or equipment rather than supplies or merchandise for sale.

Computing Simple Interest

Learning Objective 1

Compute simple interest with time in years or months.

The easiest type of interest to calculate is called **simple interest.** The calculations are the same for both a loan and a purchase on credit. The interest rate is a percent of the principal for the period of the loan or credit. The quoted percent usually is an *annual* (yearly) rate. An interest rate of 10% means that the interest payment for 1 year will be 10% of the principal.

To compute the amount of simple interest on a 1-year loan, simply multiply the Principal by the Rate.

EXAMPLE A

Don Bunyard borrowed $1,000 for 1 year at a rate of 8% simple interest. Compute the interest.

The principal is $1,000. The interest for 1 year is 8% of $1,000, or 0.08 × $1,000 = $80.

Most loans, however, are not for a period of exactly 1 year. Loans for longer periods will require the borrower to pay more interest. Likewise, loans for shorter periods will require less interest. To compute the simple interest on loans of any period, multiply the Principal by the Rate and then multiply by the Time, with Time stated in years or in fractions of years. The fundamental formula for simple interest is

Interest = Principal × Rate × Time
abbreviated as $I = P \times R \times T$ or, even more simply, $I = PRT$.

EXAMPLE B

Find the amounts of simple interest on loans of $1,200 when the rate is 6% and the loan periods are $\frac{3}{4}$ year and 4 years.

$\frac{3}{4}$ year

$$I = P \times R \times T$$
$$= \$1{,}200 \times 0.06 \times \frac{3}{4}$$
$$= \$54$$

4 years

$$I = P \times R \times T$$
$$= \$1{,}200 \times 0.06 \times 4$$
$$= \$288$$

The time period often will be measured in months instead of years. Before computing the interest, change the time into years by dividing the number of months by 12 (the number of months in 1 year).

EXAMPLE C

Compute the interest on credit purchases of $3,000 at 5% for periods of 8 months and 30 months.

8 months

$$I = P \times R \times T$$
$$= \$3{,}000 \times 0.05 \times \frac{8}{12}$$
$$= \$100$$

30 months

$$I = P \times R \times T$$
$$= \$3{,}000 \times 0.05 \times \frac{30}{12}$$
$$= \$375$$

USING CALCULATORS

Today, calculators or computers are used in almost every interest application. The numbers are often large and are always important. The steps are performed on the calculator in the same order as they are written in the formula.

EXAMPLE D

Write the calculator steps for computing the simple interest on $8,000,000 at 9% for 18 months.

$$I = P \times R \times T = \$8{,}000{,}000 \times 0.09 \times \frac{18}{12}$$

8 000 000 $\boxed{\times}$ .09 $\boxed{\times}$ 18 $\boxed{\div}$ 12 $\boxed{=}$

The display will show 1,080,000, which means $1,080,000.

Using the percent key $\boxed{\%}$, the steps would be

8 000 000 $\boxed{\times}$ 9 $\boxed{\%}$ $\boxed{\times}$ 18 $\boxed{\div}$ 12 $\boxed{=}$

The display will again show 1,080,000, or $1,080,000.

CONCEPT CHECK 13.1

The Principal is $2,500, the Rate is 10%, and Interest = Principal × Rate × Time, or $I = P \times R \times T$. Find the interest both for 5 years and for 6 months.

a. For Time = 5 years: $I = P \times R \times T = \$2{,}500 \times 0.10 \times 5 = \$1{,}250$

b. For Time = 6 months: $I = P \times R \times T = \$2{,}500 \times 0.10 \times \frac{6}{12} = \$125$

Computing Ordinary Interest

Learning Objective 2

Compute ordinary simple interest, using a 360-day year.

If the term of the loan is stated as a certain number of days, computing interest involves dividing the number of days by the number of days in 1 year—either 360 or 365. Before computers and calculators, interest was easier to compute by assuming that every year had 360 days and that every month had 30 days. The 360-day method, called the **ordinary interest method,** is still used by some businesses and individuals.

©monarx3d/Shutterstock.com

EXAMPLE E

Compute the ordinary simple interest on \$900 at 9% for 120 days.

$$I = P \times R \times T$$
$$= \$900 \times 0.09 \times \frac{120}{360}$$
$$= \$27$$

CONCEPT CHECK 13.2

The Principal is \$4,000, the Rate is 7%, and the Time is 180 days. Compute the ordinary simple interest.

Use a 360-day year: $I = P \times R \times T = \$4{,}000 \times 0.07 \times \frac{180}{360} = \$140$

Computing Exact Interest

Learning Objective 3

Compute exact simple interest, using a 365-day year.

Banks, savings and loan institutions, credit unions, and the federal government use a 365-day year (366 days for leap years) to compute interest. This method is called the **exact interest method.** The computations are the same as for ordinary simple interest, except that 365 days is used instead of 360 days.

EXAMPLE F

Compute the exact simple interest on \$900 at 9% for 120 days.

$$I = P \times R \times T$$
$$= \$900 \times 0.09 \times \frac{120}{365}$$
$$= \$26.6301, \text{ or } \$26.63$$

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONCEPT CHECK 13.3

The Principal is \$4,000, the Rate is 7%, and the Time is 180 days. Compute the exact simple interest.

Use a 365-day year: $I = P \times R \times T = \$4{,}000 \times 0.07 \times \frac{180}{365} = \$138.0822$, or \$138.08

Comparing Ordinary Interest and Exact Interest

Learning Objective 4

Compare ordinary simple interest and exact simple interest.

The 360-day year was very useful before the advent of calculators and computers, so there is a long tradition of using it. However, the 365-day year is more exact. Also, the 365-day year is financially better for the borrower because the interest amounts are always smaller. (Why? Because a denominator of 365 gives a smaller quotient than a denominator of 360.)

Reexamine examples E and F. The difference between ordinary interest and exact simple interest is only \$27.00 − \$26.63, or \$0.37. When businesses borrow money, the principal may be very large and then the difference will be more significant. Example G is similar to examples E and F, except that the principal is in millions of dollars rather than hundreds.

EXAMPLE G

Find the difference between the amounts of ordinary simple interest and exact simple interest on \$8,000,000 at 9% for 120 days.

Ordinary Interest	**Exact Interest**
$I = P \times R \times T$	$I = P \times R \times T$
$= \$8{,}000{,}000 \times 0.09 \times \frac{120}{360}$	$= \$8{,}000{,}000 \times 0.09 \times \frac{120}{365}$
$= \$240{,}000$	$= \$236{,}712.3288$, or \$236,712.33

The difference is \$240,000.00 − \$236,712.33 = \$3,287.67.

CONCEPT CHECK 13.4

The Principal is \$6,000, the Rate is 12%, and the Time is 120 days. Find the difference between the amounts of simple interest calculated by using the ordinary method (360-day year) and the exact method (365-day year).

Ordinary interest: $I = P \times R \times T = \$6{,}000 \times 0.12 \times \frac{120}{360} = \$240.00$

Exact interest: $I = P \times R \times T = \$6{,}000 \times 0.12 \times \frac{120}{365} = \$236.7123$, or \$236.71

Difference = Ordinary interest − Exact interest = \$240.00 − \$236.71 = \$3.29

Estimating Simple Interest

Learning Objective 5

Estimate exact simple interest computations.

Although calculators are used to compute simple interest, approximation remains very useful. The following calculator solution requires a minimum of 20 key entries.

8 000 000 × .09 × 120 ÷ 365 =

The display will show 236,712.3288.

Pressing any one of the 20 keys incorrectly could result in a large error. By making an estimate of the interest amount in advance, you may discover a significant calculator error.

COMBINATIONS OF TIME AND INTEREST THAT YIELD 1%

To simplify mental estimates, you can round the rate and time to numbers that are easy to compute mentally. Also, use 360 days instead of 365 because it cancels more often. For ordinary interest, several combinations of rate and time are very easy to use because their product is 1%. For example, $12\% \times \frac{30}{360} = 12\% \times \frac{1}{12} = 1\%$ and $6\% \times \frac{60}{360} = 6\% \times \frac{1}{6} = 1\%$.

EXAMPLE H

Approximate the ordinary simple interest on $2,500 at 6.15% for 59 days. Then calculate the actual ordinary simple interest.

Round	6.15% to 6% and 59 days to 60 days.
Estimate:	$\$2,500 \times 0.06 \times \frac{60}{360} = \$2,500 \times 0.01 = \$25.00$
Actual interest:	$\$2,500 \times 0.0615 \times \frac{59}{360} = \$25.1979$, or $25.20

OTHER RATES AND TIMES

Table 13-1 shows several combinations of Rate and Time whose products are useful for estimating simple interest.

Table 13-1 Rate and Time

$4\% \times \frac{90}{360} = 4\% \times \frac{1}{4} = 1\%$	$10\% \times \frac{36}{360} = 10\% \times \frac{1}{10} = 1\%$
$6\% \times \frac{60}{360} = 6\% \times \frac{1}{6} = 1\%$	$12\% \times \frac{30}{360} = 12\% \times \frac{1}{12} = 1\%$
$8\% \times \frac{45}{360} = 8\% \times \frac{1}{8} = 1\%$	$18\% \times \frac{20}{360} = 18\% \times \frac{1}{18} = 1\%$
$9\% \times \frac{40}{360} = 9\% \times \frac{1}{9} = 1\%$	$6\% \times \frac{120}{360} = 6\% \times \frac{1}{3} = 2\%$
$12\% \times \frac{60}{360} = 12\% \times \frac{1}{6} = 2\%$	$12\% \times \frac{90}{360} = 12\% \times \frac{1}{4} = 3\%$
$8\% \times \frac{90}{360} = 8\% \times \frac{1}{4} = 2\%$	$9\% \times \frac{120}{360} = 9\% \times \frac{1}{3} = 3\%$

ESTIMATING EXACT SIMPLE INTEREST

The goal in approximating interest is just to get an estimate. Even though exact interest requires 365 days in a year, you can make a reasonable estimate by assuming that the number of days in a year is 360. This permits the use of all of the shortcut combinations from Table 13-1.

EXAMPLE I

First, compute the actual exact simple interest on $1,200 at 11.8% for 62 days.

Actual interest: $\$1{,}200 \times 0.118 \times \frac{62}{365} = \$24.0526$, or $24.05

Second, estimate the amount of interest by using 12% instead of 11.8%, 60 days instead of 62 days, and 360 instead of 365.

Estimate: $\$1{,}200 \times 0.12 \times \frac{60}{360} = \$1{,}200 \times 0.02 = \$24.00$

The difference is $\$24.05 - \$24.00 = \$0.05$.

CONCEPT CHECK 13.5

The Principal is $3,750, the Rate is 9.1%, and the Time is 39 days. Calculate the actual exact simple interest. Then make an estimate by using a 360-day year and simpler values for *R* and *T*. Compare the results.

Actual interest: $I = P \times R \times T = \$3{,}750 \times 0.091 \times \frac{39}{365} = \$36.4623$, or $36.46

Estimate: $I = P \times R \times T = \$3{,}750 \times 0.09 \times \frac{40}{360} = \$3{,}750 \times 0.01 = \$37.50$

Difference: $\text{Estimate} - \text{Actual} = \$37.50 - \$36.46 = \$1.04$

Computing the Interest Variables

Learning Objective 6

Compute the Principal, Rate, and Time from the basic interest formula.

Every simple interest problem has four variables: Interest, Principal, Rate, and Time. Thus far, you have solved for the Interest Amount (*I*) when the Principal (*P*), Rate (*R*), and Time (*T*) were all given. However, as long as any three variables are given, you can always compute the fourth by just changing the formula $I = P \times R \times T$ into one of its possible variations, as shown in Table 13-2.

Table 13-2 PRT formulas

To find	You must know	Use this formula
I	P, R, and T	$I = P \times R \times T$
P	I, R, and T	$P = \frac{I}{(R \times T)}$
R	I, P, and T	$R = \frac{I}{(P \times T)}$
T	I, P, and R	$T = \frac{I}{(P \times R)}$

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assume the use of ordinary simple interest (a 360-day year) unless the use of exact interest (a 365-day year) is indicated. The stated or computed interest rate is the rate for 1 full year. Also, the length of time used for computing interest dollars must be stated in terms of all or part of a year.

FINDING THE INTEREST AMOUNT, PRINCIPAL, RATE, OR TIME

When any three variables are known, you can solve for the fourth variable. The previous examples in this chapter all solved for *I*. To find the other three variables, use the other formulas from Table 13-2. All rates are ordinary simple interest (360-day year).

EXAMPLE J

Find the Principal if the Interest is $75, the Rate is 6%, and the Time is 30 days.

$$P = ?;\quad I = \$75;\quad R = 6\%;\quad T = \frac{30}{360}\text{ year}$$

$$P = \frac{I}{(R \times T)} = \frac{\$75}{\left(0.06 \times \frac{30}{360}\right)} = \frac{\$75}{0.005} = \$15{,}000$$

EXAMPLE K

Juice Images/Getty Images

Find the Rate if the Interest is $22, the Principal is $2,000, and the Time is 30 days. Round the Rate to the nearest $\frac{1}{10}$%.

$$R = ?;\quad I = \$22;\quad P = \$2{,}000;\quad T = \frac{30}{360}\text{ year}$$

$$R = \frac{I}{(P \times T)} = \frac{\$22}{\left(\$2{,}000 \times \frac{30}{360}\right)} = \frac{\$22}{\$166.67} = 0.132\text{, or }13.2\%$$

EXAMPLE L

Find the Time if the Interest is $324, the Principal is $4,800, and the Rate is 9%. Round Time to the nearest whole day, based on a 360-day year.

$$T = ?;\quad I = \$324;\quad P = \$4{,}800;\quad R = 9\%$$

$$T = \frac{I}{(P \times R)} = \frac{\$324}{(\$4{,}800 \times 0.09)} = \frac{\$324}{\$432} = 0.75\text{ year}$$

Based on a 360-day year, 0.75 year = 0.75 × 360 days = 270 days.

CONCEPT CHECK 13.6

Each of the following problems gives three of the four variables. Compute the missing variable. All rates are ordinary simple interest (360-day year). Round *P* and *I* to the nearest cent; round *R* to the nearest $\frac{1}{10}$%; round *T* to the nearest whole day, assuming that 1 year has 360 days. Use one of the four formulas:

$$I = P \times R \times T,\ \ P = \frac{I}{(R \times T)},\ \ R = \frac{I}{(P \times T)},\ \text{and}\ \ T = \frac{I}{(P \times R)}$$

a. Principal = \$1,240; Rate = 6%; Time = 270 days
Find Interest:

$$I = P \times R \times T = \$1{,}240 \times 0.06 \times \frac{270}{360} = \$55.80$$

b. Principal = \$8,000; Interest = \$50;
Time = 45 days
Find Rate:

$$R = \frac{I}{(P \times T)} = \frac{50}{\left(\$8{,}000 \times \frac{45}{360}\right)} = 0.05, \text{ or } 5\%$$

c. Principal = \$1,280; Interest = \$64; Rate = 10%
Find Time:

$$T = \frac{I}{(P \times R)} = \frac{\$64}{(\$1{,}280 \times 0.10)} = 0.5 \text{ year}$$

In a 360-day year, $T = 0.5$ year $= 0.5 \times 360$ days $= 180$ days.

d. Interest = \$90; Rate = 9%; Time = 60 days
Find Principal:

$$P = \frac{I}{(R \times T)} = \frac{\$90}{\left(0.09 \times \frac{60}{360}\right)} = \$6{,}000$$

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 13.1 AND 13.2.

Chapter Terms for Review

commercial paper
down payment
exact interest method
interest
interest period
long-term credit

ordinary interest method
principal
short-term credit
simple interest
term of the loan
time

Try Microsoft® Excel

Try working the problems using the Microsoft Excel templates found on the companion website. Solutions for the problems are also shown on the companion website.

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
13.1 Compute simple interest with time in years or months.	Find the simple interest using the basic formula: **Interest = Principal × Rate × Time,** or $I = P \times R \times T$ 1. Principal = \$3,500; Rate = 9%; Time = 2.5 years 2. Principal = \$975; Rate = 8%; Time = 9 months
13.2 Compute ordinary simple interest, using a 360-day year.	3. Find the ordinary simple interest for a 360-day year: Principal = \$5,000; Rate = 6%; Time = 150 days
13.3 Compute exact simple interest, using a 365-day year.	4. Find the exact simple interest for a 365-day year: Principal = \$2,800; Rate = 7%; Time = 75 days
13.4 Compare ordinary simple interest and exact simple interest.	5. Find the difference between ordinary simple interest and exact simple interest: Principal = \$5,000; Rate = 6%; Time = 75 days
13.5 Estimate exact simple interest computations.	6. Estimate the exact interest by using a 360-day year and simpler values for Rate and Time: Principal = \$2,100; Rate = 5.8%; Time = 62 days
13.6 Compute the Principal, Rate, and Time from the basic interest formula.	Solve for Principal, Rate, and Time using a 360-day year and the formulas $P = \frac{I}{(R \times T)}$, $R = \frac{I}{(P \times T)}$, and $T = \frac{I}{(P \times R)}$ 7. Interest = \$42; Rate = 6%; Time = 105 days 8. Principal = \$1,600; Interest = \$30; Time = 75 days 9. Principal = \$7,200; Interest = \$135; Rate = 15% (express Time in days)

Answers: **1.** \$787.50 **2.** \$58.50 **3.** \$125.00 **4.** \$40.27 **5.** \$62.50 − \$61.64 = \$0.86

6. $\$2,100 \times 0.06 \times \frac{60}{360} = \$21$ **7.** \$2,400 **8.** 0.09, or 9% **9.** 45 days

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 13

In problems 1 and 2, compute the amount of (a) ordinary simple interest and (b) exact simple interest. Then compute (c) the difference between the two interest amounts.

	Principal	Rate	Time	Ordinary Interest	Exact Interest	Difference
1	$1,680	6%	270 Days	**a.** ________	**b.** ________	**c.** ________
2	$10,500	8%	60 Days	**a.** ________	**b.** ________	**c.** ________

In problems 3 and 4, first compute (a) the actual exact simple interest. Then, change each rate and time to the closest numbers that permit use of the shortcuts shown in Table 13-1 and compute (b) the *estimated* amount of exact interest. Finally, compute (c) the difference between the actual and estimated exact interest.

	Principal	Rate	Time	Actual Exact Interest	Estimated Exact Interest	Difference
3	$12,000	3.8%	92 Days	**a.** 115	**b.** 120	**c.** 5
4	$2,000	9.2%	117 Days	**a.** 32	**b.** ________	**c.** ________

5 Dick Liebelt borrowed money for 240 days at a rate of 9% ordinary simple interest. How much did Dick borrow if he paid $90 in interest? ________

6 Rose Chavez loaned $1,000 to one of her employees for 90 days. If the employee's interest amount was $12.50, what was the ordinary simple interest rate? ________

7 Erinn Kelley loaned $8,000 to a machine shop owner who was buying a piece of used equipment. The interest rate was 6% ordinary simple interest, and the interest amount was $360. Compute the number of days of the loan. ________

8 Julie Horton loaned $2,500 to Kathy Lee a good friend since childhood. Because of their friendship, Julie charged only 3% ordinary simple interest. Two months later, when Kathy received her annual bonus, she repaid the entire loan and all the interest. What was the total amount that Kathy paid? ________

9 Cynthia Chu and her sister Martha have a home decorating and design business. They often buy antiques and fine art objects and then resell the items to their clients. They have a line of credit at their bank to provide short-term financing for these purchases. The bank always charges exact simple interest, but the rate varies depending on the economy. Cynthia and Martha need to borrow $22,400 for 90 days to buy a collection of antique furniture at an estate sale. If the bank charges 5.25%, how much interest would they pay? ________

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Notes

Assignment 13.1: Simple Interest

Name ________________________________

Date ________________ Score ________________

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **3** **4** **5** **6**

A **(20 points) Compute the ordinary simple interest. If the time is given in months, let 1 month be $\frac{1}{12}$ of a year. If the time is in days, let 1 year be 360 days. (2 points for each correct answer)**

	Principal	Rate	Time	Interest		Principal	Rate	Time	Interest
1.	$500	6.0%	1 year	________	**2.**	$4,000	8%	3 years	________
3.	$1,800	8%	4 months	________	**4.**	$2,640	5.25%	15 months	________
5.	$7,500	5%	180 days	________	**6.**	$3,600	12%	30 months	________
7.	$12,800	7%	2.5 years	________	**8.**	$6,800	7%	$2\frac{1}{4}$ years	________
9.	$5,200	10%	90 days	________	**10.**	$20,000	7.5%	8 months	________

____

Score for A (20)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

B **(30 points) Compute the ordinary interest, the exact interest, and their difference. Round answers to the nearest cent. (2 points for each correct interest; 1 point for each correct difference)**

	Principal	Rate	Time	Ordinary Interest	Exact Interest	Difference
11.	$2,400	4%	180 days	________	________	________
12.	$880	9%	75 days	________	________	________
13.	$12,000	6%	240 days	________	________	________
14.	$2,000	5%	135 days	________	________	________
15.	$7,500	8%	225 days	________	________	________
16.	$730	7%	150 days	________	________	________

____

Score for B (30)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

C **(20 points) In each problem, first find the actual exact simple interest. Then, estimate the interest by assuming a 360-day year and round each rate and time to the nearest numbers that will permit the shortcuts in Table 13-1. Finally, find the difference. Round answers to the nearest cent. (2 points for each correct estimate and actual interest; 1 point for each correct difference)**

	Principal	Rate	Time	Actual Exact Interest	Estimate	Difference
17.	$925	8.1%	47 days	________	________	________
18.	$5,600	3.99%	92 days	________	________	________
19.	$2,000	8.95%	123 days	________	________	________
20.	$7,800	9.9%	38 days	________	________	________

____

Score for C (20)

D **(30 points) Determine the missing variable by using one of the following formulas:**

$$I = P \times R \times T, \quad P = \frac{I}{(R \times T)}, \quad R = \frac{I}{(P \times T)}, \quad \text{or} \quad T = \frac{I}{(P \times R)}$$

For problems 21–25, use a 360-day year. For problems 26–30, use a 365-day year. Round dollar amounts to the nearest cent. Round interest rates to the nearest $\frac{1}{10}$ of a percent. Find the time in days, rounded to the nearest whole day. (3 points for each correct answer)

	Principal	Rate	Time	Interest
21.	________	12%	240 days	$352.00
22.	$12,500	5%	________	$50.00

	Principal	Rate	Time	Interest
23.	$600	_________	45 days	$6.00
24.	$6,480	5.6%	225 days	_________
25.	$25,000	4%	_________	$625.00
26.	_________	8%	292 days	$510.00
27.	$3,650	6.75%	136 days	_________
28.	$10,000	4.8%	_________	$288.00
29.	$16,000	_________	90 days	$296.00
30.	_________	4%	146 days	$50.00

____
Score for D (30)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 13.2: Simple Interest Applications

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **3**

A **(50 points) Solve each of the following ordinary simple interest problems by using a 360-day year. Find both the interest dollars and the total amount (i.e., principal plus interest) of the loan. (7 points for each correct interest; 3 points for each correct amount)**

1. Bruce Sanberg plans to lend $850 to his friend Bill Rice so that Bill can fly with him to Canada for vacation. Bruce is charging Bill only 3% ordinary simple interest. Bill repays everything, interest plus principal, to Bruce 180 days later. How much does Bill pay?

Interest ________

Amount ________

2. David and Ellen Cho are planning to start a business that will export American food to China. They estimate that they will need $85,000 to pay for organizational costs, get product samples, and make three trips to Shanghai. They can borrow the money from their relatives for 3 years. The Chos are willing to pay their relatives 6% ordinary simple interest. Compute the total amount that they will owe their relatives in 3 years.

Interest ________

Amount ________

3. Carolyn Wilfert owns a temporary services employment agency. Businesses call her when they need to hire various types of workers for a short period of time. The businesses pay a fee to Carolyn, who pays the salaries and benefits to the employees. One benefit is that Carolyn will make small, short-term loans to her employees. After a flood, employee Judy Hillstrom needed to borrow $3,600 to have her house cleaned and repainted. Judy repaid the loan in 6 months. If Carolyn charged 5% ordinary simple interest, how much did Judy repay?

Interest ________

Amount ________

4. Several years ago, Ed Velure and Lee Oman formed a partnership to rent musical instruments to school districts that do not want to own and maintain the instruments. In the spring, they investigate borrowing $120,000 to buy some new instruments. Because they collect their rental fees in advance, they anticipate being able to repay the loan in 150 days. How much will they need to repay if the ordinary simple interest rate is 5.5%?

Interest ________

Amount ________

5. Buck Williams owns and manages a video game arcade. A manufacturer developed a new line of games and offered very low interest financing to encourage arcade operators such as Buck to install the new games. He was able to finance $60,000 worth of games for 8 months for 5.2% ordinary simple interest. Calculate how much Buck will repay.

Interest ________

Amount ________

____

Score for A (50)

B **(50 points) Solve each of the following exact simple interest problems by using a 365-day year. Find both the interest dollars and the total amount (i.e., principal plus interest) of the loan. (7 points for each correct interest; 3 points for each correct amount)**

6. Don McIntosh, managing partner of a local transportation company, thinks that the company should borrow money to upgrade its truck repair facility. After investigating several sources of short-term loans, Don determines that the company can borrow $300,000 for 180 days at 6% exact simple interest. If his company decides to take out this loan, how much will it need to repay at the end of the 180 days?

Interest ________

Amount ________

7. Dave Engle, a former teacher, now has a business selling supplemetary educational materials such as books and computer software to parents and schools. In June, he borrowed $45,000 from his bank to buy some new educational computer games that he hopes to sell during August and September. The bank's rate is 6.25% exact simple interest as long as the time does not exceed half a year. If Dave pays the principal plus the interest in 120 days, how much will he pay?

Interest ________

Amount ________

8. After working as a food broker for 5 years, Roger Sundahl had saved almost enough money to buy a fishing boat and move to Alaska to open a charter fishing business. He still needed $50,000, which he could borrow until the end of the first fishing season. The lender charged 6.5% exact simple interest, and Roger repaid them after 150 days. How much interest did Roger pay, and what was the total amount?

Interest ________

Amount ________

9. Carol Payne needs to purchase two new saws for her retail lumber yard. The company that sells the saws offers her short-term financing at the relatively high rate of 11% exact simple interest. She decides to accept the financing offer, but only for $5,000 and only for 45 days. How much will Carol pay at the end of 45 days? What will be the total amount that she pays?

Interest ________

Amount ________

10. After working for a large accounting firm for 10 years, Bette Ryan, C.P.A., decided to open her own office. She borrowed $50,000 at 6.7% exact simple interest. She made enough during the first income tax season to repay the loan in 219 days. How much did Bette pay and what was the total amount?

Interest ________

Amount ________

____

Score for B (50)

14

Installment Purchases

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1	Convert between annual and monthly interest rates.
Learning Objective 2	Compute simple interest on a monthly basis.
Learning Objective 3	Compute finance charges.
Learning Objective 4	Compute costs of installment purchases.
Learning Objective 5	Compute effective rates.
Learning Objective 6	Amortize a loan.
Learning Objective 7	Compute a monthly mortgage payment.

Most individuals today can purchase goods or services on credit if they choose. The buyer gets immediate possession or immediate service but delays payment. Either the seller extends the credit or the buyer uses a **credit card,** or loan, from a third party.

Credit is usually offered for an interest charge, which is usually computed each month. A summary of the purchases, payments, and interest charges is sent to the borrower (credit purchaser) each month, either by mail or electronically. It may not be simple to compare the methods used to compute interest by competing lenders. Some lenders may charge interest on the **average daily balance.** Although it is a simple concept, and easy for a computer to calculate, it may be difficult for the purchaser to reconcile when he or she makes many purchases and/or merchandise returns in a single month.

In addition to interest, a lender may charge additional fees to extend credit or loan money. These might include items such as loan origination fees, membership fees, credit check fees, administrative fees, and insurance premiums. All of the fees together are called **finance charges.** These additional fees, whether one-time, annual, or monthly, also make it difficult to compare lenders because each lender could be slightly different. It is of some help to consumers that there are laws that mandate that lenders must explain their various fees and rates. In fact, the Consumer Financial Protection Bureau was authorized by Congress in 2010 and began its mission in 2011.

Converting Interest Rates

Learning Objective 1

Convert between annual and monthly interest rates.

The general concept behind charging for credit purchases is to compute finance charges on the remaining unpaid balance each month. The formula can still be $I = P \times R \times T$, where P is the unpaid balance. However, T is not years or a fraction of a year (as in Chapter 13)—T is in months, and R, the rate, is a monthly rate. For example, the rate might be 1.5% *per month.*

Understanding the relationship between monthly and annual rates is important.

Rule: To convert an annual rate to a monthly rate, divide the annual rate by 12; to convert a monthly rate to an annual rate, multiply the monthly rate by 12.

EXAMPLE A

a. Convert 9% per year to the equivalent monthly rate.
9% annually ÷ 12 = 0.75% monthly

b. Convert 0.5% per month to the equivalent annual rate.
0.5% monthly × 12 = 6% annually

CONCEPT CHECK 14.1

a. Convert an 18% annual rate to the equivalent monthly rate.
Divide the annual rate by 12 to get the monthly rate: 18% ÷ 12 = 1.5% per month

b. Convert a 1.25% monthly rate to the equivalent annual rate.
Multiply the monthly rate by 12 to get the annual rate: 1.25% × 12 = 15% per year

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Computing Simple Interest on a Monthly Basis

In terms of single-payment simple interest, 1.5% *per month* is identical to 18% *per year.*

Rule: If the rate is annual, the time must be in years; if the rate is monthly, the time must be in months.

Learning Objective 2

Compute simple interest on a monthly basis.

EXAMPLE B

Compute the simple interest on $1,000 for 2 months at 18% per year, on an annual basis and on a monthly basis.

Annual: $I = P \times R \times T = \$1{,}000 \times 0.18 \text{ per year} \times \frac{2}{12} \text{ year} = \$30$

Monthly: $18\% \text{ per year} = 18\% \div 12 = 1.5\% \text{ per month}$

$$I = P \times R \times T = \$1{,}000 \times 0.015 \text{ per month} \times 2 \text{ months}$$
$$= \$30$$

Reminder: Both computations differ from most of those in Chapter 13, where you counted the exact number of days and divided by either 360 or 365.

CONCEPT CHECK 14.2

Compute the simple interest on $800 for 3 months at 0.5% per month.

$I = P \times R \times T = \$800 \times 0.5\% \text{ per month} \times 3 \text{ months} = \$800 \times 0.005 \times 3 = \$12$

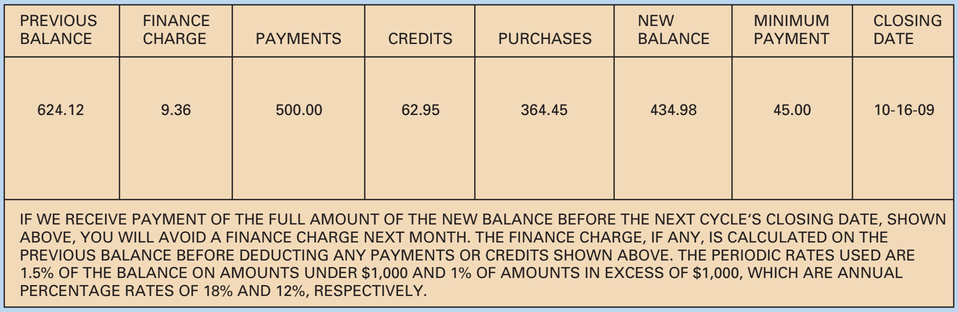
Computing Finance Charges

Before a creditor (lender) calculates the "interest on the unpaid monthly balance," it usually determines the amount of any payments, of any credits for returned merchandise, and/or any subsequent purchases. To give you an introduction, Figure 14-1 is the lower portion of a monthly statement that might have come from a retail store which has

Learning Objective 3

Compute finance charges.

Figure 14-1 Retail Statement of Account



PREVIOUS BALANCE	FINANCE CHARGE	PAYMENTS	CREDITS	PURCHASES	NEW BALANCE	MINIMUM PAYMENT	CLOSING DATE
624.12	9.36	500.00	62.95	364.45	434.98	45.00	10-16-09

IF WE RECEIVE PAYMENT OF THE FULL AMOUNT OF THE NEW BALANCE BEFORE THE NEXT CYCLE'S CLOSING DATE, SHOWN ABOVE, YOU WILL AVOID A FINANCE CHARGE NEXT MONTH. THE FINANCE CHARGE, IF ANY, IS CALCULATED ON THE PREVIOUS BALANCE BEFORE DEDUCTING ANY PAYMENTS OR CREDITS SHOWN ABOVE. THE PERIODIC RATES USED ARE 1.5% OF THE BALANCE ON AMOUNTS UNDER $1,000 AND 1% OF AMOUNTS IN EXCESS OF $1,000, WHICH ARE ANNUAL PERCENTAGE RATES OF 18% AND 12%, RESPECTIVELY.

charge accounts. These stores continue to exist because smaller, local stores such as paint stores, hardware stores, and grocery stores can extend credit to regular customers and not be required to pay the fees that are required by credit card companies. Examples C and D are two very simple methods that might be used to compute finance charges.

EXAMPLE C

Compute the finance charge and the new balance for the statement shown in Figure 14-1 based on the previous balance, \$624.12, ignoring all payments, credits, and purchases.

Finance charge = \$624.12 × 1.5% × 1 month = \$9.3618, or \$9.36
New balance = \$624.12 + \$9.36 − \$500.00 − \$62.95 + \$364.45 = \$434.98

EXAMPLE D

Assume that the finance charge in Figure 14-1 is based on the previous balance, less any payments or credits, but ignores subsequent purchases. Compute the finance charge and the new balance.

The finance charge is based on \$624.12 − \$500.00 − \$62.95 = \$61.17
Finance charge = \$61.17 × 1.5% × 1 month = \$0.91575, or \$0.92
New balance = \$624.12 + \$0.92 − \$500.00 − \$62.95 + \$364.45 = \$426.54

CONSUMER PROTECTION ACTS AND TERMINOLOGY

For more than 40 years, Congress has been active with major legislation to try to protect and educate consumers about the financial world and about borrowing and lending practices. The first major law was in 1968, the Consumer Credit Protection Act, administered by the Federal Reserve System. Then came the Consumer Leasing Act of 1976, administered by the Federal Trade Commission, and the Home Ownership and Equity Protection Act of 1994, administered by the Department of Housing and Urban Development. The most recent major protection legislation is the Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act of 2010 (the Dodd-Frank bill) which has established the Consumer Financial Protection Bureau (CFPB). It is an independent bureau within the Federal Reserve System, officially started in mid-2011, and is expected to consolidate the regulatory responsibilities and some employees of several agencies, including those mentioned. A major objective is to have all the important consumer protection functions controlled from one powerful, independent agency.

Our study in Chapter 14 is an introduction to calculating the costs of borrowing on installment purchases. One part of the earliest legislation still has particular significance for us. Title 1 of the original 1968 act is known as the **Truth in Lending Act (TILA)**. Among several mandates, TILA requires creditors (lenders) to tell consumers (borrowers) these three things:

1. The total of all finance charges, including interest, carrying charges, insurance, and special fees
2. The annual percentage rate (APR) of the total finance charge
3. The method by which they compute the finance charge

As noted in the previous section, an annual interest rate is a monthly interest rate multiplied by 12. However, as the term is used in TILA, the **annual percentage rate (APR)** is a specific, defined term that must include all finance charges, not just interest. Furthermore, under TILA, lenders are permitted to use more than one method to compute the APR. Lenders may even use either a 360-day year or a 365-day year. TILA does not set limits on rates.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

As mentioned earlier, TILA does require that total finance charges be stated clearly, that the finance charges also be stated as an annual percentage rate, and that the method of computation be given. Although the method that is mentioned may be stated clearly, it may not always be simple for a consumer to calculate. One difficulty might be to determine the account balance that is to be used in the calculation. A wide variety of methods may be applied. For example:

1. The finance charge may be based on the amount owed at the beginning of the current month, ignoring payments and purchases.
2. The finance charge may be based on the amount owed at the beginning of the month, after subtracting any payments during the month and ignoring purchases.
3. The finance charge may be based on the average daily balance. (Add the unpaid balance each day; divide the total by the number of days in the month.) Payments are usually included; new purchases may or may not be included.
4. A variation of the average daily balance method is to compute the interest charge each day, on a daily basis, and then add all the daily interest charges for the month.

Although the total finance charges, and the annual percentage rate, and the method of calculation may all be clearly stated, some consumers will have difficulty reconstructing the interest and finance charges on their bills. A consumer who wants to understand more can write to the creditor to request a more detailed explanation and even an example of how to do the calculations.

CONCEPT CHECK 14.3

The finance terms given in the charge account statement of Figure 14-1 indicate that the finance charge, if any, is charged on the previous balance, before deducting payments or credits or adding purchases. Calculate the finance charge and the unpaid balance if the previous balance was $2,425.90, the payment was $1,200, there were no credits, and there were $572.50 in new purchases.

An interest rate of 1.5% applies to the first $1,000 and 1% applies to the excess:

$\$2{,}425.90 - \$1{,}000 = \$1{,}425.90.$

$$0.015 \times \$1{,}000 = \$15.00$$
$$0.01 \times \$1{,}425.90 = \$14.26$$
$$\text{Finance charge} = \$15.00 + \$14.26 = \$29.26$$
$$\text{New balance} = \$2{,}425.90 - \$1{,}200 + \$29.26 + \$572.50 = \$1{,}827.66$$

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 14.1.

Computing Costs of Installment Purchases

Learning Objective 4

Compute costs of installment purchases.

In a credit sale, the buyer pays the purchase price plus credit charges. Usually, the buyer makes monthly payments called **installments.** Just as you saw in the previous section, the method of computing the interest is just as important as the interest rate. Most often, the interest is based on the unpaid balance and is calculated each month using a monthly interest rate. Sometimes, the interest may be calculated only once at the beginning using an annual interest rate, but the interest might be paid in equal installments along with the principal installments.

Radius Images/Getty Images

EXAMPLE E

Nancy Bjonerud purchases $4,000 worth of merchandise. She will repay the principal in four equal monthly payments of $1,000 each. She will also pay interest each month on the unpaid balance for that month, which is calculated at an annual rate of 12%. First, calculate each of the monthly interest payments. Then, display the results in a table.

Given the annual interest of 12%, the monthly rate is 12% ÷ 12 = 1% per month.

Month 1: $4,000 × 1% = $40
Month 2: $3,000 × 1% = $30
Month 3: $2,000 × 1% = $20
Month 4: $1,000 × 1% = $10
Total interest = $40 + $30 + $20 + $10 = $100

Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
1	$ 4,000	$ 40	$1,000	$1,040	$3,000
2	3,000	30	1,000	1,030	2,000
3	2,000	20	1,000	1,020	1,000
4	1,000	+10	+1,000	+1,010	0
		$100	$4,000	$4,100	

EXAMPLE F

Carmel Dufault purchases $4,000 worth of merchandise. She will pay interest of 12% on $4,000 for four months. First, calculate the total amount of interest. Carmel will repay one-fourth of the interest amount each month. In addition, she will repay the $4,000 in four equal monthly amounts of $1,000 each. Display the results in a table.

$$\$4{,}000 \times 12\% \times \frac{4}{12} = \$160$$

$160 ÷ 4 = $40 per month for interest

Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
1	$ 4,000	$ 40	$1,000	$1,040	$3,000
2	3,000	40	1,000	1,040	2,000
3	2,000	40	1,000	1,040	1,000
4	1,000	+ 40	+1,000	+1,040	0
		$160	$4,000	$4,160	

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 14.4

A kitchen stove is priced at $600 and is purchased with a $100 down payment. The $500 remaining balance is paid in two successive monthly payments of $250 each. Compute the total interest using the following methods:

a. Interest of 1.5% is calculated on the unpaid balance each month (18% annual rate).
   Month 1: $500 × 0.015 = $7.50
   Month 2: New balance is $250. $250 × 0.015 = $3.75
   Total interest = $7.50 + $3.75 = $11.25

b. Simple interest is calculated on the entire $500 for 2 months at 1.5% per month (18% annual rate).
   $500 × 0.015 per month × 2 months = $15.00

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Computing Effective Interest Rates

Learning Objective 5

Compute effective rates.

Examples E and F are very similar, but not quite identical. The numbers are the same: Both purchases are for \$4,000; both repay the \$4,000 principal in four equal monthly payments; both use a 12% annual interest rate. The only difference is the method of calculating the interest. In example E, the total amount of interest is \$100; in example F, it is \$160. In example F, it is more expensive to borrow the same money than in example E. In example F, interest is calculated as if the entire \$4,000 were borrowed for 4 months (\$4,000 × 0.12 × 4/12). But Carmel repays \$1,000 of the money after only 1 month.

The true interest rate, or the **effective interest rate,** cannot be the same in each example because it costs more in example F to borrow the same amount of money for the same length of time. To calculate the effective interest rate, we use the familiar formula from Chapter 13, $R = \frac{I}{P \times T}$, where I is the amount of interest in dollars, T is the time of the loan in years, and P is the **average unpaid balance** (or the **average principal**) over the period of the loan. The average unpaid balance is the sum of all of the unpaid monthly balances divided by the number of months. (*Note:* The term *effective interest rate* is also used in other contexts where a different formula is used to find the effective rate.)

EXAMPLE G

Use the formula $R = \frac{I}{P \times T}$ to compute the effective interest rates for (a) example E and (b) example F. In both examples, the time of the loan is $T = \frac{4}{12}$ of a year. Using the preceding tables, for each example, the average unpaid balance is $P = \frac{\$4{,}000 + \$3{,}000 + \$2{,}000 + \$1{,}000}{4} = \frac{\$10{,}000}{4} = \$2{,}500$. But in example E, $I = \$100$ and in example F, $I = \$160$.

a. Example E: $T = \frac{4}{12}$; $P = \$2{,}500$; $I = \$100$; so that

$$R = \frac{I}{P \times T} = \frac{\$100}{\$2{,}500 \times \frac{4}{12}} = \frac{\$100}{\$833.33} = 0.120000, \text{ or } 12\%$$

b. Example F: $T = \frac{4}{12}$; $P = \$2{,}500$; $I = \$160$; so that

$$R = \frac{I}{P \times T} = \frac{\$160}{\$2{,}500 \times \frac{4}{12}} = \frac{\$160}{\$833.33} = 0.1920008, \text{ or } 19.2\%$$

Rule: When the interest is calculated on the unpaid balance each month, the quoted rate and the effective rate will always be the same. When interest is computed only once on the original principal, but the principal is repaid in installments, then the effective interest rate will always be higher than the quoted rate.

The preceding rule is true even when the principal is not repaid in equal installments each month.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE H

Look back at example E where Nancy Bjonerud made four equal principal payments of \$1,000 each. Suppose instead that she repays the principal in four monthly payments of \$900, \$1,200, \$1,100, and \$800. As in example E, she will also pay interest each month on the unpaid balance for that month, which is calculated at an annual rate of 12%. Compute the interest amount for each month and display the results in a table. Then, compute the average unpaid balance and the effective interest rate using the formula $R = \frac{I}{P \times T}$.

Given annual interest of 12%, the monthly rate is 12% ÷ 12 = 1% per month.

Month 1: $\$4{,}000 \times 1\% = \$40$

Month 2: $\$3{,}100 \times 1\% = \$31$

Month 3: $\$1{,}900 \times 1\% = \$19$

Month 4: $\$800 \times 1\% = \$8$

Total interest $= \$40 + \$31 + \$19 + \$8 = \$98$

Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
1	\$4,000	\$40	\$ 900	\$ 940	\$3,100
2	3,100	31	1,200	1,231	1,900
3	1,900	19	1,100	1,119	800
4	800	+ 8	+ 800	+ 808	0
		\$98	\$4,000	\$4,098	

$$P = \frac{\$4{,}000 + \$3{,}100 + \$1{,}900 + \$800}{4} = \frac{\$9{,}800}{4} = \$2{,}450$$

$$R = \frac{I}{P \times T} = \frac{\$98}{\$2{,}450 \times \frac{4}{12}} = \frac{\$98}{\$816.67} = 0.11999951, \text{ or } 12\%$$

INCREASING THE EFFECTIVE RATE

Example F shows how the effective rate in an installment sale can be increased by using a different method to calculate interest. Of course, a reputable lender should indicate the true interest rate in the terms of the agreement. But in installment sales, the interest rate may be only one of several variables in the total cost of purchasing. Any additional fees to make the installment purchase increase the actual cost of borrowing.

Naturally, some businesses will attempt to attract buyers by offering very low purchase prices, even “guaranteeing to match all competitors’ advertised prices for 30 days.” Others may offer installment purchases at low or even 0% interest rates and no additional fees—but they will charge a higher base price. Different consumers are attracted by different things—some by low prices, some by favorable terms of purchase. For many consumers, buying is simply an emotional response with very little thought given to actual costs.

Lenders and sellers “effectively” increase the cost of borrowing money or buying in installments by charging or suggesting additional fees. If it is a purchase of merchandise, the lender could require that the merchandise be insured for the term of purchase. Or the lender could charge a credit application fee.

Consider the following modification to example G, part a, which had an effective rate of 12%.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE I

Look back at example G, part a, where we used $R = \frac{I}{P \times T}$ to calculate the effective rate for example E, with I equal to the total interest charge of \$100. Suppose instead that the lender had charged Nancy the interest of \$100, and a loan origination fee of 1% of the purchase price, and an insurance premium of \$1 per month for the term of the loan. Use the formula $R = \frac{I}{P \times T}$ to compute the effective interest rate, but let I be the total finance charge.

The average unpaid balance is still $P = \frac{\$4{,}000 + \$3{,}000 + \$2{,}000 + \$1{,}000}{4} = \frac{\$10{,}000}{4} = \$2{,}500$.

I = Total finance charge = Interest + Loan origination fee + Insurance
Interest only = \$40 + \$30 + \$20 + \$10 = \$100
Loan origination fee = 1% of \$4,000 = 0.01 × \$4,000 = \$40
Insurance = \$1 × 4 months = \$4
Therefore, I = \$100 + \$40 + \$4 = \$144

$$R = \frac{I}{P \times T} = \frac{\$144}{\$2{,}500 \times \frac{4}{12}} = \frac{\$144}{\$833.33} = 0.17280069, \text{ or } 17.3\%$$

Because the interest in example E was paid on the unpaid balance, the effective rate was 12%, the same as the quoted interest rate. If the same additional finance charges from example I were applied to example F, the results would be even more dramatic.

CONCEPT CHECK 14.5

From Concept Check 14.4, a kitchen stove priced at \$600 is purchased with a \$100 down payment. The remaining balance of \$500 may be financed over 2 months with either of the following installment payment plans:
Plan 1: Two monthly principal payments of \$250 each and a total interest amount of \$11.25
Plan 2: Two monthly principal payments of \$250 each and a total interest amount of \$15.00
Calculate the effective annual rate of each plan, using $R = \frac{I}{(P \times T)}$, where P is the average unpaid monthly balance and T is $\frac{2}{12}$ year. In each plan, the monthly unpaid balances are \$500 in month 1 and \$250 in month 2.

The average unpaid balance is $\frac{(\$500 + \$250)}{2} = \frac{\$750}{2} = \$375$, so $P = \$375$.

Plan 1: $R = \frac{I}{(P \times T)} = \frac{\$11.25}{(\$375 \times \frac{2}{12})} = \frac{\$11.25}{\$62.50} = 0.18$, or 18% effective annual rate

Plan 2: $R = \frac{I}{(P \times T)} = \frac{\$15.00}{(\$375 \times \frac{2}{12})} = \frac{\$15.00}{\$62.50} = 0.24$, or 24% effective annual rate

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 14.2.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Amortizing a Loan

Learning Objective 6

Amortize a loan.

In example E, interest was calculated on the unpaid balance, but the total payments were different each month: $1,040, $1,030, $1,020, and $1,010. Equal monthly payments are usually simpler, especially for the borrower. In example F, the total payments were the same each month, always $1,040. However, the interest was not calculated on the unpaid balance. In example E, the effective interest rate was equal to the quoted interest rate of 12%. But in example F, the effective rate was much higher, 19.2%.

Taking the best features of each example, consider a loan where the total payments are equal each month and the interest is calculated on the unpaid balance each month. Such a loan is said to be *amortized;* the method is called **amortization.** (The word *amortize* is also used in different contexts and there is more than one way to amortize a loan.) Although possible for purchases of any length of time, amortization is especially relevant for larger purchases made over longer periods of time. Loans to pay for homes and automobiles are usually amortized. There may or may not be a down payment.

COMPUTING THE MONTHLY PAYMENT

The basic concept to amortize a loan is to multiply the loan amount by an **amortization payment factor.** The product is the amount of the monthly payment. This factor may be derived from a calculator or computer or from a book of financial tables. When lenders amortize loans today, they use computers to do the final calculations. Initial calculations, however, are often made using calculators or tables. In this chapter, we will use tables and will get the same results. (You can also go to the Internet, search on "amortization calculations," and find websites that help you do the calculations.)

Table 14-1 illustrates the concept of tables for amortization payment factors. Actual tables would have many pages and would be much more detailed. If you study other courses in business mathematics, accounting or finance, you may use tables that are slightly different than Table 14-1. Regardless of the exact format of the table, the concepts are the same. And, to repeat, with the prerequisite background knowledge, financial calculators and computers completely eliminate the need for any of these tables.

Notice that the title of Table 14-1 is "Amount of Monthly Payment per $1,000 Borrowed." Therefore, you must first determine the amount of the loan in "thousands of dollars," not in the number of dollars. The annual interest rates in Table 14-1 were selected because they are evenly divisible by 12. This will eliminate the necessity to round off interest rates when you convert an annual rate into a monthly rate.

STEPS to Find the Monthly Payment of an Amortized Loan Using Table 14-1

1. Divide the loan amount by $1,000 to get the number of thousands of dollars.
2. Locate the amortization payment factor in Table 14-1.
3. Multiply the quotient in Step 1 by the amortization payment factor. The product is the amount of the monthly payment.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Table 14-1 Amortization Payment Factors—Amount of Monthly Payment per $1,000 Borrowed

Term of Loan		Annual Interest Rate					
		3.6%	4.8%	6.0%	7.2%	8.4%	9.6%
1	month	1003.00000	1004.00000	1005.00000	1006.00000	1007.00000	1008.00000
2	months	502.25112	503.00200	503.75312	504.50449	505.25610	506.00797
3	months	335.33533	336.00355	336.67221	337.34131	338.01085	338.68083
4	months	251.87781	252.50499	253.13279	253.76122	254.39026	255.01992
5	months	201.80359	202.40639	203.00997	203.61436	204.21953	204.82550
6	months	168.42104	169.00776	169.59546	170.18411	170.77374	171.36432
1	year	84.96726	85.51586	86.06643	86.61897	87.17348	87.72996
2	years	43.24711	43.78188	44.32061	44.86330	45.40994	45.96053
3	years	29.34638	29.88118	30.42194	30.96862	31.52122	32.07972
4	years	22.40050	22.93881	23.48503	24.03914	24.60112	25.17092
5	years	18.23656	18.77974	19.33280	19.89569	20.46837	21.05076
10	years	9.93550	10.50906	11.10205	11.71419	12.34515	12.99457
15	years	7.19803	7.80414	8.43857	9.10047	9.78887	10.50267
20	years	5.85111	6.48957	7.16431	7.87349	8.61504	9.38671
25	years	5.06003	5.72997	6.44301	7.19589	7.98499	8.80658
30	years	4.54645	5.24665	5.99551	6.78788	7.61838	8.48160

EXAMPLE J

Find the monthly payment required to amortize a $5,000 loan over 3 months at 8.4% (0.7% per month).

STEP 1 $5,000 ÷ $1,000 = 5 (thousands)

STEP 2 Find the intersection of the 8.4% column and the 3-month row in Table 14-1. The amortization payment factor is $338.01085 per each one thousand dollars.

STEP 3 Multiply the 5 (from Step 1) by the amortization payment factor.
5 × $338.01085 = $1,690.05425, or $1,690.05 per month

JAMES COLDREY/GETTY IMAGES

EXAMPLE K

Karen Krenz agrees to purchase an automobile for $22,500. Karen will make a $4,000 down payment and amortize the balance with monthly payments over 3 years at 7.2% (0.6% per month). Determine Karen's monthly payment.

$22,500 − $4,000 = $18,500 amount financed

STEP 1 $18,500 ÷ $1,000 = 18.5 (thousands)

STEP 2 Find the intersection of the 7.2% column and the 3-year row in Table 14-1. The amortization payment factor is $30.96862 per thousand.

STEP 3 Multiply the 18.5 (from Step 1) by the amortization payment factor.
18.5 × $30.96862 = $572.91947, or $572.92 per month

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LOAN PAYMENT SCHEDULE

After determining the amount of the monthly payments, a lender can prepare a schedule of loan payments called an **amortization schedule.** The payment for the last month is determined in the schedule, and it may be slightly different from the payment in the other months. Round the payments to the nearest cent.

STEPS to Create an Amortization Schedule

For each row except the last:

1. Interest payment = Unpaid balance × Monthly interest rate
2. Principal payment = Monthly payment − Interest payment
3. New unpaid balance = Old unpaid balance − Principal payment

For the last row (the final payment):

1. Interest payment = Unpaid balance × Monthly interest rate
2. Monthly payment = Unpaid balance + Interest payment
3. Principal payment = Unpaid balance

EXAMPLE L

Create an amortization schedule for the loan in example J, a $5,000 loan amortized at 8.4% over 3 months. The interest rate is 0.7% per month and the monthly payment is $1,690.05.

Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
1	$ 5,000.00	$35.00	$1,655.05	$1,690.05	$3,344.95
2	3,344.95	23.41	1,666.64	1,690.05	1,678.31
3	1,678.31	11.75	1,678.31	1,690.06	0.00
Totals	$10,023.26	$70.16	$5,000.00	$5,070.16	

Note: In example L, the final monthly payment is 1 cent larger than the others. Because the interest payments need to be rounded to the nearest cent, the final payment usually will be slightly different from the previous payments.

Since amortization implies that interest is paid on the unpaid balance, the formula $R = \frac{I}{P \times T}$ should show that the effective rate is the same as the quoted rate of 8.4%. Looking at the table for example L, the average unpaid balance for 3 months is

$$P = \frac{\$5{,}000.00 + \$3{,}344.95 + \$1{,}678.31}{3} = \frac{\$10{,}023.26}{3}$$

$$= \$3{,}341.087, \text{ or } \$3{,}341.09$$

The total interest paid is $I = \$35.00 + \$23.41 + \$11.75 = \$70.16$. Therefore,

$$R = \frac{I}{P \times T} = \frac{\$70.16}{\$3{,}341.09 \times \frac{3}{12}} = \frac{\$70.16}{\$835.27} = 0.0839968, \text{ or } 8.4\%$$

The reason that the result was 8.39968% instead of 8.4% is that all the monthly payments were rounded to the nearest cent.

CONCEPT CHECK 14.6

A $2,000 purchase is amortized over 2 months at an annual rate of 6%. First, use Table 14-1 to calculate the monthly payment for month 1. Then, show the calculations to construct a 2-month amortization schedule. *(Remember: In this problem, month 2 is the last month.)*

$2,000 ÷ $1,000 = 2 (thousands)

Amortization payment factor from Table 14-1 is $503.75312.

2 × $503.75312 = $1,007.50624, or $1,007.51 for month 1

Month	1		2	
Unpaid balance	Original principal:	$2,000.00	From end of month 1:	$1,002.49
Monthly rate	0.06 ÷ 12 = 0.005			
Interest payment	$2,000.00 × 0.005 =	$ 10.00	$1,002.49 × 0.005 =	$ 5.01
Total payment	From above:	$1,007.51	$1,002.49 + $5.01	$1,007.50
Principal payment	$1,007.51 − $10.00 =	$ 997.51		$1,002.49
New balance	$2,000.00 − $997.51	$1,002.49	$1,002.49 − $1,002.49 =	$ 0.00

Computing a Monthly Mortgage Payment

Learning Objective 7

Compute a monthly mortgage payment.

Most persons who decide to purchase a home usually borrow the majority of the money. The amount that is borrowed is usually amortized, and usually for a long time, such as 15, 20, or 30 years. Such a home loan is called a **mortgage.** The interest rate may be **fixed,** which means that it stays the same for the entire length of the loan. Other mortgages are **variable-rate loans,** which permit the lender to periodically adjust the interest rate depending on current financial market conditions. Whether a borrower decides on a fixed or variable rate loan depends on several factors, such as how long he or she plans to remain in that home.

A mortgage loan is still a loan. And amortizing a mortgage is the same as amortizing any other loan: Look up the amortization payment factor in Table 14-1 and multiply by the number of thousands of dollars that are borrowed. The product is the monthly payment.

EXAMPLE M

Bill and Janice Mason bought a condominium priced at $190,000. They made a $20,000 down payment and took out a 30-year, 6% mortgage on the balance. Find the size of their monthly payment.

$190,000 − $20,000 = $170,000 amount borrowed

STEP 1 Divide $170,000 by $1,000 to get 170 (thousands)

STEP 2 Find the amortization factor in the 6% column and 30-year row of Table 14-1. It is $5.99551.

STEP 3 Multiply the 170 from Step 1 by $5.99551 to get $1,019.2367. The monthly payment will be $1,019.24.

AMORTIZATION SCHEDULE FOR A MORTGAGE

An amortization schedule for a mortgage is computed line by line, just as the amortization schedules are for other loans such as the one in example L. However, a 30-year home mortgage will have 360 lines, one for each month of the loan. This could be about six or seven pages of paper with three calculations per line, or 1,080 calculations. Today, these tables are always produced with a computer. You can create an amortization schedule using Excel or you can find several sources on the Internet to do the calculations for you. However, to review the concept manually, examine example N.

EXAMPLE N

Construct the first three lines of an amortization schedule for the Jarvis's home mortgage loan in example M.

The Jarvis's $170,000 mortgage has a monthly payment of $1,019.24.
For a 6% annual interest rate, the monthly rate is 6% ÷ 12 = 0.5%.
For each row, 1. Monthly interest = Unpaid balance × 0.005
2. Principal payment = Total payment − Monthly interest
3. New balance = Unpaid balance − Principal payment

Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
1	$170,000.00	$850.00	$169.24	$1,019.24	$169,830.76
2	169,830.76	849.15	170.09	1,019.24	169,660.67
3	169,660.67	848.30	170.94	1,019.24	169,489.73

CONCEPT CHECK 14.7

A home cost $280,000. The buyers made a down payment of $30,000. Compute the monthly payment on a 25-year mortgage with an annual interest rate of 4.8%. Use Table 14-1.

The amount borrowed is $280,000 − $30,000 = $250,000.
The amortization payment factor from Table 14-1 is $5.72997.
The amount of the loan in thousands is $250,000 ÷ $1,000 = 250 (thousands).
The monthly mortgage payment is 250 × $5.72997 = $1,432.4925, or $1,432.49.

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 14.3.

Chapter Terms for Review

- amortization
- amortization payment factor
- amortization schedule
- annual percentage rate (APR)
- average daily balance
- average principal
- average unpaid balance
- credit card
- effective interest rate
- finance charge
- fixed interest rate
- installments
- mortgage
- Truth in Lending Act (TILA)
- variable-rate loans

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
14.1 Convert between annual and monthly interest rates.	1. Convert 0.75% per month to an annual rate. 2. Convert 15% per year to a monthly rate
14.2 Compute simple interest on a monthly basis.	3. Compute the simple interest on $2,500 for 7 months at 0.5% per month (6% per year).
14.3 Compute finance charges.	4. Charge account terms apply a 1.25% finance charge to the previous balance, less any payments and credits, but ignoring purchases. Find the finance charge and new balance when the previous balance is $1,683.43, payments plus credits total $942.77, and purchases are $411.48.
14.4 Compute costs of installment purchases.	5. Furniture worth $2,500 is paid for with a $400 down payment and three payments of $700, plus monthly interest of 1% on the unpaid balance. Find the total interest paid. The monthly unpaid balances are $2,100, $1,400, and $700.
14.5 Compute effective rates.	6. A $2,400 purchase is to be repaid in three equal monthly principal payments of $800 each. There will be one interest payment of $60 (10% of $2,400 for three months) and insurance premiums of $1 each month. Calculate the effective rate of interest. The monthly unpaid balances are $2,400, $1,600, and $800.
14.6 Amortize a loan.	7. A $2,000 loan will be amortized over 6 months at an annual rate of 4.8%. Find the payment, using Table 14-1, and calculate the unpaid balance after the first month.
14.7 Compute a monthly mortgage payment.	8. A $180,000 home mortgage is for 20 years at 6% annual interest. Find the monthly payment.

Answers: **1.** 9% per year **2.** 1.25% per month **3.** $87.50 **4.** Finance charge, $9.26; new balance, $1,161.40
5. $42 **6.** 15.75% **7.** Payment, $338.02; unpaid balance, $1,669.98 **8.** $1,289.58

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 14

1 Change the monthly rates to annual rates.

a. 0.75% = ________ **b.** 0.625% = ________ **c.** 1.2% = ________ **d.** $\frac{2}{5}$% = ________

2 Change the annual rates to monthly rates.

a. 6% = ________ **b.** 15% = ________ **c.** 13.2% = ________ **d.** 9.6% = ________

3 A store offers the following credit terms: "There will be no finance charge if the full amount of the new balance is received on or before the due date. Unpaid balances after the due date will be charged interest based upon the previous balance, less any payments and credits before the due date. The rates are 1.75% on the first $1,000 of the unpaid balance and 1.25% on the part of the unpaid balance that exceeds $1,000."

Calculate (a) the finance charge and (b) the new balance on an account that had a previous balance of $2,752.88; a payment of $800; credits of $215; and purchases of $622.75.

4 Neta Prefontaine buys $3,000 worth of merchandise. She agrees to pay $1,000 per month on the principal. In addition, she will pay interest of 1% per month (12% annually) on the unpaid balance. Complete the following table.

Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
1	**$3,000.00**	**a.** ________	**$1,000.00**	**b.** ________	**c.** ________
2	**d.** ________	**e.** ________	**$1,000.00**	**f.** ________	**g.** ________
3	**h.** ________	**i.** ________	**$1,000.00**	**j.** ________	**$0.00**

5 Use the results of problem 4 and compute the effective annual interest rate using the formula $R = \frac{I}{P \times T}$, where ***P*** is the average unpaid balance, ***I*** is the total interest paid, and ***T*** is the period of the loan in years.

6 Use Table 14-1 to find the monthly payment of a $225,000 mortgage that is amortized over 15 years at 3.6%. ________

7 A $3,000 loan is amortized over 3 months at 9.6%. The first two monthly payments are $1,016.04; the final payment may differ. Complete the following table.

Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
1	**$3,000.00**	**a.** ________	**b.** ________	**$1,016.04**	**c.** ________
2	**d.** ________	**e.** ________	**f.** ________	**$1,016.04**	**g.** ________
3	**h.** ________	**i.** ________	**j.** ________	**k.** ________	**$0.00**

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Assignment 14.1: Monthly Finance Charges

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 1 2 3

A **(19 points) Problem 1: Change the rates from annual to monthly. Problem 2: Change the rates from monthly to annual. (1 point for each correct answer)**

1a. 18% = __________

b. 15% = __________

c. 3.6% = __________

d. 7.2% = __________

e. 6% = __________

f. 4.8% = __________

g. 9% = __________

h. 8.4% = __________

i. 12% = __________

j. 9.6 % = __________

2a. 0.4% = __________

b. 0.7% = __________

c. 0.9% = __________

d. 1.75% = __________

e. 0.8% = __________

f. 0.25% = __________

g. 0.6% = __________

h. 0.5% = __________

i. 1.5% = __________

____

Score for A (19)

B **(33 points) Lakeside Furniture Store offers the credit terms shown below to its retail customers. In problems 3–5 compute the finance charge, if any, and the new balance. Assume that all payments are made within the current billing cycle. (3 points for each correct answer)**

TERMS: There will be no finance charge if the full amount of the new balance is received within 25 days after the cycle-closing date. The finance charge, if any, is based upon the entire previous balance *before* any payments or credits are deducted. The rates are 1.5% per month on amounts up to $1,000 and 1.25% on amounts in excess of $1,000. These are annual percentage rates of 18% and 15%, respectively.

	Cycle Closing	Previous Balance	Payment Amount	Credits	Finance Charge	Purchases	New Balance
3.	3/20/20——	$2,147.12	$900.00	$175.50	________	$647.72	________
4.	6/20/20——	$1,472.50	$750.00	$284.43	________	$365.70	________
5.	9/20/20——	$3,412.27	$3,000.00	$212.98	________	$907.51	________

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In problems 6 and 7, Lelia McDaniel has an account at Lakeside Furniture Store. Compute the missing values in Lelia's account summary for the months of August and September. The previous balance in September is the same as the new balance in August.

	Cycle Closing	Previous Balance	Payment Amount	Credits	Finance Charge	Purchases	New Balance
6.	8/20/20— —	$1,636.55	$900.00	$ 36.00	______	$966.75	______
7.	9/20/20— —	______	$1,200.00	$109.75	______	$589.41	______

______

Score for B (33)

C **(48 points) Bracelin's Feed & Fuel offers the credit terms shown below to its retail customers. In problems 8–12 compute the missing values in the charge accounts shown. Assume that all payments are made within 30 days of the billing date. (3 points for each correct answer)**

TERMS: Finance Charge is based on the Net Balance, if any payment is received within 30 days of the billing date. If payment is made after 30 days, then the Finance Charge is based on the Previous Balance. Net Balance equals Previous Balance less Payments and Credits. In either case, the monthly rate is 1.25% on the first $500 and 1% on any amount over $500. These are annual percentage rates of 15% and 12%, respectively.

	Billing Date	Previous Balance	Payment Amount	Credits	Net Balance	Finance Charge	New Purchases	New Balance
8.	4/25/20— —	$2,621.05	$1,900.00	$0.00	______	______	$661.28	______

	Billing Date	Previous Balance	Payment Amount	Credits	Net Balance	Finance Charge	New Purchases	New Balance
9.	8/25/20– –	$1,827.15	$700.00	$28.75	__________	__________	$672.39	__________
10.	11/25/20– –	$1,019.63	$325.00	$26.50	__________	__________	$218.75	__________

In problems 11 and 12 compute the missing values in Les Golbeck's charge account summary at Bracelin's Feed & Fuel for the months of September and October. The previous balance in October is the same as the new balance in September.

11.	9/25/20– –	$1,168.41	$250.00	$94.15	__________	__________	$643.57	__________
12.	10/25/20– –	__________	$840.00	$118.81	__________	__________	$423.77	__________

____

Score for C (48)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 14.2: Installment Sales and Effective Rates

Name ____________________

Date __________ Score __________

Learning Objectives 4 5

A **(60 points) Jo Jensen needed to purchase office equipment costing $4,800. She was able to finance her purchase over 3 months at a 9% annual interest rate. Following are three different payment options under these conditions. Complete the installment purchase table for each payment option. (2 points for each correct answer)**

1. Jo pays $1,600 per month on the principal and pays interest of 0.75% on the unpaid balance each month (9% annual rate).

Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
1	$4,800	______	$1,600	______	______
2	______	______	1,600	______	______
3	______	______	+1,600	______	0
			$4,800		

2. Jo makes monthly payments of $1,200, $1,600, and $2,000 on the principal and pays interest of 0.75% on the unpaid balance each month (9% annual rate).

Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
1	$4,800	______	$1,200	______	______
2	______	______	1,600	______	______
3	______	______	+2,000	______	0
			$4,800		

3. Jo pays $1,600 per month on the principal. The total interest charge is 9% of the original principal for 3 months. She pays $\frac{1}{3}$ of the total interest each month.

Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
1	$4,800	______	$1,600	______	______
2	______	______	1,600	______	______
3	______	______	+1,600	______	0
			$4,800		

____

Score for A (60)

B **(40 points) For each of the following problems calculate the effective rate using the formula $R = \frac{I}{P \times T}$. (Points for each correct answer as shown)**

4. Compute R = effective rate for the table in problem 1 in part A, with P = average unpaid balance, I = total interest charge and $T = \frac{3}{12}$ year.

a. P = Average unpaid balance __________ (3 pts)

b. I = Total interest charge __________ (3 pts)

c. R = Effective interest rate __________ (4 pts)

5. Compute R = effective rate for the table in problem 1 in part A, with P = average unpaid balance, I = total finance charge, and $T = \frac{3}{12}$ year. The finance charge is the total interest, plus a loan origination fee of $\frac{3}{4}$% of the original principal, plus $7.50 of insurance premiums ($2.50 per month).

a. P = Average unpaid balance __________ (3 pts)

b. I = Total finance charge __________ (3 pts)

c. R = Effective interest rate __________ (4 pts)

6. Compute R = effective rate for the table in problem 2 in part A, with P = average unpaid balance, I = total interest charge, and $T = \frac{3}{12}$ year.

a. P = Average unpaid balance __________ (3 pts)

b. I = Total interest charge __________ (3 pts)

c. R = Effective interest rate __________ (4 pts)

7. Compute R = effective rate for the table in problem 3 in part A, with P = average unpaid balance, I = total interest charge, and $T = \frac{3}{12}$ year.

a. P = Average unpaid balance __________ (3 pts)

b. I = Total interest charge __________ (3 pts)

c. R = Effective interest rate __________ (4 pts)

____

Score for B (40)

Assignment 14.3: Amortization and Mortgages

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 6 7

A **(16 points) Reedsport Lending Corp. amortizes all of its mortgage loans and many of its personal loans on a monthly basis. The total monthly payments are equal each month and include both interest and principal. Use Table 14-1 to find the amortization payment factor for each loan. Then compute the monthly payment. (2 points for each correct answer)**

	Loan and Terms of Amortization	Amortization Payment Factor	Monthly Payment
1.	$18,000 over 5 months at 9.6%		
2.	$36,500 over 2 years at 8.4%		
3.	$275,000 over 20 years at 4.8%		
4.	$312,500 over 25 years at 7.2%		

Score for A (16)

B **(32 points) On April 13, Braunda Johannesen borrowed $6,000 from her bank to help pay her federal income taxes for the previous year. The bank amortized her loan over 4 months at an annual rate of 7.2%. Braunda paid interest of 0.6% on the unpaid balance each month. Find the amortization payment factor in Table 14-1. This factor makes a total payment of $1,522.57 each month except the last. For the last month, the total payment is the interest payment plus the unpaid balance. Complete the following amortization schedule. (2 points for each correct answer)**

5. Amortization factor from Table 14-1: __________

Multiply the amortization factor by 6 to get the total payment shown for months 1, 2, and 3.

	Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
6.	1	6,000.00			1,522.57	
7.	2				1,522.57	
8.	3				1,522.57	
9.	4					0.00

Score for B (32)

C **(30 points) Refer to part B, in which Braunda Johannesen borrowed $6,000 to help pay her federal income taxes. Now suppose that Braunda agreed to make payments of $1,200 in months 1, 2, and 3. The bank will compute the interest on the unpaid balance at a rate of 0.6% (7.2%/12) each month and will deduct the interest from the $1,200. In the last (fourth) month, Braunda will pay all of the remaining unpaid balance plus the interest for the last month. Complete the table, using the same procedure as in part B. (2 points for each correct answer)**

	Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
10.	1	6,000.00	________	________	1,200.00	________
11.	2	________	________	________	1,200.00	________
12.	3	________	________	________	1,200.00	________
13.	4	________	________	________	________	0.00

____
Score for C (30)

D **(22 points) Mr. and Mrs. Jay Wilson sold their previous home and used the profits as a down payment to buy a new home. They took out a $180,000, 20-year mortgage from Aptos Home Finance. The mortgage had an annual interest rate of 4.8%. From Table 14-1, the amortization payment factor is $6.48957 and the monthly payment is $1,168.12. Complete the first three rows of the amortization schedule for the Wilson's mortgage. (2 points for each correct answer)**

Amortization Schedule for Mortgage

	Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
14.	1	$180,000.00	________	________	$1,168.12	________
15.	2	________	________	________	1,168.12	________
16.	3	________	________	________	1,168.12	________

____
Score for D (22)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

15

Promissory Notes and Discounting

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1	Compute the number of interest days of a promissory note.
Learning Objective 2	Determine the due date of a promissory note.
Learning Objective 3	Compute the maturity value of a promissory note.
Learning Objective 4	Discount a promissory note.
Learning Objective 5	Compute the proceeds and actual interest rate on a bank discount loan.
Learning Objective 6	Compute the savings from borrowing money to take a cash discount.

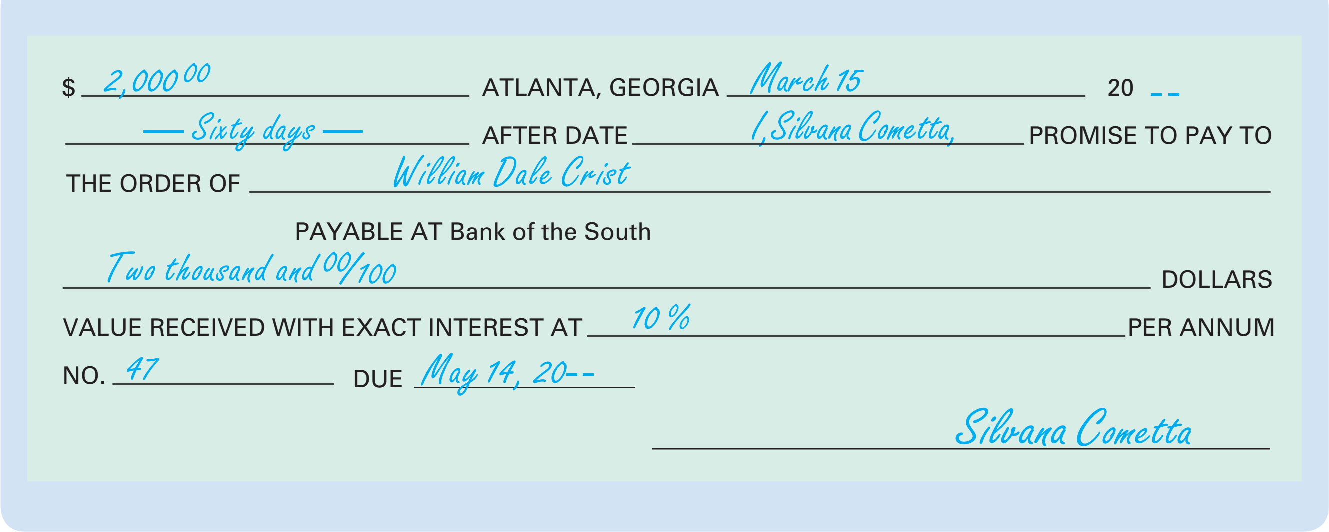
Businesses and individuals both use long-term loans (more than 1 year) to purchase large items such as equipment or buildings. Likewise, businesses and individuals also use short-term loans when they are convenient and make sense financially. Long-term and short-term loans are written in the form of various financial documents, one of which is called a **promissory note.** It is a promise by a borrower to repay a certain amount of money on a certain date. Sometimes the promissory note can be sold to a third party, in which case the note is called a **negotiable promissory note.** Because the buyer of the note is assuming some risk that the borrower will not repay the original loan, he or she will not likely pay the entire value of the note. Such a note is called a **discounted note.** Similarly, an individual may go to a bank to borrow money, and the bank may deduct the entire amount of the interest in advance. This is called bank discounting, and the loan is called a **bank discount loan.**

Unlike individuals, however, businesses may borrow large amounts of money for only a few days. For example, a retail business buys merchandise from manufacturers and wholesalers. But the retailer may know immediately that it cannot sell enough merchandise in time to pay the supplier's invoice. Perhaps the supplier also offers a cash discount if the buyer pays the invoice within a few days (see Chapter 7). The retailer can often save money by borrowing enough cash to pay the invoice and take advantage of the cash discount. If the amounts are large, the savings can be significant.

Promissory Notes

A promissory note is an unconditional promise by the **maker** of the note (the borrower) to repay money to the **bearer** of the note (the lender) at some time in the future. This date is called the **due date** or the **maturity date.** The dollar amount written on the note is called the **face value** (*FV*) of the note. It is usually the same as the principal (***P*** in Chapter 13). Most promissory notes are **interest-bearing,** especially if one or both parties is a business. This means that the maker must also pay interest to the bearer on the maturity date. The sum of the face value and the **interest dollars** (*I*) is the **maturity value** (*MV*) of the note. Figure 15-1 illustrates a simple promissory note.

Figure 15-1 Promissory Note



$ 2,000^00 ATLANTA, GEORGIA March 15 20 --
— Sixty days — AFTER DATE I, Silvana Cometta, PROMISE TO PAY TO
THE ORDER OF William Dale Crist
PAYABLE AT Bank of the South
Two thousand and 00/100 DOLLARS
VALUE RECEIVED WITH EXACT INTEREST AT 10 % PER ANNUM
NO. 47 DUE May 14, 20--
Silvana Cometta

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Computing the Number of Interest Days of a Note

Learning Objective 1

Compute the number of interest days of a promissory note.

To define the interest period, or term, of a promissory note, the lender either specifies the due date of the note or states the number of interest days. When the due date is given, the number of interest days must be computed before the interest charge can be computed.

To compute the interest days, you need the number of days in each month, as shown in Table 15-1. Remember that February has 29 days in leap years. A leap year is any year that is evenly divisible by 4, except for certain years ending in 00 (e.g., 1900). In order to be leap years, years ending in 00 must be evenly divisible by 400; thus 2000 was a leap year, but 1900 was not and 2100 will not be either.

STEPS to Compute the Number of Interest Days Between Two Dates

1. Determine the number of interest days in the beginning month.
2. Determine the number of interest days in the middle months.
3. Add the numbers from Steps 1 and 2 to the number of interest days in the final month. (For the final month, the number of interest days is equal to the number of the due date.)

Table 15-1 Days in Each Month (non-leap years)

Month	Number of Days	Month	Number of Days	Month	Number of Days
January	31 days	May	31 days	September	30 days
February	28 days	June	30 days	October	31 days
March	31 days	July	31 days	November	30 days
April	30 days	August	31 days	December	31 days

EXAMPLE A

A promissory note is made on July 25. The due date is October 8. Use Table 15-1 to help you determine the number of interest days between July 25 and October 8.

STEP 1

31	days in July
−25	date of note
6	days of interest

STEP 2

August has 31 days
September has 30 days

STEP 3

6	days in July
31	days in August
30	days in September
+8	days in October (due date)
75	total interest days in the promissory note

CONCEPT CHECK 15.1

A promissory note is dated October 20. The maturity date (due date) is February 20. Determine the number of interest days.

As October has 31 days and the note is dated October 20, there are 31 − 20 = 11 days of interest in October. Since the note is due on February 20, there are 20 interest days in February. The total can be expressed as

October		November		December		January		February		Total Interest Days
11	+	30	+	31	+	31	+	20	=	123

THE NEW CANAL AND BANKING COMPANY
promises to pay FIFTY Dollars on demand to or bearer
NEW ORLEANS
50
FIFTY
CITY OF NEW ORLEANS

Rose Alcorn

Determining the Due Date of a Note

Learning Objective 2

Determine the due date of a promissory note.

When the promissory note explicitly states the number of interest days, then you must determine the due date. The procedure is somewhat the reverse of finding the number of interest days.

STEPS to Determine the Due Date

1. Determine the number of interest days in the beginning month.
2. Determine the number of interest days that remain after the first month.
3. Determine the number of interest days remaining at the end of each succeeding month by subtracting. Continue subtracting until less than 1 month remains. The due date is the number of interest days remaining in the final month.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE B

A promissory note is made on July 25. The note is for 75 days. Determine the due date.

© R. ALCORN/CENGAGE LEARNING

STEP 1

31	days in July
−25	date of note
6	days of interest in July

STEP 2

75	days of interest in the note
− 6	days of interest in July
69	days left in term after end of July

STEP 3

69	days of interest left after July
−31	days in August
38	days of interest left after August
−30	days in September
8	days of interest left after end of September, or 8 days of interest in October

The due date is October 8.

Although the procedure looks somewhat cumbersome on paper, it goes very quickly on a calculator. You can subtract repeatedly to deduct the days of each month, and after each subtraction, the calculator will display the number of interest days remaining. You don't need to write down all the intermediate results.

When the length of the interest period is expressed in months, the date is advanced by the number of months given. The due date is the same date of the month as the date of the note. For example, a 2-month note dated July 3 will be due on September 3. The exact number of interest days must then be computed, as shown previously. If the note is dated the 31st of a month and the month of maturity is April, June, September, or November, the due date is the 30th. If the month of maturity is February, the due date is the 28th (or 29th in a leap year).

EXAMPLE C

Find the due date of a 3-month note dated January 31 (the last day of the month).

Maturity month: April (count "February, March, April")
Last day: 30 (last day of April)
Therefore, the due date is April 30.

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 15.2

a. A 90-day promissory note is dated February 5 in a non-leap year. Determine the due date.

28	days in February
− 5	date of note
23	days of interest in February

90	days of interest in the note
− 23	days of interest in February
67	days of interest left after February

67	days of interest left after February
− 31	days in March
36	days of interest left after March
− 30	days in April
6	days of interest left after April

The due date is May 6.

b. A 4-month promissory note is dated April 30. Determine the due date.
Four months after April 30 is August 30. The due date is August 30.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Computing the Maturity Value of a Note

Learning Objective 3

Compute the maturity value of a promissory note.

The maturity value (MV) of a promissory note is the sum of the face value (principal) of the note and the interest:

Maturity Value = Principal + Interest, or $MV = P + I$

EXAMPLE D

Compute the maturity value of the interest-bearing promissory note illustrated in Figure 15-1.

The face value (P) of the note is $2,000. The interest rate (R) is 10% exact interest per year. The loan period of the note is 60 days, so the time in years (T) is $\frac{60}{365}$.

$$I = P \times R \times T = \$2{,}000 \times 0.10 \times \frac{60}{365} = \$32.88$$

$$MV = P + I = \$2{,}000 + \$32.88 = \$2{,}032.88$$

CONCEPT CHECK 15.3

A 90-day promissory note has a face value of $2,800 and an exact simple interest rate of 7.5%. Compute the maturity value.

$$I = P \times R \times T = \$2{,}800 \times 0.075 \times \frac{90}{365} = \$51.78 \quad MV = P + I = \$2{,}800 + \$51.78 = \$2{,}851.78$$

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 15.1.

Discounting Promissory Notes

Learning Objective 4

Discount a promissory note.

Often, when a lender holds a promissory note as security for a loan to a borrower, the lender may need cash before the maturity date of the note. One option is for the lender to “sell” the note to a third party. Such a note is said to be *negotiable.*

However, now the third party is assuming the risk that the original borrower might not pay everything on the maturity date. Therefore, to acquire the note, the third party will pay the original lender less money than the maturity value. The note is said to “sell at a discount.”

There are several vocabulary terms involved in discounting promissory notes. The calculations, however, are straightforward and very similar to simple interest calculations. These can be explained by using examples.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE E

On August 19, Telescan Medical Instruments borrows \$75,000 from a private investor, Anne Harding. In return, Telescan gives Anne a 120-day promissory note at an ordinary simple interest rate of 8% (360-day year). Compute the due date and the maturity value of the promissory note.

Due date: August 19 + 120 days = December 17

Interest: $I = P \times R \times T = \$75{,}000 \times 0.08 \times \frac{120}{360} = \$2{,}000$

Maturity value: $MV = P + I = \$75{,}000 + \$2{,}000 = \$77{,}000$

In example E, Telescan Medical must pay \$77,000 to Anne Harding on December 17. During the 120 days, Anne has only the promissory note—no cash. If the note is negotiable, Anne can sell the note to a third party at any time before December 17. Suppose that Anne sells the note on October 5 to Auburn Financial Corporation. October 5 is called the **discount date.** The time between October 5 and December 17 is the **discount period.** The length of the discount period is the number of days between October 5 and December 17. Since the original 8% interest rate was ordinary simple interest (360-day year), we will also use a 360-day year in the discount calculation.

Auburn Financial agrees to buy the note at a discount of 12% of the maturity value. 12% is the **discount rate.** The **discount amount** is calculated using a formula similar to ordinary simple interest:

Discount Amount = Maturity value × Discount rate × Time (Discount period)

Maturity value: \$77,000

Discount rate: 12%

Discount period: October 5 to December 17 = (31 − 5) + 30 + 17 = 73 days

$$\text{Discount Amount} = \$77{,}000 \times 0.12 \times \frac{73}{360} = \$1{,}873.67$$

The difference between the maturity value and the discount amount is called the **proceeds.** It is the amount that Auburn Financial will pay to Anne Harding for her promissory note from Telescan Medical Instruments.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Proceeds} &= \text{Maturity value} - \text{Discount amount}\\ &= \$77{,}000 - \$1{,}873.67 = \$75{,}126.33\end{aligned}$$

STEPS to Discount a Promissory Note

1. Compute the interest amount (I) and maturity value (MV) of the promissory note.
2. Determine the maturity (due) date of the note.
3. Compute the number of days in the discount period. The time, T, is the number of days in the discount period divided by 360, or by 365.
4. Compute the discount amount, using $D = MV \times R \times T$, where R is the discount rate.
5. Compute the proceeds by subtracting the discount amount from the maturity value.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

NON-INTEREST-BEARING PROMISSORY NOTES

Sometimes the original lender may not charge any interest at all. In this situation, the maturity value of the note is equal to the face value. Similarly, the original lender may require that all the interest must be completely paid in advance. Therefore, this is another type of promissory note that does not have any interest dollars in the maturity value, so the maturity value is equal to the face value. To find the proceeds of a **non-interest-bearing promissory note,** follow the same steps that were listed above. But, in Step 1, the amount of interest is $0 and the maturity value is the face value.

EXAMPLE F

C. W. Smith, owner of a Local-Value Hardware Store, is holding a 75-day, non-interest-bearing note for $3,500. The note is dated June 21. On August 10, C. W. sells the note to the Millicoma Lending Company, which discounts the note at 11%. Find the discount amount and the proceeds using a 365-day year.

STEP 1 Interest amount = $0; Maturity value = Face value = $3,500

STEP 2 Due date: June 21 + 75 days = September 4

STEP 3 Discount period: August 10 to September 4 = 25 days

STEP 4 Discount amount: Maturity value × Discount rate × Time

$$= \$3{,}500 \times 0.11 \times \frac{25}{365}$$

$$= \$26.3697, \text{ or } \$26.37$$

STEP 5 Proceeds: Maturity value − Discount amount

$$= \$3{,}500 - \$26.37$$

$$= \$3{,}473.63$$

CONCEPT CHECK 15.4

A 75-day promissory note, bearing interest at 10%, is dated December 11 and has a face value of $5,000. On January 24, the note is discounted at 14%. Find the discount amount and the proceeds. *Note:* The interest amount, the maturity value, the maturity date, and the days of discount must first be determined. Use a 365-day year for all interest and discount calculations.

Interest amount: $\$5{,}000 \times 0.10 \times \frac{75}{365} = \$102.7397, \text{ or } \$102.74$

Maturity value: $5,000 + $102.74 = $5,102.74

Maturity date: Dec. 11 + 75 days = Feb. 24

Days of discount: Jan. 24 to Feb. 24 = 31 days

Discount amount: $\$5{,}102.74 \times 0.14 \times \frac{31}{365} = \$60.6737, \text{ or } \$60.67$

Proceeds: $5,102.74 − $60.67 = $5,042.07

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 15.2.

Bank Discounting

Learning Objective 5

Compute the proceeds and actual interest rate on a bank discount loan.

In Chapter 13 and at the beginning of this chapter, we studied the simple procedure to borrow and repay money: Determine the Principal, Rate, and Time; compute the interest amount; the maturity value (amount due) is the principal plus the interest.

EXAMPLE G

Silvia Jiminez, owner/operator of a small restaurant, borrows \$50,000 from her bank for 60 days at 9% ordinary simple interest. Using a 360-day year, compute the interest and the maturity value.

$$P = \$50{,}000;\ R = 9\%;\ T = \frac{60}{360}$$

$$\text{Interest } (I) = P \times R \times T = \$50{,}000 \times 0.09 \times \frac{60}{360} = \$750$$

$$\text{Maturity value } (MV) = P + I = \$50{,}000 + \$750 = \$50{,}750$$

Please observe: Silvia will keep the entire \$50,000 for the entire 60 days and then repay a total of \$50,750 on the due date.

In the previous section, we studied promissory notes that were discounted at some date between the date of the loan and the due date. Similarly, sometimes banks will discount loans immediately, at the time they are written. The steps to discount a loan are the same as discounting promissory notes, but even simpler because (a) the face value is equal to the maturity value, (b) the discount date is the same as the loan date, and (c) the number of discount days is the same as the period of the loan.

STEPS to Discount a Bank Loan

1. Compute the discount amount, using $D = FV \times R \times T$, where R is the discount rate.
2. Compute the proceeds by subtracting the discount amount from the face value.

EXAMPLE H

Silvia Jiminez, owner/operator of a small restaurant, goes to her bank to borrow money. Silvia signs a 60-day note with a \$50,000 face value at a 9% discount rate. Using a 360-day year, compute the discount amount and the proceeds of the loan.

$$FV = \$50{,}000;\ R = 9\%;\ T = \frac{60}{360}$$

STEP 1 $\quad$ $\text{Discount amount } (D) = FV \times R \times T = \$50{,}000 \times 0.09 \times \frac{60}{360} = \$750$

STEP 2 $\quad$ $\text{Proceeds} = \text{Face value} - \text{Discount amount} = \$50{,}000 - \$750 = \$49{,}250$

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Please observe: In example H, Silvia will keep \$49,250 for the entire 60 days and then repay a total of \$50,000 on the due date.

As mentioned earlier, some persons refer to this type of discounted loan as "non-interest-bearing" because the amount to be repaid is the "face value." However, the term *non-interest-bearing* is misleading because the loan is *not* "interest-free." There is a charge of \$750 to borrow \$49,250 for 60 days.

COMPARING A DISCOUNT RATE TO AN INTEREST RATE

Discount rates are less familiar to those consumers who have encountered only interest rates. There is the possibility of misunderstanding or confusion. In example G, Silvia Jiminez borrowed \$50,000 for 60 days and paid \$750. The ordinary simple interest rate was 9%. In example H, Silvia borrowed \$49,250 for 60 days and paid \$750. Although a discount rate (9%) was given, a simple interest rate was not given. To compute Silvia's actual simple interest rate in example H, use the formula from Chapter 13:

$$R = \frac{I}{P \times T}, \text{ letting } I = \$750,\ P = \$49{,}250, \text{ and } T = \frac{60}{360}$$

$$R = \frac{I}{P \times T} = \frac{\$750}{\$49{,}250 \times \frac{60}{360}} = \frac{\$750}{\$8{,}208.33} = 0.09137, \text{ or } 9.14\%$$

The interest rate in example H is actually 9.14%; the discount rate is 9%. They are different rates, but both lead to a \$750 fee to borrow \$49,250 for 60 days. A borrower must understand the difference between interest rates and discount rates and how each is used in loan calculations.

CONCEPT CHECK 15.5

A bank made a 90-day loan on a discount basis. The face value was \$64,000, and the discount rate was 11%. Compute the discount amount and the proceeds. Then compute the actual interest rate, using the proceeds as the principal of the loan instead of the face value. Use a 360-day year in all calculations.

$$\text{Discount amount} = FV \times R \times T = \$64{,}000 \times 0.11 \times \frac{90}{360} = \$1{,}760$$

$$\text{Proceeds} = \text{Face value} - \text{Discount amount} = \$64{,}000 - \$1{,}760 = \$62{,}240$$

$$\text{Actual interest rate} = \frac{I}{(P \times T)} = \frac{\$1{,}760}{\left(\$62{,}240 \times \frac{90}{360}\right)} = 0.1131, \text{ or } 11.31\%$$

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Borrowing Money to Take a Cash Discount

In Chapter 7, we described how manufacturers and wholesalers use cash discounts to encourage their customers to pay their invoices early. Recall that the terms "2/10, net 30" mean that the buyer will receive a 2% discount by paying the invoice within 10 days and that the entire invoice is due within 30 days. However, it would be normal that a buyer would not have the immediate cash to pay the invoice early. The buyer may need to sell the merchandise to get the cash to pay the invoice. Often, a buyer can save money by borrowing money to pay the invoice early and earn the cash discount.

Learning Objective **6**

Compute the savings from borrowing money to take a cash discount.

EXAMPLE I

Mega Media purchased $100,000 worth of CDs and DVDs. The invoice was dated October 4 with terms of 2/10, net 30. Compute the due date, the (cash) discount date, the cash discount, and the total remittance required to get the cash discount. (Review Chapter 7 if necessary. Notice that the terms "discount date" and "due date" had different meanings in Chapter 7 than they have had here in Chapter 15.)

Due date = October 4 + 30 days = November 3
Discount date = October 4 + 10 days = October 14
If paid by October 14:
  Cash discount = $100,000 × 0.02 = $2,000
  Total remittance = $100,000 − $2,000 = $98,000

Regardless of whether it takes the discount, Mega Media needs to pay $100,000 by November 3. The company may want to save the $2,000, but perhaps it doesn't have the $98,000 now. Or maybe it has the money but wants to spend it on something else. In either situation, Mega Media might be able to borrow the money from October 14 until November 3. Before borrowing, Mega Media should compare the savings from the cash discount with the interest on a loan.

EXAMPLE J

Mega Media can borrow $98,000 for 20 days (October 14 to November 3) by paying 10% exact simple interest (365-day year). Compute the interest on the loan and the savings for Mega Media if it borrows to take the cash discount.

$$\text{Interest} = P \times R \times T = \$98{,}000 \times 0.10 \times \frac{20}{365} = \$536.99$$

Savings = $2,000 cash discount − $536.99 interest = $1,463.01

The reason for borrowing only between the (cash) discount date and the due date is to delay making payments as long as possible, whether to get cash discounts or to avoid penalties. The (cash) discount date is the latest possible date to pay and get the cash discount; the due date is the latest possible date to pay and avoid a penalty.

Although borrowing and taking the cash discount is almost always cheaper, the actual dollar amount may determine what Mega Media decides. If the original purchase were only $1,000, the savings would be only $14.63. Such an amount may not be worth the effort of getting a loan. However, for borrowing small amounts regularly, businesses often have "revolving lines of credit." These allow them to borrow and repay frequently, without always making a new loan application.

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 15.6

A retailer purchases merchandise under the terms 1.5/20, net 45. The invoice is for $45,000 and is dated July 22. For the cash discount, calculate the due date, the (cash) discount date, the amount of the cash discount, and the total remittance required. The retailer borrows enough money to pay the entire remittance. The interest rate is 12% exact simple interest, and the loan is for the length of time between the last date to take advantage of the cash discount and the due date. Calculate the amount of the interest and the savings gained by borrowing the remittance to take the discount.

Discount: Due date: July 22 + 45 days = September 5
Discount date: July 22 + 20 days = August 11
Cash discount: $45,000 × 0.015 = $675
Remittance: $45,000 − $675 = $44,325
Loan: Interest days: August 11 to September 5 = 25 days

$$\text{Interest} = P \times R \times T = \$44{,}325 \times 0.12 \times \frac{25}{365} = \$364.32$$

Savings: $675 cash discount − $364.32 interest = $310.68

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 15.3.

Chapter Terms for Review

- bank discount loan
- bearer
- discounted note
- discount amount
- discount date
- discount period
- discount rate
- due date
- face value
- interest-bearing note
- interest dollars
- maker
- maturity date
- maturity value
- negotiable promissory note
- non-interest-bearing promissory note
- proceeds
- promissory note

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
15.1 Compute the number of interest days of a promissory note.	1. Find the number of days between December 10 and February 27.
15.2 Determine the due date of a promissory note.	2. Find the due date of a 90-day note written on May 20.
15.3 Compute the maturity value of a promissory note.	3. Find the maturity value of a 90-day promissory note with a face value of $6,500 and an exact interest rate of 8% (use a 360-day year).
15.4 Discount a promissory note.	4a. A 30-day note, bearing an interest rate of 9%, is dated November 6 and has a face value of $8,000. On November 15, the note is discounted at 12%. Use a 365-day year to find the interest amount, the discount amount, and the proceeds. 4b. A 60-day, non-interest-bearing note has a face value of $2,500 and is dated May 13. On June 3, the note is discounted at 11%. Use a 365-day year to find the discount amount and the proceeds.
15.5 Compute the proceeds and actual interest rate on a bank discount loan.	5. A 60-day bank loan with a face value of $3,900 is made on a discount basis at a discount rate of 12%. Use the 360-day year to compute the discount amount and the proceeds. Then find the actual interest rate, based on the proceeds rather than on the face value.
15.6 Compute the savings from borrowing money to take a cash discount.	6. A $20,000 invoice dated March 15 has terms of 2/5, net 25. Find the due date, (cash) discount date, cash discount, and required remittance. Next, calculate the interest amount of borrowing the remittance at 9% exact interest for the time between the last date to take advantage of the cash discount and the due date. Finally, calculate the savings.

Answers: **1.** 79 days **2.** August 18 **3.** $6,628.22 **4a.** Interest, $59.18; discount, $55.64; proceeds, $8,003.54; **4b.** Discount, $29.38; proceeds, $2,470.62 **5.** Discount, $78; proceeds, $3,822; interest rate, 12.24% **6.** Due date, April 9; discount date, March 20; cash discount, $400; remittance, $19,600; interest, $96.66; savings, $303.34

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 15

1. A 75-day promissory note for $3,400 is dated December 30, 2015. Find (a) the due date and (b) the maturity value, if the rate is 9% ordinary simple interest.

2. A promissory note for $5,600 is dated April 11, 2016, and has a due date of September 12, 2016. Find (a) the number of interest days and (b) the maturity value, if the rate is 5.5% ordinary simple interest.

3. A 135-day promissory note for $15,000 is dated August 23, 2016. Find (a) the due date and (b) the maturity value, if the rate is 4.6% exact simple interest.

4. A promissory note for $2,980 is dated November 21, 2017, and has a due date of March 21, 2018. Find (a) the number of interest days and (b) the maturity value, if the rate is 6.5% exact simple interest.

5. Vernon Lee holds a 120-day, interest-bearing note for $2,960 that is dated May 15 and has a rate of 8% exact simple interest. On July 15, Vernon sells it at a discount rate of 15%. Using a 365-day year, calculate (a) the interest amount, (b) the maturity value, (c) the maturity date, (d) the days of discount, (e) the discount amount, and (f) the proceeds.

6. Contractor Allen Kimmel is holding a 90-day, non-interest-bearing note for $3,100 dated November 10. On December 10, Mr. Kimmel sells the note to Thrifty Lending Corp. at a discount rate of 12%. Using a 365-day year, calculate (a) the maturity value, (b) the maturity date, (c) the days of discount, (d) the discount amount, and (e) the proceeds.

7. Eastside Bank & Trust Co. made a 120-day loan for $4,500 on a discount basis, using a discount rate of 9%. Using a 360-day year, calculate (a) the discount amount, (b) the proceeds, and (c) the actual interest rate (to two decimal places).

8. VanderBeek Landscape Construction just received an invoice for $1,600 that has cash discount terms of 2/10, net 30. VanderBeek borrows enough money from Eastside Bank & Trust Co. at 10% exact simple interest (365-day year) to take advantage of the cash discount. It borrows the money only for the time period between the due date and the last day to take advantage of the discount. Calculate (a) the amount of the cash discount, (b) the number of interest days, (c) the amount of interest on the loan, and (d) the amount of its savings.

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Assignment 15.1: Dates, Times, and Maturity Value

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **3**

A **(36 points) Problems 1–6: Find the number of interest days. Problems 7–12: Find the due date. Be sure to check for leap years. (3 points for each correct answer)**

	Date of Note	Due Date	Days of Interest
1.	April 6, 2015	October 12, 2015	________
2.	June 29, 2017	October 6, 2017	________
3.	February 8, 2016	May 12, 2016	________
4.	June 15, 2018	October 15, 2018	________
5.	November 8, 2017	April 9, 2018	________
6.	December 16, 2015	March 16, 2016	________

	Date of Note	Days of Interest	Due Date
7.	October 7, 2016	90 days	____________
8.	September 18, 2015	180 days	____________
9.	September 20, 2017	75 days	____________
10.	May 29, 2015	60 days	____________
11.	December 8, 2016	120 days	____________
12.	November 30, 2016	3 months	____________

____

Score for A (36)

B (64 points) For each of the following promissory notes, find the missing entry for days of interest or maturity date (due date). Then compute the amount of interest due at maturity and the maturity value. For problems 13–16, use a 360-day year; for problems 17–20, use a 365-day year. (Points indicated at the top of each column)

	Face Value	Date of Note	Days of Interest (3 pts)	Maturity Date (3 pts)	Rate	Interest Amount (3 pts)	Maturity Value (2 pts)
13.	$26,000	Oct. 11, 2016	90	____________	6.2%	____________	____________
14.	$16,500	Mar. 28, 2017	______	July 7, 2017	8.5%	____________	____________
15.	$35,750	July 14, 2016	105	____________	5.6%	____________	____________
16.	$960	Jan. 23, 2017	______	Mar. 31, 2017	7.2%	____________	____________
17.	$41,800	Nov. 16, 2016	______	Mar. 21, 2017	5.1%	____________	____________
18.	$18,400	May 5, 2017	______	Sept. 5, 2017	6.75%	____________	____________
19.	$52,000	Mar. 16, 2016	180	______________	8.25%	____________	____________
20.	$31,800	Aug. 6, 2018	105	____________	7.5%	____________	____________

____

Score for B (64)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 15.2: Discounting Promissory Notes

Name ______________________

Date ______________ Score ______________

Learning Objective **4**

A **(50 points) Compute the missing information to discount the following interest-bearing and non-interest-bearing promissory notes. Use a 360-day year for all interest and discount calculations. (Points for each correct answer are shown in parentheses)**

1. Bonnie Bomar had been holding a 75-day note for $2,500. The note had a 6% interest rate and had been written on March 1. To pay income taxes, Bonnie sold the note on April 13 to a loan company. The loan company discounted the note at 11%.

Interest amount (3 pts) __________

Maturity value (2 pts) __________

Maturity date (2 pts) __________

Days of discount (2 pts) __________

Discount amount (3 pts) __________

Proceeds (2 pts) __________

2. On July 10, Joe Morrison Financial Services bought a $15,000 promissory note. The note had been written on May 8, was for 120 days, and had an interest rate of 8%. Joe's company discounted the note at 10%.

Interest amount (3 pts) __________

Maturity value (2 pts) __________

Maturity date (2 pts) __________

Days of discount (2 pts) __________

Discount amount (3 pts) __________

Proceeds (2 pts) __________

3. Bob Miles was holding a 105-day, non-interest-bearing note for $4,500. The note was dated October 9. To raise Christmas cash, Bob sold the note to a local finance company on December 14. The company discounted the note at 10%.

Interest amount (1 pt) __________

Maturity value (1 pt) __________

Maturity date (2 pts) __________

Days of discount (2 pts) __________

Discount amount (3 pts) __________

Proceeds (2 pts) __________

4. Jane Phipps owned a finance company. On July 17, she purchased a 180-day, non-interest-bearing promissory note. The note had been written on May 26 for $9,200. Because of the high financial risk involved, Jane discounted the note at 12%.

Interest amount (1 pt) __________

Maturity value (1 pt) __________

Maturity date (2 pts) __________

Days of discount (2 pts) __________

Discount amount (3 pts) __________

Proceeds (2 pts) __________

____

Score for A (50)

B **(50 points) Compute the missing information to discount the following interest-bearing and non-interest-bearing promissory notes. Use a 365-day year for all interest and discount calculations. (Points for each correct answer are shown in parentheses)**

5. As payment for services, Pat Chard held a 90-day, 8% note for $3,600 that was dated April 20. On June 5, Pat took the note to a financial services company, which bought the note at a 13% discount rate.

Interest amount (3 pts) __________
Maturity value (2 pts) __________
Maturity date (2 pts) __________
Days of discount (2 pts) __________
Discount amount (3 pts) __________
Proceeds (2 pts) __________

6. Jorgenson Builders accepted a 150-day, 9% negotiable note dated June 17. The face value of the note was $10,700. On August 8, Jorgenson sold the note to Molitor Financial Group, which discounted the note at 11%.

Interest amount (3 pts) __________
Maturity value (2 pts) __________
Maturity date (2 pts) __________
Days of discount (2 pts) __________
Discount amount (3 pts) __________
Proceeds (2 pts) __________

7. Teri Chung loaned $4,000 to a client who gave Teri a non-interest-bearing note dated August 1. The note was for 75 days. On August 31, Teri sold the note to her finance company, which discounted it at 10%.

Interest amount (1 pt) __________
Maturity value (1 pt) __________
Maturity date (2 pts) __________
Days of discount (2 pts) __________
Discount amount (3 pts) __________
Proceeds (2 pts) __________

8. Patti Riddle was holding a 60-day, non-interest-bearing note for $2,500. The note was dated June 29. On July 25, Patti sold the note to a lender who discounted the note at 14%.

Interest amount (1 pt) __________
Maturity value (1 pt) __________
Maturity date (2 pts) __________
Days of discount (2 pts) __________
Discount amount (3 pts) __________
Proceeds (2 pts) __________

____
Score for B (50)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 15.3: Bank Discounting and Cash Discounts

Name ______________________

Date ____________ Score ____________

Learning Objectives 5 6

A **(36 points) The Bank of the Southwest made six new loans on a discount basis. Compute the discount amount and the proceeds. Then compute the actual interest rate based on the proceeds rather than the face value. Use a 360-day year for problems 1–3 and use a 365-day year for problems 4–6. Round the actual interest rates to the nearest 1/100 of a percent. (2 points for each correct answer)**

	Face Value	Discount Rate	Time	Discount Amount	Proceeds	Actual Interest Rate
1.	$7,500	10%	120 days	________	________	________
2.	$6,650	5.5%	75 days	________	________	________
3.	$16,500	12%	150 days	________	________	________
4.	$37,600	5.6%	60 days	________	________	________
5.	$980	7.5%	135 days	________	________	________
6.	$10,120	9.1%	90 days	________	________	________

____

Score for A (36)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

B **(64 points) Atlantic Construction made several purchases from vendors who offered various terms of payment. How much can Atlantic save on each invoice if it borrows the money to pay the invoice early and receive the cash discount? The loan interest rates are all exact simple interest (365-day year). Assume that the number of interest days is the time between the due date and the last day to take advantage of the cash discount. (2 points for each correct answer)**

	Invoice	Terms	Cash Discount	Interest Rate on Loan	Days of Interest	Interest Amount	Savings
7.	$5,000	2/10, n/30	________	10%	________	________	________
8.	$18,750	3/12, n/25	________	9%	________	________	________
9.	$32,575	1.25/7, n/40	________	8.75%	________	________	________
10.	$34,620	2/10, n/30	________	9.25%	________	________	________
11.	$9,200	1/30, n/60	________	9.6%	________	________	________
12.	$14,800	1.5/15, n/30	________	9%	________	________	________
13.	$26,000	2.5/5, n/25	________	8.5%	________	________	________
14.	$42,800	3/20, n/45	________	10%	________	________	________

____

Score for B (64)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

16

Compound Interest

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1 Compute future values.

Learning Objective 2 Compute present values.

Learning Objective 3 Compute using present value factors.

Most Americans will buy at least one item that is financed over one or more years. The product will probably be expensive, such as a car or a home. Likely, the interest on the loan will not be the simple interest you studied in Chapter 13; it will be *compound* interest. Interest on car loans and home loans is normally compounded monthly. Many banks offer savings accounts and certificates of deposit (CDs) for which interest is compounded daily. A credit union may pay interest that is compounded quarterly (four times a year). To evaluate the value of corporate or municipal bonds, an investor uses calculations on interest that is often compounded semiannually (twice a year).

To understand even the most fundamental financial decisions in today's world, you need to understand the basic concepts of compound interest, future values, and present values.

Compute Future Values

Learning Objective 1

Compute future values from tables and formulas.

Simple interest is computed with the formula $I = P \times R \times T$, which you studied in Chapter 13. For example, the simple interest on \$2,000 invested at 6% for 2 years is $I = P \times R \times T = \$2{,}000 \times 0.06 \times 2 = \$240$. The amount, or future value, of the investment is $A = P + I = \$2{,}000 + \$240 = \$2{,}240$.

Compound interest means that the computations of the simple interest formula are performed repeatedly during the term of the investment. The money from the previous interest computation is added to the principal before the next interest computation is performed. If an investment is *compounded annually for 2 years,* the simple interest is computed once at the end of each year. The simple interest earned in year 1 is added to the principal at the beginning of year 2. The total value of an investment is the principal plus all of the compound interest. The total is called the **future value** or the **compound amount.** In finance, the original principal is often called the present value.

EXAMPLE A

Kathie Maguire invests \$2,000 for 2 years in an investment that pays 6% compounded annually. Compute the total compound interest and future value (compound amount).

\$2,000.00	Original principal
× 0.06	Interest rate
\$120.0000	First-year interest
+2,000.00	First-year principal
\$2,120.00	Second-year principal
× 0.06	Interest rate
\$127.2000	Second-year interest
+2,120.00	Second-year principal
\$2,247.20	Final compound amount (future value)
−2,000.00	Original principal
\$247.20	Total compound interest

On the \$2,000 investment in example A, the total amount of compound interest paid is \$247.20, compared to \$240 simple interest over the same 2 years. Notice that the total compound interest amount, \$247.20, is equal to the sum of the first-year interest and the second-year interest: \$120 + \$127.20. Because you need to be familiar with all the terminology, we will use *compound amount* and *future value* interchangeably and also *principal* and *present value* interchangeably in this chapter. As the chapter progresses, however, we will use the terms *future* value and *present value* more often.

FUTURE VALUE FORMULA

There were several similar computations in example A. There would be twice as many computations if the investment had been for 4 years instead of 2. To eliminate all the tedious computations, compound interest is computed using a single number called the **future value factor,** or FVF. The FVF is used with a shortcut formula called the *Future Value Formula* (also known as *the compound amount* formula) for compound interest calculations:

©karen roach/Shutterstock.Com

Future Value (compound amount) = Present Value (principal) × Future Value Factor, or $FV = PV \times FVF$

The total amount of the compound interest earned is equal to the difference between the future value and the present value. As a formula, we can write

Compound Interest = Future Value − Present Value = $FV - PV$

To use the formulas, you first need to find the future value factor (FVF) using a calculator or a future value table. Table 16-1 at the end of this chapter is a partial table of future value factors (FVFs). In modern practice, FVFs are usually computed with a calculator or computer rather than a table. However, using a calculator requires that you (a) understand "exponents," (b) have an appropriate calculator, and (c) know how to compute easily with exponents. Chapter 16 is designed so that you can succeed whether or not you already have the prerequisite knowledge and/or an appropriate calculator available. If you are not using exponents, you easily can use Table 16-1 to find FVFs. If you are using exponents, you can compute the FVFs directly with your calculator. First, we will illustrate the solution using tables; then, using calculators. Examine both methods so that subsequent examples will be meaningful.

In example A, the principal was $2,000, the interest rate was 6%, and the time was 2 years. We need the future value factor (FVF). You can find the FVF in Table 16-1. Table 16-1 is organized by rows and columns. The columns represent the interest rate being compounded, *i*. The rows represent the number of times the interest rate is compounded, *n*. The FVF is where the correct row and column intersect. In example A, a 6% interest rate was compounded twice. The FVF is in the 6% column and row 2 and is 1.12360. From the formula, the future value is $FV = PV \times FVF = \$2{,}000 \times 1.12360 =$ $2,247.20 which agrees with example A. The compound interest is $FV - PV =$ $2,247.20 − $2,000 = $247.20 which also agrees with example A.

STEPS to Calculate the Future Value and Compound Interest Using a Future Value Table

1. Find *i*, the interest rate, and *n*, the number of times to compound the interest. Locate the future value factor (FVF) in the proper row and column of Table 16-1.
2. Multiply the present value (principal) by the FVF. The product is the future value, or $FV = PV \times FVF$.
3. Subtract the present value (principal) from the future value. The difference is the total amount of compound interest, or compound interest = $FV - PV$.

EXAMPLE B

Ray Wilson loans \$5,000 to his cousin for 6 years at 4% compounded annually. Compute the future value and the total compound interest. Use Table 16-1.

STEP 1 The interest rate is $i = 4\%$. Interest is compounded 6 times, once each year for $n = 6$ years. The FVF in the 4% column and row 6 is 1.26532.

STEP 2 Future Value $= PV \times FVF = \$5{,}000 \times 1.26532 = \$6{,}326.60$.

STEP 3 Compound Interest $= FV - PV = \$6{,}326.60 - \$5{,}000 = \$1{,}326.60$.

FINDING THE FUTURE VALUE FACTOR USING A CALCULATOR (OPTIONAL)

Note: This optional section is for those students who understand how to compute using exponents on a calculator. You have the choice of using your calculator or Table 16-1. You can even use Table 16-1 first and then check your work using your calculator. First, review this very brief summary of rules and terminology about exponents.

The expression 2^4 means $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 16$. The 2 is called the **base;** the 4 is called the **exponent.** We can say that "2 is raised to the 4th **power.**" Many calculators have a key labeled $\boxed{y^x}$ that is used for exponents. To compute 2^4, you might enter the following keystrokes: 2 $\boxed{y^x}$ 4 $\boxed{=}$. The answer on the calculator display will be 16. Likewise, $(1 + 0.06)^2$ means $1.06^2 = 1.06 \times 1.06 = 1.1236$ and we say that "1.06 is raised to the 2nd power." (We can also say that 1.06^2 means "1.06 *squared.*")

To find the future value factor, the formula is $\boldsymbol{FVF = (1 + i)^n}$, where i is the interest rate being compounded and n the number of times the interest is compounded. *Important: In the formula, the interest rate must be written as a decimal, not as a percent.*

In example A, the interest rate was 6% and it was compounded twice. Therefore, $i = 6\% = 0.06$ and $n = 2$. The future value factor is $FVF = (1 + i)^n = (1 + 0.06)^2 = 1.06^2 = 1.1236$ which is identical to the same value from Table 16-1. Depending upon your calculator, you might be using the calculator keystrokes 1.06 $\boxed{y^x}$ 2 $\boxed{=}$. The exact calculator keystrokes will depend upon your own calculator. Refer to your calculator's manual. Most calculators also have keys for "parentheses," but it is often faster to mentally add the "$(1 + i)$."

STEPS to Calculate the Future Value and Compound Interest Using a Calculator

1. Find i, the interest rate, and n, the number of times to compound the interest. Compute the FVF using the formula is $FVF = (1 + i)^n$.
2. Multiply the present value (principal) by the FVF. The product is the future value, or $FV = PV \times FVF$.
3. Subtract the present value (principal) from the future value. The difference is the total amount of compound interest, or compound interest $= FV - PV$.

Example C below is the same as example B, except that you are asked to solve the problem using a calculator with an exponent function.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE C (OPTIONAL)

Ray Wilson loans $5,000 to his cousin for 6 years at 4% compounded annually. Compute the future value and the total compound interest. Use a calculator with exponents.

STEP 1 The interest rate is 4%, so $i = 4\%$ or 0.04. Interest is compounded six times, once each year for 6 years, so $n = 6$. The $\text{FVF} = (1 + i)^n = (1 + 0.04)^6 = (1.04)^6 = 1.26531902$.

STEP 2 Future Value $= PV \times FVF = \$5{,}000 \times 1.26531902 = \$6{,}326.595092$, or $6,326.60.

STEP 3 Compound Interest $= FV - PV = \$6{,}326.60 - \$5{,}000 = \$1{,}326.60$.

Note: In examples B and C, the answers came out identical. However, very often there will be slight difference. The FVFs in Table 16-1 have only five decimal places. However, many calculators have 9 or more decimal places. In example C, we wrote the FVF with eight decimal places. Throughout this chapter, when the FVF has eight decimal places, it came from a calculator. When the FVF has five decimal places, it came from Table 16-1.

In the remainder of Chapter 16, the calculator solutions will be shown in the margins, written in blue ink, next to the solutions that use Table 16-1. You can compare the solutions and decide which you prefer. It is faster for many persons to use a calculator than to look through tables. A calculator is easier to carry than a book of tables. Also, the tables are limited to only certain interest rates and time periods. With a calculator you can use any interest rate and any time period.

VARIOUS COMPOUNDING PERIODS

In examples A, B, and C, the compounding was annual (i.e., done once each year). Compounding is also done semiannually, quarterly, monthly, and daily. The word **period** is the unit of time of the compounding. The letter m represents *the number of compounding periods in one year.* Thus, $m = 1$ for annual compounding; $m = 2$ for semiannual; $m = 4$ for quarterly; $m = 12$ for monthly; and $m = 365$ for daily. Most often, the interest rate of an investment or loan will be *stated* as an annual rate (r) and the total time (t) will be stated in years. However, very often the actual *compounding* will not be done annually.

Examples B and C illustrated that you need i and n to calculate the future value factor (FVF) and the future value, whether you use a calculator or Table 16-1. Steps i, ii, and iii describe how to determine the values of i and n for all the various compounding periods. During the remainder of Chapter 16, i will represent the **periodic interest rate** and n will represent the total **number of compounding periods.**

STEPS to Determine the Periodic Interest Rate and the Number of Compounding Periods

i. Determine ***m,*** the compounding periods in one year: $m = 1, 2, 4, 12, 365$.

ii. Determine ***i,*** the periodic interest rate: $i = r \div m$.
(Divide the stated annual rate, *r,* by *m.*)

iii. Determine ***n,*** the total number of compounding periods: $n = m \times t$.
(Multiply the periods per year, *m,* by the number of years, *t.*)

EXAMPLE D

For a 3-year, 6% loan: Find i, the periodic interest rate, and n, the total number of compounding periods, when the loan is compounded (a) semiannually; (b) quarterly; and (c) monthly. Each loan is for a total of $t = 3$ years at a stated annual rate of $r = 6\%$, but each loan is compounded differently.

STEP i	STEP ii	STEP iii
Periods per Year	**Periodic Interest Rate**	**Number of Compounding Periods**
a. $m = 2$	$i = 6\% \div 2 = 3\%$	$n = 2 \times 3$ years $= 6$ half-years
b. $m = 4$	$i = 6\% \div 4 = 1.5\%$	$n = 4 \times 3$ years $= 12$ quarters
c. $m = 12$	$i = 6\% \div 12 = 0.5\%$	$n = 12 \times 3$ years $= 36$ months

Carefully study examples E and F below and verify all the calculations. Use Steps i, ii, and iii to find the periodic interest rate and the number of compounding periods. Then use Steps 1, 2, and 3 to find the future value factor (FVF), the future value, and the total amount of compound interest. Computations are shown for both methods: (a) using a calculator with exponents; and (b) using Table 16-1.

EXAMPLE E

Ray Wilson loans \$5,000 to his cousin for 6 years at 4% compounded semiannually. Compute the future value and the total compound interest. The stated interest rate of 4% is an annual rate. Determine the periodic rate, i, and the total number of compounding periods, n. Then compute the future value and the total compound interest. Use a calculator with exponents or Table 16-1.

STEP i There are $m = 2$ compounding periods in 1 year.

STEP ii Periodic interest rate is $i = r \div m = 4\% \div 2 = 2\%$.

STEP iii Number of periods is $n = t \times m = 6 \times 2 = 12$ periods.

With $i = 2\%$ and $n = 12$, use a calculator with exponents or Table 16-1.

STEP 1 Using Table 16-1, in the 2% column and row 12, the FVF is 1.26824.

STEP 2 Future Value $= PV \times FVF = \$5{,}000 \times 1.26824 = \$6{,}341.20$.

STEP 3 Compound interest $= FV - PV = \$6{,}341.20 - \$5{,}000 = \$1{,}341.20$.

$$m = 2$$

$$i = \frac{0.04}{2} = 0.02$$

$$n = 6 \times 2 = 12$$

$$\begin{aligned} FVF &= (1 + i)^n = (1.02)^{12} \\ &= 1.26824179 \\ FV &= PV \times FVF \\ &= \$5{,}000 \times 1.26824179 \\ &= \$6{,}341.20897 \\ &\text{or } \$6{,}341.21 \end{aligned}$$

Example E is identical to examples B and C, except the compounding is semiannual instead of annual. Using Table 16-1 with five decimal places, the solution is \$1,341.20. With a calculator, using eight decimal places, the answer rounds off to \$1,341.21. This discrepancy is normal.

EXAMPLE F

Sharon Sumpter and her husband deposit \$20,000 into her credit union, which pays interest at 5% compounded quarterly. Find the future value and the total compound interest after 2.5 years. Use a calculator with exponents or Table 16-1.

STEP i There are $m = 4$ compounding periods in 1 year.

STEP ii Periodic interest rate is $i = r \div m = 5\% \div 4 = 1.25\%$.

$$m = 4$$

$$i = \frac{0.05}{4} = 0.0125$$

$$n = 2.5 \times 4 = 10$$

$$\begin{aligned} FVF &= (1 + \mathrm{i})^n = (1.0125)^{10} \\ &= 1.13227083 \\ FV &= PV \times FVF \\ &= \$20{,}000 \times 1.13227083 \\ &= \$22{,}645.41660 \\ &\text{or } \$22{,}645.42 \end{aligned}$$

STEP iii Number of periods is $n = t \times m = 2.5 \times 4 = 10$ periods.
With $i = 1.25\%$ and $n = 10$, use a calculator with exponents or Table 16-1.

STEP 1 Using Table 16-1, in the 1.25% column and row 10, the FVF is 1.13227.

STEP 2 Future Value $= PV \times FVF = \$20{,}000 \times 1.13227 = \$22{,}645.40$.

STEP 3 Compound interest $= FV - PV = \$22{,}645.40 - \$20{,}000 = \$2{,}645.40$.

©cybrain/Shutterstock.Com

DAILY COMPOUNDING (OPTIONAL)

Today, essentially all banks offer daily compounding on several different savings accounts and certificates of deposit. Tables to do daily compounding would be cumbersome and impractical. However, using a calculator with an exponent key, the computation is just as simple as other compounding computations. Assume that there are 365 days in a year.

EXAMPLE G (OPTIONAL)

Use a calculator with exponents to find the future value of \$20,000 invested for 2 years at 8% compounded daily. First, find the periodic interest rate (i) as a decimal with eight decimal places and find the number of days (n) in two years. Then, find the future value factor (FVF) to eight decimal places.

STEP i Compounding periods in one year: $m = 365$

STEP ii Periodic interest rate: $i = r \div m = 0.08 \div 365 = 0.00021918$

STEP iii Number of compounding periods: $n = m \times t = 365 \times 2 = 730$

STEP 1 $FVF = (1 + i)^n = (1 + 0.00021918)^{730} = 1.17349194$

STEP 2 Future value $= \$20{,}000 \times 1.17349194 = \$23{,}469.84$

CONCEPT CHECK 16.1

a. If \$2,600 is invested for 5 years at 6% compounded semiannually, compute the future value of the investment. (Use Table 16-1 or a calculator.)

Semiannually means $m = 2$ periods per year.
Periodic rate $= 6\% \div 2 = 3\%$ per half-year
Number of periods $= 2 \times 5$ years $= 10$ periods
The FVF from row 10 of the 3.00% column in Table 16-1 is 1.34392.

$FV = PV \times FVF = \$2{,}600 \times 1.34392 = \$3{,}494.192$, or \$3,494.19

$m = 2$
$i = \frac{0.06}{2} = 0.03$
$n = 2 \times 5 = 10$
$FVF = (1 + 0.03)^{10}$
$= 1.34391638$
$FV = \$2{,}600 \times 1.34391638$
$= \$3{,}494.18$

b. If \$3,200 is invested for 1 year at 9% compounded monthly, what is the compound interest on the investment?

Monthly means $m = 12$ periods per year.
Periodic rate $= 9\% \div 12 = 0.75\%$ per month
Number of periods $= 12 \times 1$ year $= 12$ periods
The FVF from row 12 of the 0.75% column in Table 16-1 is 1.09381.

$FV = PV \times FVF = \$3{,}200 \times 1.09381 = \$3{,}500.192$, or \$3,500.19
Compound interest $=$ Future value $-$ Present value (Principal)
$= \$3{,}500.19 - \$3{,}200 = \$300.19$

$m = 12$
$i = \frac{0.09}{12} = 0.0075$
$n = 12 \times 1 = 12$
$FVF = (1 + 0.0075)^{12}$
$= 1.09380690$
$FV = \$3{,}200 \times 1.09380690$
$= \$3{,}500.18$

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 16.1.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Compute Present Values

Learning Objective 2

Compute present values.

In the previous section, the basic investment problem was to compute the value that a given sum of money, invested today, would be worth at some time in the future. Example F was a future value problem. In it, we found that a $20,000 principal (present value) invested today at 5% compounded quarterly would have a future value of $22,645.40 in 2.5 years.

Some savers and investors want to compute future values; others want to compute present values. Consider the following which is a present value problem.

EXAMPLE H

Polly Layer has a 13-year-old grandson, Odin, when she inherits $175,000 from her father's estate. A financial planner tells Polly that she should plan to have $60,000 cash available for her Odin's college education when he turns 18. She wants to put enough money into an investment account for Odin so that in 5 years his account will be worth $60,000. Polly found a very safe investment that guaranteed to pay him 4% compounded quarterly. To achieve her objective, how much money should she invest today?

In example H, Polly knows the required future value of her investment for Odin —$60,000. What Polly wants to calculate is the **present value**—the amount that she needs to invest today.

Like individuals, a business makes investments or savings now, in the present, to provide for future expenses and/or to earn future revenues (the future values). The business will estimate those future amounts and decide how much they must budget today (the present values).

As given earlier, the formula to find future value is

$$FV = PV \times (1 + i)^n$$

$$\text{Future Value} = \text{Present Value} \times \text{Future Value Factor, or } FV = PV \times FVF$$

Rewriting the formula, we get a formula to find present value:

$$PV = \frac{FV}{(1 + i)^n}$$

$$\text{Present Value} = \text{Future Value} \div \text{Future Value Factor, or } PV = FV \div FVF = \frac{FV}{FVF}$$

EXAMPLE I

$m = 2$

$i = \dfrac{0.08}{2} = 0.04$

$n = 2 \times 3 = 6$

$FVF = (1 + 0.04)^6$

$= 1.26531902$

$PV = \dfrac{\$6{,}000}{1.26531902}$

$= \$4{,}741.89$

How much money must be invested today to end up with $6,000 in 3 years? The interest rate is 8% compounded semiannually. Use a calculator or Table 16-1.

The $6,000 is the future value for which we want to find the present value. Interest is computed six times—twice each year for 3 years. The future value factor in Table 16-1 in the 4.00% column and row 6 is 1.26532. Substitute these values into the formula for present value.

$$\text{Present value} = FV \div FVF = \$6{,}000 \div 1.26532 = \$4{,}741.88$$

If $4,741.88 is invested today at 8% compounded semiannually, it will be worth $6,000 after 3 years.

EXAMPLE J

Monza Motors estimates that in 2 years it will cost \$20,000 replace some diagnostic equipment. Monza Motors wants to know how much to invest today if they can earn a return of 6% compounded monthly. Also, how much money would Monza Motors actually earn on this investment? Use either a calculator with exponents or Table 16-1 to find FVF.

The given future value is \$20,000; Monza Motors wants to know the present value.

STEP i There are $m = 12$ compounding periods in one year.

STEP ii The periodic interest rate is $i = 6\% \div 12 = 0.5\%$.

STEP iii The number of compounding periods is $n = 12 \times 2$ years $= 24$.

Using Table 16-1, in row 24 of the 0.5% column, FVF = 1.12716.

Substitute the values in the formula for present value:

$$\text{Present Value} = FV \div FVF = \$20{,}000 \div 1.12716 = \$17{,}743.71$$

If Monza Motors invests \$17,743.71 today at 6% compounded monthly, it will have \$20,000 at the end of 2 years.

The \$20,000 is the sum of the amount invested plus the total compound interest earned. To find the interest, subtract the amount invested from \$20,000.

$$\text{Interest} = \text{Future value} - \text{Present value} = \$20{,}000 - \$17{,}743.71 = \$2{,}256.29$$

$$m = 12$$
$$i = \frac{0.06}{12} = 0.005$$
$$n = 12 \times 2 = 24$$
$$FVF = (1 + 0.005)^{24} = 1.12715978$$
$$PV = \frac{FV}{FVF} = \frac{\$20{,}000}{1.12715978} = \$17{,}743.71$$

CONCEPT CHECK 16.2

What present value (principal) invested for 4 years at 6% compounded quarterly will result in a total future value of \$8,000? (Use Table 16-1 or a calculator.)

Quarterly means 4 periods per year.

Periodic rate = 6% ÷ 4 = 1.5% per quarter

Number of periods = 4 years × 4 = 16 periods

The future value factor from row 16 of the 1.50% column in Table 16-1 is 1.26899.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Present value} &= \text{Future value} \div \text{Future value factor}\\ &= \$8{,}000 \div 1.26899 = \$6{,}304.226, \text{ or } \$6{,}304.23\end{aligned}$$

$$m = 2$$
$$i = \frac{0.06}{4} = 0.015$$
$$n = 4 \times 4 = 16$$
$$FVF = \left(1 + 0.015\right)^{16} = 1.26898555$$
$$PV = \frac{\$8{,}000}{1.26898555} = \$6{,}304.25$$

Compute Using Present Value Factors

Learning Objective 3

Compute using present value factors.

You can solve every present value problem in Chapter 16 with future value factors and the formula $PV = FV \div FVF$, or $PV = \frac{FV}{FVF}$. In a present value problem, the future value, FV, will be given information. Then, use Steps i, ii, and iii to determine i and n; use either a calculator or Table 16-1 to find the FVF; finally, substitute FV and FVF into the formula $PV = FV \div FVF$ and solve for the present value.

ALTERNATE PRESENT VALUE FORMULA

Students who plan to study other courses in accounting or finance will also want to learn to use **present value factors (PVF)** and an alternate form of the present value formula. Using the PVF, the alternate present value formula is written

Present Value = Future Value × Present Value Factor, or $PV = FV \times PVF$

Using this alternate form of the present value formula is essentially an identical process. The future value, FV, is given. Next, find i, the periodic interest rate, and n, the total number of compounding periods. Then, however, use a calculator, or use Table 16-2, to find the PVF. Table 16-2 is organized exactly the same as Table 16-1. The column is the periodic interest rate, and the row is the total number of compounding periods. Multiply the future value by the PVF to get the present value.

EXAMPLE K

In example J, Monza Motors needed a future value $20,000 on a 2-year investment earning 6% compounded monthly. Compute the present value using the alternate formula $PV = FV \times PVF$. Use Table 16-2 to find PVF.

STEP i There are 12 compounding periods in 1 year: $m = 12$

STEP ii Periodic interest rate $= i = r \div m = 6\% \div 12 = 0.5\%$

STEP iii Number of compounding periods $= n = m \times t = 12 \times 2 = 24$

Using Table 16-2, in row 24 of the 0.5% column, PVF = 0.88719.

Substitute the values in the alternate formula for present value:

Present Value $= FV \times PVF = \$20{,}000 \times 0.88719 = \$17{,}743.80$ to the nearest cent

$$m = 12$$

$$i = \frac{0.06}{12} = 0.005$$

$$n = 12 \times 2 = 24$$

$$PVF = \frac{1}{(1 + 0.005)^{24}} = 0.88718567$$

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= FV \times PVF \\ &= \$20{,}000 \times 0.88718567 \\ &= \$17{,}743.71 \end{aligned}$$

The present value in example J was $17,743.71. The discrepancy between the results of examples J and K is because Table 16-1 and 16-2 have only five decimal places. The more decimal places you use, the smaller the discrepancy will be.

USING A CALCULATOR TO FIND THE PVF (OPTIONAL)

Recall that using exponents on a calculator, a future value factor is $FVF = (1 + i)^n$. The formula for a present value factor is $PVF = \frac{1}{FVF} = \frac{1}{(1 + i)^n}$.

With $i = 0.5\% = 0.005$ and $n = 24$,

$$PVF = \frac{1}{FVF} = \frac{1}{(1 + \mathrm{i})^n} = \frac{1}{(1 + 0.005)^{24}} = \frac{1}{1.12715978} = 0.88718567, \text{ rounded}$$

to eight places

To solve example K using the alternate present value formula and PVF = 0.88718567, the present value is $PV = FV \times PVF = \$20{,}000 \times 0.88718567 = \$17{,}743.71$.

Notice that now the solutions to examples J and K are identical to the nearest cent.

EXAMPLE L

Solve the present value problem from example H using a PVF and the alternate present value formula: $PV = FV \times PVF$. Polly Layer wants to have \$60,000 available five years from now for her grandson's college education. She can earn 4% compounded quarterly on her investment. How much should Polly invest today? Use either a calculator with exponents or Table 16-2 to find PVF.

STEP i Four compounding periods in 1 year: $m = 4$

STEP ii Periodic interest rate: $i = r \div m = 4\% \div 4 = 1\%$

STEP iii Number of compounding periods: $n = m \times t = 4 \times 5 = 20$

Using Table 16-2, in row 20 of the 1% column, PVF = 0.81954.

Present Value = $FV \times PVF$ = \$60,000 × 0.81954 = \$49,172.40.

$$m = 4$$
$$i = \frac{0.04}{4} = 0.01$$
$$n = 4 \times 5 = 20$$
$$PVF = \frac{1}{(1+i)^n} = \frac{1}{(1.01)^{20}}$$
$$= 0.81954447$$
$$PV = FV \times PVF$$
$$= \$60{,}000 \times 0.81954447$$
$$= \$49{,}172.67$$

If Polly invests \$49,172.40 today, at a rate of 4% compounded quarterly, she will have \$60,000 five years from now.

CONCEPT CHECK 16.3

a. What present value (principal) invested for 3 years at 10% compounded semiannually will result in a total future value of \$4,000? (Use a calculator or Table 16-2.)

Semiannually means 2 periods per year.
Periodic rate = 10% ÷ 2 = 5% per half-year
Number of periods = 2 × 3 years = 6 periods
The PVF from row 6 of the 5.00% column in Table 16-2 is 0.74622.

$PV = FV \times PVF$ = \$4,000 × 0.74622 = \$2,984.88

$$m = 2$$
$$i = \frac{0.10}{2} = 0.05$$
$$n = 2 \times 3 = 6$$
$$PVF = \frac{1}{(1 + 0.05)^6}$$
$$= 0.74621540$$
$$PV = \$4{,}000 \times 0.74621540$$
$$= \$2{,}984.86$$

b. Four years ago, a woman invested money at 9% compounded monthly. If the investment is now worth \$12,000, how much compound interest did she earn in the 4 years? (Use a calculator or Table 16-2.)

Monthly means 12 periods per year.
Periodic rate = 9% ÷ 12 = 0.75% per month
Number of periods = 12 × 4 years = 48 periods

The PVF row 48 of the 0.75% column in Table 16-2 is 0.69861.
$PV = FV \times PVF$ = \$12,000 × 0.69861 = \$8,383.32
Compound interest = Future value − Present value
= \$12,000 − \$8,383.32 = \$3,616.68

$$m = 12$$
$$i = \frac{0.09}{12} = 0.0075$$
$$n = 12 \times 4 = 48$$
$$PVF = \frac{1}{(1 + 0.0075)^{48}}$$
$$= 0.69861414$$
$$PV = \$12{,}000 \times 0.69861414$$
$$= \$8{,}383.37$$

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 16.2.

Chapter Terms for Review

base
compound amount
compound interest
exponent
future value
future value factor
number of compounding periods
period (compounding period)
periodic interest rate
power
present value
present value factor (PVF)

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
16.1 Compute future values.	Use a calculator with exponents or Table 16-1. 1. Compute the future value of $8,000 invested at 9% compounded monthly for 3 years. 2. Compute the compound interest earned on $5,000 invested at 6% compounded quarterly for 5 years.
16.2 Compute present values.	Use a calculator with exponents or Table 16-1. 3. Compute the present value that has to be invested at 10% compounded semiannually for 6 years to result in $8,000.
16.3 Compute using PVF.	Use a calculator with exponents or Table 16-2. 4. If $6,000 is the future value after 13 years at 9% compounded annually, compute the principal (present value). 5. An investment made 16 months ago is worth $5,634.95 today. If the interest rate was 9% compounded monthly, what was the amount of compound interest?

Answers: **1.** $10,469.20 **2.** $1,734.30 **3.** $4,454.69 **4.** $1,957.08 **5.** $634.95

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 16

1 Calculate the future value (compound amount) and compound interest. (Use a calculator or Table 16-1.)

Principal	Rate	Time	Future Value	Interest
$ 4,000	6% compounded monthly	3 yr	**a.** ________	**b.** ________
$12,000	8% compounded quarterly	7 yr	**c.** ________	**d.** ________
$30,000	10% compounded annually	16 yr	**e.** ________	**f.** ________
$ 8,000	10% compounded semiannually	10 yr	**g.** ________	**h.** ________

2 Calculate the present value (principal) and compound interest. (Use a calculator or Table 16-1 or Table 16-2.)

Future Value	Rate	Time	Present Value	Interest
$25,000	6% compounded annually	9 yr	**a.** ________	**b.** ________
$ 6,000	8% compounded semiannually	12 yr	**c.** ________	**d.** ________
$15,000	9% compounded monthly	4 yr	**e.** ________	**f.** ________
$40,000	6% compounded quarterly	5 yr	**g.** ________	**h.** ________

3 Gary Sharman received a $6,000 bonus from his employer. He can invest it safely in his credit union at 4% compounded quarterly. What will be the value of the investment in 7 years?

4 Martha Butler inherited $26,760. She invested it immediately in an investment fund paying 8% compounded semiannually. How much interest would Martha earn if she left principal and interest invested for 9 years?

5 Toni McSwain is planning to buy a newer car in 3 years. She has some money today that she can invest for 3 years in an account that will pay 6% compounded quarterly. How much of it would she need to deposit today so that she will have $8,000 in her account in 3 years?

6 Doug Johnson will need to buy a $25,000 wood lathe in 2 years. He can deposit excess profits from this year in an investment that should pay 9% compounded monthly. If Doug has the $25,000 in 2 years, how much will he earn in interest?

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 16.1: Future Value (Compound Amount)

Name

Date Score

Learning Objective **1**

A **(28 points) Find the future value (compound amount) and the compound interest, as indicated, for each of the following investments. Round answers to the nearest cent. Use a calculator or Table 16-1 to find FVF. (2 points for each correct answer)**

	Present Value	Rate	Term	Future Value	Compound Interest
1.	$6,000	6% compounded monthly	4 years	________	________
2.	$960	6% compounded semiannually	11 years	________	________
3.	$20,000	8% compounded quarterly	8 years	________	________
4.	$10,800	10% compounded annually	40 years	________	________
5.	$5,000	9% compounded monthly	18 months	________	________
6.	$14,450	6% compounded quarterly	4 years	________	________
7.	$4,000	4% compounded semiannually	9 years	________	________

Score for A (28)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

B **(32 points) Find the future value (compound amount) or the compound interest, as indicated, for each of the following investments or loans. Round answers to the nearest cent. Use a calculator or Table 16-1 to find FVF. (4 points for each correct answer)**

8. Compute the future value (compound amount) of $7,500 invested for 11 years at 5% compounded quarterly.

9. How much compound interest will you pay if you borrow $25,000 for 13 months at 15% compounded monthly?

10. Calculate the future value (compound amount) on a loan of $38,260 at 8% compounded annually for 13 years.

11. How much compound interest will you earn if you invest $7,900 for 16.5 years at 12% compounded semiannually?

12. What total amount (principal and interest) must be repaid in $3\frac{1}{2}$ years on a loan of $12,500 at 6% compounded monthly?

13. Determine the total compound interest that you will have to pay if you borrow $1,780 at 16% compounded semiannually and don't pay it back for 5 years.

14. How much compound interest will you earn if you invest $9,650 for 12 years at 5% compounded annually?

15. Compute the future value (compound amount) of $18,000 invested for 4.5 years at 5% compounded quarterly.

Score for B (32)

C **(40 points) Business Applications. Find the future value (compound amount) or the compound interest, as indicated. Round answers to the nearest cent. Use a calculator or Table 16-1 to find FVF. (4 points for each correct answer)**

16. Brent Davis thinks that he needs to borrow \$6,600 for 2.5 years. He doesn't have a very good credit rating, so most finance companies want to charge him a high interest rate. He finally finds a lender that will loan him the money at 9% compounded monthly. How much interest will Brent have to pay to this particular lender?

17. Mary Sousa receives a telephone call from a salesperson who describes "an incredible investment opportunity." The investment promises a return of 16% compounded semiannually for investments of \$5,000 or more. One disadvantage is that no money will be paid out for a long time. Another disadvantage is that the investment is very risky. Mary doesn't think that she will need the money for 6 years, so she decides to invest \$5,000. If the investment pays what it promises, how much interest will Mary earn in the 6 years?

18. Samuel Tang wants to borrow money from his father to buy a car. Samuel's father is trying to teach him how to manage money, so he agrees to loan him the money, but at 5% compounded quarterly. Samuel borrows \$11,200 and repays everything—principal plus all of the interest—in $3\frac{1}{2}$ years. How much does Samuel pay back to his father?

19. Don Hildebrand is trying to decide whether to invest money in a bank or in something a little riskier that will pay a higher return. One very simple investment promises to pay a minimum of 8% compounded annually, but he must leave all of the money and interest invested for 9 years. How much interest will Don earn during the 9 years if he invests \$7,150 and the investment pays the minimum?

20. Marcia Juarez and her brother-in-law have a successful business with several employees. They decide to borrow \$12,000 to pay their next quarterly deposits for payroll tax and federal income tax. They get the money at 6% compounded monthly and repay all interest and principal after 3 months. How much do they repay?

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

21. Sammie Crass inherited $16,780. She wants to invest it in something relatively safe so that she can transfer all the money to her children's college fund in about 8 years. One investment brochure (called a prospectus) states that it will pay a return of 8% compounded quarterly. How much will Sammie have in total, principal plus interest, after 8 years?

____

22. To help his daughter and son-in-law purchase their first new car, David Lo loans them $12,000. They agree on an interest rate of 3% compounded annually, and Mr. Lo tells them that they can pay it all back, the $12,000 plus the interest, in 5 years. How much interest will Mr. Lo receive from them?

____

23. Sandee Millet owns and operates an art supply store in a suburban shopping center. Sandee learns about an investment that claims to pay a return of 8% compounded semiannually for 4 years. Sandee decides to invest $4,750. Compute the amount of interest that she will earn in the 4 years.

____

24. Ken Couch is a student at medical school. He borrowed $24,000 for 18 months at the rate of 9% compounded monthly. How much in total, principal plus compound interest, must Ken repay at the end of the 18 months?

____

25. The County Employees Credit Union pays an interest rate of 8% compounded quarterly on savings accounts of $1,000 or more, with the requirement that the money be deposited for at least 6 months. How much interest will Marilyn Bunnell earn if she deposits $1,800 and leaves it in the credit union for 2 years?

____

____

Score for C (40)

Assignment 16.2: Present Value

Name ______________________________

Date ______________ Score ______________

Learning Objectives 2 3

A **(28 points) Find the present value (principal) and the compound interest, as indicated, for each of the following investments. (*Hint:* Subtract the present value from the future value to find the compound interest.) Use a calculator or Table 16-1 or Table 16-2 to find FVF or PVF. Round answers to the nearest cent. (2 points for each correct answer)**

	Future Value	Rate	Term	Present Value	Compound Interest
1.	$3,900	6% compounded semiannually	3 years	________	________
2.	$18,000	6% compounded quarterly	5 years	________	________
3.	$23,000	6% compounded annually	11 years	________	________
4.	$5,200	12% compounded monthly	2 years	________	________
5.	$26,000	8% compounded quarterly	8 years	________	________
6.	$50,000	8% compounded semiannually	6 years	________	________
7.	$3,800	9% compounded monthly	15 months	________	________

____

Score for A (28)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

B **(32 points) Find the present value (principal) or the compound interest, as indicated, for each of the following investments or loans. Use a calculator or Table 16-1 or Table 16-2 to find FVF or PVF. Round answers to the nearest cent. (4 points for each correct answer)**

8. Compute the present value (principal) if the future value 16 years from now is $32,000 and if the interest rate is 6% compounded semiannually.

____

9. How much compound interest would you pay if you repay a total of $8,425 one and a half years after borrowing the principal at 9% compounded monthly?

____

10. Calculate the present value (principal) of a loan made 4 years ago at 12% compounded quarterly if the borrower repays a total of $9,600.

____

11. Compute the amount that a company must invest (the present value) at 10% compounded annually if it wants to have $100,000 available (the future value) in 25 years.

____

12. How much compound interest is earned on a 7.5-year investment that has a rate of return of 5% compounded quarterly and repays a total compound amount (future value) of $12,400?

____

13. Determine the present value (principal) of a single deposit that is worth exactly $4,750 after 15 months at 6% compounded monthly.

____

14. Calculate the amount of compound interest that has accrued on an investment that is worth $8,600 after 8 years at 4% compounded semiannually.

____

15. Compute the present value (principal) if the future value is $50,000 after 50 years at 6% compounded annually.

____

____

Score for B (32)

C **(40 points) Business Applications. Find the present value (principal) or the compound interest, as indicated. Use a calculator or Table 16-1 or Table 16-2 to find FVF or PVF. Round answers to the nearest cent. (4 points for each correct answer)**

16. Bill Starnes needs to buy another used logging truck. His mother will loan him part of the money at 3% compounded quarterly. If Bill estimates that he will be able to repay his mother a total of $30,000 in $2\frac{1}{2}$ years, how much can he borrow from her today?

____

17. Six years ago, Eleanor Baker invested money at 8% compounded annually. Today she received a check for $6,000 that represented her total payment of principal and interest. Compute the amount of the interest that she earned.

____

18. John Burnett wants to have $30,000 available at the end of 3 years to help purchase a computerized metal lathe for his machine shop. If John can invest money at 6% compounded semiannually, how much should he invest?

____

19. As part of their financial planning, Janice Garcia's grandparents made monetary gifts to each of their grandchildren. In addition, Janice's grandfather told her that, if she would save part of her gift for at least a year, he would pay her interest of 9% compounded monthly. Janice decided to save just enough so that she would have $5,000 at the end of 21 months, when she will be 16 years old. How much should she save?

____

20. Erin Bernstein estimated that she would need $18,000 in 2 years to buy new equipment for her pottery shop. Having extra cash, she invested money in an investment that advertised a return of 6% compounded semiannually. Erin invested just enough money to end up with the $18,000. How much of the $18,000 did Erin earn on her investment?

____

21. Warren Schulze is a financial advisor. A client would like to have $25,000 in 5 years for possible weddings for her twin daughters who are now 18 years old. After comparing the projected returns with the risk, Warren recommends an investment that will pay 6% compounded quarterly. To end up with the $25,000, how much must the client invest today?

____

22. A small company estimates that a modest investment today would realize a return of 10% compounded annually. The company wants a total sum of $20,000 in 5 years. If the company invests the appropriate amount to reach the $20,000 objective, how much of the $20,000 will be earned by the investment?

____

23. Linda Anderson inherited $10,000. She knew that she would need $8,000 in 3 years to pay additional tuition for her children's education. Linda wanted to save enough to have the $8,000 three years from now. She found an incredible, relatively safe investment that would pay 15% compounded monthly for the entire 3 years—if she agreed to leave the money untouched for 3 years. Linda invests just enough of her inheritance to create the $8,000. How much does she have left over from the $10,000?

____

24. Norman Peterson owns an antique store in the Midwest. He is planning a buying trip to Scandinavia 18 months from now. Norman estimates the cost of the trip will be $12,000 in 18 months. How much should he set aside today to have $12,000 in 18 months? He can earn 6% compounded quarterly.

____

25. Technology advances so rapidly that printers for higher-end computer systems are obsolete almost before they come onto the market. Frances Leung thinks that it would be reasonable to budget $2,600 for a high-speed color printer. Frances can make a safe investment paying 12% compounded monthly for 15 months. If she invests the necessary amount of money now, how much of the $2,600 will be paid by the investment at the end of the 15 months?

____

____

Score for C (40)

Notes

Table 16-1 Future Value (Compound Amount) Factors

Period	0.50%	0.75%	1.00%	1.25%	1.50%	2.00%	3.00%	4.00%	5.00%	6.00%	8.00%	9.00%	10.00%	12.00%
1	1.00500	1.00750	1.01000	1.01250	1.01500	1.02000	1.03000	1.04000	1.05000	1.06000	1.08000	1.09000	1.10000	1.12000
2	1.01003	1.01506	1.02010	1.02516	1.03023	1.04040	1.06090	1.08160	1.10250	1.12360	1.16640	1.18810	1.21000	1.25440
3	1.01508	1.02267	1.03030	1.03797	1.04568	1.06121	1.09273	1.12486	1.15763	1.19102	1.25971	1.29503	1.33100	1.40493
4	1.02015	1.03034	1.04060	1.05095	1.06136	1.08243	1.12551	1.16986	1.21551	1.26248	1.36049	1.41158	1.46410	1.57352
5	1.02525	1.03807	1.05101	1.06408	1.07728	1.10408	1.15927	1.21665	1.27628	1.33823	1.46933	1.53862	1.61051	1.76234
6	1.03038	1.04585	1.06152	1.07738	1.09344	1.12616	1.19405	1.26532	1.34010	1.41852	1.58687	1.67710	1.77156	1.97382
7	1.03553	1.05370	1.07214	1.09085	1.10984	1.14869	1.22987	1.31593	1.40710	1.50363	1.71382	1.82804	1.94872	2.21068
8	1.04071	1.06160	1.08286	1.10449	1.12649	1.17166	1.26677	1.36857	1.47746	1.59385	1.85093	1.99256	2.14359	2.47596
9	1.04591	1.06956	1.09369	1.11829	1.14339	1.19509	1.30477	1.42331	1.55133	1.68948	1.99900	2.17189	2.35795	2.77308
10	1.05114	1.07758	1.10462	1.13227	1.16054	1.21899	1.34392	1.48024	1.62889	1.79085	2.15892	2.36736	2.59374	3.10585
11	1.05640	1.08566	1.11567	1.14642	1.17795	1.24337	1.38423	1.53945	1.71034	1.89830	2.33164	2.58043	2.85312	3.47855
12	1.06168	1.09381	1.12683	1.16075	1.19562	1.26824	1.42576	1.60103	1.79586	2.01220	2.51817	2.81266	3.13843	3.89598
13	1.06699	1.10201	1.13809	1.17526	1.21355	1.29361	1.46853	1.66507	1.88565	2.13293	2.71962	3.06580	3.45227	4.36349
14	1.07232	1.11028	1.14947	1.18995	1.23176	1.31948	1.51259	1.73168	1.97993	2.26090	2.93719	3.34173	3.79750	4.88711
15	1.07768	1.11860	1.16097	1.20483	1.25023	1.34587	1.55797	1.80094	2.07893	2.39656	3.17217	3.64248	4.17725	5.47357
16	1.08307	1.12699	1.17258	1.21989	1.26899	1.37279	1.60471	1.87298	2.18287	2.54035	3.42594	3.97031	4.59497	6.13039
17	1.08849	1.13544	1.18430	1.23514	1.28802	1.40024	1.65285	1.94790	2.29202	2.69277	3.70002	4.32763	5.05447	6.86604
18	1.09393	1.14396	1.19615	1.25058	1.30734	1.42825	1.70243	2.02582	2.40662	2.85434	3.99602	4.71712	5.55992	7.68997
19	1.09940	1.15254	1.20811	1.26621	1.32695	1.45681	1.75351	2.10685	2.52695	3.02560	4.31570	5.14166	6.11591	8.61276
20	1.10490	1.16118	1.22019	1.28204	1.34686	1.48595	1.80611	2.19112	2.65330	3.20714	4.66096	5.60441	6.72750	9.64629
21	1.11042	1.16989	1.23239	1.29806	1.36706	1.51567	1.86029	2.27877	2.78596	3.39956	5.03383	6.10881	7.40025	10.80385
22	1.11597	1.17867	1.24472	1.31429	1.38756	1.54598	1.91610	2.36992	2.92526	3.60354	5.43654	6.65860	8.14027	12.10031
23	1.12155	1.18751	1.25716	1.33072	1.40838	1.57690	1.97359	2.46472	3.07152	3.81975	5.87146	7.25787	8.95430	13.55235
24	1.12716	1.19641	1.26973	1.34735	1.42950	1.60844	2.03279	2.56330	3.22510	4.04893	6.34118	7.91108	9.84973	15.17863
25	1.13280	1.20539	1.28243	1.36419	1.45095	1.64061	2.09378	2.66584	3.38635	4.29187	6.84848	8.62308	10.83471	17.00006

Table 16-1 Future Value (Compound Amount) Factors *(continued)*

Period	0.50%	0.75%	1.00%	1.25%	1.50%	2.00%	3.00%	4.00%	5.00%	6.00%	8.00%	9.00%	10.00%	12.00%
26	1.13846	1.21443	1.29526	1.38125	1.47271	1.67342	2.15659	2.77247	3.55567	4.54938	7.39635	9.39916	11.91818	19.04007
27	1.14415	1.22354	1.30821	1.39851	1.49480	1.70689	2.22129	2.88337	3.73346	4.82235	7.98806	10.24508	13.10999	21.32488
28	1.14987	1.23271	1.32129	1.41599	1.51722	1.74102	2.28793	2.99870	3.92013	5.11169	8.62711	11.16714	14.42099	23.88387
29	1.15562	1.24196	1.33450	1.43369	1.53998	1.77584	2.35657	3.11865	4.11614	5.41839	9.31727	12.17218	15.86309	26.74993
30	1.16140	1.25127	1.34785	1.45161	1.56308	1.81136	2.42726	3.24340	4.32194	5.74349	10.06266	13.26768	17.44940	29.95992
31	1.16721	1.26066	1.36133	1.46976	1.58653	1.84759	2.50008	3.37313	4.53804	6.08810	10.86767	14.46177	19.19434	33.55511
32	1.17304	1.27011	1.37494	1.48813	1.61032	1.88454	2.57508	3.50806	4.76494	6.45339	11.73708	15.76333	21.11378	37.58173
33	1.17891	1.27964	1.38869	1.50673	1.63448	1.92223	2.65234	3.64838	5.00319	6.84059	12.67605	17.18203	23.22515	42.09153
34	1.18480	1.28923	1.40258	1.52557	1.65900	1.96068	2.73191	3.79432	5.25335	7.25103	13.69013	18.72841	25.54767	47.14252
35	1.19073	1.29890	1.41660	1.54464	1.68388	1.99989	2.81386	3.94609	5.51602	7.68609	14.78534	20.41397	28.10244	52.79962
36	1.19668	1.30865	1.43077	1.56394	1.70914	2.03989	2.89828	4.10393	5.79182	8.14725	15.96817	22.25123	30.91268	59.13557
37	1.20266	1.31846	1.44508	1.58349	1.73478	2.08069	2.98523	4.26809	6.08141	8.63609	17.24563	24.25384	34.00395	66.23184
38	1.20868	1.32835	1.45953	1.60329	1.76080	2.12230	3.07478	4.43881	6.38548	9.15425	18.62528	26.43668	37.40434	74.17966
39	1.21472	1.33831	1.47412	1.62333	1.78721	2.16474	3.16703	4.61637	6.70475	9.70351	20.11530	28.81598	41.14478	83.08122
40	1.22079	1.34835	1.48886	1.64362	1.81402	2.20804	3.26204	4.80102	7.03999	10.28572	21.72452	31.40942	45.25926	93.05097
41	1.22690	1.35846	1.50375	1.66416	1.84123	2.25220	3.35990	4.99306	7.39199	10.90286	23.46248	34.23627	49.78518	104.21709
42	1.23303	1.36865	1.51879	1.68497	1.86885	2.29724	3.46070	5.19278	7.76159	11.55703	25.33948	37.31753	54.76370	116.72314
43	1.23920	1.37891	1.53398	1.70603	1.89688	2.34319	3.56452	5.40050	8.14967	12.25045	27.36664	40.67611	60.24007	130.72991
44	1.24539	1.38926	1.54932	1.72735	1.92533	2.39005	3.67145	5.61652	8.55715	12.98548	29.55597	44.33696	66.26408	146.41750
45	1.25162	1.39968	1.56481	1.74895	1.95421	2.43785	3.78160	5.84118	8.98501	13.76461	31.92045	48.32729	72.89048	163.98760
46	1.25788	1.41017	1.58046	1.77081	1.98353	2.48661	3.89504	6.07482	9.43426	14.59049	34.47409	52.67674	80.17953	183.66612
47	1.26417	1.42075	1.59626	1.79294	2.01328	2.53634	4.01190	6.31782	9.90597	15.46592	37.23201	57.41765	88.19749	205.70605
48	1.27049	1.43141	1.61223	1.81535	2.04348	2.58707	4.13225	6.57053	10.40127	16.39387	40.21057	62.58524	97.01723	230.39078
49	1.27684	1.44214	1.62835	1.83805	2.07413	2.63881	4.25622	6.83335	10.92133	17.37750	43.42742	68.21791	106.71896	258.03767
50	1.28323	1.45296	1.64463	1.86102	2.10524	2.69159	4.38391	7.10668	11.46740	18.42015	46.90161	74.35752	117.39085	289.00219

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Table 16-2 Present Value Factors

Period	0.50%	0.75%	1.00%	1.25%	1.50%	2.00%	3.00%	4.00%	5.00%	6.00%	8.00%	9.00%	10.00%	12.00%
1	0.99502	0.99256	0.99010	0.98765	0.98522	0.98039	0.97087	0.96154	0.95238	0.94340	0.92593	0.91743	0.90909	0.89286
2	0.99007	0.98517	0.98030	0.97546	0.97066	0.96117	0.94260	0.92456	0.90703	0.89000	0.85734	0.84168	0.82645	0.79719
3	0.98515	0.97783	0.97059	0.96342	0.95632	0.94232	0.91514	0.88900	0.86384	0.83962	0.79383	0.77218	0.75131	0.71178
4	0.98025	0.97055	0.96098	0.95152	0.94218	0.92385	0.88849	0.85480	0.82270	0.79209	0.73503	0.70843	0.68301	0.63552
5	0.97537	0.96333	0.95147	0.93978	0.92826	0.90573	0.86261	0.82193	0.78353	0.74726	0.68058	0.64993	0.62092	0.56743
6	0.97052	0.95616	0.94205	0.92817	0.91454	0.88797	0.83748	0.79031	0.74622	0.70496	0.63017	0.59627	0.56447	0.50663
7	0.96569	0.94904	0.93272	0.91672	0.90103	0.87056	0.81309	0.75992	0.71068	0.66506	0.58349	0.54703	0.51316	0.45235
8	0.96089	0.94198	0.92348	0.90540	0.88771	0.85349	0.78941	0.73069	0.67684	0.62741	0.54027	0.50187	0.46651	0.40388
9	0.95610	0.93496	0.91434	0.89422	0.87459	0.83676	0.76642	0.70259	0.64461	0.59190	0.50025	0.46043	0.42410	0.36061
10	0.95135	0.92800	0.90529	0.88318	0.86167	0.82035	0.74409	0.67556	0.61391	0.55839	0.46319	0.42241	0.38554	0.32197
11	0.94661	0.92109	0.89632	0.87228	0.84893	0.80426	0.72242	0.64958	0.58468	0.52679	0.42888	0.38753	0.35049	0.28748
12	0.94191	0.91424	0.88745	0.86151	0.83639	0.78849	0.70138	0.62460	0.55684	0.49697	0.39711	0.35553	0.31863	0.25668
13	0.93722	0.90743	0.87866	0.85087	0.82403	0.77303	0.68095	0.60057	0.53032	0.46884	0.36770	0.32618	0.28966	0.22917
14	0.93256	0.90068	0.86996	0.84037	0.81185	0.75788	0.66112	0.57748	0.50507	0.44230	0.34046	0.29925	0.26333	0.20462
15	0.92792	0.89397	0.86135	0.82999	0.79985	0.74301	0.64186	0.55526	0.48102	0.41727	0.31524	0.27454	0.23939	0.18270
16	0.92330	0.88732	0.85282	0.81975	0.78803	0.72845	0.62317	0.53391	0.45811	0.39365	0.29189	0.25187	0.21763	0.16312
17	0.91871	0.88071	0.84438	0.80963	0.77639	0.71416	0.60502	0.51337	0.43630	0.37136	0.27027	0.23107	0.19784	0.14564
18	0.91414	0.87416	0.83602	0.79963	0.76491	0.70016	0.58739	0.49363	0.41552	0.35034	0.25025	0.21199	0.17986	0.13004
19	0.90959	0.86765	0.82774	0.78976	0.75361	0.68643	0.57029	0.47464	0.39573	0.33051	0.23171	0.19449	0.16351	0.11611
20	0.90506	0.86119	0.81954	0.78001	0.74247	0.67297	0.55368	0.45639	0.37689	0.31180	0.21455	0.17843	0.14864	0.10367
21	0.90056	0.85478	0.81143	0.77038	0.73150	0.65978	0.53755	0.43883	0.35894	0.29416	0.19866	0.16370	0.13513	0.09256
22	0.89608	0.84842	0.80340	0.76087	0.72069	0.64684	0.52189	0.42196	0.34185	0.27751	0.18394	0.15018	0.12285	0.08264
23	0.89162	0.84210	0.79544	0.75147	0.71004	0.63416	0.50669	0.40573	0.32557	0.26180	0.17032	0.13778	0.11168	0.07379
24	0.88719	0.83583	0.78757	0.74220	0.69954	0.62172	0.49193	0.39012	0.31007	0.24698	0.15770	0.12640	0.10153	0.06588
25	0.88277	0.82961	0.77977	0.73303	0.68921	0.60953	0.47761	0.37512	0.29530	0.23300	0.14602	0.11597	0.09230	0.05882

Table 16-2 Present Value Factors *(continued)*

Period	0.50%	0.75%	1.00%	1.25%	1.50%	2.00%	3.00%	4.00%	5.00%	6.00%	8.00%	9.00%	10.00%	12.00%
26	0.87838	0.82343	0.77205	0.72398	0.67902	0.59758	0.46369	0.36069	0.28124	0.21981	0.13520	0.10639	0.08391	0.05252
27	0.87401	0.81730	0.76440	0.71505	0.66899	0.58586	0.45019	0.34682	0.26785	0.20737	0.12519	0.09761	0.07628	0.04689
28	0.86966	0.81122	0.75684	0.70622	0.65910	0.57437	0.43708	0.33348	0.25509	0.19563	0.11591	0.08955	0.06934	0.04187
29	0.86533	0.80518	0.74934	0.69750	0.64936	0.56311	0.42435	0.32065	0.24295	0.18456	0.10733	0.08215	0.06304	0.03738
30	0.86103	.079919	0.74192	0.68889	0.63976	0.55207	0.41199	0.30832	0.23138	0.17411	0.09938	0.07537	0.05731	0.03338
31	0.85675	0.79324	0.73458	0.68038	0.63031	0.54125	0.39999	0.29646	0.22036	0.16425	0.09202	0.06915	0.05210	0.02980
32	0.85248	0.78733	0.72730	0.67198	0.62099	0.53063	0.38834	0.28506	0.20987	0.15496	0.08520	0.06344	0.04736	0.02661
33	0.84824	0.78147	0.72010	0.66369	0.61182	0.52023	0.37703	0.27409	0.19987	0.14619	0.07889	0.05820	0.04306	0.02376
34	0.84402	0.77565	0.71297	0.65549	0.60277	0.51003	0.36604	0.26355	0.19035	0.13791	0.07305	0.05339	0.03914	0.02121
35	0.83982	0.76988	0.70591	0.64740	0.59387	0.50003	0.35538	0.25342	0.18129	0.13011	0.06763	0.04899	0.03558	0.01894
36	0.83564	0.76415	0.69892	0.63941	0.58509	0.49022	0.34503	0.24367	0.17266	0.12274	0.06262	0.04494	0.03235	0.01691
37	0.83149	0.75846	0.69200	0.63152	0.57644	0.48061	0.33498	0.23430	0.16444	0.11579	0.05799	0.04123	0.02941	0.01510
38	0.82735	0.75281	0.68515	0.62372	0.56792	0.47119	0.32523	0.22529	0.15661	0.10924	0.05369	0.03783	0.02673	0.01348
39	0.82323	0.74721	0.67837	0.61602	0.55953	0.46195	0.31575	0.21662	0.14915	0.10306	0.04971	0.03470	0.02430	0.01204
40	0.81914	0.74165	0.67165	0.60841	0.55126	0.45289	0.30656	0.20829	0.14205	0.09722	0.04603	0.03184	0.02209	0.01075
41	0.81506	0.73613	0.66500	0.60090	0.54312	0.44401	0.29763	0.20028	0.13528	0.09172	0.04262	0.02921	0.02009	0.00960
42	0.81101	0.73065	0.65842	0.59348	0.53509	0.43530	0.28896	0.19257	0.12884	0.08653	0.03946	0.02680	0.01826	0.00857
43	0.80697	0.72521	0.65190	0.58616	0.52718	0.42677	0.28054	0.18517	0.12270	0.08163	0.03654	0.02458	0.01660	0.00765
44	0.80296	0.71981	0.64545	0.57892	0.51939	0.41840	0.27237	0.17805	0.11686	0.07701	0.03383	0.02255	0.01509	0.00683
45	0.79896	0.71445	0.63905	0.57177	0.51171	0.41020	0.26444	0.17120	0.11130	0.07265	0.03133	0.02069	0.01372	0.00610
46	0.79499	0.70913	0.63273	0.56471	0.50415	0.40215	0.25674	0.16461	0.10600	0.06854	0.02901	0.01898	0.01247	0.00544
47	0.79103	0.70385	0.62646	0.55774	0.49670	0.39427	0.24926	0.15828	0.10095	0.06466	0.02686	0.01742	0.01134	0.00486
48	0.78710	0.69861	0.62026	0.55086	0.48936	0.38654	0.24200	0.15219	0.09614	0.06100	0.02487	0.01598	0.01031	0.00434
49	0.78318	0.69341	0.61412	0.54406	0.48213	0.37896	0.23495	0.14634	0.09156	0.05755	0.02303	0.01466	0.00937	0.00388
50	0.77929	0.68825	0.60804	0.53734	0.47500	0.37153	0.22811	0.14071	0.08720	0.05429	0.02132	0.01345	0.00852	0.00346

Part 5

Business Applications

17 Inventory and Turnover
18 Depreciation
19 Financial Statements
20 International Business

17

Inventory and Turnover

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1 Account for inventory by inventory sheets and reports from a perpetual inventory system.

Learning Objective 2 Compute inventory value by the average cost, LIFO, and FIFO methods.

Learning Objective 3 Compute inventory by using the lower of cost or market value.

Learning Objective 4 Estimate inventory by using cost of goods sold.

Learning Objective 5 Compute inventory turnover.

A company's inventory is the amount of goods it has on hand at any particular time. Retailers and wholesalers have only one kind of inventory—*merchandise,* which are the goods they sell.

Accounting for Inventory

Learning Objective 1

Account for inventory by inventory sheets and reports from a perpetual inventory system.

INVENTORY SHEETS

At least once each year, businesses undertake a **physical inventory**—an actual counting of the merchandise on hand. Some stores that require close control take a physical inventory every six months, quarterly, or even monthly. Sometimes retail stores use outside firms that specialize in taking inventory.

When inventory is counted, a description of each item, the quantity, the unit cost or retail price, and the **extension** (quantity × price) are recorded on an **inventory sheet,** as shown in Figure 17-1. The inventory value is then compared with accounting records, and any needed adjustments are made.

Figure 17-1 Inventory Sheet

WARREN'S AUTO PARTS
Inventory Sheet
April 30, 20—

Description	Quantity	Unit Price (Average Cost)	Extension
Ignition terminals—#746083	318	$36.14	$11,492.52
Odometer cables—#007614	73	9.97	727.81
Wiper blades, compact—#417654	38	4.71	178.98
Spark plugs, 0.14—#772034	354	2.34	828.36
Hood/truck latches—#476508	58	13.42	+ 778.36
Total			$14,006.03

PERPETUAL INVENTORY SYSTEMS

Some firms keep a **perpetual inventory**—a running count of all inventory items, based on tracking each item as it comes into and goes out of inventory. In businesses that handle high-cost items, such as cars or large appliances, the perpetual system keeps track of each item by serial number and price.

For businesses that handle low-cost items, such as candy bars or shoes, tracking specific items would not be cost effective. Their perpetual inventory systems keep a count of the number of units on hand, not individual prices and serial numbers.

Data for a perpetual inventory system are usually kept on a computer. Figure 17-2 illustrates a computer printout of an inventory record sheet. The amount in the Balance on Hand column is calculated by adding the number of units received (Units In) to or subtracting the number of units sold (Units Out) from the previous balance. Refer to Figure 17-2. The beginning balance on hand is 350. On 1/31, 120 units were taken out of inventory. The new balance on hand is $350 - 120 = 230$. The last item in the Balance on Hand column shows how many units are on hand on the 4/30 recording date—354 Quickstart spark plugs: 0.14, part number 772034.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Figure 17-2 Inventory Sheet

WARREN'S AUTO PARTS

Inventory Record Sheet

ITEM: QUICKSTART SPARK PLUG: 0.14

PART NUMBER: #772034

LOCATION: Aisle 72, Bin 4, Box C

MINIMUM STOCK: 200 MAXIMUM STOCK: 800

ORDER FROM:
Northwest Distributors
2337 Colfax Avenue
Milbrae, CA 93233
Phone—(415) 345-7654

ORDER: 100–800

Purchase Orders (PO)

Date	PO No.	Quantity
2/03	F0129	400
3/15	M1678	300
3/22	M2076	200
4/26	A3210	400

Inventory Control

Date	Source Code	Units In	Unit Cost	Units Out	Balance on Hand
1/01	—		$2.10		350
1/31	SJ01			120	230
2/28	SJ02			58	172
3/02	F0129	400	2.36		572
3/31	SJ03			315	257
4/03	M1678	300	2.40		557
4/20	M2076	200	2.64		757
4/30	SJ04			403	354

Note: The 400 units ordered 4/26 have not yet been received.

CONCEPT CHECK 17.1

The CompuParts wholesale computer store maintains a perpetual inventory of computer parts received, removed, or shipped out. The following inventory record sheet shows the data for May. Compute the balance on hand after each transaction.

COMPUPARTS WHOLESALE

Inventory Record Sheet

ITEM: MONITOR CORD #A718
Location: BIN #C7
Minimum Stock: 250 **Maximum Stock: 1,000**

Order From:
Myers Distributors
1422 Oak Drive
Stockton, CA 97777
Fax: 209-775-7823

	Units In	Unit Cost	Units Out	Balance on Hand
5/01		$15.40		390
5/11	470	$15.80		860
5/15			260	600
5/28	320	$15.90		920
5/31			410	510

Computing Inventory, Using the Average Cost, FIFO, and LIFO Methods

Learning Objective 2

Compute inventory value by the average cost, LIFO, and FIFO methods.

In all inventory systems, the cost of the inventory on hand at the end of the period is called **ending inventory (EI).** The ending inventory must be computed before financial statements can be prepared.

To compute ending inventory, a business usually adopts one of three cost methods: average cost; first-in, first-out (FIFO); or last-in, first-out (LIFO). Once selected, the method must be followed consistently. We use the cost data from Figure 17-2 to illustrate computations for the three cost methods.

THE AVERAGE COST METHOD

The **average cost method** is based on the assumption that the cost for each item on hand is the average cost for items from the opening inventory and items purchased during the period.

EXAMPLE A

The average cost of the units on the inventory record sheet for stock part #772034 (Quickstart spark plugs: 0.14) is computed as follows:

Date	Units Purchased	Cost	Extension
1/01	350	$2.10	$ 735.00
3/02	400	2.36	944.00
4/03	300	2.40	720.00
4/20	+200	2.64	+528.00
	1,250		$2,927.00

Average cost per unit: $2,927 ÷ 1,250 = $2.34 (rounded to nearest cent)

Ending inventory (EI) at average cost: 354 units × $2.34 = $828.36

THE FIFO METHOD

The **first-in, first-out (FIFO) costing method** is based on the assumption that the cost for units sold is determined in the order in which the units were purchased. Thus, the cost of the inventory remaining is assumed to be based on the price of the units received most recently.

EXAMPLE B

Under the FIFO method, the inventory of 354 units would consist of the 200 units last purchased plus 154 units from the preceding purchase.

Date				
4/20	200	units × $2.64 =	$528.00	
4/03	+154	units × $2.40 =	+369.60	
	354		$897.60	Ending inventory at FIFO cost

THE LIFO METHOD

The **last-in, first-out (LIFO) costing method** is based on the assumption that the cost of the inventory remaining is determined by the cost of the units purchased the earliest.

EXAMPLE C

Under the LIFO method, the 354 units would consist of the 350 units on hand on 1/01 plus 4 units from the first purchase on 3/02.

Date				
1/01	350	units × $2.10 =	$735.00	
3/02	+ 4	units × $2.36 =	+ 9.44	
	354		$744.44	Ending inventory at LIFO cost

CONCEPT CHECK 17.2

The inventory record sheets for hairbrushes at Hether's Beauty Supply show 5,000 units purchased (or on hand) at a total cost of $10,240. The inventory at year's end was 1,200 units. Compute the value of the ending inventory by each of the three methods: average cost, FIFO, and LIFO.

Date	Units Purchased	Cost	Extension
1/01	2,000	$2.00	$ 4,000
1/30	200	2.10	420
2/20	700	2.10	1,470
3/17	1,100	2.00	2,200
10/30	500	2.20	1,100
11/17	+500	2.10	+1,050
	5,000		$10,240

Average Cost: $10,240 ÷ 5,000 = $2.048
1,200 × $2.05 (rounded) = $2,460

FIFO: (500 × $2.10) + (500 × $2.20) + (200 × $2.00) = $2,550

LIFO: (1,200 × $2.00) = $2,400

Computing Inventory at the Lower of Cost or Market Value

Financial statements usually present the ending inventory at its cost value, computed by using the average, FIFO, or LIFO costing method. However, in some cases the **market value** (current replacement cost) of goods is lower than the original or average cost of those goods. Most companies prefer to show the **lower of cost or market value** in their inventories. When market value exceeds the cost, the cost is used; when the cost exceeds market value, market value is used.

Learning Objective 3

Compute inventory by using the lower of cost or market value.

STEPS to Determine the Lower of Cost or Market (LCM) Inventory Value

1. Compute the unit or total cost for each type of inventory item using the average, FIFO, or LIFO costing method.
2. Determine the market value for each inventory item.
3. Compare the cost value from Step 1 with the market value from Step 2 and choose the lower of the two.
4. Compute the extension amount for each item based on the lower amount.
5. Sum the amounts in Step 4 to determine the total inventory value under LCM.

EXAMPLE D

Under LCM, using the average cost method illustrated in example A, the total inventory shown in Figure 17-1 would be valued at $13,802.13.

		STEP 1	STEP 2	STEP 3	STEP 4	
Description	**(A) Quantity**	**(B) Unit Price (Average Cost)**	**(C) Unit Price at Market**	**(D) Lower of (B) or (C)**	**Extension (A × D)**	
Ignition terminals—#746083	318	$36.14	$35.50	$35.50	$11,289.00	Market
Odometer cables—#007614	73	9.97	11.00	9.97	727.81	Cost
Wiper blades, compact—#417654	38	4.71	4.70	4.70	178.60	Market
Spark plugs, 0.14—#772034	354	2.34	2.64	2.34	828.36	Cost
Hood/trunk latches—#476508	58	13.42	14.10	13.42	+ 778.36	Cost
Total					$13,802.13	STEP 5

EXAMPLE E

Under LCM, using the FIFO cost method illustrated in example B, the FIFO cost for the inventory for Quickstart spark plugs would be $897.60. Combining LCM with FIFO for the Quickstart spark plugs illustrated in example B, the ending inventory for this one item would be valued at $897.60 because the market value ($934.56) is higher than the FIFO cost.

			Market Value			
Description	**(A) Quantity**	**(B) FIFO Cost**	**(C) Unit Price at Market**	**(D) Total (A × C)**	**Lower of (B) or (D)**	
Spark plugs	354	$897.60	$2.64	$934.56	$897.60	Cost

CONCEPT CHECK 17.3

Morgan Music's inventory shows the following. Compute the inventory value at the lower of cost or market value.

Description	Quantity	Cost	Market	Extension	
Classical #3	300	$ 7.07	$10.10	$2,121.00	Cost
Western #8	180	9.10	8.07	1,452.60	Market
Modern—light #11	410	11.17	12.08	4,579.70	Cost
Rock—new #4	89	12.10	12.10	+1,076.90	Cost/market
Total				$9,230.20	

Estimating Inventory Value

Learning Objective 4

Estimate inventory by using cost of goods sold.

For monthly financial statements, inventory frequently is estimated without a physical count or a perpetual inventory system. The method usually used to estimate month-end inventory is called the **gross profit method.** This method involves estimating the **cost of goods sold** and subtracting this amount from the sum of the opening inventory and purchases made during the month. Note that **beginning inventory (BI)** is the ending inventory from the month before and **purchases (P)** are those goods for sale that have been purchased during the current month. The gross profit method is based on the formula

Beginning inventory (BI)
+ Purchases (P)
Cost of goods available for sale
− Cost of goods sold (CGS) (estimated)
Ending inventory (EI) (estimate)

Without a physical inventory, a precise cost of goods sold can't be determined. In this case, it is estimated by applying a markup percentage rate to **net sales** (total sales less sales returned and adjustments for the period). The net sales (100%) less this markup rate (percent) equals the cost of goods sold (percent). For instance, if the markup rate were 30%, the cost of goods sold would be 100% − 30% = 70%. If the rate of markup were 40%, the cost of goods sold would be 100% − 40% = 60%.

EXAMPLE F

Assume that Warren's Auto Parts had a beginning inventory of $80,000. During the month, the company purchased and received $50,000 in goods and had net sales of $90,000. Throughout the month, Warren's maintained a 40% markup on all sales. Its cost of goods sold would be computed as follows:

Net sales for the month	$90,000	
Cost of goods sold (estimated)	$54,000	[$90,000 × (100% − 40%) = $90,000 × 0.60]

Warren's Auto Parts would then determine its ending inventory (estimated) as follows:

Inventory, beginning of month	$ 80,000
Purchases for month	+ 50,000
Goods available for sale	$130,000
Cost of goods sold (estimated)	− 54,000
Ending inventory (estimated)	$ 76,000

©iStock.com/Aneurysm

Sometimes a company's markup rate is based on cost rather than selling price. In this case, if the markup on cost were 30%, the cost of goods sold would be net sales divided by 130%. If the markup on cost were 40%, the cost of goods sold would be net sales divided by 140%.

EXAMPLE G

Assume that Warren's Auto Parts had a beginning inventory of $80,000. During the month, it had purchases of $50,000 and net sales of $90,000. Throughout the month, Warren's maintained a markup of 50% based on cost. What were Warren's cost of goods sold and ending inventory?

Beginning inventory	$80,000	
Purchases	+ 50,000	
Cost of goods available for sale	$130,000	
Cost of goods sold (estimated)	− 60,000	($90,000 ÷ 150%)
Ending inventory (estimated)	$70,000	

CONCEPT CHECK 17.4

Cyber Electronics' records show the following. Compute the estimated ending inventory at cost.

Beginning inventory	$27,000	Net sales for period	$70,000
Purchases for period	$33,000	Markup based on retail	40%

$27,000 + $33,000 = $60,000 cost of goods available

$70,000 × 60% = $42,000 cost of goods sold

$60,000 − $42,000 = $18,000 estimated ending inventory

Computing Inventory Turnover

Learning Objective 5

Compute inventory turnover.

Inventory turnover is the number of times the average inventory is converted into sales during the year. Inventory turnover is very high for a grocery store or ice cream parlor; it is very low for a specialty jewelry store or an antique shop. Standard turnover rates for corporate businesses are published. Some standard rates are 3.5 for hardware stores, 12.7 for grocery stores, 3.3 for nurseries, and 39.3 for gas stations and mini-marts.

Before turnover can be determined, average inventory must be calculated. **Average inventory** is the average of the inventories taken over a specific period of time—annually, semiannually, quarterly, or monthly.

Inventory is taken	Average inventory (at retail or cost)
Annually (once a year)	(BI + EI) ÷ 2
Semiannually (every six months)	(BI + end of 6 months + EI) ÷ 3
Quarterly (every three months)	(BI + 3 quarterly + EI) ÷ 5
Monthly (every month)	(BI + 11 monthly + EI) ÷ 13

Computation of inventory turnover can be based on either retail (selling) price or cost. **Inventory turnover at retail** is net sales divided by average inventory.

STEPS to Compute Inventory Turnover at Retail

1. Determine net sales.
2. Compute average inventory using retail price.
3. Compute inventory turnover at retail: Net sales ÷ Average inventory at retail.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE H

Assume that inventories for the year, based on selling price, are as follows: beginning, \$90,000; end of month 3, \$80,000; end of month 6, \$100,000; end of month 9, \$70,000; and end of month 12 (ending), \$60,000. Net sales for the year are \$520,000. Compute the inventory turnover at retail.

STEP 2 Average inventory = (\$90,000 + \$80,000 + \$100,000 + \$70,000 + \$60,000) ÷ 5
= \$400,000 ÷ 5 = \$80,000

STEP 3 Inventory turnover at retail = \$520,000 net sales ÷ \$80,000 average inventory = 6.5 times

Note: The value of net sales and average inventory must both be figured at retail.

Some retailers prefer to express their rate of inventory turnover in terms of cost. **Inventory turnover at cost** is obtained by dividing the cost of goods sold (CGS) during a period by the average inventory for the same period computed at cost prices. (CGS is simply net sales at cost.)

STEPS to Compute Inventory Turnover at Cost

1. Compute the cost of goods sold using the formula BI + P − EI = CGS.
2. Compute the average inventory at cost.
3. Compute inventory turnover at cost: Cost of goods sold ÷ Average inventory at cost.

Jupiterimages/Getty Images

EXAMPLE I

Assume that beginning inventory cost \$60,000, purchases cost \$300,000, and ending inventory cost \$80,000. Compute the inventory turnover at cost.

STEP 1 Cost of goods sold:

Inventory at beginning of year	\$ 60,000
Purchases during year	+ 300,000
Goods available for sale	\$ 360,000
Inventory at end of year	− 80,000
Cost of goods sold	\$ 280,000

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

STEP 2 Average inventory = ($60,000 BI + $80,000 EI) ÷ 2
= $140,000 ÷ 2 = $70,000

STEP 3 Inventory turnover at cost = $280,000 cost of goods sold
÷ $70,000 average inventory = 4.0 times

Note: The value of goods sold and average inventory must both be figured at cost.

CONCEPT CHECK 17.5

Brinkman Scooter Shop has two branches (A and B), each using a markup of 50% of retail. Compute ending inventory, average inventory, and inventory turnover based on retail for each branch from the following data. Round answers to the nearest hundredth.

	Branch A	**Branch B**
Net sales	$1,400,000	$1,200,000
Beginning inventory	220,000	300,000
Inventory (March 31)	190,000	400,000
Inventory (June 30)	280,000	350,000
Inventory (September 30)	280,000	360,000
Inventory (December 31)	200,000	300,000

Average inventory: A—($220,000 + 190,000 + 280,000 + 280,000 + 200,000) ÷ 5 = $234,000
B—($300,000 + 400,000 + 350,000 + 360,000 + 300,000) ÷ 5 = $342,000

Retail turnover: A—$1,400,000 ÷ $234,000 = 5.98
B—$1,200,000 ÷ $342,000 = 3.51

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 17.1 and 17.2.

Chapter Terms for Review

- average cost method
- average inventory
- beginning inventory (BI)
- cost of goods sold (CGS)
- ending inventory (EI)
- extension
- first-in, first-out (FIFO) costing method
- gross profit method
- inventory sheet
- inventory turnover
- inventory turnover at cost
- inventory turnover at retail
- last-in, first-out (LIFO) costing method
- lower of cost or market value (LCM)
- market value
- net sales
- perpetual inventory
- physical inventory
- purchases (P)

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example

17.1

Account for inventory by inventory sheets and reports from a perpetual inventory system.

1. Compute the balance on hand after each transaction:

Date	Units In	Units Out	Balance on Hand
12/01			34,768
12/17	7,732		________
12/19		16,500	________
12/20	9,700		________
12/31		12,030	________

17.2

Compute inventory value by the average cost, LIFO, and FIFO methods.

2. From the data shown, compute the ending inventory by the average cost, FIFO, and LIFO methods for Redwood Stove Company's stove part #717. The ending inventory, by physical count, was 300.

Stove Part #717

Date	Units In	Cost	Extension
1/12	200	$3.00	$600
1/14	300	3.20	960
1/15	500	3.00	1,500
1/17	200	3.10	620
1/18	+400	3.15	+1,260
Total	1,600		$4,940

Ending Inventory Value:

Average cost: ________

FIFO: ________

LIFO: ________

17.3

Compute inventory by using the lower of cost or market value.

3. Compute Redwood Stove Company's inventory value at the lower of cost or market value.

Description	Quantity	Cost	Market	Extension
Stoves	24	$277.50	$350.50	________
Piping	60	34.50	27.00	________
Hearths	65	78.00	78.00	________
Screens	105	105.00	125.00	________
Tool Sets	16	65.50	62.80	________
Total				________

Answers: **1.** 42,500; 26,000; 35,700; 23,670 **2.** Average cost, $927; FIFO, $945; LIFO, $920
3. $6,660; $1,620; $5,070; $11,025; $1,004.80; $25,379.80

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
17.4 Estimate inventory by using cost of goods sold.	4. Redwood Stove Company has a markup of 45% of retail. Last year it had total sales of $400,000. It had a beginning inventory of $150,000 based on cost. It purchased merchandise for $180,000 during the year. Compute the ending inventory at cost.
17.5 Compute inventory turnover.	5. Two years ago Redwood Stove Company used a markup of 65% of cost. That year's data are shown. Compute ending inventory, average inventory, and inventory turnover at retail. Net sales $800,000 Beginning inventory—retail 300,000 Purchases (cost) $600,000 Inventory—retail (June 30) 440,000

Answers: **4.** Inventory $110,000 **5.** Ending inventory at retail, $490,000; average inventory, $410,000; turnover, 1.95

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 17

① The D&D Company has 45 units on hand January 1. During the month, units in total 320 and units out total 285. What is the balance on hand January 31? _______________

② According to physical count, Dawson Lumber had 3,250 units in inventory March 31. Dawson Lumber's beginning inventory and purchases for the first quarter were as follows:

Jan. 1	Beginning Inventory	2,500 units @ $25.00
Jan. 15	Purchased	5,000 units @ $27.50
Feb. 5	Purchased	6,000 units @ $26.25
Mar. 10	Purchased	3,000 units @ $27.00

Calculate the value of the inventory March 31 and cost of goods sold for the quarter based on the average, FIFO, and LIFO costing methods.

	Inventory Value	Cost of Goods Sold
a. Average cost:	_______________	_______________
b. FIFO cost:	_______________	_______________
c. LIFO cost:	_______________	_______________

③ Sumner Company's inventory January 1 was valued at $52,000. During the first quarter, $487,000 of goods were purchased and sales totaled $680,000. Estimate the inventory March 31 if Sumner's markup is 40% based on selling price. _______________

④ Compute the average inventory, cost of goods sold, and turnover based on cost using the following data. Kelly Pet Supplies takes inventory every 6 months and had inventory of $35,000 on January 1, $42,600 on June 30, and $38,200 on December 31. Kelly's purchased goods totaling $275,000 during the year and had sales of $390,000.

a. Average inventory: _______________

b. Cost of goods sold: _______________

c. Turnover: _______________

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Notes

Assignment 17.1: Inventory Cost

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **3**

A **(40 points) Compute the extensions and totals. (1 point for each correct answer)**

1. The inventory of Michelle's Clock Shop shows the following items, at both cost and market prices. Determine the total value of the inventory at the lower of cost or market price for each item.

Description	Quantity	Unit Cost Price	Unit Market Price	Extension at Lower of Cost or Market
Quartz clock and pen set	20	$36.00	$34.80	
Travel alarm clock	35	15.60	19.20	
Ultrasonic travel clock	24	23.00	23.70	
Digital alarm clock	42	19.80	18.60	
AM/FM clock radio	60	21.00	21.00	
Digital clock radio	12	54.00	57.50	
Total				

2. A retail furniture dealer counted the following goods in inventory on December 31. An accountant recommended that the inventory items be valued at the lower of cost or market price. Compute the total value of the inventory based on the lower of cost or market price.

Article	Quantity	Unit Cost Price	Extension at Cost	Unit Market Price	Extension at Market	Inventory Value at Lower of Cost or Market
Armchairs, wood	24	$60.00		$ 68.50		
Armchairs, tapestry	8	97.50		105.00		
Armchairs, Windsor	12	90.00		85.00		
Beds, bunk	8	85.00		75.00		
Bedroom suites	4	329.20		410.00		
Tables, coffee	30	63.00		62.00		
Chairs, kitchen	24	23.00		32.00		
Dining tables	8	117.40		95.70		
Dining suites	5	288.80		395.00		
Sofa sets	9	330.00		325.00		
Total						

Score for A (40)

B **(60 points) Compute the value of ending inventory. (10 points for each correct answer)**

3. Bowman Manufacturing Company made purchases of a material as shown in the following listing. The inventory at the end of the year was 3,250 units. Compute the value of the inventory by each of the three methods: (a) average cost; (b) first-in, first-out; and (c) last-in, first-out.

Date	Units	Unit Cost	Total Cost
Jan. 5	3,600	$6.20	$ 22,320
Mar. 11	3,000	5.80	17,400
May 14	5,300	6.00	31,800
July 8	1,600	6.30	10,080
Sept. 7	4,000	6.20	24,800
Nov. 10	+2,500	6.40	+16,000
Total	20,000		$122,400

a. Average cost: __________

b. First-in, first-out: __________

c. Last-in, first-out: __________

4. The Sanberg Company had 320 units on hand at the beginning of the year, with a unit cost of $4.20. The number of units purchased and the unit cost and the number of units sold during the year are shown. What would be the value of the ending inventory of 380 units based on the (a) average cost; (b) first-in, first-out; and (c) last-in, first-out costing methods?

Date	Units Purchased	Unit Cost	Units Sold	Units on Hand
Jan. 1		$4.20		320
Feb. 2			190	130
Apr. 16	200	$4.32		330
June 10	300	$4.40		630
Aug. 5			280	350
Oct. 12	250	$4.35		600
Nov. 27			220	380

a. Average cost: __________

b. First-in, first-out: __________

c. Last-in, first-out: __________

____

Score for B (60)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 17.2: Inventory Estimating and Turnover

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **4** **5**

A **(50 points) Solve the following problems. (2 points for each correct answer)**

1. Fill in the blanks in each of the following calculations with the correct amount. Use the formulas

Beginning inventory + Purchases = Goods available for sale

Goods available for sale − Cost of goods sold = Ending inventory

	Store A	**Store B**	**Store C**	**Store D**	**Store E**
Beginning inventory	$ 75,000	_______	$ 34,500	$ 80,000	_______
Purchases	160,000	95,000	_______	_______	65,800
Goods available for sale	_______	120,000	240,000	220,000	89,700
Less cost of goods sold	82,000	108,000	_______	175,000	70,000
Ending inventory	_______	_______	$37,100	_______	_______

2. Each of the five stores in problem 1 had the net sales shown. What was the average percent of markup, based on cost, for each of the five stores? What was the average percent of markup, based on selling price, for each of the five stores?

	Store A	**Store B**	**Store C**	**Store D**	**Store E**
Net sales	$131,200	$150,000	$315,000	$227,500	$140,000
Markup—cost	_______	_______	_______	_______	_______
Markup—selling price	_______	_______	_______	_______	_______

3. Pets Plus takes inventory at retail sales price every 3 months. Its inventory at the beginning of last year was $72,800; at 3 months, $68,700; at 6 months, $71,550; at 9 months, $75,650; and at the end of the year, $62,000. Net sales for the year were $352,000.

a. What was the average inventory? ___________

b. What was the turnover? ___________

4. Steve's Auto Shop began the year with an inventory of $12,850. Purchases during the year totaled $72,800. The inventory at the end of the year was $14,220.

a. What was the cost of goods sold? ___________

b. What was the average inventory? ___________

c. What was the turnover? ___________

____

Score for A (50)

B **(50 points) Solve the following problems. (Points for each correct answer as marked)**

5. Jackson Wholesalers' records showed these figures:

	Cost	Retail Price		
Beginning inventory	$19,793	$32,990	Net sales for the year	$61,450
Purchases for the year	$47,200	$78,665	Markup based on sales	40%

Compute the ending inventory:

a. At cost (2 1/2 points): ___________

b. At retail price (2 1/2 points): ___________

6. Tahoe Sporting Goods kept all merchandise records in terms of selling price. On April 1, the books showed the following information:

Beginning inventory, January 1:	$52,480
3-month purchases:	175,000
3-month net sales:	178,560

What was the estimated ending inventory on April 1? (5 points) __________

7. The Garden Store kept all purchase and inventory records on a cost basis. The owner marked up all goods at 40.0% of the cost price. On July 1, The Garden Store's books showed the following information:

Beginning inventory, January 1:	$867,900
6-month purchases:	1,720,400
6-month net sales:	2,341,700

What was the estimated inventory, at cost, on July 1? (5 points) __________

8. Amy's Art Shop kept all inventory and sales records on the basis of retail prices. It recorded purchases at cost and marked up its merchandise at 120% of cost. On January 1, its inventory of art was $260,000. During the year, its purchases were $300,000 and net sales were $730,000. What was its ending inventory? (5 points) __________

9. From the information given, calculate the estimated cost of goods sold and ending inventory. Round to the nearest dollar. (1 point for each correct answer)

	Cost of Goods Available for Sale	Net Sales	Markup Based on Cost	Markup Based on Sales	Estimated Cost of Goods Sold	Estimated Ending Inventory
a.	$204,000	$260,000	30%		________	________
b.	268,000	260,000		30%	________	________
c.	444,000	350,000		27%	________	________
d.	444,000	350,000	27%		________	________
e.	37,500	36,000	50%		________	________
f.	368,000	400,000		60%	________	________
g.	420,000	600,000		40%	________	________
h.	440,000	360,000	15%		________	________
i.	125,000	180,000	60%		________	________
j.	130,000	200,000	100%		________	________

10. Maurice Company sells hair products. From the following inventory record sheets for Baby Soft Shampoo, determine the total units in, total amount, and the value of the ending inventory of 300 bottles based on average cost, FIFO, and LIFO. (2 points for each correct answer)

Date	Units In	Cost	Amount
1/11	400	$3.40	$1,360
1/23	50	3.00	150
2/10	100	3.20	320
2/20	200	3.30	660
2/25	+80	3.50	+280
	___		______

Average cost: ________

FIFO: ________

LIFO: ________

____

Score for B (50)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Depreciation

18

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1	Compute depreciation using the straight-line method.
Learning Objective 2	Compute depreciation using the units-of-production method.
Learning Objective 3	Compute depreciation using the declining-balance method.
Learning Objective 4	Compute depreciation using the sum-of-the-years-digits method.
Learning Objective 5	Compute depreciation for income tax purposes using the Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System (MACRS).
Learning Objective 6	Compute partial-year depreciation using the five different primary depreciation methods covered.

Depreciation is the decrease in the value of assets owned by a business, such as automobiles, buildings, and computers. Depreciation is caused by wear or by **obsolescence** (becoming out-of-date). In the toy manufacturing industry, some dies and tools last only 1 or 2 years because of changing fads. An automobile will wear out after a number of years or miles of use. Buildings lose value as wood, electrical wiring, and fixtures deteriorate and as design characteristics and owners' needs change. A business computer frequently becomes obsolete in 3 to 5 years.

In business, depreciation is figured on almost all physical assets owned and in use. Depreciation is deducted from gross profits as an expense. In this chapter, we present five common methods of calculating depreciation: the straight-line, units-of-production, declining-balance, sum-of-the-years-digits, and Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System methods.

Computing Depreciation with the Straight-Line Method

Learning Objective 1

Compute depreciation using the straight-line method.

The **straight-line (SL) method** of determining depreciation is the easiest method. It distributes depreciation evenly over the useful life of an asset, assigning equal amounts to designated units (miles, number of items made, etc.) or periods (usually months or years). It is based on the assumption that wear and obsolescence occur evenly over the life of the property. The three factors used to compute depreciation by the straight-line method are

1. The **original cost,** which includes the price paid for an item and any freight charges and expenses for installation. Cost includes anything necessary to get the asset to where it is to be used and in a condition to be used.
2. The **estimated service life,** which is the length of time the buyer expects to be able to use an asset. The estimated service life may be stated in terms of years or months that normally may be expected during the life of the asset.
3. The estimated **scrap value (SV),** which is the amount the owner of an asset expects to receive upon disposing of it at the end of its estimated service life.

The basic formula for computing the amount of depreciation under the straight-line method is

(Original cost − Scrap value) ÷ Estimated service life in periods of time
= Depreciation amount for one unit or period

EXAMPLE A

An office computer costing $12,500 has an estimated life of 5 years and an estimated scrap value of $900. What is the annual depreciation amount?

$12,500 cost − $900 SV = $11,600 estimated total depreciation
$11,600 ÷ 5 estimated total years = $2,320 annual depreciation

Computing Depreciation with the Units-of-Production Method

Learning Objective **2**

Compute depreciation using the units-of-production method.

The **units-of-production method** of determining depreciation distributes depreciation based on how much the asset is used. It is usually expressed in miles driven, hours used, tons hauled, or units produced. Calculation is like that used in the straight-line method except that miles, hours, tons, or units are used rather than months or years. The basic formula for computing the amount of depreciation under the units-of-production method is

(Original cost − Scrap value) ÷ Estimated life in service units
= Depreciation amount for one unit

Example B shows depreciation of an asset based on the number of hours it is used. First you must find the hourly depreciation and then multiply it by the number of hours operated during a particular month or year.

EXAMPLE B

A machine costing $20,000 has an estimated life of 60,000 hours of operation and an estimated scrap value of $800. If it was operated for 2,620 hours during the first year, how much depreciation expense will be shown for the first year?

$20,000 cost − $800 SV = $19,200 estimated total depreciation
$19,200 ÷ 60,000 estimated total hours = $0.32 hourly depreciation
2,620 hours operated × $0.32 = $838.40 first year's depreciation.

paul abbitt rml/Alamy

Example C shows depreciation in terms of the number of units that it will produce during its lifetime: Divide the number of units into the estimated total depreciation amount to get the depreciation per unit.

EXAMPLE C

A press that costs $145,000 will produce an estimated 3,500,000 units in its life and has an estimated scrap value of $5,000. If it produced 235,000 units this year, how much depreciation will be shown for the year?

$145,000 cost − $5,000 SV = $140,000 estimated total depreciation
$140,000 ÷ 3,500,000 estimated total units = $0.04 depreciation per unit
235,000 units produced × $0.04 = $9,400 first year's depreciation

BOOK VALUE

The **book value** of an asset is the original cost minus the **accumulated depreciation,** or the total of all depreciation to that time.

EXAMPLE D

At the end of the first year, the book value of the press in example C would be

$145,000 cost − $9,400 accumulated depreciation = $135,600

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The book value can be determined at any time in the life of an asset.

EXAMPLE E

At the end of the third year, the book value of the computer in example A would be computed as follows:

$2,320 annual depreciation × 3 years = $6,960 accumulated depreciation
$12,500 cost − $6,960 = $5,540.

CONCEPT CHECK 18.1

On January 1, Oakdale Appliances bought a new delivery truck for $48,000. Oakdale's accountant estimated a truck life of 200,000 miles and a scrap (trade-in) value of $4,000. In the first year, the truck was driven 38,000 miles; in the second year, it was driven 46,000 miles. Compute the depreciation and book value for the first 2 years.

$48,000 cost − $4,000 SV = $44,000 estimated total depreciation
$44,000 ÷ 200,000 miles = $0.22 depreciation per mile

Year 1: 38,000 miles × $0.22 per mile = $8,360 depreciation
$48,000 cost − $8,360 = $39,640 book value

Year 2: 46,000 miles × $0.22 per mile = $10,120 depreciation
$39,640 year 1 book value − $10,120 = $29,520 new book value
or
$48,000 cost − ($8,360 + $10,120) accumulated depreciation = $29,520 book value

Computing Depreciation with the Declining-Balance Method

Learning Objective 3

Compute depreciation using the declining-balance method.

The **declining-balance (DB) method** is based on the theory that depreciation is greatest in the first year and less in each succeeding year.

STEPS to Compute Depreciation, Using the DB Method

1. Divide 100% by the estimated years of useful life to determine the **basic depreciation rate.**
2. Multiply the basic depreciation rate by 2 **(double-declining-balance)** or by 1.5 **(150%-declining-balance)** to determine the **declining-balance depreciation rate.**
3. Multiply the declining-balance depreciation rate by the book value of the asset at the beginning of the year to determine the depreciation amount for that year. (For the first year, the book value at the beginning of the year equals the asset cost. Do not subtract the scrap value.)

Step 3 is repeated each year, using the new (declined) book value (last year's beginning book value minus last year's depreciation amount). The same rate is used each year. The declining-balance rate continues to apply until the scrap value is reached. The item may not be depreciated below its scrap value.

EXAMPLE F

Use the declining-balance method with an annual double-declining balance to depreciate the office computer in example A.

STEP 1 100% ÷ 5 years = 20%

STEP 2 20% × 2 = 40% annual double-declining-balance rate.

Year		Beginning Book Value	Rate	STEP 3 Depreciation
1		$12,500	× 40% =	$5,000
2	$12,500 − $5,000 =	7,500	× 40% =	3,000
3	7,500 − 3,000 =	4,500	× 40% =	1,800
4	4,500 − 1,800 =	2,700	× 40% =	1,080
5	2,700 − 1,080 =	1,620	× 40% =	648
6	1,620 − 648 =	972	× 40% =	388.80 $72*

*As book value ($972) is larger than estimated scrap value ($900), there is some depreciation in the sixth year. However, the calculated depreciation ($388.80) is greater than book value minus scrap value ($972 − $900 = $72). Thus, depreciation is limited to the smaller amount, $72.

CONCEPT CHECK 18.2

On January 1, Oakdale Appliances bought a new delivery truck for $48,000. Oakdale's accountant estimated a truck life of 4 years and a scrap value of $4,000. Compute the depreciation for the first 2 years using the 150%-declining-balance method.

$48,000 cost

100% ÷ 4 years = 25%

25% × 1.5 = 37.5% annual 150%-declining-balance rate

Year 1: $48,000 × 37.5% = $18,000 depreciation
$48,000 − $18,000 = $30,000 book value

Year 2: $30,000 × 37.5% = $11,250 depreciation

Computing Depreciation with the Sum-of-the-Years-Digits Method

The **sum-of-the-years-digits (SYD) method** also is used to compute a greater depreciation amount in the earlier years of an asset's life. The book value decreases more slowly than under the declining-balance method. This method's name comes from the calculation done in Step 1.

Learning Objective 4

Compute depreciation using the sum-of-the-years-digits method.

STEPS to Compute Depreciation Using the SYD method

1. Compute the sum of all the year's digits in the estimated life of the asset. Use this shortcut formula:

   $$\frac{(n + 1) \times n}{2},$$

   where n = number of years in the estimated life.
2. Determine the current year's depreciation fraction by using this formula: Estimated years of life remaining at the beginning of the current year ÷ Sum of all digits from Step 1.
3. Multiply the total depreciation amount (Cost − SV) of the asset by the depreciation fraction from Step 2 to determine depreciation for the current year.

Note that each year a new depreciation fraction from Step 2 is determined and Step 3 is repeated. The sum of all digits in Step 1 and the total depreciation amount in Step 3 are the same every year.

EXAMPLE G

Under the sum-of-the-years-digits method, the office computer in example A would be depreciated as follows:

STEP 1 $$\frac{(5 + 1) \times 5}{2} = 15 \text{ (or } 1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 = 15)$$

	STEP 2		Depreciation		STEP 3
Year	**Fraction**		**Total Amount**		**Depreciation**
1	$\frac{5}{15}$	×	$11,600	=	$ 3,866.67
2	$\frac{4}{15}$	×	11,600	=	3,093.33
3	$\frac{3}{15}$	×	11,600	=	2,320.00
4	$\frac{2}{15}$	×	11,600	=	1,546.67
5	$\frac{1}{15}$	×	11,600	=	+ 773.33
				Total depreciation	$11,600.00

CONCEPT CHECK 18.3

On January 1, Oakdale Appliances bought a new delivery truck for $48,000. Oakdale's accountant estimated a truck life of 4 years and a scrap value of $4,000. Compute the depreciation for the first 2 years using the sum-of-the-years-digits method.

$48,000 cost − $4,000 SV = $44,000 to be depreciated

$$\frac{(4 + 1) \times 4}{2} = 10 \text{ (or } 1 + 2 + 3 + 4 = 10)$$

Year 1: $\frac{4}{10} \times \$44,000 = \$17,600$ depreciation   Year 2: $\frac{3}{10} \times \$44,000 = \$13,200$ depreciation

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Computing Depreciation with the Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System

Learning Objective 5

Compute depreciation for income tax purposes using the Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System (MACRS).

Businesses use the depreciation methods previously described for financial reporting. However, federal tax laws regulate how depreciation must be taken for income tax purposes. The IRS requires that the **Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System (MACRS)** be used for depreciation of property purchased and put into service after 1986. MACRS "recovers" the entire cost of depreciable property over the allowable period. No scrap value is permitted.

For common business assets, MACRS provides depreciation periods of 3, 5, 7, 10, 15, and 20 years. Examples of assets from each of these categories are as follows:

3 years:	Property with a life of 4 years or less—some types of equipment used for research and development, some machine tools, some tractors, and racehorses more than 2 years old when placed in service
5 years:	Property with a life of 4 to 10 years—computers, automobiles and taxis, office machines, certain telephone equipment, and trucks and buses
7 years:	Property with a life of 10 to 15 years—office furniture and fixtures, some agricultural and horticultural structures, and commercial airplanes
10 years:	Property with a life of 16 to 19 years—tugboats, vessels, and barges
15 years:	Property with a life of 20 to 24 years—this category usually contains certain municipal, public utility, and telephone distribution plants
20 years:	Property with a life of 25 or more years—farm buildings and certain municipal infrastructure items such as sewers

Figure 18-1 shows IRS annual percentages used to compute depreciation by MACRS. Straight-line depreciation is required for real property such as stores, manufacturing plants, and warehouses. Tables for these types of properties can be found on the IRS website.

EXAMPLE H

Use the MACRS Depreciation Schedule shown in Figure 18-1 to depreciate the office computer in example A for tax purposes.

Year	Rate (%)		Cost		Depreciation (Rounded)	Beginning Book Value		Current Depreciation		Ending Book Value
1	20.00	×	$12,500	=	$2,500	$12,500	−	$2,500	=	$10,000
2	32.00	×	12,500	=	4,000	10,000	−	4,000	=	6,000
3	19.20	×	12,500	=	2,400	6,000	−	2,400	=	3,600
4	11.52	×	12,500	=	1,440	3,600	−	1,440	=	2,160
5	11.52	×	12,500	=	1,440	2,160	−	1,440	=	720
6	5.76	×	12,500	=	720	720	−	720	=	0

CONCEPT CHECK 18.4

On April 10, Oakdale Appliances bought a new delivery truck for $48,000. Compute the depreciation for the first year and for the second year using the MACRS table (5-year class).

MACRS depreciation first year: $48,000 × 20.00% = $9,600 (MACRS percentage for the first year is applicable to a partial or full year.)

MACRS depreciation second year: $48,000 × 32.00% = $15,360

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Figure 18-1 MACRS Depreciation Schedule

	Appropriate Percentage					
Year	**3-Year Class**	**5-Year Class**	**7-Year Class**	**10-Year Class**	**15-Year Class**	**20-Year Class**
1	33.33	20.00	14.29	10.00	5.00	3.750
2	44.45	32.00	24.49	18.00	9.50	7.219
3	14.81	19.20	17.49	14.40	8.55	6.677
4	7.41	11.52	12.49	11.52	7.70	6.177
5		11.52	8.93	9.22	6.93	5.713
6		5.76	8.92	7.37	6.23	5.285
7			8.93	6.55	5.90	4.888
8			4.46	6.55	5.90	4.522
9				6.56	5.91	4.462
10				6.55	5.90	4.461
11				3.28	5.91	4.462
12					5.90	4.461
13					5.91	4.462
14					5.90	4.461
15					5.91	4.462
16					2.95	4.461
17						4.462
18						4.461
19						4.462
20						4.461
21						2.231

Note: The MACRS percentage for the first year is applicable to a partial or full year.

Computing Partial-Year Depreciation

Learning Objective 6

Compute partial-year depreciation using the five different primary depreciation methods covered.

Frequently, businesses are faced with the need to compute depreciation for only part of the year. Partial-year depreciation can be computed with any of the methods described in this chapter.

With the straight-line method, compute the depreciation amount for a partial year by dividing the annual depreciation amount by 12 and then multiplying that result by the number of months of use.

With the units-of-production method, simply multiply the number of units (miles or hours) used by the per-unit amount.

With the declining-balance method, find the current year's annual depreciation and then divide by 12; multiply that result by the number of months of use.

With the sum-of-the-years-digits method, first consider the overlapping years. To find the annual depreciation for the first partial year, divide by 12 and multiply the result by the number of months of use. From then on, every year will include the remaining fraction of the prior year's depreciation and the partial-year depreciation for the remainder of the current year.

MACRS tables automatically consider partial-year depreciation for the first and last years regardless of the date the item was placed in service.

EXAMPLE I

Office furniture costing $18,000 and put in use on May 1 is expected to have a useful life of 10 years. Its estimated resale value is $1,500. Using each of the four appropriate methods, compute the depreciation expense for May 1 through December 31 of the first tax year and all 12 months of the second year.

©Angel_Vasilev77/Shutterstock.Com

Method	**Year**	**Calculation (rounded to the nearest dollar)**	
SL	1st	$(\$18{,}000 - \$1{,}500) \div 10 \times \frac{8}{12} = \$1{,}100$	
	2nd	$(\$18{,}000 - \$1{,}500) \div 10 = \$1{,}650$	
DB (200%)	1st	$\left(\frac{100\%}{10}\right) \times 2 \times \$18{,}000 \times \frac{8}{12} = \$2{,}400$	
	2nd	$(\$18{,}000 - \$2{,}400) \times 20\% = \$3{,}120$	
SYD	1st	$\frac{(10 + 1) \times 10}{2} = 55$	
		$(\$18{,}000 - \$1{,}500) \times \frac{10}{55} \times \frac{8}{12} = \$2{,}000$	
	2nd	$(\$18{,}000 - \$1{,}500) \times \frac{10}{55} \times \frac{4}{12} = \$1{,}000$	$2,800
		$(\$18{,}000 - \$1{,}500) \times \frac{9}{55} \times \frac{8}{12} = \$1{,}800$	
MACRS	1st	$\$18{,}000 \times 14.29\% = \$2{,}572.20$	
(7-year class)	2nd	$\$18{,}000 \times 24.49\% = \$4{,}408.20$	

CONCEPT CHECK 18.5

In October, Oakdale Appliances bought a new mid-size van for $38,000. It had an estimated scrap value of $5,000 and a useful life of 5 years. Compute the depreciation expense for the 3 months of the first year and for the full second year, using the 150%-declining-balance and the sum-of-the-years-digits methods.

$\$38{,}000$ cost $-$ $\$5{,}000$ scrap value $=$ $\$33{,}000$ to be depreciated

Declining Balance

$100\% \div 5 \text{ years} \times 1.5 = 30\%$ $\quad 30\% \times \$38{,}000 = \$11{,}400$

Year 1: $\$11{,}400 \times \frac{3}{12} = \$2{,}850$ (3 months) $\quad$ Year 2: $(\$38{,}000 - \$2{,}850) \times 30\% = \$10{,}545$ (full year)

Sum of the Years Digits

$\frac{(5 + 1) \times 5}{2} = 15 \text{ (or } 1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 = 15)$ $\quad \frac{5}{15} \times \$33{,}000 = \$11{,}000$

Year 1: $\$11{,}000 \times \frac{3}{12} = \$2{,}750$ (3 months) $\quad$ Year 2: $\$11{,}000 \times \frac{9}{12} = \$8{,}250$ (9 months)

$\frac{4}{15} \times \$33{,}000 = \$8{,}800$

$\$8{,}800 \times \frac{3}{12} = \$2{,}200$ (3 months)

$\$8{,}250 + \$2{,}200 = \$10{,}450$ in year 2

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 18.1 AND 18.2.

Chapter Terms for Review

accumulated depreciation

basic depreciation rate

book value

declining-balance (DB) method

declining-balance depreciation rate

depreciation

double-declining-balance

estimated service life

Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System (MACRS)

obsolescence

150%-declining-balance

original cost

scrap value (SV)

straight-line (SL) method

sum-of-the-years-digits (SYD) method

units-of-production method

THE BOTTOM LINE

Review of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
18.1 Compute depreciation using the straight-line method.	1. On January 1, 2015, the local Pepsi-Cola bottling franchise purchased a bottling machine for $320,000. Freight was added for $12,000. The cost of installation was $68,000. It was estimated that the machine had a useful life span of five years, after which there would be no resale value. Using the straight-line method, determine the annual amount of depreciation.
18.2 Compute depreciation using the units-of-production method.	2. The Yellow Cab Company bought a new taxi for $42,000 and estimated its useful life to be 200,000 miles, after which it would have a scrap value of $2,000. Compute the depreciation for the first 7 months if the vehicle had been driven 37,600 miles.
18.3 Compute depreciation using the declining-balance method.	3. For $56,000, a Gap clothing store bought display racks with an estimated life of 20 years and a scrap value of $4,000. After 3 years, this store closed and sold the display racks for $32,000. If the racks were depreciated by the declining-balance method (150% annual rate), how much less than the book value did the company receive? Round to the nearest dollar.
18.4 Compute depreciation using the sum-of-the-years-digits method.	4. A local Ford dealership purchased, for $85,900, a hydraulic lift unit with an estimated life of 8 years and a scrap value of $4,000. Compute the depreciation for each of the first 2 years using the sum-of-the-digits method. Round to the nearest dollar.
18.5 Compute depreciation for income tax purposes, using the Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System (MACRS).	5. Bank One bought new printers in July for $12,000. Using the MACRS method (5-year class), show the rate, depreciation, and ending book value for the first 2 years.
18.6 Compute partial-year depreciation using the five different primary depreciation methods covered.	6. On October 1, 2014, Holiday Market bought and installed a new cash register for $1,400. It has an estimated service life of 6 years and an estimated scrap value of $200. The company decided to use the straight-line method of depreciation. What was the depreciation for 2014? What was it for 2015?

Answers: **1.** $80,000 **2.** $7,520 **3.** $12,321 **4.** First year: $18,200; Second year: $15,925 **5.** First year: 20.00% rate, $2,400 depreciation, $9,600 EBV; Second year: 32.00% rate, $3,840 depreciation, $5,760 EBV **6.** 2014: $50; 2015: $200

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 18

1 Determine the annual declining-balance depreciation rate to be used for each of the following:

a. 150% declining balance, 12-year life __________

b. 200% declining balance, 8-year life __________

c. 150% declining balance, 5-year life __________

d. 200% declining balance, 5-year life __________

2 What fraction is to be used each year for sum-of-the-years-digits depreciation for an asset with a useful life of 4 years? __________

3 For which depreciation method(s) is salvage value *not* subtracted to calculate depreciation? __________

4 Rahani Construction Company purchased construction equipment for $116,000 at the beginning of the year. It is estimated that the equipment will have a useful life of 12 years and will have a scrap value of $8,000.

a. Calculate the annual depreciation if Rahani uses straight-line depreciation. __________

b. Calculate the book value of the equipment at the end of 5 years, assuming that Rahani uses straight-line depreciation. __________

c. Compute the depreciation for the first year ending December 31 if Rahani purchased the equipment September 1. __________

d. Determine the depreciation per hour if Rahani uses the straight-line method based on 120,000 hours of useful life and an $8,000 scrap value. __________

e. Using the rate determined in (d), what is the depreciation for the year if the equipment is used for 2,360 hours? __________

5 Austin Manufacturing uses the double-declining-balance method of depreciation. A piece of equipment costing $37,500 has an estimated useful life of 5 years and an estimated scrap value of $2,700.

a. Compute the amount of depreciation taken in the second year. __________

b. What is the book value at the end of the second year? __________

6 Young Manufacturing uses the sum-of-the-years-digits method of depreciation. Equipment costing $37,500 has an estimated life of 5 years and an estimated scrap value of $2,700.

a. Compute the amount of depreciation expense for the second year. __________

b. What is the book value at the end of the second year? __________

7 Calculate the depreciation expense for tax purposes using MACRS for each asset. Use Figure 18-1 on page 358 to determine the proper life and rate for each asset. (Round to the nearest dollar.)

a. Computer equipment purchased this year for $5,200. __________

b. Office furniture purchased 2 years ago for $8,500. (This is the third year.) __________

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 18.1: Business Depreciation

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 1 2 3 4

A **(30 points) Solve the following depreciation problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

1. A pharmaceutical company has testing machines on which it calculates depreciation by the straight-line method. The following table shows cost, estimated life, years used, and scrap value for each machine. Find the annual depreciation, total depreciation, and book value after the indicated number of years of use. ($\frac{1}{2}$ point for each correct answer)

	Original Cost	Estimated Life (years)	Years Used	Scrap Value	Annual Depreciation	Total Depreciation to Date	Book Value
a.	60,000	10	8	$3,000	____________	____________	____________
b.	100,000	6	3	$10,000	____________	____________	____________
c.	168,000	8	5	$12,000	____________	____________	____________
d.	69,200	5	1	none	____________	____________	____________

2. Speedy Delivery Service bought two new trucks. The following table shows the cost, scrap value, estimated life (in miles), and mileage for the first year. Using the straight-line method based on mileage driven, compute the first year's depreciation and the book value at the end of the first year for each truck. (2 points for each correct depreciation amount and 1 point for each correct book value)

	Original Cost	Scrap Value	Estimated Life (miles)	Mileage for First Year	Depreciation for First Year	Book Value after 1 Year
a.	$49,500	$1,500	150,000	21,700	____________	____________
b.	$23,000	$ 600	80,000	15,300	____________	____________

3. Dole Fruit Company's equipment cost $107,000. Its useful life is estimated to be 15 years, and its scrap value is $2,000. The company uses straight-line depreciation. (2 points for each correct answer)

a. What is the annual depreciation? ____________

b. What is the book value of the equipment at the end of 14 years? ____________

4. Carlucci and Sons purchased a machine for $13,645 at the beginning of the year. Additional costs included $250 freight and $175 for installation. It was estimated that the machine could be operated for 30,000 hours, after which its resale value would be $570. Determine the straight-line depreciation based on hours of operation and the book value at the end of each of the first 7 years. (1 point for each correct answer)

Year	Hours of Operation	Depreciation	Book Value
1	2,300	________	________
2	2,750	________	________
3	2,500	________	________
4	2,480	________	________
5	2,800	________	________
6	3,100	________	________
7	2,950	________	________

____

Score for A (30)

B **(56 points) Solve the following depreciation problems. Round dollar amounts to two decimal places. (points for correct answers as marked)**

5. Anderson Tool and Die Company owns a group of machines, the details of which are shown in the following table. Anderson uses the double-declining-balance method of calculating depreciation. Compute the depreciation for the specific years indicated. (2 points for each correct answer)

	Original Cost	Estimated Life (years)	Scrap Value	Year	Depreciation	Year	Depreciation
a.	$32,000	16	$1,200	1	________	3	________
b.	$25,800	5	$3,000	3	________	5	________
c.	$ 8,000	4	$ 300	2	________	3	________
d.	$15,000	10	—	3	________	5	________
e.	$12,600	8	$1,200	2	________	4	________
f.	$95,000	20	—	3	________	5	________

6. Machinery purchased from Telecom, Inc., by Blazedales cost $69,800. Depreciation was determined by the double-declining-balance method for an estimated life of 16 years. Compute the following:

a. Book value after 4 years (8 points): ___________

b. Total depreciation after 6 years (4 points): ___________

7. The Dugan Manufacturing Company bought an engine for $36,000. The engine had an estimated life of 10 years and a scrap value of $5,250. After 6 years, the company went out of business and sold the engine for $8,200. If the machine was depreciated by the double-declining-balance method, how much did the company lose on the sale (the difference between the book value and the selling price)? (20 points) ___________

____

Score for B (56)

C **(14 points) Solve the following depreciation problems. (1 point for each correct answer)**

8. The Western Salvage Service bought three trucks. The following table shows the cost, estimated life, and resale estimate for each truck. Use the sum-of-the-years-digits method to find each truck's depreciation for the first and second years of use. Round answers to the nearest dollar.

	Original Cost	Estimated Life	Resale Estimate	Depreciation for First Year	Depreciation for Second Year
a.	$36,000	6 yr	$6,000	__________	__________
b.	$50,000	5 yr	$2,000	__________	__________
c.	$60,000	7 yr	12,000	__________	__________

9. Use the information in problem 8b to compute the amount of depreciation for years 3–5.

Year 3: __________

Year 4: __________

Year 5: __________

10. Use the information in problem 8 to compute the amount of depreciation for each vehicle for the first 2 years using the straight-line method. Round to the nearest dollar.

a. __________ **b.** __________ **c.** __________

11. Which method of depreciation would give the smaller amount of write-off, and how much less would it be for the three vehicles for the first 2 years? __________ __________

Score for C (14)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 18.2: Business Depreciation

Name ______________________________

Date ______________ Score ______________

Learning Objectives **1** **4** **5** **6**

A **(43 points) Solve the following depreciation problems. Round dollar amounts to two decimal places. (points for correct answers as marked)**

1. An architect bought drafting equipment for $15,000. Its estimated life was 6 years, and its scrap value was $600. At the end of 4 years, the equipment wears out and is sold for scrap for $450. (4 points for each correct answer)

a. By the straight-line method, how much difference is there between the book value and the cash value of the equipment on the date of the sale? __________

b. In April 2012, a computer and software costing $18,000 are purchased. Its estimated life is 5 years. What is the book value of the new computing equipment on December 31, 2013? Use MACRS. __________

2. E, F, and G were partners in a small textile company. They spent $54,000 for equipment that they agreed would last 8 years and have a resale value of 5% of cost. The three partners couldn't agree on the depreciation method to use. E was in favor of using the double-declining-balance system, F insisted on the 150%-declining-balance method, and G was sure that the sum-of-the-years-digits method would be better. Show the depreciation for the first 4 years for each method in the following table. At the end of 4 years, what would be the book value under each of the three methods? (2 points for each correct depreciation amount, 1 point for each correct total, and 1 point for the correct book value)

Year	Double-DB	150%-DB	SYD
1	__________	__________	__________
2	__________	__________	__________
3	__________	__________	__________
4	__________	__________	__________
Total	__________	__________	__________
Book value	__________	__________	__________

3. Baxter Company owned assets that cost $240,000. Depreciation was figured at a straight-line rate of 6.25% per year. After 12 years, the company sold the assets for $150,000. How much greater was the selling price than the book value at the time of the sale? (5 points) __________

____

Score for A (43)

B (57 points) Solve the following depreciation problems. (points for correct answers as marked)

4. On March 1, Jarvis Realty spent $16,000 for a new company car with an estimated life of 4 years and an estimated scrap value of $4,000. Jarvis Realty elected to use the straight-line method for depreciation. On the same date, Carter Realty bought an identical car at the same price and also estimated the car's life and scrap value to be 4 years and $4,000, respectively. Carter Realty, however, chose the sum-of-the-years-digits method for depreciation.

a. At the end of the first year (10 months of use) and second year, how much depreciation did each company calculate? (3 points for each correct answer)

Jarvis:	Year 1	________	Carter:	Year 1	________
	Year 2	________		Year 2	________

b. At the end of the second year, which company had more recorded accumulated depreciation, and what was the difference in the amounts? (5 points) ______________________

c. True or false: At the end of the fourth year, Carter Realty will have recorded more accumulated depreciation than Jarvis Realty. Explain your answer. (4 points) ________

5. In May 2010, Jian & Ming bought a light-duty truck for $20,800. One year later, they bought an additional truck for $21,800. In June 2012, a third truck was purchased for $23,500. Use MACRS (5-year class) to determine the total allowable cost recovery for 2012. (12 points) ________

6. David Marcus purchased new office furniture July 15, 2011, for $28,100. Use MACRS (7-year class) to show the rate, depreciation, and beginning and ending book values for 2011, 2012, and 2013. Round to the nearest dollar. (2 points for each correct answer)

Year	Rate		Cost		Depreciation	Beginning Book Value	Ending Book Value
2011	________	×	$28,100	=	________	________	________
2012	________	×	$28,100	=	________	________	________
2013	________	×	$28,100	=	________	________	________

____
Score for B (57)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

19

Financial Statements

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1 Analyze balance sheets, comparing items and periods.

Learning Objective 2 Analyze income statements, comparing items and periods.

Learning Objective 3 Compute commonly used business operating ratios.

Financial statements provide information that allows owners, managers, and others interested in a business to evaluate its current condition and past operating results. Two important financial statements are the balance sheet and income statement. The **balance sheet** shows the current condition of a business at a definite point in time. It lists what a business owns **(assets),** how much it owes **(liabilities),** and the difference between the two **(net worth),** usually referred to as owners' or shareholders' equity. The **income statement** shows the past operating results for a given period of time. It lists the revenues, the expenses, and the net income or loss for the period.

Financial statement data are typically analyzed three ways. The first, called *horizontal analysis*, is a comparison of data from year to year. This analysis shows the dollar amount of change and the percent of change for each item on the statement from one year to the next. The second, called *vertical analysis*, compares all other data on a statement with one figure for that same year. On the balance sheet, for example, each asset, liability, and equity amount is calculated as a percent of total assets (or total liabilities and owners' equity). The third type of analysis compares selected related data for the year such as current assets to current liabilities. These analyses are used by managers, owners, investors, creditors, and others to help them analyze data and make decisions concerning the business.

Analyzing Balance Sheets

Learning Objective 1

Analyze balance sheets, comparing items and periods.

On a balance sheet, total assets must always equal total liabilities plus owners' or shareholders' equity. Balance sheets are analyzed to compare individual items with other items and with the same item on different dates, usually 1 year apart. Many businesses use the form of balance sheet illustrated in Figure 19-1.

Figure 19-1 Balance Sheet

THE SKI CHALET

Balance Sheet as of December 31, 2015 and 2014

	2015 Amount	2015 Percent	2014 Amount	2014 Percent	Increase/Decrease Amount	Increase/Decrease Percent
ASSETS						
Current assets:						
Cash	$ 90,000	12.64%	$ 86,000	13.15%	$ 4,000	4.65%
Accounts receivable	134,000	18.82%	98,000	14.98%	36,000	36.73%
Notes receivable	28,000	3.93%	32,000	4.89%	(4,000)	−12.50%
Merchandise inventory	180,000	25.28%	148,000	22.63%	32,000	21.62%
Total current assets	$432,000	60.67%	$364,000	55.66%	$ 68,000	18.68%
Fixed assets:						
Equipment	$220,000	30.90%	$190,000	29.05%	$ 30,000	15.79%
Less depreciation	(60,000)	−8.43%	(50,000)	−7.65%	(10,000)	20.00%
Equipment net	$160,000	22.47%	$140,000	21.41%	$ 20,000	14.29%
Buildings	300,000	42.13%	300,000	45.87%	—	0.00%
Less depreciation	(180,000)	−25.28%	(150,000)	−22.94%	(30,000)	−20.00%
Buildings net	$120,000	16.85%	$150,000	22.94%	$(30,000)	−20.00%
Total fixed assets	$280,000	39.33%	$290,000	44.34%	$(10,000)	−3.45%
TOTAL ASSETS	$712,000	100.00%	$654,000	100.00%	$ 58,000	8.87%

Figure 19-1 Balance Sheet (*continued*)

	2015 Amount	2015 Percent	2014 Amount	2014 Percent	Increase/Decrease Amount	Increase/Decrease Percent
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY						
Current liabilities:						
Accounts payable	$ 18,000	2.53%	$ 24,000	3.67%	$ (6,000)	−25.00%
Accrued payroll	38,000	5.34%	30,000	4.59%	8,000	26.67%
Payroll taxes payable	6,000	0.84%	4,000	0.61%	2,000	50.00%
Notes payable	42,000	5.90%	48,000	7.34%	(6,000)	−12.50%
Total current liabilities	$104,000	14.61%	$106,000	16.21%	$ (2,000)	−1.89%
Long-term liabilities:						
Mortgage payable	$ 90,000	12.64%	$120,000	18.35%	$(30,000)	−25.00%
Notes payable (over 1 year)	36,000	5.06%	30,000	4.59%	6,000	20.00%
Total long-term liabilities	$126,000	17.70%	$150,000	22.94%	$(24,000)	−16.00%
Total liabilities	$230,000	32.30%	$256,000	39.14%	$(26,000)	−10.16%
Shareholders' equity:						
Common stock	$359,000	50.42%	$359,000	54.89%	—	0.00%
Retained earnings	123,000	17.28%	39,000	5.96%	84,000	215.38%
Total shareholders' equity	$482,000	67.70%	$398,000	60.86%	$ 84,000	21.11%
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY	$712,000	100.00%	$654,000	100.00%	$ 58,000	8.87%

In Figure 19-1, the amounts for various items such as cash and accounts payable are compared to total assets and total liabilities and shareholders' equity. Also, the amounts for 2015 are compared to the corresponding amounts for 2014, and the amounts and percents of increase or decrease are shown. When two statements are compared, the earlier period, usually the prior year, is *always* used as the base. The changes in balance sheet items between two periods measure the growth or decline of the business.

The first step in analyzing a balance sheet is to compute the percent each item is of the total assets or of the total liabilities and shareholders' equity (net worth). For example, the percent of cash for 2015 is calculated by dividing the amount of cash for 2015 by the total assets for 2015 and then converting the resulting decimal answer to a percent ($90,000 ÷ $712,000 = 0.1264 = 12.64%).

The second step is to compute the amount and percent of change between the two dates being compared. The amount of change in cash from 2014 to 2015 is calculated by subtracting the cash amounts for the two years ($90,000 − $86,000 = $4,000 increase). Increases are shown as positive numbers. Decreases, negative changes, are shown in parentheses. The percent of change in cash is calculated by dividing the amount of change by the prior year's amount ($4,000 ÷ $86,000 = 0.0465 = 4.65%).

Note three facts:

1. The totals for assets equal the totals for liabilities and shareholders' equity.
2. The percent listed for each item under assets is of the total assets; the percent listed for each item under liabilities and shareholders' equity is of the total liabilities and shareholders' equity.
3. The percent of increase or decrease between the two years is based on 2014, the *earlier* year.

CONCEPT CHECK 19.1

In its next year, 2016, The Ski Chalet had total assets of $720,000, total liabilities of $245,000, cash of $123,000, and mortgage payable of $60,000. Determine the following amounts and percents:

a. What was its total shareholders' equity in 2016?
$720,000 − $245,000 = $475,000

b. What was its balance sheet percent of cash?
$123,000 ÷ $720,000 = 17.08%

c. What was its balance sheet percent of mortgage payable?
$60,000 ÷ $720,000 = 8.33%

d. What was its percent of increase in cash?
($123,000 − $90,000) ÷ $90,000 = 36.67%

e. What was its percent of decrease in mortgage payable?
($90,000 − $60,000) ÷ $90,000 = 33.33%

Analyzing Income Statements

Learning Objective 2

Analyze income statements, comparing items and periods.

The income statement shows revenue, expenses, and the difference between the two, or net income. Income statements are analyzed by comparing all other statement items with the **net revenue,** which is total revenue less any returns and allowances. Net revenue (frequently called net sales) is always 100%. All other items on the income statement are reported as a percent of net revenue/sales. The resulting percents are extremely important for all businesspeople. They are compared to budgeted amounts, to percents for competing businesses, and to percents for past periods.

Figure 19-2 shows a typical income statement for 1 year, in which dollar amounts are converted to percents based on net sales. Percents are rounded to two decimal places, and dollar amounts are rounded to the nearest whole dollar. Cents are seldom used in reporting annual figures.

Figure 19-2 Income Statement

THE SKI CHALET
Income Statement for Year Ended
December 31, 2015

	2015 Amount	2015 Percent
Revenue from sales:		
Sales	$988,900	101.43%
Less returns	13,900	1.43%
NET SALES	$975,000	100.00%

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Figure 19-2 Income Statement (*continued*)

	2015 Amount	2015 Percent
Cost of goods sold:		
Inventory, January 1	$148,000	15.18%
Purchases	440,000	45.13%
Available for sale	$588,000	60.31%
Inventory, December 31	180,000	18.46%
Cost of goods sold	$408,000	41.85%
Gross profit on sales	$567,000	58.15%
Operating expenses:		
Salary and benefits	$290,000	29.74%
Rent and utilities	62,000	6.36%
Advertising	32,400	3.32%
Depreciation	40,000	4.10%
Equipment and supplies	15,800	1.62%
Administrative	12,500	1.28%
Total operating expense	$452,700	46.43%
Income before tax	$114,300	11.72%
Income tax	30,300	3.11%
NET INCOME	$ 84,000	8.62%

Most businesses want to compare the operations of the current year with those of the preceding year. The statement shown in Figure 19-3 has information for both the current year and the preceding year. It also shows the amount and percent of increase or decrease from the preceding year.

Figure 19-3 Comparative Income Statement

THE SKI CHALET

Income Statement for the Years Ended
December 31, 2015 and 2014

	2015 Amount	2015 Percent	2014 Amount	2014 Percent	Difference	
					Amount	Percent
Revenue from sales:						
Sales	$988,900	101.43%	$850,000	104.81%	$138,900	16.34%
Less returns	13,900	1.43%	39,000	4.81%	(25,100)	−64.36%
NET SALES	$975,000	100.00%	$811,000	100.00%	$164,000	20.22%
Cost of goods sold:						
Inventory, January 1	$148,000	15.18%	$152,000	18.74%	$ (4,000)	−2.63%
Purchases	440,000	45.13%	379,000	46.73%	61,000	16.09%
Available for sale	$588,000	60.31%	$531,000	65.47%	$ 57,000	10.73%
Inventory, December 31	180,000	18.46%	148,000	18.25%	32,000	21.62%
Cost of goods sold	$408,000	41.85%	$383,000	47.23%	$ 25,000	6.53%
Gross profit on sales	$567,000	58.15%	$428,000	52.77%	$139,000	32.48%

Figure 19-3 Comparative Income Statement (*continued*)

	2015 Amount	2015 Percent	2014 Amount	2014 Percent	Difference Amount	Difference Percent
Operating expenses:						
Salary and benefits	$290,000	29.74%	$242,000	29.84%	$48,000	19.83%
Rent and utilities	62,000	6.36%	61,400	7.57%	600	0.98%
Advertising	32,400	3.32%	25,700	3.17%	6,700	26.07%
Depreciation	40,000	4.10%	32,000	3.95%	8,000	25.00%
Equipment and supplies	15,800	1.62%	10,300	1.27%	5,500	53.40%
Administrative	12,500	1.28%	14,200	1.75%	(1,700)	−11.97%
Total operating expense	$452,700	46.43%	$385,600	47.55%	$67,100	17.40%
Income before tax	$114,300	11.72%	$42,400	5.23%	$71,900	169.58%
Income tax	30,300	3.11%	24,400	3.01%	5,900	24.18%
NET INCOME	$ 84,000	8.62%	$18,000	2.22%	$66,000	366.67%

Another analysis carried out by many businesses is a comparison between actual results and budgeted figures. Owners and managers note differences between budgeted and actual amounts and make adjustments where necessary. Most businesses and virtually all government entities use monthly and annual budgets to guide and monitor their operations. Figure 19-4 illustrates a monthly and year-to-date budget comparison at the end of June, the sixth month of the year.

To find the percent change, the budgeted amount is subtracted from the actual amount and the difference is divided by the *budgeted* amount.

Figure 19-4 Monthly/Year-to-Date Budget Comparison

THE SKI CHALET

Income Statement for the Month and the
Six-Month Period Ended June 30, 2015

	June 2015				Six Months Year-to-Date			
	Budget	Actual	Amount Difference	Percent Difference	Budget	Actual	Amount Difference	Percent Difference
Revenue from sales:								
Sales	$85,000	$86,500	$ 1,500	1.76%	$510,000	$480,000	$(30,000)	−5.88%
Sales returns	5,000	3,500	(1,500)	−30.00%	10,000	6,000	(4,000)	−40.00%
NET SALES	$80,000	$83,000	$ 3,000	3.75%	$500,000	$474,000	$(26,000)	−5.20%
Cost of goods sold	35,000	38,000	3,000	8.57%	225,000	230,000	5,000	2.22%
Gross profit	$45,000	$45,000	$ —	0.00%	$275,000	$244,000	$(31,000)	−11.27%
Operating expenses	31,000	39,000	8,000	25.81%	185,000	196,000	11,000	5.95%
Income before tax	$14,000	$ 6,000	$(8,000)	−57.14%	$ 90,000	$ 48,000	$(42,000)	−46.67%
Income tax	6,000	1,000	(5,000)	−83.33%	40,000	16,000	(24,000)	−60.00%
NET INCOME	$ 8,000	$ 5,000	$(3,000)	−37.50%	$ 50,000	$ 32,000	$(18,000)	−36.00%

CONCEPT CHECK 19.2

In its next year, 2016, The Ski Chalet had total sales of $1,480,000, net sales of $1,320,000, gross profit of $710,000, and advertising expense of $45,000. In 2016, the company budgeted gross profit of $800,000. Determine the following amounts and percents:

a. Amount of sales returns in 2016
   $1,480,000 − $1,320,000 = $160,000

b. Amount of cost of goods sold in 2016
   $1,320,000 − $710,000 = $610,000

c. Percent of net sales increase from 2015 to 2016
   ($1,320,000 − $975,000) ÷ $975,000 = 35.38%

d. Percent of advertising expense in 2016
   $45,000 ÷ $1,320,000 = 3.41%

e. Difference between percent gross profit and 2016 budgeted amount
   ($710,000 − $800,000) ÷ $800,000 = −11.25%

Computing Business Operating Ratios

Learning Objective 3

Compute commonly used business operating ratios.

In addition to comparing dollar amounts and percents on financial statements, business managers and owners frequently want to study relationships between various items on their income statements and balance sheets. These relationships generally are expressed by ratios. A **ratio** is the relation of one amount to another. Thus the ratio of one dollar to one quarter, or $1 to $0.25, is a ratio of 4 to 1, or 4:1, showing that a dollar is 4 times the value of a quarter.

In analyzing financial statements, six important financial analysis ratios are commonly used: the working capital ratio, the acid test ratio, the ratio of accounts receivable to net sales, the inventory turnover rate, the relation of net income to net sales, and the rate of return on investment (equity).

WORKING CAPITAL RATIO

Working capital and the working capital ratio come from the balance sheet. **Working capital** is the amount of current assets less current liabilities. It tells the amount of current assets that would remain if all the company's current liabilities were paid immediately. The **working capital ratio** shows the relationship between current assets and current liabilities. It calculates the amount of current assets per dollar of current liabilities. The working capital ratio helps the reader of the balance sheet understand how well the company is able to pay its current debts.

Working capital ratio = Total current assets ÷ Total current liabilities

EXAMPLE A

The working capital ratio for The Ski Chalet for 2015 from Figure 19-1 is

$432,000 ÷ $104,000 = 4.2 = 4.2:1

The ratio 4.2 to 1, or 4.2:1, means that the business has $4.20 in current assets to pay for each $1 in current liabilities.

ACID TEST RATIO

The **acid test ratio** is used to determine the relationship between assets that can be quickly turned into cash and current liabilities. Usually, these assets are cash and accounts receivable. **Accounts receivable** are amounts owed to a business for services performed or goods delivered.

Acid test ratio = (Total of cash + Accounts receivable) ÷ Total current liabilities

EXAMPLE B

The acid test ratio for The Ski Chalet for 2015 from Figure 19-1 is computed as follows:

Cash	$ 90,000
Accounts receivable	+134,000
Total cash and receivables	$224,000

$224,000 ÷ $104,000 = 2.2 = 2.2:1

RATIO OF ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE TO NET SALES

When businesses sell on credit, they need to be alert to the amount and quality of their accounts receivable. They need to compare the amount of their current receivables to the amounts for prior years and compare the extent of their receivables to those of similar companies. By computing the **ratio of accounts receivable to net sales** every year, management and investors can keep track of the percent of sales that have not yet been paid for by customers. An increasing ratio over the years can indicate problems with collecting payments and should be investigated.

Ratio of accounts receivable to net sales = Accounts receivable ÷ Net sales

EXAMPLE C

The Ski Chalet ratio for 2015 is

Figure 19-1		Figure 19-3
Accounts receivable $134,000	÷	Net sales $975,000 = 0.137 = 0.14:1

KEVIN TAYLOR / ALAMY

INVENTORY TURNOVER

In retail stores, the cost of inventory often is very high. One way to control inventory costs and increase profit is to maintain a high level of inventory turnover. Recall from Chapter 17 that *inventory turnover* lets management and others know the number of times average inventory is sold during the year. The higher the turnover number, the better is the movement of inventory. Recall also that *average inventory,* found by averaging monthly, quarterly, or yearly inventory amounts, must be computed first. Inventory turnover is given as the number of times instead of as a ratio to 1.

Average inventory = (Beginning inventory + Ending inventory) ÷ 2 (annual)
Inventory turnover = Cost of goods sold ÷ Average inventory

EXAMPLE D

Based on the information given in Figures 19-3 and 19-1, the 2015 inventory turnover for The Ski Chalet is found as follows:

01-Jan		31-Dec
($148,000	+	$180,000) ÷ 2 = $328,000 ÷ 2 = $164,000 average inventory

$408,000 cost of merchandise sold ÷ $164,000 = 2.5 times inventory turnover rate

RELATIONSHIP OF NET INCOME TO NET SALES

An increase in total sales volume doesn't necessarily mean that a business is improving because expenses may be increasing at an equal or greater rate than revenues. Thus, looking at the **relationship of net income to net sales** is important. The relationship is given as a percentage.

Relationship of net income to net sales = Net income ÷ Net sales

EXAMPLE E

Based on information from Figure 19-3, The Ski Chalet's 2015 relationship of net income to net sales is $84,000 ÷ $975,000 = 8.6%. Comparison with the relationship for 2014 of 2.2% ($18,000 ÷ $811,000) indicates an improvement.

RATE OF RETURN ON INVESTMENT

Shareholders and owners want a reasonable return on their investment (equity). A ratio that measures the **rate of return on investment** is the ratio of net income to shareholders'/owners' equity. The rate is given as a percentage.

Rate of return on investment = Net income ÷ Shareholders'/owners' equity

EXAMPLE F

Based on Figures 19-3 and 19-1, the rate of return on the shareholders' investment for The Ski Chalet for 2015 is

$84,000 ÷ $482,000 = 0.1742 = 17.4% rate of return

CONCEPT CHECK 19.3

Deerfield Company's financial statements showed the following:

Cash	$ 85,000	Current liabilities	$320,000	Net sales	$950,000
Accounts receivable	260,000	Total liabilities	560,000	Inventory 1/1/2014	240,000
Total current assets	580,000	Net income	80,000	Inventory 12/31/2014	200,000
Total assets	990,000	Shareholders' equity	430,000	Purchases for 2014	630,000

Using the above numbers, compute the following ratios:

a. Working capital ratio $580,000 ÷ $320,000 = 1.81:1

b. Acid test ratio ($85,000 + $260,000) ÷ $320,000 = 1.08:1

c. Average inventory ($240,000 + $200,000) ÷ 2 = $220,000

d. Inventory turnover $240,000 + $630,000 − $200,000 = $670,000
$670,000 ÷ $220,000 = 3.05 turnovers

e. Net income to net sales ratio $80,000 ÷ $950,000 = 0.084, or 8.4%

f. Rate of return on investment $80,000 ÷ $430,000 = 0.186, or 18.6%

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 19.1, 19.2, AND 19.3.

Chapter Terms for Review

accounts receivable
acid test ratio
assets
balance sheet
financial statements
income statement
liabilities
net revenue
net worth
rate of return on investment
ratio
ratio of accounts receivable to net sales
relationship of net income to net sales
working capital
working capital ratio

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
19.1 Analyze balance sheets, comparing items and periods.	1. A modified balance sheet for The Ski Chalet for December 2015 and 2014 is shown. Compute the percents for 2015 and the percents of increase/decrease between 2015 and 2014.

THE SKI CHALET

Balance Sheet as of
December 31, 2015 and 2014

	2015 Amount	2015 Percent	2014 Amount	2014 Percent	Increase/Decrease Amount	Increase/Decrease Percent
ASSETS						
Current assets:						
Cash	$ 90,000	______	$ 86,000	15.03%	$ 4,000	______
Accounts receivable	134,000	______	98,000	17.13%	36,000	______
Merchandise inventory	180,000	______	148,000	25.87%	32,000	______
Total current assets	$404,000	______	$332,000	58.04%	$ 72,000	______
Fixed assets:						
Equipment	$220,000	______	$190,000	33.22%	$ 30,000	______
Less depreciation	(60,000)	______	(50,000)	−8.74%	(10,000)	______
Equipment net	$160,000	______	$140,000	24.48%	$ 20,000	______
Buildings	100,000	______	100,000	17.48%	—	______
Total fixed assets	$260,000	______	$240,000	41.96%	$ 20,000	______
TOTAL ASSETS	$664,000	______	$572,000	100.00%	$ 92,000	______
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS’ EQUITY						
Current liabilities:						
Accounts payable	$ 18,000	______	$ 24,000	4.20%	$ (6,000)	______
Accrued payroll	38,000	______	30,000	5.24%	8,000	______
Payroll taxes payable	6,000	______	4,000	0.70%	2,000	______
Total current liabilities	$ 62,000	______	$ 58,000	10.14%	$ 4,000	______
Long-term liabilities:						
Mortgage payable	90,000	______	120,000	20.98%	(30,000)	______
Total liabilities	$152,000	______	$178,000	31.12%	$(26,000)	______
Shareholders’ equity:						
Common stock	$359,000	______	$359,000	62.76%	—	______
Retained earnings	135,000	______	35,000	6.12%	18,000	______
Total shareholders’ equity	$512,000	______	$394,000	68.88%	$118,000	______
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS’ EQUITY	$664,000	______	$572,000	100.00%	$ 92,000	______

Answers: **1.** 2015 percent: 13.55%; 20.18%; 27.11%; 60.84%; 33.13%; −9.04%; 24.10%; 15.06%; 39.16%; 100.00%; 2.71%; 5.72%; 0.90%; 9.34%; 13.55%; 22.89%; 54.07%; 23.04%; 77.11%; 100.00%. Increase/decrease percent: 4.65%; 36.73%; 21.62%; 21.69%; 15.79%; 20.00%; 14.29%; 0%; 8.33%; 16.08%; −25.00%; 26.67%; 50.00%; 6.90%; −25.00%; −14.61%; 0%; 51.43%; 29.95%; 16.08%

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
19.2 Analyze income statements, comparing items and periods.	2. A modified income statement for The Ski Chalet for the years 2015 and 2014 is shown. Compute the percents for 2015 and the percents of difference between 2015 and 2014.

THE SKI CHALET

Income Statement for the Years Ended December 31, 2015 and 2014

	2015 Amount	2015 Percent	2014 Amount	2014 Percent	Difference Amount	Difference Percent
Revenue from sales:						
Sales	$988,900		$850,000	104.81%	$138,900	
Less returns	13,900		39,000	4.81%	(25,100)	
NET SALES	$975,000		$811,000	100.00%	$164,000	
Cost of goods sold:						
Inventory, January 1	$148,000		$152,000	18.74%	$ (4,000)	
Purchases	440,000		379,000	46.73%	61,000	
Available for sale	$588,000		$531,000	65.47%	$ 57,000	
Inventory, December 31	180,000		148,000	18.25%	32,000	
Cost of goods sold	$408,000		$383,000	47.23%	$ 25,000	
Gross profit on sales	$567,000		$428,000	52.77%	$139,000	
Operating expenses:						
Salary and benefits	$221,000		$225,000	27.74%	$ (4,000)	
Rent and utilities	62,000		61,400	7.57%	600	
Advertising	32,400		25,700	3.17%	6,700	
Depreciation	40,000		32,000	3.95%	8,000	
Equipment and supplies	15,800		10,300	1.27%	5,500	
Administrative	12,500		14,200	1.75%	(1,700)	
Total operating expense	$383,700		$368,600	45.45%	$ 15,100	
Income before tax	$183,300		$ 59,400	7.32%	$123,900	
Income tax	30,300		24,400	3.01%	5,900	
NET INCOME	$153,000		$ 35,000	4.32%	$118,000	

Learning Objective	Example
19.3 Compute commonly used business operating ratios.	Using the Balance Sheet and Income Statement for 2015 from The Bottom Line problems 1 and 2, compute the following ratios: 3. Acid test 4. Average inventory 5. Net income to net sales 6. Rate of return on investment

Answers: **2.** 2015 percent: 101.43%; 1.43%; 100%; 15.18%; 45.13%; 60.31%; 18.46%; 41.85%; 58.15%; 22.67%; 6.36%; 3.32%; 4.10%; 1.62%; 1.28%; 39.35%; 18.80%; 3.11%; 15.69%. Difference percent: 16.34%; −64.36%; 20.22%; −2.63%; 16.09%; 10.73%; 21.62%; 6.53%; 32.48%; −1.78%; 0.98%; 26.07%; 25.00%; 53.40%; −11.97%; 4.10%; 208.59%; 24.18%; 337.14% **3.** 3.61 **4.** $164,000 **5.** 15.7% **6.** 29.9%

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 19

① Blackburn Construction Company, Inc., had total assets of $620,000 and total liabilities of $335,000 on December 31, 2014. On December 31, 2015, Blackburn Construction has total assets of $712,000 and total liabilities of $330,000.

a. What was the amount of the owners' equity as of December 31, 2014?

b. What is the amount of the owners' equity as of December 31, 2015?

c. Calculate the percent of increase or decrease in total assets, total liabilities, and owners' equity. (Round to two decimal places.)

② Blackburn Construction Company, Inc., had net sales of $460,250 and cost of merchandise sold of $320,600. Compute the gross profit amount and the percent of gross profit based on net sales.

③ The comparative income statement of Benson Electronics, Inc., showed sales of $425,000 in 2013 and $494,450 in 2014. Compute the percent of change in sales. (Round answer to one decimal place.)

④ Calculate the percent of increase or decrease for each of the following balance sheet items. If any percent cannot be calculated, give a brief explanation. (Answers correct to two decimal places.)

	Item	2015	2014	Percent of Increase/Decrease
a.	Cash	$35,000	$30,000	____________
b.	Supplies	1,200	1,600	____________
c.	Notes Receivable	2,000	1,000	____________
d.	Merchandise Inventory	16,500	16,500	____________
e.	Accounts Receivable	1,000	1,500	____________

⑤ Selected figures from the Balance Sheet and the Income Statement of Multimedia, Inc., follow. Use the data to calculate the ratios listed. (Give answers accurate to two decimal places.)

From the Balance Sheet		From the Income Statement	
Cash	$210,734	Net Sales	$244,750
Accounts Receivable	$138,126	Cost of Merchandise Sold	$190,000
Merchandise Inventory:		Net Income	$ 26,406
End of this year	$184,500		
End of last year	$178,300		
Total Current Assets	$533,360		
Total Current Liabilities	$324,152		
Total Stockholders' Equity	$149,000		

a. Working capital ratio ____________

b. Acid test ratio ____________

c. Inventory turnover ____________

d. Rate of return on investment ____________

e. Net income as a percent of sales ____________

f. Ratio of accounts receivable to net sales ____________

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Notes

Assignment 19.1: Balance Sheet Analysis

Name

Date Score

Learning Objective 1

A (50 points) Solve the following balance sheet problems. (points for correct answers as marked)

1. In the following balance sheet, find the percent for each 2015 and 2014 item. Then find the amount and percent of change. Round percents to two decimal places. (1/2 point for each correct answer)

Marston Manufacturing Corporation
Balance Sheet
As of December 31, 2015 and 2014

	2015	2015	2014	2014	Increase/Decrease	
	Amount	**Percent**	**Amount**	**Percent**	**Amount**	**Percent**
ASSETS						
Current assets:						
Cash	$ 365,000		$ 325,000			
Accounts receivable	982,600		872,400			
Inventory	635,700		597,200			
Total current assets	$1,983,300		$1,794,600			
Fixed assets:						
Machinery	$2,965,000		$2,965,000			
Less depreciation	575,00		460,000			
Machinery net	$2,390,000		$2,505,000			
Building	3,500,000		3,200,000			
Land parcel holdings	600,000		500,000			
Total fixed assets	$6,490,000		$6,205,000			
TOTAL ASSETS	$8,473,300		$7,999,600			
LIABILITIES						
Current liabilities:						
Accounts payable	$ 472,800		$ 425,250			
Accrued payroll	125,700		117,000			
Payroll taxes payable	35,850		28,735			
Total current liabilities	$ 634,350		$ 570,985			
Long-term liabilities:						
Mortgages payable	$1,250,000		$1,420,000			
Note payable long term	750,000		650,000			
Total long-term liabilities	$2,000,000		$2,070,000			
Total liabilities	$2,634,350		$2,640,985			
Shareholders' equity:						
Common stock	$3,500,000		$3,450,000			
Preferred stock	750,000		725,000			
Retained earnings	1,588,950		1,183,615			
Total shareholders' equity	$5,838,950		$5,358,615			
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY	$8,473,300		$7,999,600			

2. Marston Manufacturing Corporation's bookkeeper overlooked the fact that, in 2015, $15,000 cash had been paid to employees but not deducted from the cash account. Assume that the balance sheet in problem 1 was adjusted to reflect the correction. (1 point for each correct answer)

a. What would be the adjusted amount for 2015 cash? ________

b. What would be the adjusted amount for 2015 accured payroll? ________

Score for A (50)

B **(50 points) Solve the following balance sheet problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

3. In the following balance sheet, find the percent for each 2015 and 2014 item. Then find the amount and percent of change. Round percents to one decimal place. Note that totals will sometimes be different from individual amounts because of rounding. (1/2 point for each correct answer)

Golden Gate Coffee Company
Balance Sheet
As of December 31, 2015 and 2014

	2015	2015	2014	2014	Increase/Decrease	
	Amount	Percent	Amount	Percent	Amount	Percent
ASSETS						
Current assets:						
Cash	$ 2,697,670		$ 2,429,800			
Accounts receivable	2,658,730		2,766,890			
Inventory	835,600		742,000			
Total current assets	$ 6,192,000		$ 5,938,690			
Fixed assets:						
Equipment	$ 4,289,500		$ 4,168,540			
(Less depreciation)	735,000		576,080			
Machinery net	$ 3,554,500		$ 3,592,460			
Buildings	2,650,000		2,520,000			
Land parcel holdings	987,500		876,500			
Total fixed assets	$ 7,192,000		$ 6,988,960			
TOTAL ASSETS	$13,384,000		$12,927,650			
LIABILITIES						
Current liabilities:						
Accounts payable	$ 2,750,000		$ 2,800,000			
Accrued payroll	98,720		82,420			
Payroll taxes payable	27,468		25,687			
Total current liabilities	$ 2,876,188		$ 2,908,107			
Long-term liabilities:						
Mortgages payable	$ 3,580,000		$ 3,710,500			
Note payable long term	250,000		200,000			
Total long-term liabilities	$ 3,830,000		$ 3,910,500			
Total liabilities	$ 6,706,188		$ 6,818,607			
Shareholders' equity:						
Common stock	$ 4,850,000		$ 4,600,000			
Preferred stock	1,500,000		1,400,000			
Retained earnings	327,812		109,043			
Total shareholders' equity	$ 6,677,812		$ 6,109,043			
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY	$13,384,000		$ 12,927,650			

4. Show what changes would have been made in the cash and preferred stock amount in 2015 if Golden Gate Coffee Company had sold an additional $25,000 in preferred stock. (1/2 point for each correct answer)

	Amount	Percent
Cash		
Preferred Stock		

Score for B (50)

Assignment 19.2: Income Statement Analysis

Name

Date Score

Learning Objective 2

A **(50 points) Solve the following income statement problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

1. In the following income statement, find the percent for each 2015 and 2014 item. Then find the amount and percent of change. Round percents to two decimal places. (1/2 point for each correct answer)

Georgia Textiles
Income Statement
For the Years Ended December 31, 2015 and 2014

	2015	2015	2014	2014	Increase/Decrease	
	Amount	**Percent**	**Amount**	**Percent**	**Amount**	**Percent**
Revenue from sales:						
Sales	$920,000		$827,000			
Less returns	35,000		30,000			
NET SALES	$885,000		$797,000			
Cost of goods sold:						
Inventory, January 1	$210,000		$197,000			
Purchases	460,000		395,000			
Available for sale	$670,000		$592,000			
Inventory, December 31	240,000		210,000			
Cost of goods sold	$430,000		$382,000			
Gross profit	$455,000		$415,000			
Operating expenses:						
Wages	$132,600		$120,000			
Rent	84,000		80,000			
Advertising	18,000		20,000			
Insurance	4,500		4,200			
Depreciation	3,600		3,100			
Equipment rental	1,200		1,400			
Administrative	7,000		5,200			
Miscellaneous	3,200		2,100			
Total operating expenses	$254,100		$236,000			
Income before tax	$200,900		$179,000			
Income tax	32,000		28,000			
NET INCOME	$168,900		$151,000			

2. Assume that the ending inventory was $227,000 in 2015. Compute the following items. (2 points for each correct answer)

2015 Gross profit amount ________ 2015 Gross profit percent ________
2015 NET INCOME amount ________ 2015 NET INCOME percent ________

Score for A (50)

B **(100 points) Solve the following income statement problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

3. In the following income statement, find the percent for each 2015 and 2014 item, then find the amount and percent of change. Round percents (no decimal places). (84 points, 1 point for each correct answer)

Baldwin Field Enterprises
Income Statement
For the Years Ended December 31, 2015 and 2014

	2015	**2015**	**2014**	**2014**	**Difference**	
	Amount	**Percent**	**Amount**	**Percent**	**Amount**	**Percent**
Revenue from sales:						
Sales	$87,000		$74,800			
Less returns	2,000		1,800			
NET SALES	$85,000		$73,000			
Cost of goods sold:						
Inventory, January 1	$22,000		17,500			
Purchases	38,000		35,000			
Available for sale	$60,000		52,500			
Inventory, December 31	24,100		22,000			
Cost of goods sold	$35,900		30,500			
Gross profit	$49,100		$42,500			
Operating expenses:						
Salary	$11,200		10,900			
Rent	7,500		6,000			
Advertising	1,400		1,200			
Delivery	450		380			
Depreciation	650		600			
Equipment rental	350		420			
Administrative	1,900		1,700			
Miscellaneous	190		220			
Total operating expenses	$23,640		$21,420			
Income before tax	$25,460		21,080			
Income tax	2,200		2,000			
NET INCOME	$23,260		$19,080			

4. Assume that the beginning inventory was $18,000 in 2014 and $20,500 in 2015 and that the rent was $6,400 in 2014 and $8,800 in 2015. Compute the following amounts and percents to reflect the revised beginning inventory and rent numbers. (8 points for each correct row)

	2015	**2015**	**2014**	**2014**	**Difference**	
	Amount	**Percent**	**Amount**	**Percent**	**Amount**	**Percent**
Gross profit						
NET INCOME						

Score for B (100)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 19.3: Financial Statement Ratios

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 1 2 3

A **(26 points) Solve the following financial statement ratio problems. (1/2 point for each correct answer)**

1. Angela Adams was considering investing in a business. She used the following statement in analyzing the Tic Tock Clock Shop. Compute the net changes in the balance sheet and income statement. Round to one decimal place.

Tic Tock Clock Shop
Comparative Balance Sheet
As of December 31, 2015 and 2014

	2015	2014	Increase/Decrease	
	Amount	Amount	Amount	Percent
ASSETS				
Current assets:				
Cash	$127,500	$120,300		
Accounts receivable	85,600	87,300		
Merchandise inventory	245,000	215,800		
Total current assets	$458,100	$423,400		
Fixed assets:				
Building improvements	$ 62,000	$ 65,500		
Equipment	145,000	132,000		
Total fixed assets	$207,000	$197,500		
TOTAL ASSETS	$665,100	$620,900		
LIABILITIES				
Current liabilities:				
Salaries payable	$ 38,000	$ 31,950		
Accounts payable	125,800	118,900		
Total current liabilities	$163,800	$150,850		
Long-term liabilities:				
Note payable	$120,000	$135,000		
Total liabilities	$283,800	$285,850		
Owner's equity:				
J. B. Tinker, capital	381,300	335,050		
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND OWNER'S EQUITY	$665,100	$620,900		

Tic Tock Clock Shop
Comparative Income Statement
For Years Ended December 31, 2015 and 2014

			Difference	
	2015	**2014**	**Amount**	**Percent**
NET SALES	$825,000	$845,000		
Cost of goods sold:				
Merchandise inventory, January 1	$215,800	$212,800		
Purchases	585,000	593,000		
Merchandise available for sale	$800,800	$805,800		
Merchandise inventory, December 31	245,000	215,800		
Cost of goods sold	$555,800	$590,000		
Gross profit on sales	$269,200	$255,000		
Expenses:				
Selling	$ 82,000	$ 75,000		
Other	29,200	30,000		
Total expenses	$111,200	$105,000		
NET INCOME	$158,000	$150,000		

Score for A (26)

B **(24 points) Solve the following problems. (2 points for each correct answer)**

2. Provide the following information for Angela Adams' consideration. When the ratio is less than 1, give the ratio to three decimal places; otherwise, round to one decimal place.

	2015	**2014**
a. Working capital ratio		
b. Acid-test ratio		
c. Ratio of accounts receivable to net sales		
d. Inventory turnover		
e. Ratio of net income to net sales		
f. Rate of return on investment		

Score for B (24)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

C **(26 points) Solve the following problems. (1/2 point for each correct answer)**

3. Angela Adams was offered a second business. She received the following statements for 2015 and 2014. Complete calculations for a comparative balance sheet and a comparative income statement for the Grandfather Clock Shop, showing the amount and percent of change.

Grandfather Clock Shop
Comparative Balance Sheet
As of December 31, 2015 and 2014

	2015		2014		Increase/Decrease	
	Amount	Percent	Amount	Percent	Amount	Percent
ASSETS						
Current assets:						
Cash	$ 20,000	15.2%	$ 16,000	14.7%		
Accounts receivable	12,000	9.1%	8,000	7.3%		
Merchandise inventory	46,000	34.8%	31,000	28.4%		
Total current assets	$ 78,000	59.1%	$ 55,000	50.5%		
Fixed assets:						
Store fixtures	$ 39,000	29.5%	$ 43,000	39.4%		
Office equipment	15,000	11.4%	11,000	10.1%		
Total fixed assets	$ 54,000	49.2%	$ 54,000	49.5%		
TOTAL ASSETS	$132,000	100.0%	$109,000	100.0%		
LIABILITIES						
Current liabilities:						
Sales tax payable	$ 4,500	3.4%	$ 5,500	5.0%		
Accounts payable	9,500	7.2%	6,000	5.5%		
Total current liabilities	$ 14,000	10.6%	$ 11,500	10.6%		
Long-term liabilities:						
Note payable	$ 25,000	18.9%	$ 38,000	34.9%		
Total liabilities	$ 39,000	29.5%	$ 49,500	45.4%		
Owner's equity						
R. A. Banner, capital	$ 93,000	70.5%	$ 59,500	54.6%		
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND OWNER'S EQUITY	$132,000	100.0%	$109,000	100.0%		

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Grandfather Clock Shop
Comparative Income Statement
For the Years Ended December 31, 2015 and 2014

	2015		2014		Difference	
	Amount	Percent	Amount	Percent	Amount	Percent
NET SALES	$205,000	100.0%	$120,000	100.0%		
Cost of goods sold:						
Merchandise inventory, January 1	$ 31,000	15.1%	$ 27,500	22.9%		
Purchases	154,000	75.1%	84,500	70.4%		
Merchandise available for sale	$185,000	90.2%	$112,000	93.3%		
Merchandise inventory, December 31	46,000	22.4%	31,000	25.8%		
Cost of goods sold	$139,000	67.8%	$ 81,000	67.5%		
Gross profit on sales	$ 66,000	32.2%	$ 39,000	32.5%		
Expenses:						
Selling	$ 31,000	15.1%	$ 21,500	17.9%		
Other	13,000	6.3%	7,250	6.0%		
Total expenses	$ 44,000	21.5%	$ 28,750	24.0%		
NET INCOME	$ 22,000	10.7%	$ 10,250	8.5%		

Any differences of 0.1% from individual items are due to rounding.

Score for C (26)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

International Business

20

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1	Compute currency exchange rates.
Learning Objective 2	Compute the effects of exchange rate changes.
Learning Objective 3	Compute duties on imports.

Businesses in the United States **import** goods made in other countries and **export** domestic goods made in the United States. International business transactions amount to billions of dollars annually and constitute an important part of the economies of most nations in the world.

International trade between U.S. companies and those in other countries is under the jurisdiction of the International Trade Administration (ITA), a branch of the Department of Commerce. All international trade is subject to a set of ITA rules and regulations known as the **Export Administration Regulations.** Any company in the United States planning to sell goods to companies in other countries must have an ITA export license for the transactions.

Computing Currency Exchange Rates

Learning Objective 1

Compute currency exchange rates.

In order to conduct international trade, U.S. companies must exchange U.S. dollars for other currencies and vice versa. Figure 20-1 lists the names of the currency units used in the major countries, the U.S. dollars per unit, and the number of units per U.S. dollar.

Several other governments, including Australia, Canada, Hong Kong, and New Zealand, call their currency the dollar. These dollars are not U.S. dollars; each is a separate currency. Several currencies share names, such as the franc, mark, peso, pound, and euro.

EXAMPLE A

A person planning a trip to Denmark wants to change $100 U.S. to Danish kroner. How many kroner will the person get for the $100 U.S.? (Round answer to nearest kroner.)

6.1917 × 100 = 619 kroner (6.1917 kroner per each U.S. dollar × $100)

EXAMPLE B

A traveler from Argentina is planning a trip to the United States and wants to change 1,000 Argentine pesos to U.S. dollars. How many U.S. dollars will the traveler receive for the 1,000 pesos? (Round answer to nearest dollar.)

1,000 ÷ 8.1754 = $122 or 1,000 × 0.1223 = $122

EXAMPLE C

An American tourist shopping in a Canadian store purchased an item for 100 Canadian dollars. How much did his purchase cost him in U.S. dollars? (Round answer to nearest U.S. penny.)

100 Canadian dollars × 0.9247 U.S. dollars per Canadian dollar = $92.47

CONCEPT CHECK 20.1

Using the "Per US Dollar" column from Figure 20-1, compute the number of *euros* one would receive for $300 U.S. (Round answer to nearest euro.)

$300 × 0.7445 = 223 euros

Using the "In US Dollars" column from Figure 20-1, compute the number of U.S. dollars one would receive for 400 *Japanese yen*. (Round answer to nearest U.S. penny.)

400 × 0.0098 = $3.92

Figure 20-1 Foreign Currency–U.S. Dollar Exchange Rates

CURRENCY EXCHANGE RATES

	Per US Dollar	In US Dollars
Argentine Peso	8.1754	0.1223
Australian Dollar	1.0642	0.9396
Brazilian Real	0.4490	2.2255
British Pound	0.5890	1.6978
Canadian Dollar	1.0814	0.9247
Chilean Peso	563.3950	0.0018
Chinese Yuan	6.1917	0.1615
Czech Koruny	20.4600	0.0489
Danish Krone	5.5524	0.1801
Egyptian Pound	7.1506	0.1398
Euro	0.7445	1.3432
Hong Kong Dollar	7.7500	0.1290
Hungarian Forint	229.7100	0.004354
Indian Rupee	60.0400	0.0166
Israeli New Shekel	3.4219	0.2922
Japanese Yen	101.8350	0.0098
Malaysian Ringgit	3.1719	0.3153
Mexican Peso	12.9497	0.0772
New Zealand Dollar	1.1690	0.8555
Norwegian Kroner	6.2217	0.1608
Russian Ruble	35.1385	0.0285
Singapore Dollar	1.2219	0.8053
South African Rand	10.5140	0.09511
South Korean Won	1027.65	0.0097
Swedish Krona	6.8176	0.1467
Swiss Franc	0.9048	1.1051
Taiwan Dollar	29.9800	0.0334
Thai Baht	31.8500	0.0314

The "Per US Dollar" column shows the quantity of foreign currency that will be received for each U.S. dollar. It is used to convert U.S. dollars to foreign currency. The "In US Dollars" column shows the value in U.S. dollars for each unit of the foreign currency. It is used to convert foreign currency to U.S. dollars.

NYSE EURONEXT

CURRENCY
EXCHANG

IMAGEBROKER/ALAMY

Computing the Effects of Exchange Rate Changes

One hazard of foreign trade is the uncertainty of future exchange rates between currencies. The relationship between the values of the U.S. dollar and a foreign currency can change between the time a contract is signed and the time payment is received. If a U.S. exporter agrees to accept foreign currency, a devaluation in the foreign currency could cause the exporter to lose money on the transaction.

Learning Objective 2

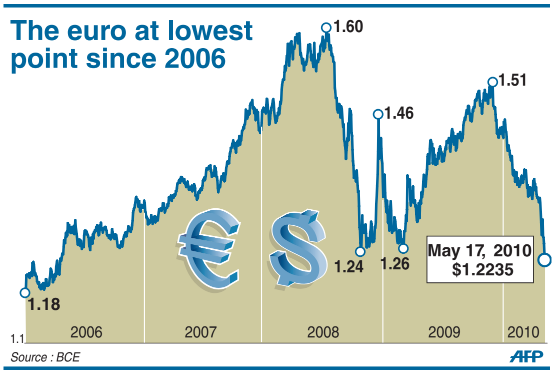
Compute the effects of exchange rate changes.

EXAMPLE D

Global Industries, a U.S. company, sold merchandise to Europa, a company in Hungary. Europa agreed to pay 500,000 Hungarian forint for the goods. On the date of the sale, the Hungarian forint was valued at 229.71 per U.S. dollar, as noted in Figure 20-1. Global Industries expected to receive $2,176.66. (500,000 Hungarian forint ÷ 229.71 per U.S. dollar = $2,176.66.)

Between the date the sale was made and the date the goods were shipped and paid for by Europa, the value of the forint changed to 231.832 per U.S. dollar. How much did Global Industries lose by accepting the forint as the medium of payment?

Value of merchandise at time of sale: 500,000 Hungarian forint ÷ 229.71 per U.S. dollar = $2,176.66. Value of merchandise at time shipped and paid for: 500,000 Hungarian forint ÷ 231.832 = $2,156.73. Value of 500,000 forint at time of sale $2,176.66 − value of 500,000 forint at time shipped and paid $2,156.73 = loss to Global Industries $19.93.



AFP/NEWSCOM

EXAMPLE E

Global Industries investigated a purchase of raw materials from a company in England. The price of the materials was 150,000 British pounds. At the time, the value of the British pound was $1.527. Ten months later, when Global actually made the purchase, the value of the British pound was as shown in Figure 20-1. How many more dollars did Global have to pay as a result of the change in the value of the British pound?

150,000 × $1.527 = $229,050 cost when investigated
150,000 × $1.6978 = $254,670 cost when purchase was made
$254,670 − $229,050 = $25,620 more dollars at time of purchase

CONCEPT CHECK 20.2

Global Industries contracts to sell a printing press to a company in Denmark. The Danish company agreed to pay $300,000 U.S. dollars for the press.

On the date the agreement was made, the Danish krone was worth 0.199271 U.S. dollars. On the date payment was made, the krone had changed to 0.1972 U.S. dollars. How many more or less Danish kroner did the Danish company pay by stipulating a purchase price of $300,000 U.S. dollars?

$300,000 ÷ 0.199271 = 1,505,487.50 kroner at time of agreement
$300,000 ÷ 0.1972 = 1,521,298.17 kroner at time of payment
1,521,298.17 − 1,505,487.50 = 15,810.67 more kroner at time of payment

If the Danish company had agreed to pay 1,505,487.50 kroner instead of $300,000 for the purchase, how many U.S. dollars would it have saved between the time of agreement and the time of payment?

1,505,487.50 kroner to be paid × 0.1972 value of krone at payment = $296,882.14
$300,000 value of kroner at time of agreement − $296,882.14 = $3,117.86 saved

Computing Duties on Imports

All items imported into the United States must go through the U.S. Customs Agency. Many imported items have a **duty** (charge or tax) imposed by the Customs Agency to protect U.S. manufacturers against foreign competition in domestic markets. Duties vary widely from item to item. A duty may be a set amount—such as $0.50 per item—or an **ad valorem duty,** which is a percent of the value of the item.

Learning Objective 3

Compute duties on imports.

EXAMPLE F

Assume that a wristwatch in a leather case with a metal band has four duty rates imposed: $0.40 per wristwatch + 6% of the value of the case + 14% of the value of the metal band + 5% of the value of the battery. Anderson Jewelry Company imported four dozen wristwatches. The value of the case was $16; the metal band, $10; and the battery, $6. How much duty did the Anderson Jewelry Company pay for the four dozen wristwatches? (Round answer to nearest cent.)

Duty per wristwatch: $0.40
Ad valorem duty on case: $16 × 0.06 = 0.96
Ad valorem duty on metal band: $10 × 0.14 = 1.40
Ad valorem duty on battery: $6 × 0.05 = + 0.30
Total duty per watch $3.06

$3.06 per watch × 48 watches = $146.88 total duty paid

EXAMPLE G

A computer printer costs $150 whether purchased from Country A or Country B. However, it has an ad valorem duty rate of 3.5% if purchased from Country A and an ad valorem duty rate of 28% if purchased from Country B. How much more would it cost a company to purchase the printer from Country B than from Country A?

Country A: $150 × 0.035 = $5.25
$150 + $5.25 = $155.25 total cost

Country B: $150 × 0.28 = $42
$150 + $42 = $192 total cost

$192 Country B − $155.25 Country A = $36.75 more

Foreign trade zones are domestic sites in the United States considered to be outside U.S. Customs territory. These foreign trade zones are used for import and export activities. No duty or federal excise taxes are charged on foreign goods moved into the zone until the goods or products made from them are moved into U.S. Customs territory. No duty is charged on imports that later are exported for sale, because they never entered U.S. Customs territory. Recently, there were more than 150 foreign trade zones in port communities in the United States. Operations in them include storage, repacking, inspection, exhibition, assembly, and manufacturing.

EXAMPLE H

A U.S. company located in a foreign trade zone imported \$500,000 worth of goods. The duty rate on the goods is 5%. If 30% of the goods were moved into U.S. Customs territory for sale and 70% were exported for sale, how much money did the company save by being located in a foreign trade zone?

\$500,000 × 70% for export = \$350,000 in goods
\$350,000 × 5% duty = \$17,500 saved

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 20.3

a. Downtown Toy Store ordered from a foreign country 400 dolls on which an ad valorem duty of 4.5% is charged. Payment is to be made in U.S. dollars. The price of each doll is \$23. What is the total cost to Downtown Toy Store?

400 × \$23 = \$9,200 cost before duty
\$9,200 × 0.045 duty = \$414
\$9,200 + \$414 = \$9,614 total cost to buyer

b. A company located in a foreign trade zone purchased \$1 million worth of electronic equipment having an ad valorem duty of 4.1%. Forty percent of the products were moved into U.S. Customs territory for sale, and 60% were repackaged and exported. How many dollars did the company save by being located in a foreign trade zone?

\$1,000,000 × 60% = \$600,000
\$600,000 × 4.1% = \$24,600 saved

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 20.1 and 20.2.

Chapter Terms for Review

ad valorem duty
duty
export
Export Administration Regulations
foreign trade zones
import

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
20.1 Compute currency exchange rates.	1. Using the In US Dollars column in Figure 20-1, compute the value in U.S. dollars of 5,000 units of each of the following foreign currencies. Round answers to the nearest cent. a. Chinese yuan _______ b. Russian ruble _______ c. Brazilian real _______ d. Thailand's baht _______ 2. Using the Per US Dollar column in Figure 20-1, compute the amount of U.S. dollars necessary to buy 5,000 units of each of the following foreign currencies. Round answers to the nearest cent. a. Sweden's krona _______ b. Hungary's forint _______ c. Taiwan dollar _______ d. Mexican peso _______
20.2 Compute the effects of exchange rate changes.	3. A U.S. company has contracted to sell certain goods to a company in Mexico. The Mexican company has contracted to pay 700,000 pesos for the goods. At the time the contract was signed, the In US Dollars column in the newspaper showed that the Mexican peso was worth $0.0883. On the date payment was due, the peso changed to a value of $0.09248 U.S. How much did the U.S. company gain or lose by having agreed to accept payment in pesos instead of U.S. dollars?
20.3 Compute duties on imports.	4. Broadway Department Store ordered from a foreign country 300 sets of dishes on which an ad valorem duty of 5.8% is charged. The price of each set of dishes is $72. Payment is to be made in U.S. currency. What is the total cost to Broadway?

Answers: **1a.** $807.50 **b.** $142.50 **c.** $11,127.50 **d.** $157.00 **2a.** $733.40 **b.** $21.77 **c.** $166.78 **d.** $386.11
3. $61,810 expected; $64,736 received; $2,926 gain **4.** $22,852.80

Review Problems for Chapter 20

(Round to the nearest hundredth unless otherwise specified.)

1. How many Thai baht can a person get for $15 U.S. dollars?
2. How many U.S. dollars can a person get for 15 Thai baht?
3. How many South African rand can a person get for $540 U.S. dollars?
4. How many U.S. dollars can a person get for 540 South African rand?
5. A U.S. exporter agrees to accept 300,000 South African rand in payment for goods. The South African rand is valued as shown in Figure 20-1. Compute the value in U.S. dollars that the U.S. exporter will receive. (Round to nearest dollar.)
6. In problem 5, suppose that the value of the South African rand changes to 9.872 per U.S. dollar. How much will the exporter gain or lose in this transaction? (Round to nearest dollar.)
7. Tonaka Manufacturing, Inc., contracted to sell goods to a company in Sweden for 20,000 Swedish kronor. Using the data in Figure 20-1, compute the U.S. dollar value that Tonaka expects to receive. (Round to nearest dollar.)
8. Assume that the value of the Swedish krona decreased by 20%; compute the U.S. dollar value that Tonaka would then expect to receive.
9. Princess Jewelry contracted to purchase 144 bracelets from a foreign manufacturer. The price of each bracelet is $40. An ad valorem duty of 17% is charged on each bracelet. Compute the duty Princess Jewelry will pay for the shipment.
10. ABC, Inc., plans to purchase 250 units of computer components. ABC can buy the components from country Y at a price of $60 each plus an ad valorem duty of 35% or from country YY at a price of $64 plus an ad valorem duty of 13%. Compute the amount ABC will save by purchasing from the lowest-cost source.

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Assignment 20.1: Trading with Other Countries

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 1 2

A **(44 points) Solve the following problems. (4 points for each correct answer)**

1. Using the data in Figure 20-1, find the amount of U.S. dollars needed to buy 300 units of each foreign currency listed. (Round answers to nearest cent.)

Foreign Currency	**Price of 300 Units**
a. Australian dollar	__________
b. Euro	__________
c. Israel new shekel	__________
d. Brazilian real	__________
e. Canadian dollar	__________
f. Chinese yuan	__________
g. South African rand	__________

2. Using the data in Figure 20-1, determine the value in U.S. dollars of 4,500 units of each foreign currency listed below. (Round answers to the nearest cent.)

Foreign Currency	**Value of 4,500 units**
a. Argentinean peso	__________
b. British pound	__________
c. Danish krone	__________
d. Indian rupee	__________

Score for A (44)

B **(56 points) Solve the following problems. Round pennies to the nearest dollar. (8 points for each correct answer)**

3. Hadley Enterprises has contracted to sell certain goods to a company in Britain. The price agreed on for the goods is 80,000 British pounds. On the date the contract was signed, the financial section of the local paper showed that the British pound was valued at $1.63499.

a. How much in U.S. dollars does Hadley Enterprises expect to receive for the goods? __________

b. If the value of the British pound fell from 1.63499 to 1.5873 on the date of payment, how much would Hadley Enterprises lose by having contracted in British pounds instead of U.S. dollars? __________

c. If the British pound rose to 1.7625 on the date of payment, how much would Hadley Enterprises gain by having contracted in British pounds instead of U.S. dollars? __________

4. Miller Furniture Company imported 150 chairs from a Danish firm. Each chair is valued at 890 Danish kroner. What is the value of the chairs in U.S. dollars if the Danish krone is currently valued at 0.199271? __________

5. Oldtown Industries, Inc., is contracting to sell its product to a country whose currency is unstable and difficult to convert to U.S. currency. The value of the goods is $20,000 U.S. The currency of the country to which the goods will be shipped is currently valued at 0.0040 per U.S. dollar. Oldtown Industries is willing to accept the currency of a third country. The Singapore dollar is agreed on. The Singapore dollar is shown as 0.707414 on the date the contract is signed.

a. How many Singapore dollars does Oldtown Industries expect to receive? (Round the answer to the nearest dollar.) __________

b. If the Singapore dollar does not change before the date of payment, but the value of the currency of the receiving country falls from 0.0040 to 0.0003, how much would Oldtown Industries save by using the Singapore dollar? __________

6. If the British pound is valued at 1.7000 per U.S. dollar and the Egyptian pound at 0.3700, how many more Egyptian pounds than British pounds could a U.S. citizen buy for $1,000 U.S.? (Round the answer to the nearest pound.) (10 points) __________

____
Score for B (56)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 20.2: Duties on Imports

Name ______________________________

Date ______________ Score ______________

Learning Objective **3**

A **(66 points) Solve the following problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

1. Benjamin's Department Store ordered from a foreign country 150 music boxes on which an ad valorem duty rate of 3.2% is charged. Payment is to be made in U.S. dollars. The price of each music box is $18. (2 points for each correct answer)

a. What is the price of the 150 music boxes before duty is added? __________

b. What is the amount of duty charged on the shipment? __________

c. What is the total cost to Benjamin's? __________

2. Gems International Company is purchasing from a foreign country one gross (144) of 20-inch gold necklaces at $75 each and six dozen 18-inch silver necklaces at $55 each. The ad valorem duty rate for gold and silver jewelry is 7%. What is the total cost of the shipment to the buyer? (8 points) __________

3. Sutter's Department Store is going to buy four gross (one gross = 144) of vases for the next Christmas season. It can buy porcelain vases or lead crystal vases for $45 each. The duty on porcelain vases is 9%. The duty on lead crystal vases is 4%. How much will Sutter's save in total cost by purchasing lead crystal instead of porcelain? (8 points) __________

4. Sonora Music Store can purchase pianos domestically for $1,480 each. It can purchase pianos from a foreign country for $1,420 plus 5.3% ad valorem duty.

a. Sonora Music Store purchases the pianos with the lower total cost. Does it purchase from a domestic or a foreign manufacturer? (6 points) __________

b. How much does it save on each piano? (2 points) __________

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5. Broadway Office Equipment Company purchased the following equipment from a foreign country:

72 printers at $150 each + 2.2% duty
24 addressing machines at $30 each + 4.2% duty
144 pencil sharpeners at $12 each + 6% duty
24 check-writing machines at $60 each, duty free
80 calculators at $24 each + 3.9% duty

a. What was the cost of the order before duty? (10 points) __________

b. What was the cost of the order after duty? (Round each calculation to the nearest cent.) (10 points) __________

c. If the 144 pencil sharpeners had been purchased at $12 each from a country with which trade was discouraged and the ad valorem duty rate was 50%, how much would the pencil sharpeners have cost? (4 points) __________

d. How much more duty would a buyer pay on the pencil sharpeners at the ad valorem rate of 50% than at an ad valorem duty rate of 6%? (4 points) __________

6. Adams Industries could purchase $30,000 worth of textiles from country A with an ad valorem duty rate of 2.5% or from country B with an ad valorem duty rate of 1.2%.

a. How much would the shipment cost if purchased from country A? (4 points) __________

b. How much would Adams Industries save by purchasing from country B? (4 points) __________

____

Score for A (66)

B **(34 points) Solve the following problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

7. The Allied Computer Company imports some computer components and manufactures other components and then assembles computers for sale within the United States or for export to foreign countries. The company is located in a district that has been designated by the International Trade Administration as a foreign trade zone. The company imported $250,000 worth of monitors having an ad valorem duty rate of 3.7%, $300,000 worth of power supplies having an ad valorem duty rate of 3.0%, and $500,000 worth of printers having an ad valorem duty rate of 3.7%. All products were finished and sold 1 year later.

a. If all products were sold within U.S. Customs territories, how much duty—in U.S. dollars—would the company pay at the end of the year? (4 points) __________

b. If 40% of each of the finished products were moved into U.S. Customs territories for sale and 60% were exported for sale in foreign countries, how many dollars of duty would the company pay at the end of the year? (10 points)

____

c. If all products were exported for sale, how much duty would the company pay at the end of the year? (2 points) __________

8. The Allied Computer Company imported $260,000 worth of portable computers having an ad valorem duty rate of 3.9% and kept 20% of them for exhibition and company use on the premises.

a. If the company repackaged and sold the remaining portable computers in U.S. Customs territories, how many dollars of duty would the company pay on the portable computers? (6 points) __________

b. If the company repackaged and exported 50% of the portable computers for sale in foreign countries and moved the remaining 30% into U.S. Customs territories for sale, how many dollars would the company pay in duty on the portable computers? (6 points) __________

9. A company imported $4 million worth of laptop computers having an ad valorem duty rate of 3.5%. The company repackaged and exported all the computers for resale. How many dollars did the company save by being located in a foreign trade zone? (6 points) __________

____

Score for B (34)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Part 6

Corporate and Special Applications

21 Corporate Stocks

22 Corporate and Government Bonds

23 Annuities

24 Business Statistics

Corporate Stocks

21

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1 Compute the costs and proceeds of stock buy-and-sell transactions.

Learning Objective 2 Compute the costs and proceeds of round and odd lots.

Learning Objective 3 Compute rates of yield and gains or losses on the purchase and sale of stocks.

Learning Objective 4 Compute comparative earning potential of the major classes of corporate stocks.

Many companies operate as corporations. A **corporation** is a body that is granted a charter by a state legally recognizing it as a separate entity, having its own rights, privileges, and liabilities distinct from those of its owners. A corporation acquires assets, enters into contracts, sues or is sued, and pays taxes in its own name. Two primary reasons for forming a corporation are to limit liability and facilitate broadening the ownership base. A corporation raises capital by selling shares of ownership, which increases its assets without increasing its debt.

The general term applied to the shares of a corporation is **capital stock.** Each share of capital stock is a share of the ownership of the company's net assets (assets minus liabilities). The number of shares that a corporation is authorized to *issue,* or offer for sale, is set forth in its **charter,** the basic approval document issued by the state, under which the corporation operates. Ownership of stock is evidenced by a **stock certificate.**

Frequently, the shares of capital stock are assigned a value known as **par,** which is stated on the stock certificate. For example, a company incorporated with capital stock of $1,000,000 and 100,000 shares has a par value of $10 per share. Stock issued without par value is known as **no-par stock.** The par value may differ from the market price. In the marketplace, stock may be sold for any amount agreed upon by the buyer and seller.

Computing the Costs and Proceeds of Stock Transactions

Learning Objective 1

Compute the costs and proceeds of stock buy-and-sell transactions.

After purchasing stock, a buyer may sell that stock at any price on the open market, regardless of the par value. Stocks are usually bought and sold on **stock exchanges,** the formal marketplaces set up for the purpose of trading stocks. Major exchanges in the United States are the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE), the American Stock Exchange (AMEX), and the National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotations (NASDAQ). A **stockbroker** usually handles **stock transactions**—the purchase and sale of stocks for clients. Today, many people also trade via the Internet.

The trading of shares of stock is published daily in newspapers. Figure 21-1 shows a sample stock market report, in which stocks are quoted in the traditional manner—dollars and fractions of a dollar. The NYSE, NASDAQ, and AMEX quote prices in hundredths. Consequently, the smallest increase or decrease in a stock price that will be reported is .01.

Both the buyer and the seller of stock pay commissions to the stockbroker. The total amount paid by a buyer to purchase a stock includes the market price of the stock and the stockbroker's commission (charge). The **total cost** paid by the purchaser is equal to the purchase price plus a broker's commission. The **proceeds** received by the seller are equal to the selling price minus the commission.

Broker commissions may be a flat rate per transaction, a percent of the value of the stock, an amount per share traded, or an amount negotiated between the client and the broker. Generally, commissions for brokers are less than 1% of the value of the stock, ranging from $0.02 to $0.50 per share bought or sold. A number of discount brokerages operating on the Internet now charge $7.00 to $22.99 per transaction, normally for up to 5,000 shares. Figure 21-2 shows a broker's confirmation report of a stock purchase with a commission rate of $50 and a transaction fee of $3.

We use a transaction charge of $0.20 per share or a flat fee of $19.95 per transaction in computing the cost of commissions in this chapter.

Figure 21-1 Daily Stock Report from the NYSE

52 weeks				Day's Activity							
Hi (1)	**Low (2)**	**Stock (3)**	**Sym (4)**	**Div (5)**	**Yld-% (6)**	**PE (7)**	**Vol. (000) (8)**	**High (9)**	**Low (10)**	**Close (11)**	**Change (12)**
16.14	14.21	Bank of America	BAC	$0.04	0.26%	24.75	35,200	15.70	15.52	15.64	0.08
125.80	118.37	Boeing	BA	$2.92	2.37%	18.55	22,755	123.52	122.98	123.20	−0.12
118.52	96.22	Caterpillar	CAT	$2.80	2.67%	17	6,305	104.85	102.60	104.85	0.65
54.28	38.90	Coca-Cola Co	KO	$1.22	2.97%	22	8,460	42.90	40.37	41.00	−0.08
92.75	78.12	Deere Inc	DE	$2.40	2.79%	9.4	4,893	86.22	85.80	86.17	−0.05
92.37	83.40	Disney	DIS	$0.86	1.00%	22	7,845	87.68	85.12	86.23	−0.45
20.84	16.92	Ford Motor Co	F	$0.50	2.84%	10.94	5,820	17.65	17.50	17.62	0.09
38.90	27.65	General Motors	GM	$1.20	3.42%	29.47	19,520	35.12	34.88	35.07	0.06
72.50	52.60	Kellogg's	KO	$1.84	2.82%	12.52	5,274	66.17	65.10	65.37	−0.12
108.10	85.90	PepsiCo	PEP	$2.62	2.86%	20.67	15,830	91.62	90.70	91.55	1.01
42.80	30.70	Safeway	SWY	$0.92	2.64%	2.53	2,547	34.89	33.82	34.87	0.12
47.00	31.70	Sears	SHLD	$ –	0.00%	0	1,854	38.71	37.20	38.71	0.44
22.89	12.87	Sony	SNE	$0.19	1.09%	N/A	1,254	18.92	17.52	17.68	−0.25
12.00	6.50	Sprint	S	$ –	0.00%	N/A	18,740	7.80	7.62	7.72	0.03
127.90	97.20	Toyota Motor Co	TM	$3.14	2.62%	10.58	2,584	120.80	118.78	119.63	−1.02

(1) The highest price per share in the previous 52 weeks.
(2) The lowest price per share in the previous 52 weeks.
(3) Company names, often abbreviated to fit in stock tables, are listed alphabetically.
(4) The symbol is a stock's designation on databases and quote machines.
(5) The dividend shown usually is the annual rate based on the company's last payout.
(6) The dividend divided by the closing share price gives the stock's yield.
(7) One measure of a stock's value is its **price/earnings ratio (P/E).** It is based on the per-share earnings as reported by those most recent four-quarter earnings per share.
(8) Volume is the number of shares traded that day, shown in hundreds of shares.
(9) The high for the day's trading range.
(10) The low for the day's trading range.
(11) The closing price on that day.
(12) The net change in price lets you calculate something that isn't in the stock table: the previous day's closing price.

NYSE EURONEXT

EXAMPLE A

Jennifer Low bought 200 shares of Home Depot (HD) stock at $81. What was her cost, including commission of $0.20 per share?

200 shares × $81 price	=	$16,200	purchase price
200 shares × $0.20 commission	=	+ 40	commission
		$16,240	total cost

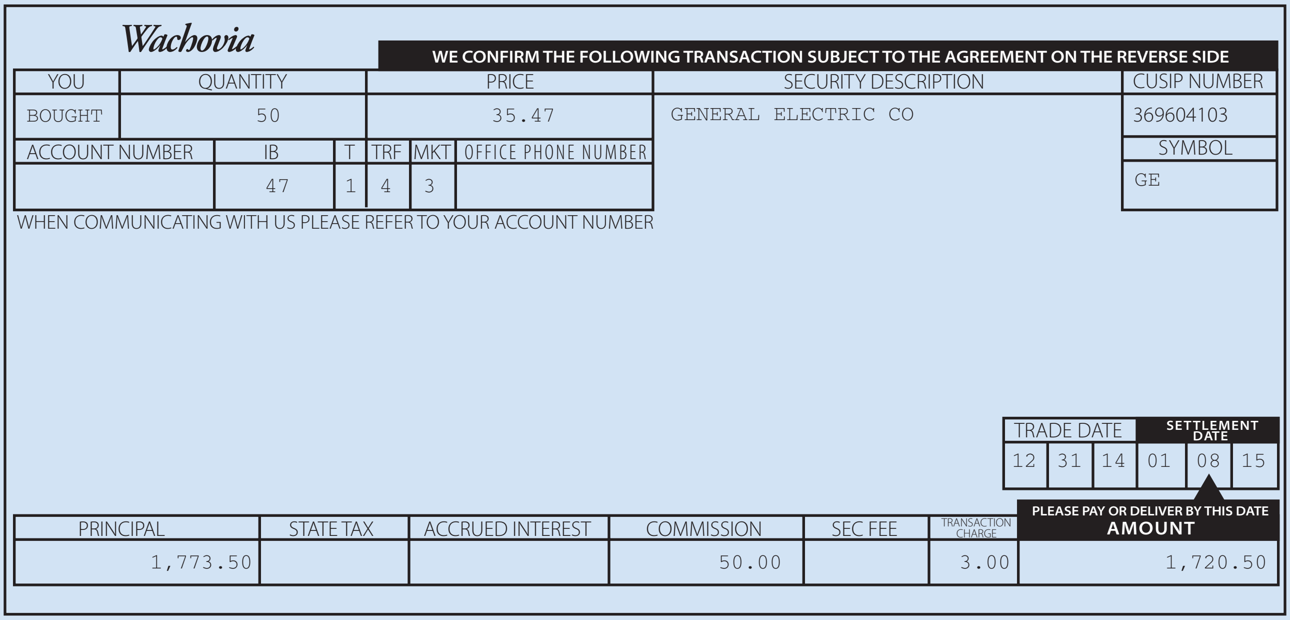
EXAMPLE B

Ken Yeager sold 800 shares of Verizon at $36.17, less commission of $0.20 per share. What were the proceeds of the sale?

800 shares × $36.17	=	$28,936	selling price
800 shares × $0.20 commission	=	− 160	commission
		$28,776	proceeds

Euronext
NYSE
NYSE
NYSE Euronext
Spencer Platt/Getty Images

Figure 21-2 Confirmation Report of a Stock Purchase



Wachovia

WE CONFIRM THE FOLLOWING TRANSACTION SUBJECT TO THE AGREEMENT ON THE REVERSE SIDE

YOU	QUANTITY	PRICE	SECURITY DESCRIPTION	CUSIP NUMBER
BOUGHT	50	35.47	GENERAL ELECTRIC CO	369604103

ACCOUNT NUMBER	IB	T	TRF	MKT	OFFICE PHONE NUMBER
	47	1	4	3	

SYMBOL
GE

WHEN COMMUNICATING WITH US PLEASE REFER TO YOUR ACCOUNT NUMBER

TRADE DATE			SETTLEMENT DATE		
12	31	14	01	08	15

PRINCIPAL	STATE TAX	ACCRUED INTEREST	COMMISSION	SEC FEE	TRANSACTION CHARGE	PLEASE PAY OR DELIVER BY THIS DATE AMOUNT
1,773.50			50.00		3.00	1,720.50

EXAMPLE C

Juan Hernandez bought 500 shares of PepsiCo stock at $91.55. What was his cost, including a flat fee of $19.95?

500 shares × $91.55 price	=	$45,775.00	purchase price
commission	=	+ 19.95	flat fee
		$45,794.95	total cost

CONCEPT CHECK 21.1

David Cooper purchased 300 shares of Safeway at $31.02. He later sold the stock at $33.10. What was his gain/loss on the purchase and sale, after counting commissions of $0.20 per share on both the purchase and the sale?

Purchase: 300 shares × $31.02 price	=	$9,306	purchase price
300 shares × $0.20 commission	=	+ 60	commission
		$9,366	total cost
Sale: 300 shares × $33.10 price	=	$9,930	selling price
300 shares × $0.20 commission	=	− 60	commission
		$9,870	proceeds

$9,870 proceeds − $9,366 cost = $504 gain

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Computing the Costs and Proceeds of Round and Odd Lots

Stocks are sold in round lots, odd lots, or a combination of the two. A **round lot** usually is 100 shares. An **odd lot** consists of any number of shares less than 100 (1 to 99 shares is an odd lot for a stock with a 100-share round lot). When odd lots are purchased, a small extra charge, or **odd-lot differential,** is commonly added to the round-lot price. The differential is added to the price for a purchaser and deducted from the price for the seller. In this book, we use a differential of 12.5 cents per share as the odd-lot rate.

Learning Objective 2

Compute the costs and proceeds of round and odd lots.

EXAMPLE D

Carson Grant bought 160 shares of U.S. Steel at $54. What was his cost?

Odd-lot purchase price = $54 + $0.125 = $54.125 per odd-lot share

100 shares × $54.00 round-lot price = $5,400.00 round-lot total cost
60 shares × $54.125 odd-lot price = 3,247.50 odd-lot total cost
160 shares × $0.20 commission = + 32.00 commission
$8,679.50 total cost

EXAMPLE E

Carson sold 160 shares of U.S. Steel at $43. What was the amount of his net proceeds?

Odd-lot selling price = $43 − $0.125 = $42.875

100 shares × $43.00 round-lot price = $4,300.00 round-lot price
60 shares × $42.875 odd-lot price = 2,572.50 odd-lot price
160 shares × $0.20 commission = − 32.00 commission
$6,840.50 net proceeds

CONCEPT CHECK 21.2

James O'Brien bought 160 shares of Kelloggs at $48. What was his total cost?

Odd-lot purchase price = $48 + $0.125 = $48.125
100 shares × $48 round-lot price = $4,800.00
60 shares × $48.125 odd-lot price = $2,887.50
160 shares × $0.20 commission = + 32.00
Total cost $7,719.50

Sarah Loeb sold 220 shares of Aetna at $153.25. What was the amount of her net proceeds?

Odd-lot selling price = $153.25 − $0.125 = $153.125
200 shares × $153.25 round-lot price = $30,650.00
20 shares × $153.125 odd-lot price = + 3,062.50
220 shares × $0.20 commission = − 44.00
Net proceeds $33,668.50

Computing the Rate of Yield and Gains or Losses

Learning Objective 3

Compute rates of yield and gains or losses on the purchase and sale of stocks.

THE RATE OF YIELD

The **board of directors** is a group of people elected by shareholders to oversee the operations of the corporation. The board has sole authority to distribute earnings to shareholders. When such action is taken, the directors are said to **declare a dividend.** The rate of dividend is either a certain percent of the par value of the stock or a flat amount of money per share. Thus, a dividend of 8% on a stock with a par value of $100 would be $8.00 per share. Most large corporations pay dividends quarterly.

The **rate of yield** from an investment in stock is the ratio of the dividend to the total cost of the stock.

IAIN MASTERTON/ALAMY

EXAMPLE F

Aaron Ramos bought 300 shares of Lowes stock at $26 and paid a $19.95 commission. A dividend of $1.12 per share was paid this year. What was the rate of yield?

300 × $26 = $7,800.00 purchase price
+ 19.95 commission
$7,819.95 total cost

300 × $1.12 = $336 dividend for first year
$336 ÷ $7,819.95 = 4.3% rate of yield

GAIN OR LOSS ON SALE OF STOCK

For income tax and accounting purposes, the amount of gain or loss on a sale of stock is determined by comparing the sale proceeds to the total cost.

EXAMPLE G

Refer back to example F. If Aaron sold his stock after 3 years at $29.60, less $19.95 commission, what were the amount and the percent of gain or loss?

300 × $29.60 = $8,880.00 selling price
− 19.95 commission
$8,860.05 proceeds

$8,860.05 proceeds − $7,819.95 cost (example F) = $1,040.10 net gain
$1,040.10 ÷ $7,819.95 = 13.3% gain on sale

EXAMPLE H

Suppose that Aaron held his stock for 3 years and received a $336 dividend each year. Then to determine the total change in value (example G) he would need to add to his proceeds the $1,008 in dividends received.

Proceeds	**Total Dividends**	**Total Cost**
($8,860.05	+ $1,008)	− $7,819.95 = $2,048.10 total gain in value

$2,048.10 total gain ÷ $7,819.95 initial cost = 26.2% gain in value

CONCEPT CHECK 21.3

a. Maria Sanchez owns 700 shares of stock with a par value of $100. If she receives a dividend of 5%, how much will her total dividend be?

$100 par value × 5% per share = $5.00 per-share dividend
700 shares × $5.00 per share = $3,500 total dividend

b. Maria also owns 300 shares of a stock without a stated par value. If she receives a dividend of $2.00 per share, what will her total dividend be?

300 shares × $2.00 per share = $600 total dividend

c. Magdalena Kaur bought 200 shares of Clorox at $32.25 plus $0.20 per share commission. A dividend of $0.45 per share was paid this year. What was the rate of yield?

200 shares × $32.25 = $6,450 purchase price
200 shares × $0.20 = + 40 commission
$6,490 total cost

200 shares × $0.45 dividend = $90 for first year
$90 dividend ÷ $6,490 total cost = 1.39% rate of yield

d. After 4 years, Magdalena sold the Clorox stock for $32.50 less $0.20 per share commission. What were the amount and percent of gain or loss on the sale?

200 shares × $32.50 selling price = $6,500 selling price
200 shares × $0.20 commission = − 40 commission
$6,460 proceeds

$6,460 proceeds − $6,490 total cost = $(30) loss
$(30) loss ÷ $6,490 total cost = 0.46% loss

e. If Magdalena held the Clorox stock for 4 years, receiving the same $90 dividend each year, what was the total change in the value over the 4 years?

Proceeds	**+**	**Total Dividends (4 years)**	**−**	**Total Cost**	**=**	**Gain in Value**
($6,460	+	$360)	−	$6,490	=	$330

$330 gain in value ÷ $6,490 total cost = 5.08% gain

Computing Comparative Earning Potential

Learning Objective 4

Compute comparative earning potential of the major classes of corporate stocks.

Common stock is the usual type of stock issued by a corporation. Another type frequently issued, **preferred stock,** gives holders a right to share in earnings and liquidation before common shareholders do. For example, a company that has a 7% preferred stock must first pay dividends of 7% of the par value to the holders of preferred stock before anything is paid to the holders of common stock. Preferred stock may be designated as **cumulative**—that is, if the corporation doesn't pay the specified percentage, the unpaid amount, called a **dividend in arrears,** carries over to the following year or years. If dividends aren't paid on noncumulative preferred stock during one year, the unpaid amount doesn't carry over to the next year.

EXAMPLE I

The ABC Company earned $48,000 last year. The capital stock of the company consists of 10,000 shares of 7% preferred stock, with a par value of $40 per share, and 50,000 shares of no-par common stock. If the board of directors declared a dividend of the entire earnings, what amount would be paid in total to the preferred and common shareholders and how much would each common shareholder receive?

Preferred: 10,000 shares × $40 par value = $400,000 total value
$400,000 value × 0.07 = $28,000 paid to preferred

Common: $48,000 total earnings − $28,000 paid to preferred = $20,000
$20,000 ÷ 50,000 shares = $0.40 paid per share to common

© ISTOCKPHOTO.COM/ANDREY PROKHOROV

EXAMPLE J

Assume in example I that the preferred stock is cumulative and that for the preceding year the company had declared a dividend of only $16,000, or enough to pay a 4% dividend on preferred stock. The earnings of $48,000 for this year would be divided as follows:

Unpaid dividend from preceding year: 7% − 4% = 3%
$400,000 preferred par value × 0.03 = $12,000 cumulative (dividend in arrears)
$400,000 × 0.07 dividend for current year = $28,000
Total paid on preferred stock = $40,000
$48,000 total earnings − $40,000 paid to preferred = $ 8,000
$8,000 ÷ 50,000 common shares = $0.16 dividend per common share

Another feature that sometimes makes preferred stock an attractive investment is the possibility of converting the preferred stock into common stock. **Convertible preferred stock** gives the owner the option of converting those preferred shares into a stated number of common shares. For example, a stated conversion of 1 to 3 means that 1 share of preferred stock could be changed into 3 shares of common stock. The conversion feature combines the safety of preferred stock with the possibility of growth through conversion to common stock.

EXAMPLE K

Jeff Wilson owned 200 shares of GE convertible preferred stock at $50 par value. He converted each share of preferred into 3 shares of common. How many shares of common stock did Jeff receive when he converted?

200 × 3 = 600 shares of common stock

If common stock was selling at $22 per share on the date of conversion, how much was Jeff's common stock worth?

$22 × 600 shares = $13,200 common stock value

If Jeff paid $55 per share for his preferred stock, how much had his investment increased?

$55 × 200 preferred = $11,000 preferred stock value
$13,200 − $11,000 = $2,200 increase in value

If the convertible stock pays 5% annually and the common stock usually pays \$0.90 per share, how much more dividend might Jeff expect to receive annually?

\$50 par value × 200 shares = \$10,000
\$10,000 × 0.05 = \$500 preferred stock dividend
600 shares × \$0.90 = \$540 common stock dividend
\$540 − \$500 = \$40 more dividend annually

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 21.4

a. The XYZ Corporation had a net profit of \$120,000 in the fiscal year just ended. The capital stock consists of 8,000 shares of 8% convertible preferred stock with a par value of \$50 per share and 20,000 shares of no-par common stock. If the board of directors declared a dividend of the entire earnings, what amount would be paid to preferred and common shareholders?

Preferred: 8,000 shares × \$50 per share = \$400,000 total par value
\$400,000 par value × 8% = \$32,000 paid to preferred shareholders
Common: \$120,000 total earnings − \$32,000 paid to preferred = \$88,000 to be paid to common shareholders

b. Seth Ames owns 1,000 shares of convertible preferred stock in the XYZ Corporation, with a current market price of \$52.00 per share. The preferred stock is convertible to common stock at the rate of 2 shares of common for each share of preferred. After the end of the year in part (a), common stock was selling for \$32 per share. What would be the current market value of his stock before and after a conversion?

Preferred: 1,000 shares × \$52 per share = \$52,000 current value
Common: 1,000 shares preferred × 2 = 2,000 shares common
2,000 shares × \$32 per share = \$64,000 current value

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 21.1 AND 21.2.

Chapter Terms for Review

board of directors
capital stock
charter
common stock
convertible preferred stock
corporation
cumulative preferred stock
declare a dividend
dividend in arrears
no-par stock
odd lot
odd-lot differential
par
preferred stock
price/earnings ratio (P/E)
proceeds (from sale of stock)
rate of yield
round lot
stockbroker
stock certificate
stock exchanges
stock transactions
total cost (for purchaser of stock)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Try Microsoft® Excel

Try working the following problems using the Microsoft Excel templates found on the companion website. Solutions for the problems are also shown on the companion website.

1. Insert formulas in the shaded cells that will calculate the column amounts for **Total Cost, Total Proceeds, Amount of Gain or Loss,** and **Percent of Gain or Loss.**

   Hint: In calculating the total percent of gain or loss, be sure to use the total from the ***Amount of Gain or Loss*** *column divided by the total from the* ***Total Cost*** *column.*

Number of Shares	Cost Per Share to Purchase	Total Cost	Proceeds Per Share When Sold	Total Proceeds	Amount of Gain or Loss	Percent of Gain or Loss
200	$48.18		$51.60			
150	21.75		18.20			
190	15.00		28.85			
120	87.50		90.22			
550	16.10		15.90			
Total						

2. Add formulas to the following spreadsheet to calculate the **PE** (price to earnings) **Ratio** and the **Dividend Yield** for each stock.

Market Price	Earnings Per Share	Quarterly Dividends Per Share	PE Ratio	Percent of Dividend Yield
$65.80	$4.82	$0.95		
21.00	1.75	0.15		
125.00	8.10	1.75		
12.75	0.55	0.12		
34.00	1.92	0.45		

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
21.1 Compute the costs and proceeds of stock buy-and-sell transactions.	For calculations throughout, use $0.20 a share for commissions and $0.125 for the odd-lot differential. Round all percents to two places. 1. Ahmad Ansari bought 100 shares of Disney at $86.23. What was the total cost of the purchase of common stock? 2. Ahmad sold 200 shares of Ford Motor Co at $17.60. What were the proceeds of the sale?
21.2 Compute the costs and proceeds of round and odd lots.	Elaine Fisher purchased 1,000 shares of Deere common stock at $83 and 340 shares of preferred stock at $92. 3. What was the total cost of the purchase of common stock? 4. What was the total cost of the purchase of preferred stock?
21.3 Compute rates of yield and gains or losses on the purchase and sale of stocks.	5. Scott Pearson purchased 320 shares of MMM at $81 and sold them 1 year later at $92.35. What were his total cost, net proceeds, and amount of gain on these two transactions?
21.4 Compute comparative earning potential of the major classes of corporate stocks.	The MB Leasing Corporation earned $350,000 last year. The capital stock of the company consists of 20,000 shares of 6% preferred stock, with a par value of $50 per share, and 40,000 shares of no-par common stock. The board of directors declared a dividend of $280,000. 6. What amount will be paid to the preferred shareholders? 7. What amount per share will be paid to the common shareholders? 8. Sam Sosa owned 250 shares of Dow Chemical convertible preferred stock with a $50 par value. He converted each share of preferred into 3 shares of common. How many shares of common stock did he receive? 9. If the Dow Chemical common stock was selling at $26.50 on the day of the conversion, how much was his common stock worth?

Answers: **1.** $8,643 **2.** $3,480 **3** . $83,200 **4.** $31,353 **5.** Total cost, $25,986.50; net proceeds, $29,485.50; gain $3,500.00 **6.** $60,000 **7.** $5.50 per share **8.** 750 shares **9.** $19,875

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 21

1 Use the following stock quotes from the NYSE to answer questions (a) through (e) below.

52 Weeks										
High	**Low**	**Stock**	**Div**	**% Yld**	**PE**	**Vol 1,000s**	**Hi**	**Low**	**Close**	**Chg**
107.38	74.12	Boeing	0.40	1.96	15.4	37,700	81.90	80.54	80.54	−0.04
43.20	21.34	GM	0.25	3.78	0	18,165	26.30	25.59	25.71	−0.76

a. How many shares of Boeing were traded?
b. What was the closing price per share of GM in dollars and cents?
c. What was the previous day's closing price for each stock?
d. By how much has the price of 1 share of Boeing stock changed over the last 52 weeks?
e. Use the P/E ratio to calculate the earnings per share for the last four quarters for Boeing.

2 Determine the total cost or proceeds of each purchase or sale. Include regular commission of $0.20 per share and an odd-lot differential of $0.125 per share.

a. Purchased 300 shares of Caterpillar at $106.10.
b. Purchased 550 shares of Sprint at $5.21.
c. Sold 200 shares of Wells Fargo at $30.07.

3 Jason purchased 500 shares of XYZ stock at $17.12. One year later he sold the 500 shares at $18. He paid a transaction fee of $19.95 for each transaction.

a. What was the amount of gain or loss on the sale?
b. What was the rate of gain or loss?

4 Jason from question 3 received dividends of $0.65 per share during the year that he owned the stock.

a. What was the rate of dividend yield?
b. What was the total rate of gain or loss including the dividend?

5 Audrey owned 400 shares of Znix convertible preferred stock with a $20 par value. She converted all 400 shares into common stock at the rate of 4 to 1 (4 shares of common stock for each share of preferred). How many shares of common stock did she receive?

6 The Znix preferred stock from question 5 paid an annual dividend of 8%. Znix paid annual dividends on its common stock of $0.60 per share. How much more will Audrey receive each year in dividends by converting her stock from preferred to common?

7 Alpha Company's capital consists of 8,000 shares of $50 par 7.5% preferred stock and 50,000 shares of no-par common stock. The board of directors declared a dividend of $85,000. What is the dividend per share for preferred and common stock?

8 Assume the preferred stock in question 7 is cumulative and no dividends were declared the year before. Determine the dividend to be paid for each share of preferred and common if the board declares a total dividend of $90,000 the current year.

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Assignment 21.1: Buying and Selling Stock

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **1** **2**

A **(41 points) For calculations, use $0.20 a share for commissions unless the problem gives a flat fee and $0.125 for the odd-lot differential. Round all percents to two places. (5 points for a correct answer to problem 3; 4 points for each other correct answer)**

1. Gail Sanders purchased 2,000 shares of Disney (DIS) common stock at $42.50 and 180 shares of preferred stock at $60.

a. What was the total cost of the purchase of common stock? __________

b. What was the total cost of the purchase of preferred stock? __________

2. Three months later, Gail sold her 2,000 shares of DIS common stock at $44 and her 180 shares of preferred stock at $58.50.

a. What were the proceeds on the sale of common stock? __________

b. What were the proceeds on the sale of preferred stock? __________

c. How much did Gail gain or lose on the purchase and sale of all of her DIS stock? _____________

3. David Lee purchased 200 shares of Solar Winds common stock at $45.20 and paid a $19.95 transaction fee. A dividend of $3.00 per share was paid the first year. What was the rate of yield? __________

4. Sheri Jeffers purchased stock for a total cost of $12,600, including commission. She sold the stock a month later for $13,960, after commission.

a. What was her net gain on the sale? __________

b. What was her percent of gain on the sale? __________

c. If Sheri had held her stock another week and sold for $12,280 after commission, what would her percent of loss on the sale have been? __________

5. If Sheri hadn't sold her stock for $12,280 but had waited another 3 months while the stock fell to a price where she could have realized net proceeds of $11,275, what would have been her percent of loss? __________

____

Score for A (41)

B **(59 points) Solve the following problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

6. Peter Roncalio, Paul Stevens, and Mary Petrakas each invested $10,000 in different areas. Calculate the value of each $10,000 investment at the end of 2 years. (5 points for each correct answer)

a. Peter put his $10,000 in a savings account that paid 3.2% interest annually. (Add interest on the savings account the first year to the principal before figuring interest for the second year.) __________

b. Paul bought 7%, $50 par value preferred stock at $62.50 a share, including commission. He received his full dividend at the end of each year. He sold his stock at the end of the second year. The sales proceeds, after commission, were $62.50 a share. __________

c. Mary bought common stock at $40 a share, including commission. Her stock paid quarterly dividends of 90 cents per share. In 2 years, the stock decreased to a value of $38.50 a share. __________

7. Find the amount of the dividend per share and the rate of yield per share for each of the following preferred stocks. The cost per share includes all commissions. (2 points for each correct answer)

a. Cost per share $32; dividend declared $2.10.

Amount of dividend __________
Rate of yield __________

b. Cost per share $80; par value $50; dividend declared 6%.

Amount of dividend __________
Rate of yield __________

c. Cost per share $44.50; dividend declared $1.05.

Amount of dividend __________
Rate of yield __________

d. Cost per share $90; par value $100; dividend declared 5.5%.

Amount of dividend __________
Rate of yield __________

e. Cost per share $58; par value $50; dividend declared 6.5%.
Amount of dividend __________
Rate of yield __________

8. Determine the amount and percent of gain or loss for each of the following transactions. Show an amount of loss in parentheses ( ). The purchase costs and the sale proceeds include commissions. Round percents to two decimal places. (3 points for each correct answer)

	Number of Shares	Per-Share Purchase Cost	Per-Share Sale Proceeds	Amount of Gain or Loss	Percent of Gain or Loss
a.	100	$47.20	$52.85	________	________
b.	250	12.00	14.50	________	________
c.	140	22.30	20.70	________	________
d.	640	17.00	12.75	________	________

____

Score for B (59)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 21.2: Capital Stock

Name ______________________________

Date ______________ Score ______________

Learning Objectives 3 4

A **(34 points) The information in problem 1 also applies to problems 2 and 3. (2 points for each correct answer)**

1. The Duval Company was incorporated with 7% preferred capital stock of $500,000 and common stock of $1,800,000. The par value of the preferred stock was $100, and the par value of the common stock was $20. How many shares of each kind of stock were there?

Preferred stock ____________
Common stock ____________

2. Last year, dividends were declared by the Duval Company, which had earnings totaling $359,000.

a. What was the total amount of the preferred stock dividend? ____________

b. What amount would have been paid on each share of common stock if all the earnings had been distributed? ____________

3. The directors of the Duval Company actually declared four quarterly dividends of $0.75 a share on the common stock and $\frac{1}{4}$ of the amount due annually on the preferred stock.

a. What was the total amount paid by Duval to all common shareholders for each quarterly dividend? ____________

b. What was the total amount paid to preferred shareholders each quarter? ____________

c. What was the quarterly per-share payment to preferred shareholders? ____________

d. What was the year's total amount of the common stock dividends? ____________

e. What was the total amount of all dividends paid by Duval during the year? ____________

f. How much more in dividends was paid to each share of preferred than to each share of common? ____________

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4. The capital stock of the Eisley Company consists of 300,000 shares of preferred stock and 5,500,000 shares of common stock. Last year, a dividend of $3.60 a share was declared on preferred stock and four quarterly dividends of $0.35 a share on common stock. How much was the total dividend for the year on each class of stock?

Preferred stock ____________

Common stock ____________

5. ComputerMart has 150,000 shares of 6.5% preferred stock at $1 par value and 1,500,000 shares of common stock. ComputerMart declared total dividends of $250,000 for the current year. How much was the total dividend for preferred stock and how much was the dividend per share on the common stock?

Preferred stock ____________

Common stock ____________
(per share)

6. Michael Wu bought 300 shares of XRT 6% preferred stock, $10 par value, when it was selling at $12 per share, including commission.

a. What was Michael's stock worth at the time of purchase? ___________

b. What was the amount of Michael's quarterly dividend? ___________

c. What was Michael's dividend yield? ___________

____
Score for A (34)

B **(66 points) Do not consider commission in the following problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

7. Inland Sales, Inc., has issued 25,000 shares of 8%, $20 par, cumulative preferred stock and 50,000 shares of common stock. The board of directors declares 50% of net income each year as dividends. Inland Sales had net income of $76,000 for 2014, $112,000 for 2015, and $130,000 for 2016. Compute the annual dividends per share for preferred and common stock for each of the 3 years. (2 points for each correct answer)

Year	Preferred Dividends/Share	Common Dividends/Share
2014		
2015		
2016		

8. Luke Davis owned 200 shares of Sony 6.5% convertible preferred stock, $50 par value, for which he paid $56 per share, including commission. Two years later, after receiving preferred dividends each year, he converted to 600 shares of Sony common stock, valued at $23.50 a share at the time of conversion. (4 points for each correct answer)

a. What was the cost to Luke of the preferred stock? __________

b. How much did Luke receive in dividends from the preferred stock? __________

c. What was the value of the common stock that Luke received? __________

d. If he sells the 600 common shares immediately, how much gain will Luke realize, including his dividend?
____

e. What would be Luke's percent of gain? __________

9. Texas Air Corporation issued 5,000,000 shares of 7% preferred stock at $100 par value and 10,000,000 shares of no-par common stock. Bob Thruston owned 100 shares of preferred. Barbara Beck owned 500 shares of common. In 2015, Texas Air paid $25,000,000 in dividends to its common shareholders. How much more than Bob did Barbara receive? (10 points) __________

10. Sonia Revas owned 700 shares of PIE 6% convertible stock, $50 par value, for which she paid $42 a share. She received a dividend for 1 year. She then converted the preferred stock to 400 shares of common stock valued at $98.50 a share. (4 points for each correct answer)

a. What was the cost to Sonia for her preferred stock? __________

b. How much did Sonia receive as a dividend for her preferred stock? __________

c. What was the value of her common stock at the time of conversion? __________

d. If the common stock paid an annual dividend of $6.00 a share, how much more dividend would she receive annually? __________

e. What was Sonia's percent of increase in annual return as a result of conversion to common stock? __________

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

11. Determine the price/earnings ratio (P/E) of each of the following stocks: (2 points for each correct answer)

a. JBC common stock has a current market price of $37 and has had earnings per share of $0.58 each quarter for the last four quarters. __________

b. The current market price of Cannon common stock is $72.88. Cannon has paid dividends of $1.20 per quarter for each of the last four quarters. __________

____

Score for B (66)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

22

Corporate and Government Bonds

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1	Compute gains and losses on convertible and callable corporate bond transactions.
Learning Objective 2	Compute annual interest on bonds.
Learning Objective 3	Compute accrued interest on bond transactions made between interest payment dates.
Learning Objective 4	Compute annual yield on bonds selling at a premium or a discount.
Learning Objective 5	Compute a rate of yield to maturity.

When a corporation or government entity needs cash for a long period of time, usually 10 years or more, it often will issue long-term notes known as **bonds.** Bonds are bought and sold on the open market, much like stocks.

Two main types of **government bonds** are treasury bonds and municipal bonds. **Treasury bonds** are issued by the United States government. These bonds are fully guaranteed by the full faith and credit of the United States government. Bondholders are protected against default unless the federal government becomes insolvent. **Municipal bonds** are issued by states, cities, school districts, and other public entities. Unlike treasury bonds, municipal bonds pose a risk that the issuer might fail to repay the principal. Interest paid on municipal bonds generally is exempt from federal and state income taxes.

There are many kinds of **corporate bonds,** two of which are convertible bonds and callable bonds. **Convertible bonds** have a provision that they may be converted to a designated number of shares or a designated value of the corporation's stock. **Callable bonds** have a provision that the issuer can repurchase, or call in, the bonds at specified dates if the board of directors authorizes the retirement (payoff) of the bonds before their maturity date. Such action by the board of directors would be appropriate if interest rates fell significantly below the interest rate of the callable bond.

Computing Gains and Losses on Corporate Bonds

Learning Objective 1

Compute gains and losses on convertible and callable corporate bond transactions.

EXAMPLE A

Bob Saxby bought one ABC Corporation convertible bond for $1,000. The bond was convertible to 100 shares of stock. At the time of the purchase, the stock was selling for $10 per share. At the end of 1 year, the stock was selling for $15 per share. Bob converted his bond. Assuming that the market value of the bond hadn't changed, how much profit did Bob realize by converting?

100 shares of stock × $15 per share = $1,500
$1,500 stock value − $1,000 bond value = $500 profit

EXAMPLE B

XYZ Corporation issued $1,000,000 worth of callable bonds paying 8% interest. The maturity date for the bonds was in 10 years. Two years later, interest rates fell to 6%. The bonds were called, and new bonds were sold at the 6% rate. How much did XYZ Corporation save by calling the bonds?

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
TWENTY DOLLAR
BOND

PHOTOSPIN, INC/ALAMY

10 years to maturity at issue − 2 years = 8 years remaining to maturity
8% − 6% = 2% savings per year
$1,000,000 × 2% = $20,000 interest saved per year
$20,000 × 8 years = $160,000 saved

CONCEPT CHECK 22.1

a. What would be the "stock" value of a bond that was convertible to 40 shares of stock if the stock was priced at $37.62?

40 shares × $37.62 = $1,504.80

b. If a company issued a callable bond at $7\frac{1}{2}$% interest, would it be likely to call the bond if the current rate of interest was 8%?

No, because it could invest the cash at an extra $\frac{1}{2}$% interest.

Computing Annual Interest on Corporate and Government Bonds

Learning Objective 2

Compute annual interest on bonds.

When first issued, bonds are sold either through brokerage houses or directly to investors at or near the price of $1,000, called face value. **Face value** represents the amount that will be paid to the holder when the bonds are redeemed at maturity. If the market value becomes less than the face value, the bond sells at a **discount.** If the market value becomes more than the face value, the bond sells at a **premium.** (The discount or premium amount is the difference between the market value and the face value.)

Bonds are rated. By checking a bond's rating, buyers can have some indication of how safe their bond investment is. **Bond ratings** are information based on experience and research; they are not a guarantee. One major firm rating bonds is Standard & Poor's.

In Standard & Poor's system, the ratings include AAA (the highest rating), AA, A, BBB, BB, B, CCC, CC, C, and D. A bond with a low rating is a higher-risk bond and sometimes is known as a **junk bond.** The lower a bond's rating, the higher are its yield and its risk.

EXAMPLE C

Kiley Moore purchased a $1,000 bond with a rating of B, paying 14% per year. Mary Baker purchased a $1,000 bond with a rating of AAA, paying 5% per year. Jean Carlson purchased a $1,000 junk bond, paying 25% per year. Each bond was to mature in 10 years.

Kiley's B-rated bond paid faithfully for 4 years. Then the company filed for bankruptcy and paid 60 cents on the dollar. Mary's AAA-rated bond paid interest during its entire 10-year life and paid face value on maturity. Jean's junk bond paid interest for 3 years. Then the company filed for bankruptcy and paid 30 cents on the dollar.

Compute how much each investor received for her $1,000 investment.

Kiley: $1,000 × 14% = $140 annual interest
$140 × 4 years = $560 interest
$560 interest + (0.60 × $1,000) redemption = $1,160 total

Mary: $1,000 × 5% = $50 annual interest
$50 × 10 years = $500 interest
$500 interest + $1,000 redemption = $1,500 total

Jean: $1,000 × 25% = $250 annual interest
$250 × 3 years = $750 interest
$750 interest + (0.30 × $1,000) redemption = $1,050 total

Rose Alcorn

How much would Kiley and Jean have received on their investments if the bonds had paid full interest for the 10-year period and face value on maturity?

Kiley: $1,000 × 14% × 10 years = $1,400
$1,400 + $1,000 = $2,400

Jean: $1,000 × 25% × 10 years = $2,500
$2,500 + $1,000 = $3,500

NEWSPAPER INFORMATION ON BONDS

Information about the market value and sale of bonds on the major exchanges is reported daily in financial newspapers and on the Internet. Figure 22-1 shows information usually included in a bond report.

Figure 22-1 Bond Market Report

Bonds	Current Yield	Volume	Close	Net Change
ATT $4\frac{1}{2}$s19	3.9	35	115	+1
Apple 2s20	2.05	18	97.5	. . .
Shell $2\frac{3}{8}$s22	2.8	62	85	+.70
Microsoft 3x23	2.94	85	102	+.80
WallMart $3\frac{1}{2}$24	3.45	15	101.4	−.25
Stanford $4\frac{5}{8}$19	2.2	12	111.5	. . .

Prices of bonds are quoted in percents of face value. For example, a $1,000 bond quoted at 104 would sell at a premium price of $1,040 ($1,000 × 104%). If quoted at 87, the bond would sell at a discounted price of $870 ($1,000 × 87%).

Rule: Prices over 100 (100%) include a premium. Those under 100 (100%) include a discount.

The two main factors that influence the market price are the interest rate and the bond rating. For example, if a bond pays 8% interest and the current market rate of interest is greater than 8% for similarly rated bonds, the bonds will sell at a discount sufficient to make up for the difference in interest rates over the term of the bond.

Printed bond reports generally give a letter abbreviation for the company, the interest rate, a small s to designate *semiannual* (every 6 months) interest payments, and the maturity date, followed by the current yield, the number of bonds sold that day, the closing price of the bond, and the net change in price from the prior day.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The first line of the bond market report in Figure 22-1 would be interpreted as ATT (designating American Telephone and Telegraph), a $4\frac{1}{2}\%$ interest rate based on the face value of the bond, and interest paid semiannually. The bond matures in 2019. The current yield (average annual interest rate based on the current price of the bond) is 3.9%. The day's volume of bonds sold was 35. The closing price was 115 (115% of face value), up 1 from the prior day.

EXAMPLE D

Calculate the amount of the semiannual interest check for a $1,000 bond reported in a financial paper as R&S Corp $7\frac{1}{2}$s21.

$\$1{,}000$ face value $\times 7\frac{1}{2}\% = \$75$; $\$75 \div 2 = \$37.50$ semiannual interest payment

COMMISSIONS FOR BUYING AND SELLING BONDS

The charge for buying and selling bonds varies among brokers, but there is no standard commission. Commissions are very small and thus comprise only a negligible part of the bond transaction. We do not use commission costs for problems in this textbook.

CONCEPT CHECK 22.2

If James Kun purchased 27 triple-A bonds that pay 7.1% and mature in 8 years, what amount of interest income could he expect annually?

$\$1{,}000 \times 0.071 \times 27 = \$1{,}917$

If James holds the bonds until maturity, how much will he receive on redemption of the bonds?

$\$1{,}000 \times 27 = \$27{,}000$ total face value

Computing Accrued Interest on Bond Transactions

Learning Objective 3

Compute accrued interest on bond transactions made between interest payment dates.

Most bonds specify that interest is payable quarterly, semiannually, or annually. The interest payment dates—such as January 1 (for interest through December 31) and July 1 (for interest through June 30)—are stated on the bond. When a bond is purchased between these dates, it is customary to add the **accrued interest** (interest earned from the last payment date to the purchase date). This interest is calculated by finding the number of days from the day on which interest was last paid through the day before the purchase and dividing this number by 365.

The buyer pays the seller for the interest accumulated or accrued on the bond since the last interest payment date. On the next regular interest payment date, the new owner receives the interest for the full interest period. This procedure allocates the interest correctly between the buyer and the seller for the split interest period because the corporation that issued the bond will pay the entire amount to whomever owns the bond as of each interest date.

EXAMPLE E

A \$1,000 bond, with interest at 8% payable semiannually on January 1 and July 1, was purchased on September 12 at 104 plus accrued interest. What is the number of days for which the accrued interest is paid?

Purchase date: September 12
Days of accrued interest: (July) 31 + (August) 31 + (September) 11 = 73

What is the purchase payment for the bond?

$\$1,000 \times 104\% = \$1,040$ market value
$\$1,000 \times 0.08$ interest $\times \frac{73}{365}$ accrued days $= \$16$ accrued interest
$\$1,040 + \$16 = \$1,056$ purchase payment for bond

In example E, although the accrued interest is an additional payment by the buyer, the buyer will get it back in the \$40 ($\$1,000 \times 8\% \times \frac{1}{2}$) interest payment on January 1.

CONCEPT CHECK 22.3

Ann Ahn purchased two Hertz 7s19 bonds at 95.6 on April 15. What amount did she pay her broker?

$\$2,000 \times 0.956 = \$1,912.00$
Purchase date: April 15
(January) 31 + (February) 28 + (March) 31 + (April) 14 = 104 days
$\$2,000 \times 0.07 \times \frac{104}{365} = \$39.89$ accrued interest
$\$1,912.00 + \$39.89 = \$1,951.89$ paid to her broker

Computing the Rate of Yield for Bonds

Learning Objective 4

Compute annual yield on bonds selling at a premium or a discount.

Interest on bonds provides income to bondholders. This income is referred to as **yield.** Newspapers and bond brokers refer to the annual yield of a bond as its **current yield.** Many newspaper and Internet bond reports include a column showing current yield. To calculate the current yield from an investment in bonds, use the following formula:

Annual interest ÷ Current purchase price = Current yield

When a bond is purchased at a discount, the current yield is greater than the face rate. For example, a \$1,000 bond, purchased at 90, pays 7% interest and matures in 10 years. Interest of \$70 ($\$1,000 \times 7\%$) is paid annually, but as the bond was purchased for \$900 ($\$1,000 \times 90\%$), the effective rate, or yield, as a percent of cost is 7.8% ($\$70 \div \$900$).

When a bond is purchased at a premium, the current yield is less than the face rate. The reason is that the interest paid is calculated on the face value, and the yield is based on the higher market prices (or the lower price if the bond is purchased at a discount).

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE F

Five $1,000 Levi Strauss 9 $\frac{1}{2}$s19 bonds were purchased at 80. What was the current yield on the bonds?

$1,000 × 5 = $5,000 face value
$5,000 × 80% = $4,000 purchase price
$5,000 × 0.095 = $475 annual interest
$475 ÷ $4,000 = 0.11875 = 11.9% current yield
or 9.5 ÷ 0.80 = 11.875 = 11.9% current yield

In example F, the bonds sold at a discount of $1,000 ($5,000 − $4,000) because the investor paid that much less for them than the maturity (face) value. Therefore, the current yield of 11.8% is more than the stated interest rate of 9 $\frac{1}{2}$%.

CONCEPT CHECK 22.4

The Walmart bonds listed in Figure 22-1 recently rose to a price of 109. Zelda Morantz purchased four at 109. What will be her annual current yield?

$4,000 × 109% = $4,360 purchase price
$4,000 × 0.035 = $140 annual interest
$140 ÷ $4,360 = 0.0321, or 3.21%,
or 0.035 ÷ 1.09 = 0.0321, or 3.21%

Computing the Rate of Yield to Maturity

Learning Objective 5

Compute a rate of yield to maturity.

Careful investors calculate the **rate of yield to maturity,** or the rate of interest they will earn if they hold the bond to its maturity date, which is the date the face value will be paid to the bond holder. The yield to maturity calculation involves use of the true annual interest by adding a part of the discount or subtracting a part of the premium and basing the rate on the average principal invested (the average of the investor's purchase price and the bond's maturity value).

STEPS to Compute the Rate of Yield to Maturity

1. Compute the annual interest: Multiply the face value by the stated (face) rate.
2. Determine the **annual discount** (or **premium**) **amortization:** Divide the discount (or premium) by the number of years from purchase to maturity.
3. Determine the **average principal invested:** Add the maturity value and the cost price and then divide by 2.
4. The following formula computes the rate:

$$\frac{\text{Annual interest} + \text{Annual discount amortization (or} - \text{Annual premium amortization)}}{\text{Average principal invested}}$$

Again, because brokerage charges are such a small part of the cost, they usually are omitted from the calculations of yield to maturity.

EXAMPLE G

Assume that the Levi Strauss bonds in example F matured 20 years after the purchase date.

STEP 1 $5,000 × 0.095 = $475 annual interest

STEP 2 $1,000 ÷ 20 years = $50 annual discount amortization

STEP 3 ($5,000 + $4,000) ÷ 2 = $4,500 average principal invested

STEP 4 ($475 + $50) ÷ $4,500 = 0.1167 = 11.67% yield to maturity

This rate is somewhat less than the 11.9% current yield, but it is more accurate with respect to actual income if the bond is held to maturity.

EXAMPLE H

To calculate the yield to maturity on bonds sold at a premium, assume that five InTT $9\frac{1}{2}$s27 bonds were bought at a premium price of 124 and that the bonds will mature in 15 years. The market value of the five bonds is $6,200 ($5,000 × 124%).

STEP 1 $5,000 × 0.095 = $475 annual interest

STEP 2 ($6,200 − $5,000) ÷ 15 years = $80 annual premium amortization

STEP 3 ($5,000 + $6,200) ÷ 2 = $5,600 average principal invested

STEP 4 ($475 − $80) ÷ $5,600 = 0.0705 = 7.05% yield to maturity

This rate is less than the stated rate of $9\frac{1}{2}$% on the premium bonds.

✓ CONCEPT CHECK 22.5

If the four Walmart $3\frac{1}{2}$s24 bonds Zelda Morantz purchased at 109 (Concept Check 22.4) had 10 years to maturity, what would be her rate of yield to maturity?

$4,000 × 0.035 = $140 annual interest
$360 premium ÷ 10 years = $36 annual premium amortization
($4,000 + $4,360) ÷ 2 = $4,180 average principal invested
($140 − $36) ÷ $4,180 = 0.0249 = 2.49% yield to maturity

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENTS 22.1 and 22.2.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter Terms for Review

accrued interest
annual discount amortization
annual premium amortization
average principal invested
bond ratings
bonds
callable bonds
convertible bonds
corporate bonds
current yield
discount
face value
government bonds
junk bond
municipal bonds
premium (bond)
rate of yield to maturity
treasury bonds
yield

Try Microsoft® Excel

Try working the following problems using the Microsoft Excel templates found on the companion website. Solutions for the problems are also shown on the companion website.

1. Complete the following Excel worksheet by entering formulas in the shaded cells to calculate the **Total Cost** and **Premium** or **(Discount)** for each bond purchase.

   Hint: Remember that each bond has a face value of $1,000.

Number Purchased	Price Paid	Total Cost	Premium (Discount)
5	92		
12	108		
8	112		
2	88		
16	92		

2. Complete the following Excel worksheet by entering formulas in the shaded cells to calculate the **Annual Interest, Current Purchase Price,** and **Current Yield** for each bond.

   Hint: Calculations are for one bond (face value $1,000). Current yield should be shown as a percent.

Bond	Price	Annual Interest	Current Purchase Price	Current Yield
IBM 7s15	90			
SBC 9s18	107			
CXL 6.2s20	86.5			

3. Complete the following Excel worksheet by entering formulas in the shaded cells to calculate the Yield to Maturity for six InTT 8.2s24 bonds purchased at a premium price of 120. The bonds will mature in 12 years.

   Hint: Use parentheses to do addition or subtraction before multiplication or division. Yield to maturity should be shown as a percent.

Market Value of Bonds	
Annual Interest	
Annual Premium Amortization	
Average Principal Invested	
Yield to Maturity	

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
22.1 Compute gains and losses on convertible and callable corporate bond transactions.	1. Shane Hunter bought five DVC bonds at $1,000 per bond. Each bond was convertible after 3 years to 50 shares of stock. At the end of 3 years, shares of DVC stock were selling at $32. The bond price had risen to 120. Should Shane exercise his option to convert? 2. Colton Mfg. Corp. issued $2,000,000 worth of callable bonds paying 9% interest. The maturity date for the bonds was in 20 years. Four years later, interest rates fell to $7\frac{1}{2}\%$. The bonds were called, and new bonds sold at the $7\frac{1}{2}\%$ rate. How much did Colton Mfg. Corp. save by calling the bonds?
22.2 Compute annual interest on bonds.	3. Bonnie Brown purchased three 12-year, $1,000 bonds: one Boeing at 7%, one U.S. Treasury at 4.5%, and one Water World Sports at 12%. If the Water World Sports bond defaulted after 5 years and paid holders 60%, which bond produced the most income in the 5-year period, assuming that the $400 loss on the WWS bond was considered to be a reduction in income? How much did it produce?
22.3 Compute accrued interest on bond transactions made between interest payment dates.	4. One BLM 9s18 bond was purchased at 102 on February 12. What was the amount of accrued interest if interest is paid January 1 and July 1?
22.4 Compute annual yield on bonds selling at a premium or a discount.	5. Six Khol 7.4s25 bonds were purchased at 92. What was the current yield?
22.5 Compute a rate of yield to maturity.	6. Three NYR 8s26 bonds were purchased at 120. The bonds will mature in 14 years. What is the rate of yield to maturity?

Answers: **1.** The stock has $2,000 greater value; yes, he should convert **2.** $480,000 **3.** Boeing; $350 **4.** $10.36 **5.** 8.04% **6.** 5.97%

SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 22

1. Alfred Tennyson purchased 15 IBM 7½s24 bonds at 104.
   - **a.** What was the cost of the bonds?
   - **b.** How often will interest be paid?
   - **c.** How much interest will Alfred receive each interest period?
   - **d.** Assuming the bonds pay interest on April 1 and October 1, calculate the accrued interest if the bonds were purchased June 6.
   - **e.** What is the total amount Alfred paid for the bonds including accrued interest?
   - **f.** Were the bonds purchased at a premium or a discount?
   - **g.** What was the amount of the premium or discount?
   - **h.** When do the bonds mature?
   - **i.** What is the current yield on the bonds?
   - **j.** Assume the bonds mature in 12 years. Calculate the yield to maturity.

2. Marta Samuals purchased six Xerox $1,000 convertible bonds at 95. Each bond was convertible into 30 shares of common stock. After 5 years, when the stock was selling at $42, Marta converted all six bonds.
   - **a.** How many shares of stock did she receive?
   - **b.** What was the value of the stock upon conversion?
   - **c.** What was Marta's gain upon conversion of the bonds?
   - **d.** Should Marta convert her bonds into stock if the stock's current market price is $35 per share? Why or why not?

3. Avis, Inc., issued $50,000,000 of 9½%, 20-year, callable bonds. After 6 years, the interest rate fell to 8%. How much interest would Avis save by calling the bonds and reissuing bonds at the lower rate?

4. William Gibbs is considering purchasing one of the following bonds:
   MCD 7s25 at a market price of 90
   AOC 8s25 at a market price of 100
   JBC 9s25 at a market price of 110

   Calculate the annual yield and yield to maturity for each bond assuming there are 10 years to maturity for each bond. Which bond would you recommend William purchase based on your computations?

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Assignment 22.1: Corporate and Government Bonds

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **3**

A **(38 points) Solve the following problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

1. Jan Yu purchased seven IBM $1,000 convertible bonds at $105. Each bond was convertible to 25 shares of IBM stock in 5 years. At the end of 5 years, IBM stock was selling at $97. If Jan converted, what would be her 5-year capital gain? (4 points) __________

2. Return to problem 1 and assume that the stock price after 5 years was $38. How much more money would Jan get by cashing in the bonds rather than converting to stock? (4 points) __________

3. The city of Jamestown, Virginia, issued $27,000,000 worth of callable bonds at 9% on January 1, 2011. The bonds were due in 2026. If interest rates were to fall to 6.5% on January 1, 2018, how much could Jamestown save by reissuing the bonds at the 6.5% rate on January 1, 2018? (4 points) __________

4. Assume that an investor had purchased $500,000 worth of the Jamestown bonds referred to in problem 3. How much interest would he lose from having the bonds called if he reinvested in the new bond issue? (4 points) __________

5. Devi Sharma purchased 22 corporate bonds, as shown. What was her total cost, and how much interest income would she realize annually? (1 point for each correct answer)

Bond	Number Purchased	Price	Total Cost	Annual Interest
a. Apex $7\frac{1}{2}$s18	4	100	__________	__________
b. DukeP $7\frac{7}{8}$s20	3	98	__________	__________
c. PGE $10\frac{1}{8}$s22	9	86	__________	__________
d. IBM $9\frac{3}{8}$s25	6	109	__________	__________
Total	22		__________	__________

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6. What is the dollar amount of interest per year and the maturity date for each of the following $1,000 bonds? (1 point for each correct answer)

Bond	Interest	Maturity Date	Bond	Interest	Maturity Date
a. PGE 6s20	__________	__________	**d.** Fldcst 12 $\frac{1}{2}$ s16	__________	__________
b. Avnet 8s18	__________	__________	**e.** OwCor 12s18	__________	__________
c. CPoWV 9s19	__________	__________	**f.** Cisco 7 $\frac{1}{2}$ s21	__________	__________

____

Score for A (38)

B **(50 points) Solve the following problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

7. In each of the following problems, determine the number of days for which accrued interest is paid and the total purchase payment made for the bonds. (5 points for each correct answer)

a. On September 12, Tracy Dean bought, at 103 plus accrued interest, two IBM 9s18 bonds with interest paid on January 1 and July 1.

Number of days accrued interest: __________ Total payment: __________

b. On October 9, Ben Blue bought, at 93 plus accrued interest, three IBM 7 $\frac{1}{2}$s15 bonds with interest paid on January 1 and July 1.

Number of days accrued interest: __________ Total payment: __________

8. Jack Mueller purchased a $1,000 corporate bond with a rating of AAA, paying 8% per year. Tom Bronkowski purchased a $1,000 junk bond paying 20%. Each bond was to mature in 10 years. Jack's bond paid interest for the 10-year period and face value at maturity. Tom's junk bond paid interest for 3 years before the company filed for bankruptcy and paid 45 cents on the dollar to its bondholders. How much more did Jack receive from his investment than Tom received from his? (10 points)

9. Compute the current yield for the following bonds. (5 points for each correct answer)

Bond	Price	Current Yield
a. PepsiCo 9s18	108	__________
b. IBM 7 $\frac{3}{8}$s22	93.5	__________
c. Avitar 10s25	112	__________
d. ABM 6s22	82	__________

____

Score for B (50)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 22.2: Bond Rate of Yield

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 4 5

A **(52 points) Solve the following problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

1. An investor bought a 7.4% bond at 90. The bond would mature in 8 years. Round answers to two decimal places. (4 points for each correct answer)

a. What was the average annual yield? ________ **b.** What was the rate of yield to maturity? ________

2. In 2012, Jim Ayers bought six LTV 5s27 bonds for which he paid 82. Three years later, he sold the bonds at 84 and bought six Southern Electric $9\frac{1}{2}$s35 bonds at 93. Did he increase or decrease the original rate of yield to maturity, and, if so, by how much? Round yields to one decimal place. (14 points) __________

3. On July 29, Joy Brill purchased four GMC $3\frac{1}{2}$s20 bonds at 88. Interest was payable March 1 and September 1. Included in Joy's cost was accrued interest for 150 days. (4 points for each correct answer)

a. What was the total purchase cost? ________ **b.** What was the average annual yield? Do not consider accrued interest when calculating this rate of yield. ________

4. In 2015, Benito Cooper planned to purchase 20 $1,000 bonds and hold them to maturity. He had two choices: The first was EM&E $8\frac{1}{2}$s28 at 106.50. The second was Standard of California 6s25 at 80. Benito purchased the issue that provided the higher rate of yield to maturity.

a. Which issue did Benito purchase? (12 points) ________________

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

b. How much income would Benito have earned monthly if Standard of California had been purchased? (3 points)

____

c. If, in 2015, Benito had purchased EM&E 8 $\frac{1}{2}$s28 bonds at a price of 97.5, what would have been the yield to maturity? (6 points) ________

d. Which company's bonds would be the better buy: EM&E at 97.5 or Standard of California? (1 point)

____

____

Score for A (52)

5. (48 points) Complete the following table. Show yield to maturity to one decimal place. (2 points for each correct answer)

	Number Purchased	Price Paid	Discount or Premium	Years to Maturity	Interest Rate	Annual Interest	+Discount −Premium Amortization	Average Principal Invested	Yield to Maturity
a.	8	105	$−400	5	8%	________	________	________	________
b.	10	97	+300	10	6%	________	________	________	________
c.	12	86	+1,680	8	7.50%	________	________	________	________
d.	5	112	−600	3	10.20%	________	________	________	________
e.	1	90	+100	5	7%	________	________	________	________
f.	20	102.5	−500	8	9.75%	________	________	________	________

____

Score for 5 (48)

Annuities

23

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1	Compute the future value of an annuity.
Learning Objective 2	Compute the regular payments of an annuity from the future value.
Learning Objective 3	Compute the present value of an annuity.
Learning Objective 4	Compute the regular payments of an annuity from the present value.
Learning Objective 5	Compute the loan payment required to amortize a loan.
Learning Objective 6	Create a loan amortization schedule.

John and Joan Popplewell just won their state's lottery and the prize was listed as $5,000,000. When they purchased the winning ticket, they had a choice of taking the prize over 20 years or taking one cash payment now. The $5,000,000 represents the sum of 20 annual payments of $250,000 each. The series of equal payments is called an **annuity.** If they choose the single cash payment, they will not actually receive $5,000,000 in cash. The amount that they receive is the **present value of an annuity.**

In Chapter 22, we discussed corporate and government bonds. When a corporation issues $10,000,000 worth of 8%, 20-year bonds, the corporation is simply borrowing money from the public for 20 years. Each $1,000 bond pays 8% (or $80) each year. The $80 is paid out in two $40 payments every 6 months for 20 years. The series of $40 interest payments is an annuity. The amount that someone pays for the bond is the present value of the annuity. Some investors may worry that the corporation won't have $10,000,000 available in 20 years to repay the bonds. Therefore, the corporation may decide to make 20 equal annual payments into a separate account managed by a neutral third party. At the end of the 20 years, the deposits plus accumulated interest will be worth the $10,000,000. This fund of deposits is called a **sinking fund.** Equal deposits into a sinking fund form an annuity. The total amount is the **future value of an annuity.**

Computing the Future Value of an Annuity

Learning Objective 1

Compute the future value of an annuity.

An annuity is made up of a series of equal payments that occur at regular time intervals. The payments go into—or come out of—an interest-bearing account or investment. The constant interest rate is compounded at the same time the payments are made. (Perhaps obviously, the number of periods in an annuity is the same as the number of payments.)

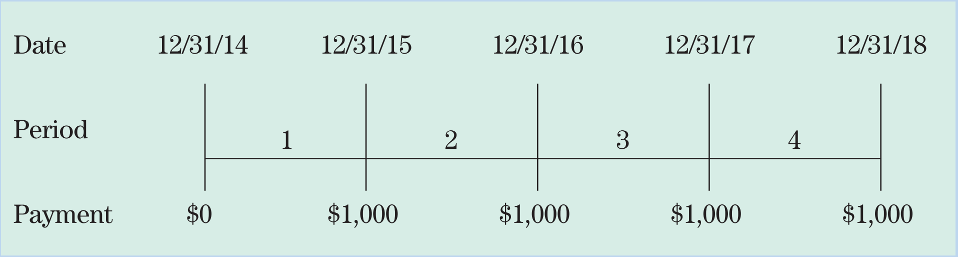
We can illustrate an annuity by drawing a straight line, called a **time line.** On the time line, we insert equal marks and the payment dates, and write in the payment amounts.

EXAMPLE A

Assume that an annuity has four annual payments of $1,000, always on December 31. The date of the first $1,000 payment is December 31, 2015. Draw a time line showing the four years of time from December 31, 2014, to December 31, 2018, and the four payments.

The annuity illustrated in Figure 23-1, with the payments occurring at the end of each period, is called an **ordinary annuity.** In this book, every annuity will have its payments at the end of each period. The date December 31, 2014, is the *beginning of the annuity,* and the date December 31, 2018, is the *end of the annuity.*

Figure 23-1 Diagram of an Ordinary Annuity



Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Again, the value of the annuity at the end of the annuity is called the *future value of the annuity.* In example A, it is the total value of all four payments plus the compound interest from the date of each payment until December 31, 2018. When a business or individual decides to deposit the same amount of money every year (or month or quarter) into an interest-bearing account for a specified amount of time, the future value of the annuity is the amount that will be in the account when the last deposit is made.

EXAMPLE B

In December 2014, Mary Currie accepted a job with a manufacturing company. Mary decided to save $1,000 at the end of each year for 4 years. The company credit union allowed Mary to open a savings account on December 31, 2014, but Mary will not make any deposit until December 31, 2015. She also will make deposits on December 31 of 2016, 2017, and 2018. The credit union pays interest of 10% compounded annually. How much will be in the account after the last deposit? (*Hint:* Make a time line diagram and compute the future value of each of the four deposits.)

To find the future value of an annuity, the fundamental concept is to find the future value of each separate payment using the concepts from Chapter 16. Then add the four future values.

In Chapter 16, you learned the shortcut formula for compound interest calculations:

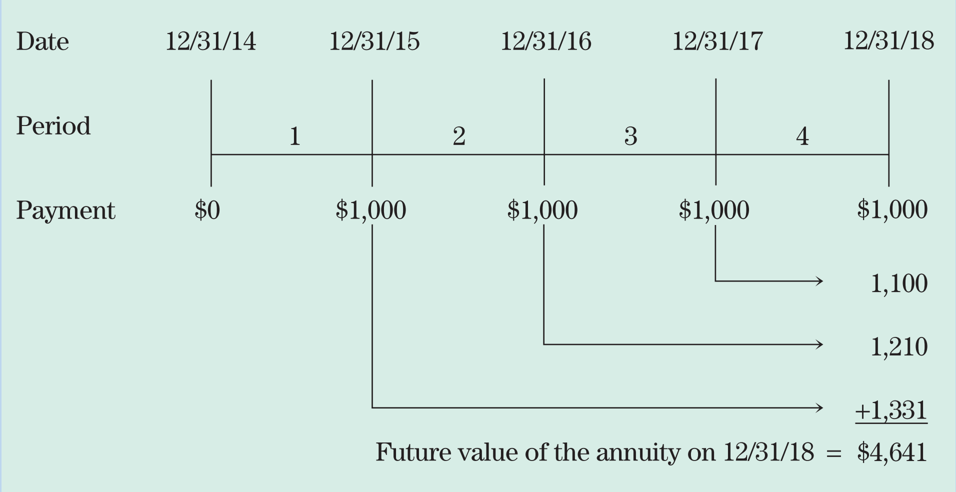
Future Value = Present Value × Future Value Factor, or $FV = PV \times FVF$

The FVF (future value factor) comes from either Table 16-1 or a calculator formula with exponents: $FVF = (1 + i)^n$. Using either a calculator or Table 16-1, the FVFs for the four payments are 1.33100, 1.21000, 1.1000, and 1.0000 (to five decimal places). Then use the Future Value Formula to calculate the four future values as shown below. Finally, find the total value on December 31, 2018, which is $4,641.

Amount of Payment	Date of Payment	Years of Interest	Future Value on 12/31/18
$1,000	12/31/15	3	$1,000 × 1.33100 = $ 1,331
$1,000	12/31/16	2	$1,000 × 1.21000 = $ 1,210
$1,000	12/31/17	1	$1,000 × 1.10000 = $ 1,100
$1,000	12/31/18	0	$1,000 × 1.00000 = +1,000
			Total = $ 4,641

Figure 23-2 is an illustration called a *time line* and it shows how each of the payments moves *forward* in time to December 31, 2018. An important requirement is that the time line must show exactly the same number of periods as payments—four in example B.

Figure 23-2 Future Value of an Ordinary Annuity



FUTURE VALUE OF AN ANNUITY FORMULA AND TABLE

The calculations to find the future value of the annuity in example B were time-consuming, even with just four payments. Imagine the number of tiresome calculations if the payments last for 20 or 30 years. Fortunately, just as in Chapter 16, calculators, computers, tables, and another shortcut formula are used to eliminate these tedious computations. The shortcut formula is similar to the one from Chapter 16, which was $FV = PV \times FVF$. It is called the Future Value of an Annuity Formula and is written as

$$\text{Future Value of an Annuity} = \text{Payment} \times \text{Future Value of Annuity Factor, or}$$
$$FVA = Pmt \times FVAF$$

The **future value of annuity factors (FVAFs)** come from either a calculator with exponents or from Table 23-1 at the end of this chapter. Table 23-1 is organized like Table 16-1: The column is the interest rate and the row is the number of years. The correct FVAF is at the intersection of the proper row and column.

STEPS to Compute the Future Value of an Annuity and Total Interest Earned

1. Determine the annuity factor (FVAF) using either a calculator with exponents or Table 23-1.
2. Multiply the payment amount by the annuity factor (FVAF). The product is the future value of the annuity (FVA), including interest.
3. Multiply the payment amount by the number of payments. The product is the total payments.
4. Subtract the total payments from the future value of the annuity (FVA). The difference is the total interest earned.

EXAMPLE C

Find the future value of an annuity of four annual payments of $1,000. Each payment is made at the end of the year, and 10% interest is compounded each year. Also find the total interest earned over the 4 years. Use Table 23-1.

STEP 1 The annuity factor (FVAF) from Table 23-1 is 4.64100.

STEP 2 Future value of the annuity $= \$1{,}000 \times 4.64100 = \$4{,}641$

STEP 3 Total payments $= 4 \times \$1{,}000 = \$4{,}000$

STEP 4 Total interest $= \$4{,}641 - \$4{,}000 = \$641$

USING A CALCULATOR TO COMPUTE FUTURE VALUE OF ANNUITY FACTORS (OPTIONAL)

In example B, we needed to find Future Value Factors (FVFs) for compound interest and we used either Table 16-1 or a calculator with the formula $FVF = (1 + i)^n$ where i was the periodic interest rate and n was the total number of compounding periods.

In example C, we used Table 23-1 to find the future value of annuity factor (FVAF). It was 4.46100. To use a calculator with an exponent key, the formula for the FVAF is

$$FVAF = \frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i}$$

where i is the periodic interest rate *written as a decimal* (as in Chapter 16)
n is the total number of payments (or the number of periods).

Applying the formula to example C where $n = 4$ years and $i = 10\%$ compounded annually, we find the same FVAF = 4.46100 as in row 4, column 10%, of Table 23-1:

$$FVAF = \frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i} = \frac{(1 + 0.10)^4 - 1}{0.10} = \frac{1.46410000 - 1}{0.10}$$

$$= \frac{0.46410000}{0.10} = 4.6410000$$

Depending on your calculator, one set of calculator keystrokes to calculate this FVAF is

$$1 \boxed{+} .1 \boxed{=} \boxed{y^x} 4 \boxed{=} \boxed{-} 1 \boxed{=} \boxed{\div} .1 \boxed{=}$$

To compute the future value of an annuity with a calculator, the formula is

$$FVA = Pmt \times FVAF \quad \text{or} \quad FVA = Pmt \times \left[\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i}\right]$$

In example C, $FVA = Pmt \times FVAF = \$1{,}000 \times 4.64100 = \$4{,}641$.

Calculators differ. If your calculator has parentheses, you could use one or more pairs of parentheses to make an expression that you find simpler. Use the keystrokes that seem simplest to you.

Throughout the remainder of Chapter 23, the calculator solutions for the FVAF, rounded to eight decimal places, will be shown in the margins, printed in blue ink.

VARIOUS PAYMENT PERIODS

As you learned in Chapter 16, interest can be compounded every year, half-year, quarter, or month. Likewise, in Chapter 23, an *annuity payment* can be made every year, half-year, quarter, or month. The notation and terminology are the same as in Chapter 16: m = the number of compounding periods in one year; r = the annual interest rate; t = the number of years; i = the periodic interest rate; and n = the total number of periods.

In an annuity, when the payments are monthly, for example, then the compounding must also be monthly. For the remainder of Chapter 23, we will refer to m as the number of payments in one year and n as the total number of payments. (It is sometimes simpler to count the payments instead of counting the periods.)

Whether you find the FVAF using a calculator or Table 23-1, the same three steps (i, ii, and iii) from Chapter 16 are used to determine m, i, and n:

STEP i m = the number of payments (compounding periods) in one year
STEP ii i = periodic interest rate = $r \div m$
STEP iii n = the total number of payments (compounding periods) = $m \times t$

EXAMPLE D

Find the future value of an annuity in which $2,600 is deposited at the end of each quarter for 4 years. Interest is 8% compounded quarterly. Use a calculator or Table 23-1 to determine the FVAF.

STEP i There are $m = 4$ compounding periods in 1 year.
STEP ii Periodic interest rate $i = 8\% \div 4 = 2\%$ per period
STEP iii Number of payments $n = 4 \times 4$ years = 16 payments
STEP 1 Using Table 23-1, 2% column and row 16: FVAF = 18.63929
STEP 2 Future value = $2,600 × 18.63929 = $48,462.154, or $48,462.15

$$m = 4$$
$$i = \frac{0.08}{4} = 0.02$$
$$n = 4 \times 4 = 16$$
$$FVAF = \frac{(1 + 0.02)^{16} - 1}{0.02}$$
$$= 18.63928525$$

CONCEPT CHECK 23.1

Assume that $5,000 is invested every 6 months for 5 years in an account that pays 6% compounded semiannually. Compute the future value of the investment. Then compute the total interest earned by the investment.

Semiannual means m = 2 payments per year.
Periodic rate = 6% ÷ 2 = 3% per period
Number of payments 2 × 5 years = 10 payments
Using Table 23-1, 3% column and row 10, FVAF = 11.46388.
Future value of the annuity = $5,000 × 11.46388 = $57,319.40

Total of all payments = $5,000 × 10 payments = $50,000.00
Total interest earned = Future value − Total payments = $57,319.40 − $50,000.00
= $7,319.40

$$m = 2$$
$$i = \frac{0.06}{4} = 0.03$$
$$n = 2 \times 5 = 10$$
$$FVAF = \frac{(1 + 0.03)^{10} - 1}{0.03}$$
$$= 11.46387931$$

Computing Regular Payments of an Annuity from the Future Value

Learning Objective 2

Compute the regular payments of an annuity from the future value.

In examples A–D, the amounts of the payments were known and the future values were unknown. But when the future value is known, you can compute the required amount for each payment. The procedure is identical whether you use a calculator or Table 23-1 to find the FVAF.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

STEPS to Find the Size of the Payment in an Annuity, Given Its Future Value

1. Determine the annuity factor (FVAF) using a calculator or Table 23-1.
2. Divide the future value by the annuity factor. The quotient is the amount of each payment in the annuity.

As a formula, Step 2 could be written as $Pmt = FVA \div FVAF$.

EXAMPLE E

Nate and Nan Roth want to have \$85,000 in their credit union account when their son Danny starts college. They will make equal payments every month for 4 years. The credit union will pay 6% compounded monthly. How much should they deposit each month?

The value of the annuity at the end, or the future value of the annuity, is \$85,000.

STEP i There are $m = 12$ compounding periods in 1 year.

STEP ii Periodic interest rate $= 6\% \div 12 = 0.5\%$ per period

STEP iii Number of deposits $= 12 \times 4$ years $= 48$ deposits

STEP 1 Using Table 23-1, 0.5% column and row 48: FVAF $= 54.09783$

STEP 2 Future value of the annuity $= \$85{,}000$

Payment amount $= \$85{,}000 \div 54.09783 = \$1{,}571.2275$, or \$1,571.23

$$m = 12$$

$$i = \frac{0.06}{12} = 0.005$$

$$n = 12 \times 4 = 48$$

$$FVAF = \frac{(1 + 0.005)^{48} - 1}{0.005}$$

$$= 54.09783222$$

SINKING FUNDS

At the beginning of this chapter, we mentioned that a \$10,000,000 corporate bond issue may include a sinking fund feature. Sometimes a sinking fund means that the corporation will set aside an equal amount of money each year so that by the end of the 20 years, the corporation will have accumulated the \$10,000,000. At other times, perhaps, a sinking fund may be used by the corporation to buy back \$500,000 worth of the bonds each year.

Although the term *sinking fund* may be most often associated with the repayment of a bond issue, its use isn't restricted to bonds. A corporation may set up a sinking fund to save money for an expensive piece of equipment that it knows it must replace in the future. The college fund set up by Nate and Nan Roth in example E was a sinking fund.

EXAMPLE F

Micromedia Corporation is preparing a \$20,000,000 bond issue. The company wants to make 25 equal annual payments into a sinking fund so that it will have a total of \$20,000,000 available in 25 years to repay the bonds. What size should each of the payments be if the company can earn 6% per year on the payments?

STEP i There is $m = 1$ compounding period in 1 year.

STEP ii Periodic interest rate $= 6\% \div 1 = 6\%$ per period

STEP iii Number of deposits $= 1 \times 25$ years $= 25$ deposits

STEP 1 Using Table 23-1, 6% column and row 25: FVAF $= 54.86451$

STEP 2 Future value of the annuity $= \$20{,}000{,}000$

Payment amount $= \$20{,}000{,}000 \div 54.86451 = \$364{,}534.38$

$$m = 1$$

$$i = \frac{0.06}{1} = 0.06$$

$$n = 1 \times 25 = 25$$

$$FVAF = \frac{(1 + 0.06)^{25} - 1}{0.06}$$

$$= 54.86451200$$

CONCEPT CHECK 23.2

Assume that an equal amount is invested every quarter for 7 years. After the last payment, the future value is $75,000. If the interest rate is 8% compounded quarterly, compute the size of each regular quarterly payment.

Quarterly means $m = 4$ payments per year.
Periodic rate is $i = 8\% \div 4 = 2\%$ per period
Total number of payments is $n = 4 \times 7$ years $= 28$ payments
Using Table 23-1, 2% column and row 28: FVAF = 37.05121
Future value of the annuity = $75,000

Quarterly payment = $75,000 ÷ 37.05121 = $2,024.2254, or $2,024.23

$$m = 4$$

$$i = \frac{0.08}{4} = 0.02$$

$$n = 4 \times 7 = 28$$

$$FVAF = \frac{(1 + 0.02)^{28} - 1}{0.02}$$
$$= 37.05121031$$

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 23.1.

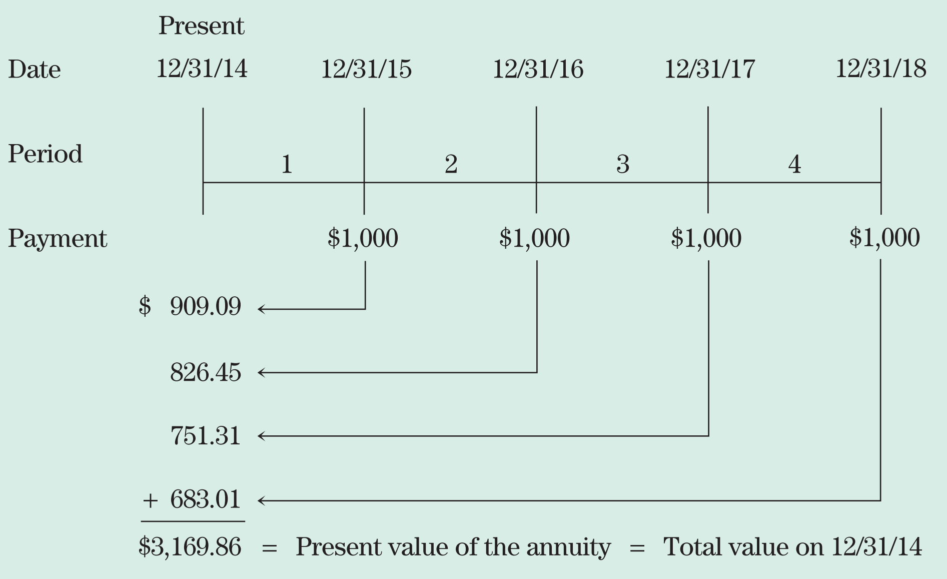
Computing the Present Value of an Annuity

Learning Objective 3

Compute the present value of an annuity.

The annuity shown in Figure 23-3 begins December 31, 2014. The value of the annuity on this date is called the present value of the annuity. For example, when a person deposits a large amount in a bank account and then makes a series of equal withdrawals from the account until it is empty, the series of withdrawals (the equal payments) is the annuity, and the amount deposited is the present value. The interest earned equals the difference between the total amount withdrawn and the amount deposited.

Figure 23-3 Present Value of an Ordinary Annuity


Present
Date
12/31/14
12/31/15
12/31/16
12/31/17
12/31/18
Period
1
2
3
4
Payment
$1,000
$1,000
$1,000
$1,000
$ 909.09
826.45
751.31
+ 683.01
$3,169.86 = Present value of the annuity = Total value on 12/31/14

EXAMPLE G

In November 2014, Ashley Hamilton inherited some money. She planned to donate part of the money immediately to the American Cancer Society and then to make four equal donations of $1,000 each on December 31 of 2015, 2016, 2017, and 2018. To prepare for the four future payments, Ashley went to her bank on December 31, 2014 and deposited money into a new account. The account paid 10% compounded annually. Ashley would withdraw $1,000 each year always on December 31. After the last withdrawal on December 31, 2018, the account would be empty.

How much must Ashley deposit on December 31, 2014? (*Hint:* Make a time line diagram, and compute the present value of each of the four withdrawals.)

To find the present value of the annuity on December 31, 2014, first use a calculator or Table 16-1 or Table 16-2 to find the present value of each of the four payments on December 31, 2014. The total of the four present values is the present value of the annuity.

Amount of Payment	Date of Payment	Years of Interest	Present Value on 12/31/14
$1,000	12/31/15	1	$1,000 × 0.90909 = $ 909.09
$1,000	12/31/16	2	$1,000 × 0.82645 = 826.45
$1,000	12/31/17	3	$1,000 × 0.75131 = 751.31
$1,000	12/31/18	4	$1,000 × 0.68301 = + 683.01
			Present value of the annuity on 12/31/14 = $3,169.86

Figure 23-3 is a diagram of example G. The time line shows the equal withdrawals as each payment is moved from the future *backward* to the present (to December 31, 2014). Compare Figure 23-3 with Figure 23-2 where each payment was projected *forward* into the future.

PRESENT VALUE OF AN ANNUITY FORMULA AND TABLE

Like the future value calculations in example B, there were several calculations to find the present value of the annuity in example G. And also like the future value of an annuity, there is a similar shortcut formula for present values. It is called the Present Value of an Annuity Formula and is written as

$$\text{Present Value of an Annuity} = \text{Payment} \times \text{Present Value of Annuity Factor, or}$$
$$PVA = Pmt \times PVAF$$

The **present value of annuity factors (PVAFs)** come from either a calculator with exponents or from Table 23-2 at the end of this chapter. Table 23-2 is organized like Table 23-1: The column is the interest rate and the row is the number of years. The correct PVAF is at the intersection of the proper row and column.

STEPS to Compute the Present Value of an Annuity and Total Interest Earned

1. Determine the annuity factor (PVAF) using either a calculator with exponents or Table 23-2.
2. Multiply the payment amount by the annuity factor (PVAF). The product is the present value of the annuity (PVA).
3. Multiply the payment amount by the number of payments. The product is the total of all payments.
4. Subtract the present value of the annuity from the total of all payments. The difference is the total interest earned.

Using Steps 1 and 2 for example G, the PVAF from Table 23-2 is in row 4 of the 10% column: PVAF = 3.16987 (Step 1). The present value of the annuity is $PVA = Pmt \times PVAF = \$1{,}000 \times 3.16987 = \$3{,}169.87$ (Step 2). This is what Ashley needs to deposit on December 31, 2014.

In example G, suppose we want to find the total interest earned. First, the total amount of Ashley's withdrawals is $\$1{,}000 \times 4 = \$4{,}000$ (Step 3). The total interest that Ashley would earn is the total withdrawals minus the original deposit (present value): $\$4{,}000 - \$3{,}169.87 = \$830.13$ (Step 4).

USING A CALCULATOR TO COMPUTE THE PRESENT VALUE OF AN ANNUITY (OPTIONAL)

We know the formula to find the present value of an annuity: $PVA = Pmt \times PVAF$. We used it in example B with Table 23-2. Using a calculator with exponents, we can compute the PVAF directly. Then, we can find the present value of the annuity. Below are two common formulas for PVAF. In each formula, i = the periodic interest rate, written as a decimal, and n = the number of payments (or periods).

Formula 1 is $PVAF = \dfrac{1-(1+i)^{-n}}{i}$, which uses negative exponents.

Formula 2 is $PVAF = \dfrac{1-[1 \div (1+i)^{n}]}{i}$, which has more operations.

Use whichever formula seems clearer to you. Both give a final value of FVAF = 3.1698654. Some computation details are shown below.

When rounded to five decimal places, FVAF = 3.16987, the same as Table 23-2, and the present value of the annuity is again $\$1{,}000 \times 3.16987 = \$3{,}169.87$.
Computation Details for Formula 1:

$$PVAF = \frac{1-(1+i)^{-\mathrm{n}}}{\mathrm{i}} = \frac{1-(1+0.10)^{-4}}{0.10} = \frac{1-0.68301346}{0.10} = \frac{0.31698654}{0.10}$$
$$= 3.16986545$$

Computation Details for Formula 2:

$$PVAF = \frac{1-[1 \div (1+i)^{n}]}{i} = \frac{1-[1 \div (1+0.10)^{4}]}{0.10} = \frac{1-[1 \div 1.46410]}{0.10}$$
$$= \frac{1-[0.68301346]}{0.10} = \frac{0.31698654}{0.10} = 3.16986545$$

To enter the negative exponent "−4" in Formula 1, use the ± key after entering the 4. Do not use the "minus sign." Remember that most calculators have some differences. Refer to your manual to find the correct keystrokes for your calculator. Experiment with both formulas. Try using parentheses if your calculator has them. *Without* using parentheses, here is one possible sequence for Formula 1:

PVAF is 1 $\boxed{+}$ .1 $\boxed{=}$ $\boxed{y^{x}}$ 4 $\boxed{\pm}$ $\boxed{=}$ $\boxed{\pm}$ $\boxed{+}$ 1 $\boxed{=}$ $\boxed{\div}$ .1 $\boxed{=}$

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE H

Nanda Cerrado just won first prize in a fund-raising raffle. Nanda has a choice: She can receive quarterly payments of $750 each for 6 years, with the first payment 3 months (one quarter) from now, or she can receive 1 lump sum today. Assuming an interest rate of 6% compounded quarterly, what lump sum today equals the future payments? (*Hint:* The series of $750 payments is an annuity, and the lump sum is the present value of the annuity.)

STEP i There are $m = 4$ compounding periods in 1 year.

STEP ii Periodic interest rate = 6% ÷ 4 = 1.5% per period

STEP iii Number of payments 4 × 6 years = 24

STEP 1 Using Table 23-2, 1.50% column and row 24: the PVAF = 20.03041

STEP 2 Present value = $750 × 20.03041 = $15,022.8075, or $15,022.81

$m = 4$

$$i = \frac{0.06}{4} = 0.015$$

$n = 4 \times 6 = 24$

$$PVAF = \frac{1 - (1 + 0.015)^{-24}}{0.015}$$

$$= 20.03040537$$

CONCEPT CHECK 23.3

What present value (principal) must be invested today in an account to provide for 7 equal annual withdrawals (an annuity) of $5,000 each? The interest rate is 8% compounded annually.

Annual means $m = 1$ period per year.
Periodic rate = 8% ÷ 1 = 8% per year
Number of payments = 1 × 7 years = 7 payments
From row 7 of the 8.00% column of Table 23-2, the PVAF = 5.20637.

Present value of the annuity = $5,000 × 5.20637 = $26,031.85

$m = 1$

$$i = \frac{0.08}{1} = 0.08$$

$n = 1 \times 7 = 7$

$$PVAF = \frac{1 - (1 + 0.08)^{-7}}{0.08}$$

$$= 5.20637006$$

Computing Regular Payments of an Annuity from the Present Value

Learning Objective 4

Compute the regular payments of an annuity from the present value.

In examples G and H, the amounts of the payments were known and the present values were unknown. If, however, the present value is known, then you can compute the amount of the payments. The procedure is identical whether you use a calculator or Table 23-2 to find the PVAF.

STEPS to Find the Size of the Payment in an Annuity, Given the Present Value

1. Determine the annuity factor (PVAF) using a calculator or Table 23-2.
2. Divide the present value by the annuity factor (PVAF). The quotient is the amount of the payments in the annuity.

As a formula, Step 2 could be written as $Pmt = PVA \div PVAF$.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE I

Jim Schremp received a $25,000 bonus from his employer. Rather than spend it all at once, he decided to put it into an investment that promises to pay 6% compounded monthly. He will then receive equal monthly payments for 4 years. After the last payment, the account will be empty. How much did he receive each month?

The value of the annuity in the beginning (present value of the annuity) is $25,000.

$m = 12$

$i = \frac{0.06}{12} = 0.005$

$n = 12 \times 4 = 48$

$PVAF = \frac{1 - (1 + 0.005)^{-48}}{0.005}$

$= 42.58031778$

STEP i There are $m = 12$ compounding periods in 1 year

STEP ii Periodic interest rate = 6% ÷ 12 = 0.5% per month

STEP iii Number of payments = 12 × 4 years = 48 payments

STEP 1 Using Table 23-2, 0.5% column and row 48: the PVAF = 42.58032

STEP 2 Each withdrawal = $25,000 ÷ 42.58032 = $587.12570, or $587.13

CONCEPT CHECK 23.4

Assume that $75,000 is deposited today (the present value) to provide for 36 equal quarterly withdrawals (an annuity) over the next 9 years. If the interest rate is 6% compounded quarterly, what is the size of each regular quarterly payment (a withdraw)? What is the total interest earned during the term of the annuity?

Quarterly means $m = 4$ periods per year.
Periodic rate = 6% ÷ 4 = 1.5% per quarter
Number of payments = 4 × 9 years = 36 payments
From row 36 of the 1.50% column in Table 23-2, the PVAF = 27.66068

Regular quarterly payment = $75,000 ÷ 27.66068 = $2,711.43

Total of all payments = $2,711.43 × 36 payments = $97,611.48
Total interest earned = Total payments − Present value
= $97,611.48 − $75,000.00 = $22,611.48

$m = 4$

$i = \frac{0.06}{4} = 0.015$

$n = 4 \times 9 = 36$

$PVAF = \frac{1 - (1 + 0.015)^{-36}}{0.015}$

$= 27.66068431$

Computing the Payment to Amortize a Loan

Learning Objective 5

Compute the loan payment required to amortize a loan.

Recall from your study of loan amortization in Chapter 14 that the borrower repays the loan by making equal monthly payments and that the interest is computed on the unpaid balance each month. Loan amortization creates an annuity because there is a series of equal periodic payments. Computing the interest each month makes it compound interest. The amount of the loan is the present value of the annuity.

Stated another way, in amortization, when the amount of the loan is known, the present value of the annuity is known. As illustrated in example J, you can use Table 23-2 to compute the amount of the monthly payments.

STEPS to Find the Size of the Payment to Amortize a Loan

1. Determine the annuity factor (PVAF) using Table 23-2 or a calculator.
2. Divide the loan amount by the annuity factor (PVAF). The quotient is the amount of the monthly loan payments.

EXAMPLE J

Barbara Luzardi buys a new baby grand piano. Barbara pays $2,200 cash and also trades in her old piano. The balance is $4,100 and the piano dealer will amortize the $4,100 over 9 months at 9% compounded monthly. Find the size of her required monthly payments.

STEP i There are 12 compounding periods in 1 year

STEP ii Periodic interest rate = 9% ÷ 12 = 0.75% per period

STEP iii Number of monthly payments = 9

STEP 1 Because the borrowing occurs at the *beginning* of the annuity, this is a present value problem and $4,100 is the present value of the annuity; using Table 23-2, the 0.75% column and row 9, the PVAF = 8.67158

STEP 2 Size of each payment = $4,100 ÷ 8.67158 = $472.80877, or $472.81

$$m = 12$$

$$i = \frac{0.09}{12} = 0.0075$$

$$n = 9$$

$$PVAF = \frac{1 - (1 + 0.0075)^{-9}}{0.0075}$$

$$= 8.67157642$$

CONCEPT CHECK 23.5

A finance company loans $40,000 at an interest rate of 6% compounded monthly. Find the loan payment necessary to amortize the loan with monthly payments over 3 years.

Loan amortization involves an annuity. The amount borrowed is the present value of the annuity, and the monthly loan payment is the regular annuity payment.

Monthly means 12 periods per year.
Periodic rate = 6% ÷ 12 = 0.5% per period
Number of payments = 12 × 3 years = 36 payments
From row 36 of the 0.5% column of Table 23-2, the PVAF = 32.87102

Loan payment = $40,000 ÷ 32.87102 = $1,216.87736, or $1,216.88

$$m = 12$$

$$i = \frac{0.06}{12} = 0.005$$

$$n = 12 \times 3 = 36$$

$$PVAF = \frac{1 - (1 + 0.005)^{-36}}{0.005}$$

$$= 32.87101624$$

Creating a Loan Amortization Schedule

Learning Objective 6

Create a loan amortization schedule.

Recall from Chapter 14 that the following procedure is used to create an amortization schedule:

Image Source/Getty Images

STEPS to Create an Amortization Schedule

For each row except the last:

1. Interest payment = Unpaid balance × Monthly interest rate
2. Principal payment = Monthly payment − Interest payment
3. New unpaid balance = Old unpaid balance − Principal payment

For the last row:

1. Interest payment = Unpaid balance × Monthly interest rate
2. (Then ADD) Monthly payment = Unpaid balance + Interest payment
3. Principal payment = Unpaid balance

EXAMPLE K

Mike Ward borrows \$2,400. The loan is amortized over 4 months at 12% compounded monthly (1% per month on the unpaid balance). The PVAF (calculator or Table 23-2) is 3.90197 and the monthly payment will be \$615.07 for the first three months. Create the amortization schedule for the loan. 1% interest is charged on the unpaid balance each month.

$m = 12$

$i = \frac{0.12}{12} = 0.01$

$n = 4$

$$PVAF = \frac{1 - (1 + 0.01)^{-4}}{0.01}$$

$$= 3.90196555$$

$$Pmt = \$2,400 \div 3.90197$$

$$= 615.07$$

		STEP 1	STEP 2		STEP 3
Month	**Unpaid Balance**	**Interest Payment**	**Principal Payment**	**Total Payment**	**New Balance**
1	\$2,400.00	\$24.00	\$591.07	\$615.07	\$1,808.93
2	1,808.93	18.09	596.98	615.07	1,211.95
3	1,211.95	12.12	602.95	615.07	609.00
4	609.00	6.09	609.00	615.09	0

Month 1

\$2,400.00 × 0.01 = \$24.00
\$615.07 − \$24.00 = \$591.07
\$2,400.00 − \$591.07 = \$1,808.93

Month 2

\$1,808.93 × 0.01 = \$18.09
\$615.07 − \$18.09 = \$596.98
\$1,808.93 − \$596.98 = \$1,211.95

Month 3

\$1,211.95 × 0.01 = \$12.12
\$615.07 − \$12.12 = \$602.95
\$1,211.95 − \$602.95 = \$609.00

Month 4

\$609.00 × 0.01 = \$6.09
\$609.00 + \$6.09 = \$615.09
\$609.00 − \$609.00 = \$0.00

In example K, note that each month's beginning unpaid balance is multiplied by the monthly interest rate (1%) and rounded to the nearest cent.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONCEPT CHECK 23.6

Amortize a $1,500 purchase over 3 months at an annual rate of 12%. First, use Table 23-2 or a calculator to calculate the first two monthly payments. Then show the calculations to construct a 3-month amortization schedule.

The periodic interest rate is 12% ÷ 12 = 1%, and the number of periods is 3. The present value annuity factor from row 3 of the 1.00% column of Table 23-2 is 2.94099. The first two loan payments are $1,500 ÷ 2.94099 = $510.03.

$m = 12$

$i = \frac{0.12}{12} = 0.01$

$n = 3$

$$PVAF = \frac{1 - (1 + 0.01)^{-3}}{0.01}$$

$$= 2.94098521$$

	Month 1		**Month 2**		**Month 3**	
Unpaid balance:	Purchase price	$1,500.00	From month 1	$1,004.97	From month 2	$504.99
Interest payment:	$1,500.00 × 0.01 =	$15.00	$1,004.97 × 0.01 =	$10.05	$504.99 × 0.01 =	$5.05
Total payment:	From above	$510.03	From above	$510.03	$504.99 + $5.05 =	$510.04
Principal payment:	$510.03 − $15.00 =	$495.03	$510.03 − $10.05 =	$499.98	(Unpaid balance)	$504.99
New balance:	$1,500 − $495.03 =	$1,004.97	$1,004.97 − $499.98 =	$504.99	$504.99 − $504.99 =	$0.00

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 23.2.

Chapter Terms for Review

- annuity
- future value of an annuity
- future value of an annuity factor (FVAF)
- ordinary annuity
- present value of an annuity
- present value of an annuity factor (PVAF)
- sinking fund
- time line

Try Microsoft® Excel

Try working the problems using the Microsoft Excel templates found on the companion website. Solutions for the problems are also shown on the companion website.

Notes

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
23.1 Compute the future value of an annuity.	1. Compute the future value of $900 invested every month for 2.5 years, with interest at 6% compounded monthly.
23.2 Compute the regular payments of an annuity from the future value.	2. Compute the regular annuity payment that is required to accumulate $6,000 after 17 quarterly payments at an interest rate of 8% compounded quarterly.
23.3 Compute the present value of an annuity.	3. Compute the present value of $4,750 withdrawn every half-year for $6\frac{1}{2}$ years, with interest at 10% compounded semiannually.
23.4 Compute the regular payments of an annuity from the present value.	4. An account starts at $4,000. Compute the regular, equal annual withdrawal that is required to empty the account in 6 years if the interest is 10% compounded annually.
23.5 Compute the loan payment required to amortize a loan.	5. Compute the loan payment that is required to amortize a $20,000 loan in 24 monthly payments, with an interest rate of 9% compounded monthly.
23.6 Create a loan amortization schedule.	6. A $10,000 loan at a rate of 12% compounded monthly is amortized in 15 monthly payments of $721.24. Compute the entries for the first row of the amortization schedule.

Answers: **1.** $29,052.02 **2.** $299.82 **3.** $44,619.46 **4.** $918.43 **5.** $913.69
6. $10,000; $100.00; $621.24; $721.24; $9,378.76

Review Problems for Chapter 23

1 For each annuity, find either the future value or the payment, as indicated. Then compute the compound interest earned by the annuity. (Use a calculator or Table 23-1)

Payment	Rate	Period	Time	Future Value	Interest
$13,600	12%	monthly	10 mo	a. ________	b. ________
$ 5,000	8%	semiannually	20 yr	c. ________	d. ________

Future Value	Rate	Period	Time	Payment	Interest
$30,000	5%	annually	18 yr	e. ________	f. ________
$28,000	6%	quarterly	6 yr	g. ________	h. ________

2 For each annuity, find either the present value or the payment, as indicated. Then compute the compound interest earned by the annuity. (Use a calculator or Table 23-2)

Payment	Rate	Period	Time	Present Value	Interest
$1,750	12%	semiannually	2 yr	a. ________	b. ________
$8,400	16%	quarterly	3 yr	c. ________	d. ________

Present Value	Rate	Period	Time	Payment	Interest
$24,000	10%	annually	17 yr	e. ________	f. ________
$60,000	9%	monthly	2.5 yr	g. ________	h. ________

3 Sharon Wilder planned to save money for retirement. She put $750 every month in an investment that paid a return of 6% compounded monthly. How much would Sharon have in her account after 4 years?

4 Med-West wanted to set up a sinking fund to have $15,000,000 in 20 years. The company would make annual payments that would pay a return of 6% per year. What size should the payments be?

5 Nancy Duncan received a payment of $75,000 from a life insurance company. She put it in an account that would pay 6% compounded quarterly. Nancy wanted to make equal quarterly withdrawals from the account for 10 years, when the account would be empty. What size withdrawals can Nancy make?

6 Wayne Runn read about an investment opportunity on the Internet. The Website explained that Wayne would receive payments of $1,000 every 6 months for 14 years. If the returns are based on 8% compounded semiannually, what is the present value of this investment opportunity?

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Assignment 23.1: Annuities—Future Value

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **1** **2**

A **(28 points) For each of the following annuities, find the future value or the amount of the periodic payment. Round answers to the nearest cent. (4 points for each correct answer)**

	Payment Amount	Payment Periods	Interest Rate	Length of Annuity	Future Value
1.	$2,200	monthly	9% compounded monthly	2 years	________
2.	________	quarterly	6% compounded quarterly	7 years	$24,000
3.	$3,500	semiannually	8% compounded semiannually	10 years	________
4.	________	annually	4% compounded annually	20 years	$180,000
5.	$750	monthly	6% compounded monthly	4 years	________
6.	________	quarterly	5% compounded quarterly	10 years	$30,000
7.	$2,500	annually	4% compounded annually	12 years	________

____

Score for A (28)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

B **(32 points) For each of the following annuities, find the future value, the amount of the periodic payment, or the total amount of interest paid. Round answers to the nearest cent. (4 points for each correct answer)**

8. Calculate the future value of a 25-year annuity with payments of $3,000 each year and an interest rate of 5% compounded annually.

____

9. How much total interest is earned on an annuity with payments of $300 per month for 4 years and an interest rate of 6% compounded monthly?

____

10. An annuity consists of quarterly payments of $1,600 each for 10 years at an interest rate of 6% compounded quarterly. Compute the future value of the annuity.

____

11. A 7-year annuity has semiannual payments of $8,000 each and an interest rate of 8% compounded semiannually. What will be the total amount of interest earned?

____

12. A sinking fund has 15 annual payments, has an interest rate of 5% compounded annually, and has a future value of $140,000. Compute the amount of each annual payment.

____

13. An 8-year annuity with quarterly payments and an interest rate of 5% compounded quarterly has a future value of $45,000. How much total interest does the annuity earn?

____

14. Calculate the amount of each monthly payment in a 1-year annuity that has a future value of $5,000 and an interest rate of 9% compounded monthly.

____

15. Determine the total interest earned by an annuity with semiannual payments for 15 years, an interest rate of 6% compounded semiannually, and a future value of $60,000.

Score for B (32)

C **(40 points) In each of the following applications, find the future value of the annuity, the amount of the periodic payment, or the total amount of interest earned. Round answers to the nearest cent. (4 points for each correct answer)**

16. Mike Haynes decides to make quarterly deposits in his credit union account because it is guaranteeing a rate of 6% compounded quarterly for the next 8 years. How much will Mike have after making equal quarterly deposits of $4,600 for 8 years?

17. Calvin White is planning for his daughter's college education. An investment advisor recommends an investment whose prospectus claims it will return 9% compounded monthly. If the investment does return 9% compounded monthly, how much must Calvin invest each month for 4 years if he wants to have a total of $50,000 after the last deposit?

18. Maxfield International is raising $25,000,000 by selling bonds that will mature in 20 years. Maxfield plans to make equal annual payments in a sinking fund to repay the bonds. If Maxfield can earn 6% per year, what amount should it deposit each year in order to have $25,000,000 at the end of 20 years?

19. Luis Garza is quite certain he will need to replace some construction equipment in 3 years. He decides to set up a sinking fund now to help buy the equipment. Luis estimates that he can deposit $1,400 each month for 3 years in a sinking fund that will pay 6% compounded monthly. How much will Luis' sinking fund be worth after the last deposit?

20. Jim Baker is planning that his twin daughters could get married in 6 years. He thinks that he should start saving now to try to accumulate $90,000 by the end of the 6 years. Assuming that Jim can find an investment that will pay 6% compounded semiannually, what amount must Jim deposit each six months to have the necessary $90,000 at the end of the 6 years?

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

21. Joseph Woo imports patio furniture from various countries. He prefers to have cash available when he goes on buying trips. Suppose that Joseph makes equal monthly deposits into a risky investment that promises to pay 12% compounded monthly. If he deposits enough each month to accumulate $60,000 by the end of 2 years, and if the investment pays as promised, how much of the $60,000 will the bank have paid in interest?

____

22. Jeanne Knowles will graduate from high school in a few months. She has found a part-time job and is trying to determine how much money she can save in 6 years. Calculate the future value after 6 years if Jeanne makes semiannual deposits of $600 each into an investment account that promises a return of 8% compounded semiannually.

____

23. Musical Instrument Manufacturing, Inc., (MIMI) just sold $40,000,000 in bonds. The bonds will mature in 20 years. MIMI will make equal semiannual payments into a sinking fund that will earn 10% compounded semiannually. If MIMI has the $40,000,000 after 20 years, what amount of the total was earned from the interest?

____

24. Several years ago, when her grandson Jonathan was born, Anna Lewis began making a $600 deposit every three months for Jon's college education. For 12 years, Anna made these quarterly deposits into the teachers' credit union where they earned 4% compounded quarterly. During those first 12 years, how much total interest did Anna and Jon earn from the credit union?

____

25. This year, Doug McCombs charged all his family's Christmas gifts on a credit card, and the result was a minor financial disaster. Planning for next year, Doug decides to save money each month from February through November and put it into an account that will pay 6% compounded monthly. He plans to make 10 equal deposits, and he wants to have accumulated $2,400 once he makes the tenth deposit. Calculate the size of each deposit.

____

____

Score for C (40)

Assignment 23.2: Annuities—Present Value

Name ______________________________

Date ______________ Score ______________

Learning Objectives 3 4 5 6

A **(28 points) For each of the following annuities, find the present value or the amount of the periodic payment. Round answers to the nearest cent. (4 points for each correct answer)**

	Payment Amount	Payment Periods	Interest Rate	Length of Annuity	Present Value
1.	$1,500	semiannually	8% compounded semiannually	9 years	________
2.	________	quarterly	5% compounded quarterly	11 years	$46,000
3.	$1,260	monthly	6% compounded monthly	3 years	________
4.	________	annually	5% compounded annually	20 years	$82,500
5.	$5,260	quarterly	6% compounded quarterly	7 years	________
6.	________	semiannually	6% compounded semiannually	25 years	$100,000
7.	$750	monthly	9% compounded monthly	3 years	________

____

Score for A (28)

B **(32 points) For each of the following annuities, find the present value, the amount of the periodic payment, or the total amount of interest paid. Round answers to the nearest cent. (4 points for each correct answer)**

8. An annuity consists of monthly payments of $1,500 each for 4 years at an interest rate of 6% compounded monthly. Determine the present value of the annuity.

____

9. Compute the amount of each payment in an annuity that has a present value of $18,000 with 11 years of semiannual payments at an interest rate of 10% compounded semiannually.

____

10. In a 40-year annuity, the annual payments are $10,000 each and the interest rate is 6% compounded annually. What is the present value of the annuity?

____

11. What is the total interest earned by an annuity that has a present value of $16,000 with monthly payments over a 2-year period at an interest rate of 9% compounded monthly?

____

12. Calculate the size of the regular quarterly payments in a 6-year annuity that has a present value of $84,000 and an interest rate of 5% compounded quarterly.

____

13. An annuity has a present value of $100,000. Compute the total interest earned by the annuity if there are annual payments over 11 years at an interest rate of 5% compounded annually.

____

14. Find the present value of a 15-year annuity with semiannual payments of $8,000 each, which earns interest at a rate of 6% compounded semiannually.

____

15. Compute the amount of the regular monthly payments in a 1-year annuity that has a present value of $25,000 and an interest rate of 6% compounded monthly.

____

____

Score for B (32)

C **(28 points) In each of the following applications, find the present value of the annuity, the amount of the periodic payment, or the total amount of interest earned. Round answers to the nearest cent. (4 points for each correct answer)**

16. Walt Pierce is making a budget for the next 15 months. He estimates that his rent will be about $1,240 per month. For calculations, Walt considers his housing expense to be an annuity of 15 payments. If he uses an interest rate of 6% compounded monthly, what will be the present value of the annuity?

____

17. After their children moved away from home, Barbara Finnel and her husband sold their large house and bought a smaller town house. Barbara invested $95,000 of their after-tax profit in an annuity that would give them equal quarterly payments for 12 years. The fund will pay a return of 5% compounded quarterly. At the end of the 12 years, their annuity will be finished. What amount will they receive each quarter?

____

18. Carol Swift is considering an investment that is somewhat like a bond. The investment is an annuity that would pay Carol $5,400 every 6 months for 14 years. She is trying to determine how much the investment is worth today. If she uses an interest rate of 8% compounded semiannually, what is the present value of the annuity?

____

19. Ron Haack will receive a retirement bonus of $80,000. He has the option of either receiving the $80,000 now in one lump sum or having it invested and then receiving 15 equal annual annuity payments, the first payment arriving 1 year after retirement. If he selects payments over 15 years, the $80,000 is invested at a guaranteed rate of 9% compounded annually. Compute the amount of interest that Ron would earn by choosing the payments over 15 years instead of the lump sum.

____

20. Nellie Van Calcar inherited money from her grandfather. Nellie's daughter is in her second year of college, and Nellie wants to send her $600 every month for 3 years. Nellie can invest the money for her daughter at 9% compounded monthly. How much should she invest now to provide for all the monthly payments and have an empty account after the last withdrawal?

____

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

21. Marie Waymire plans to buy a pre-owned car. She can either finance the car through the dealer or borrow some money from a bank. Either way, the amount borrowed will be amortized in equal payments over 3 years. If the bank's 12% annual interest rate for pre-owned cars is compounded monthly, compute Marie's monthly payments for a bank loan of $12,000.

____

22. Sonny Hansen wanted to protect his home from fire and burglars, so he purchased a home security system. The total price including installation was $4,460. The alarm company convinced Sonny to amortize the cost over 30 months at an interest rate of 9% compounded monthly. Determine the amount of each of the equal monthly payments.

____

____

Score for C (28)

D **(12 points) Gary Robinson purchased some new equipment and furniture for his office. Instead of charging it on a credit card, which had an 18% interest rate, Gary negotiated financing with the office supply dealer. The total purchase amount was $6,450 and it was amortized over 4 months. The interest rate was 6% per year, or 0.5% per month. The first three monthly payments were each $1,632.70. Complete the first three lines of the following amortization schedule. Round answers to the nearest cent. (1 point for each correct answer)**

	Month	Unpaid Balance	Interest Payment	Principal Payment	Total Payment	New Balance
23.	1	________	________	________	$1,632.70	________
24.	2	________	________	________	$1,632.70	________
25.	3	________	________	________	$1,632.70	________

____

Score for D (12)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Notes

Table 23-1 Future Value Annuity Factors

Period	0.50%	0.75%	1.00%	1.25%	1.50%	2.00%	3.00%	4.00%	5.00%	6.00%	8.00%	9.00%	10.00%	12.00%
1	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000	1.00000
2	2.00500	2.00750	2.01000	2.01250	2.01500	2.02000	2.03000	2.04000	2.05000	2.06000	2.08000	2.09000	2.10000	2.12000
3	3.01502	3.02256	3.03010	3.03766	3.04522	3.06040	3.09090	3.12160	3.15250	3.18360	3.24640	3.27810	3.31000	3.37440
4	4.03010	4.04523	4.06040	4.07563	4.09090	4.12161	4.18363	4.24646	4.31013	4.37462	4.50611	4.57313	4.64100	4.77933
5	5.05025	5.07556	5.10101	5.12657	5.15227	5.20404	5.30914	5.41632	5.52563	5.63709	5.86660	5.98471	6.10510	6.35285
6	6.07550	6.11363	6.15202	6.19065	6.22955	6.30812	6.46841	6.63298	6.80191	6.97532	7.33593	7.52333	7.71561	8.11519
7	7.10588	7.15948	7.21354	7.26804	7.32299	7.43428	7.66246	7.89829	8.14201	8.39384	8.92280	9.20043	9.48717	10.08901
8	8.14141	8.21318	8.28567	8.35889	8.43284	8.58297	8.89234	9.21423	9.54911	9.89747	10.63663	11.02847	11.43589	12.29969
9	9.18212	9.27478	9.36853	9.46337	9.55933	9.75463	10.15911	10.58280	11.02656	11.49132	12.48756	13.02104	13.57948	14.77566
10	10.22803	10.34434	10.46221	10.58167	10.70272	10.94972	11.46388	12.00611	12.57789	13.18079	14.48656	15.19293	15.93742	17.54874
11	11.27917	11.42192	11.56683	11.71394	11.86326	12.16872	12.80780	13.48635	14.20679	14.97164	16.64549	17.56029	18.53117	20.65458
12	12.33556	12.50759	12.68250	12.86036	13.04121	13.41209	14.19203	15.02581	15.91713	16.86994	18.97713	20.14072	21.38428	24.13313
13	13.39724	13.60139	13.80933	14.02112	14.23683	14.68033	15.61779	16.62684	17.71298	18.88214	21.49530	22.95338	24.52271	28.02911
14	14.46423	14.70340	14.94742	15.19638	15.45038	15.97394	17.08632	18.29191	19.59863	21.01507	24.21492	26.01919	27.97498	32.39260
15	15.53655	15.81368	16.09690	16.38633	16.68214	17.29342	18.59891	20.02359	21.57856	23.27597	27.15211	29.36092	31.77248	37.27971
16	16.61423	16.93228	17.25786	17.59116	17.93237	18.63929	20.15688	21.82453	23.65749	25.67253	30.32428	33.00340	35.94973	42.75328
17	17.69730	18.05927	18.43044	18.81105	19.20136	20.01207	21.76159	23.69751	25.84037	28.21288	33.75023	36.97370	40.54470	48.88367
18	18.78579	19.19472	19.61475	20.04619	20.48938	21.41231	23.41444	25.64541	28.13238	30.90565	37.45024	41.30134	45.59917	55.74971
19	19.87972	20.33868	20.81090	21.29677	21.79672	22.84056	25.11687	27.67123	30.53900	33.75999	41.44626	46.01846	51.15909	63.43968
20	20.97912	21.49122	22.01900	22.56298	23.12367	24.29737	26.87037	29.77808	33.06595	36.78559	45.76196	51.16012	57.27500	72.05244
21	22.08401	22.65240	23.23919	23.84502	24.47052	25.78332	28.67649	31.96920	35.71925	39.99273	50.42292	56.76453	64.00250	81.69874
22	23.19443	23.82230	24.47159	25.14308	25.83758	27.29898	30.53678	34.24797	38.50521	43.39229	55.45676	62.87334	71.40275	92.50258
23	24.31040	25.00096	25.71630	26.45737	27.22514	28.84496	32.45288	36.61789	41.43048	46.99583	60.89330	69.53194	79.54302	104.60289
24	25.43196	26.18847	26.97346	27.78808	28.63352	30.42186	34.42647	39.08260	44.50200	50.81558	66.76476	76.78981	88.49733	118.15524
25	26.55912	27.38488	28.24320	29.13544	30.06302	32.03030	36.45926	41.64591	47.72710	54.86451	73.10594	84.70090	98.34706	133.33387

Table 23-1 Future Value Annuity Factors *(continued)*

Period	0.50%	0.75%	1.00%	1.25%	1.50%	2.00%	3.00%	4.00%	5.00%	6.00%	8.00%	9.00%	10.00%	12.00%
26	27.69191	28.59027	29.52563	30.49963	31.51397	33.67091	38.55304	44.31174	51.11345	59.15638	79.95442	93.32398	109.18177	150.33393
27	28.83037	29.80470	30.82089	31.88087	32.98668	35.34432	40.70963	47.08421	54.66913	63.70577	87.35077	102.72313	121.09994	169.37401
28	29.97452	31.02823	32.12910	33.27938	34.48148	37.05121	42.93092	49.96758	58.40258	68.52811	95.33883	112.96822	134.20994	190.69889
29	31.12439	32.26094	33.45039	34.69538	35.99870	38.79223	45.21885	52.96629	62.32271	73.63980	103.96594	124.13536	148.63093	214.58275
30	32.28002	33.50290	34.78489	36.12907	37.53868	40.56808	47.57542	56.08494	66.43885	79.05819	113.28321	136.30754	164.49402	241.33268
31	33.44142	34.75417	36.13274	37.58068	39.10176	42.37944	50.00268	59.32834	70.76079	84.80168	123.34587	149.57522	181.94342	271.29261
32	34.60862	36.01483	37.49407	39.05044	40.68829	44.22703	52.50276	62.70147	75.29883	90.88978	134.21354	164.03699	201.13777	304.84772
33	35.78167	37.28494	38.86901	40.53857	42.29861	46.11157	55.07784	66.20953	80.06377	97.34316	145.95062	179.80032	222.25154	342.42945
34	36.96058	38.56458	40.25770	42.04530	43.93309	48.03380	57.73018	69.85791	85.06696	104.18375	158.62667	196.98234	245.47670	384.52098
35	38.14538	39.85381	41.66028	43.57087	45.59209	49.99448	60.46208	73.65222	90.32031	111.43478	172.31680	215.71075	271.02437	431.66350
36	39.33610	41.15272	43.07688	45.11551	47.27597	51.99437	63.27594	77.59831	95.83632	119.12087	187.10215	236.12472	299.12681	484.46312
37	40.53279	42.46136	44.50765	46.67945	48.98511	54.03425	66.17422	81.70225	101.62814	127.26812	203.07032	258.37595	330.03949	543.59869
38	41.73545	43.77982	45.95272	48.26294	50.71989	56.11494	69.15945	85.97034	107.70955	135.90421	220.31595	282.62978	364.04343	609.83053
39	42.94413	45.10817	47.41225	49.86623	52.48068	58.23724	72.23423	90.40915	114.09502	145.05846	238.94122	309.06646	401.44778	684.01020
40	44.15885	46.44648	48.88637	51.48956	54.26789	60.40198	75.40126	95.02552	120.79977	154.76197	259.05652	337.88245	442.59256	767.09142
41	45.37964	47.79483	50.37524	53.13318	56.08191	62.61002	78.66330	99.82654	127.83976	165.04768	280.78104	369.29187	487.85181	860.14239
42	46.60654	49.15329	51.87899	54.79734	57.92314	64.86222	82.02320	104.81960	135.23175	175.95054	304.24352	403.52813	537.63699	964.35948
43	47.83957	50.52194	53.39778	56.48231	59.79199	67.15947	85.48389	110.01238	142.99334	187.50758	329.58301	440.84566	592.40069	1081.08262
44	49.07877	51.90086	54.93176	58.18834	61.68887	69.50266	89.04841	115.41288	151.14301	199.75803	356.94965	481.52177	652.64076	1211.81253
45	50.32416	53.29011	56.48107	59.91569	63.61420	71.89271	92.71986	121.02939	159.70016	212.74351	386.50562	525.85873	718.90484	1358.23003
46	51.57578	54.68979	58.04589	61.66464	65.56841	74.33056	96.50146	126.87057	168.68516	226.50812	418.42607	574.18602	791.79532	1522.21764
47	52.83366	56.09996	59.62634	63.43545	67.55194	76.81718	100.39650	132.94539	178.11942	241.09861	452.90015	626.86276	871.97485	1705.88375
48	54.09783	57.52071	61.22261	65.22839	69.56522	79.35352	104.40840	139.26321	188.02539	256.56453	490.13216	684.28041	960.17234	1911.58980
49	55.36832	58.95212	62.83483	67.04374	71.60870	81.94059	108.54065	145.83373	198.42666	272.95840	530.34274	746.86565	1057.18957	2141.98058
50	56.64516	60.39426	64.46318	68.88179	73.68283	84.57940	112.79687	152.66708	209.34800	290.33590	573.77016	815.08356	1163.90853	2400.01825

Table 23-2 Present Value Annuity Factors

Period	0.50%	0.75%	1.00%	1.25%	1.50%	2.00%	3.00%	4.00%	5.00%	6.00%	8.00%	9.00%	10.00%	12.00%
1	0.99502	0.99256	0.99010	0.98765	0.98522	0.98039	0.97087	0.96154	0.95238	0.94340	0.92593	0.91743	0.90909	0.89286
2	1.98510	1.97772	1.97040	1.96312	1.95588	1.94156	1.91347	1.88609	1.85941	1.83339	1.78326	1.75911	1.73554	1.69005
3	2.97025	2.95556	2.94099	2.92653	2.91220	2.88388	2.82861	2.77509	2.72325	2.67301	2.57710	2.53129	2.48685	2.40183
4	3.95050	3.92611	3.90197	3.87806	3.85438	3.80773	3.71710	3.62990	3.54595	3.46511	3.31213	3.23972	3.16987	3.03735
5	4.92587	4.88944	4.85343	4.81784	4.78264	4.71346	4.57971	4.45182	4.32948	4.21236	3.99271	3.88965	3.79079	3.60478
6	5.89638	5.84560	5.79548	5.74601	5.69719	5.60143	5.41719	5.24214	5.07569	4.91732	4.62288	4.48592	4.35526	4.11141
7	6.86207	6.79464	6.72819	6.66273	6.59821	6.47199	6.23028	6.00205	5.78637	5.58238	5.20637	5.03295	4.86842	4.56376
8	7.82296	7.73661	7.65168	7.56812	7.48593	7.32548	7.01969	6.73274	6.46321	6.20979	5.74664	5.53482	5.33493	4.96764
9	8.77906	8.67158	8.56602	8.46234	8.36052	8.16224	7.78611	7.43533	7.10782	6.80169	6.24689	5.99525	5.75902	5.32825
10	9.73041	9.59958	9.47130	9.34553	9.22218	8.98259	8.53020	8.11090	7.72173	7.36009	6.71008	6.41766	6.14457	5.65022
11	10.67703	10.52067	10.36763	10.21780	10.07112	9.78685	9.25262	8.76048	8.30641	7.88687	7.13896	6.80519	6.49506	5.93770
12	11.61893	11.43491	11.25508	11.07931	10.90751	10.57534	9.95400	9.38507	8.86325	8.38384	7.53608	7.16073	6.81369	6.19437
13	12.55615	12.34235	12.13374	11.93018	11.73153	11.34837	10.63496	9.98565	9.39357	8.85268	7.90378	7.48690	7.10336	6.42355
14	13.48871	13.24302	13.00370	12.77055	12.54338	12.10625	11.29607	10.56312	9.89864	9.29498	8.24424	7.78615	7.36669	6.62817
15	14.41662	14.13699	13.86505	13.60055	13.34323	12.84926	11.93794	11.11839	10.37966	9.71225	8.55948	8.06069	7.60608	6.81086
16	15.33993	15.02431	14.71787	14.42029	14.13126	13.57771	12.56110	11.65230	10.83777	10.10590	8.85137	8.31256	7.82371	6.97399
17	16.25863	15.90502	15.56225	15.22992	14.90765	14.29187	13.16612	12.16567	11.27407	10.47726	9.12164	8.54363	8.02155	7.11963
18	17.17277	16.77918	16.39827	16.02955	15.67256	14.99203	13.75351	12.65930	11.68959	10.82760	9.37189	8.75563	8.20141	7.24967
19	18.08236	17.64683	17.22601	16.81931	16.42617	15.67846	14.32380	13.13394	12.08532	11.15812	9.60360	8.95011	8.36492	7.36578
20	18.98742	18.50802	18.04555	17.59932	17.16864	16.35143	14.87747	13.59033	12.46221	11.46992	9.81815	9.12855	8.51356	7.46944
21	19.88798	19.36280	18.85698	18.36969	17.90014	17.01121	15.41502	14.02916	12.82115	11.76408	10.01680	9.29224	8.64869	7.56200
22	20.78406	20.21121	19.66038	19.13056	18.62082	17.65805	15.93692	14.45112	13.16300	12.04158	10.20074	9.44243	8.77154	7.64465
23	21.67568	21.05331	20.45582	19.88204	19.33086	18.29220	16.44361	14.85684	13.48857	12.30338	10.37106	9.58021	8.88322	7.71843
24	22.56287	21.88915	21.24339	20.62423	20.03041	18.91393	16.93554	15.24696	13.79864	12.55036	10.52876	9.70661	8.98474	7.78432
25	23.44564	22.71876	22.02316	21.35727	20.71961	19.52346	17.41315	15.62208	14.09394	12.78336	10.67478	9.82258	9.07704	7.84314

Table 23-2 Present Value Annuity Factors *(continued)*

Period	0.50%	0.75%	1.00%	1.25%	1.50%	2.00%	3.00%	4.00%	5.00%	6.00%	8.00%	9.00%	10.00%	12.00%
26	24.32402	23.54219	22.79520	22.08125	21.39863	20.12104	17.87684	15.98277	14.37519	13.00317	10.80998	9.92897	9.16095	7.89566
27	25.19803	24.35949	23.55961	22.79630	22.06762	20.70690	18.32703	16.32959	14.64303	13.21053	10.93516	10.02658	9.23722	7.94255
28	26.06769	25.17071	24.31644	23.50252	22.72672	21.28127	18.76411	16.66306	14.89813	13.40616	11.05108	10.11613	9.30657	7.98442
29	26.93302	25.97589	25.06579	24.20002	23.37608	21.84438	19.18845	16.98371	15.14107	13.59072	11.15841	10.19828	9.36961	8.02181
30	27.79405	26.77508	25.80771	24.88891	24.01584	22.39646	19.60044	17.29203	15.37245	13.76483	11.25778	10.27365	9.42691	8.05518
31	28.65080	27.56832	26.54229	25.56929	24.64615	22.93770	20.00043	17.58849	15.59281	13.92909	11.34980	10.34280	9.47901	8.08499
32	29.50328	28.35565	27.26959	26.24127	25.26714	23.46833	20.38877	17.87355	15.80268	14.08404	11.43500	10.40624	9.52638	8.11159
33	30.35153	29.13712	27.98969	26.90496	25.87895	23.98856	20.76579	18.14765	16.00255	14.23023	11.51389	10.46444	9.56943	8.13535
34	31.19555	29.91278	28.70267	27.56046	26.48173	24.49859	21.13184	18.41120	16.19290	14.36814	11.58693	10.51784	9.60857	8.15656
35	32.03537	30.68266	29.40858	28.20786	27.07559	24.99862	21.48722	18.66461	16.37419	14.49825	11.65457	10.56682	9.64416	8.17550
36	32.87102	31.44681	30.10751	28.84727	27.66068	25.48884	21.83225	18.90828	16.54685	14.62099	11.71719	10.61176	9.67651	8.19241
37	33.70250	32.20527	30.79951	29.47878	28.23713	25.96945	22.16724	19.14258	16.71129	14.73678	11.77518	10.65299	9.70592	8.20751
38	34.52985	32.95808	31.48466	30.10250	28.80505	26.44064	22.49246	19.36786	16.86789	14.84602	11.82887	10.69082	9.73265	8.22099
39	35.35309	33.70529	32.16303	30.71852	29.36458	26.90259	22.80822	19.58448	17.01704	14.94907	11.87858	10.72552	9.75696	8.23303
40	36.17223	34.44694	32.83469	31.32693	29.91585	27.35548	23.11477	19.79277	17.15909	15.04630	11.92461	10.75736	9.77905	8.24378
41	36.98729	35.18307	33.49969	31.92784	30.45896	27.79949	23.41240	19.99305	17.29437	15.13802	11.96723	10.78657	9.79914	8.25337
42	37.79830	35.91371	34.15811	32.52132	30.99405	28.23479	23.70136	20.18563	17.42321	15.22454	12.00670	10.81337	9.81740	8.26194
43	38.60527	36.63892	34.81001	33.10748	31.52123	28.66156	23.98190	20.37079	17.54591	15.30617	12.04324	10.83795	9.83400	8.26959
44	39.40823	37.35873	35.45545	33.68640	32.04062	29.07996	24.25427	20.54884	17.66277	15.38318	12.07707	10.86051	9.84909	8.27642
45	40.20720	38.07318	36.09451	34.25817	32.55234	29.49016	24.51871	20.72004	17.77407	15.45583	12.10840	10.88120	9.86281	8.28252
46	41.00219	38.78231	36.72724	34.82288	33.05649	29.89231	24.77545	20.88465	17.88007	15.52437	12.13741	10.90018	9.87528	8.28796
47	41.79322	39.48617	37.35370	35.38062	33.55319	30.28658	25.02471	21.04294	17.98102	15.58903	12.16427	10.91760	9.88662	8.29282
48	42.58032	40.18478	37.97396	35.93148	34.04255	30.67312	25.26671	21.19513	18.07716	15.65003	12.18914	10.93358	9.89693	8.29716
49	43.36350	40.87820	38.58808	36.47554	34.52468	31.05208	25.50166	21.34147	18.16872	15.70757	12.21216	10.94823	9.90630	8.30104
50	44.14279	41.56645	39.19612	37.01288	34.99969	31.42361	25.72976	21.48218	18.25593	15.76186	12.23348	10.96168	9.91481	8.30450

Notes

24

Business Statistics

Learning Objectives

By studying this chapter and completing all assignments, you will be able to:

Learning Objective 1	Compute the mean.
Learning Objective 2	Determine the median.
Learning Objective 3	Determine the mode.
Learning Objective 4	Construct frequency tables.
Learning Objective 5	Construct histograms.
Learning Objective 6	Construct bar graphs.
Learning Objective 7	Construct line graphs.
Learning Objective 8	Construct pie charts.

Burger King has sold billions of hamburgers. Housing prices are higher in Boston than in Atlanta. The United States has a trade deficit, which means that the country has been importing more goods than it has been exporting. Families tend to spend more money in retail stores during November and December than during other months of the year. These examples are based on collections of information about businesses. The information is called **business statistics.** The word **statistics** also refers to a field of study that includes the collection, organization, analysis, and presentation of data. Businesses use statistics for two primary purposes: (1) to summarize and report the performance of the business and (2) to analyze their options in making business decisions.

Individuals and groups who want information about the business performance of a company include the company's management, board of directors, investors, and government agencies like the IRS. Once statistics have been reported, individuals and groups use the statistics to make business decisions. For example, depending on the amount of profits, the board of directors decides how much dividend to pay the shareholders. Likewise, after hearing about current profits and projected profits, investors decide whether to purchase or sell shares of the company's stock. After studying sales figures for its products and those of competitors, management makes decisions about which markets to enter, what products to emphasize, and how to advertise.

If a Burger King analyst wants to report data on sales of hamburgers, she could list the number of hamburgers sold at every restaurant. But Burger King has so many restaurants that there would be too many numbers to be meaningful. To make the data meaningful, the analyst can make some summary calculations and/or organize the data in tables. To make her presentations of the data more meaningful and easier to interpret, she may draw charts, diagrams, and/or graphs.

Statistical Averages: Computing the Mean

Learning Objective 1

Compute the mean.

The objective in reporting statistics is to summarize the data in a simple, yet meaningful, manner. One way to simplify data is to compute an **average.** An average is a single number that is supposed to be "typical" or "representative" of a group of numbers. One common way to find an average is to add all the data values and divide by the number of values. In statistics, this particular average is called the *mean*. When the mean isn't typical or representative of an entire group of data, another average might be more representative. We also discuss two other averages: the median and the mode.

The **mean** of a group of values is computed by dividing the sum of the group of values by the number of values in the group.

EXAMPLE A

Find the mean income of five employees whose actual incomes are $51,500, $54,400, $57,600, $62,000, and $64,500.

Sum = \$51,500 + \$54,400 + \$57,600 + \$62,000 + \$64,500 = \$290,000
Mean = \$290,000 ÷ 5 = \$58,000

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONCEPT CHECK 24.1

Find the mean for the following set of numbers: 14, 11, 12, 15, 10, 16, 15, 12, 13, 11, 15, 17, 13, 14, 15, 12, 18.

There are 17 numbers. The mean equals their sum divided by 17.

Sum = 233

Mean = 233 ÷ 17 = 13.706, or 13.7 rounded to one decimal place

Determining the Median

Learning Objective 2

Determine the median.

The **median** of a group of numbers is determined by arranging the numbers in numerical order and finding the middle number. The median is useful when one or more numbers in the group is much larger or much smaller than the other numbers.

EXAMPLE B

Find the median income of five employees whose incomes are $51,500, $54,400, $57,600, $62,000, and $254,500.

The incomes are already in numerical order; the median is $57,600 because it is the middle number of the five numbers arranged in order.

In example B, the mean is $480,000 ÷ 5 = $96,000, but $96,000 is not very representative of the incomes of the five employees. The mean is very large because one employee (perhaps the owner) has a very large income compared to the rest of the group. The median income, $57,600, is more typical of the group.

If the number of values is even, the median will be halfway between the two middle values. The median will be the mean of the middle two values.

EXAMPLE C

Find the median income of six employees whose incomes are $57,600, $64,500, $51,500, $254,500, $62,000, and $54,400.

Rearranged in numerical order, the incomes are $51,500, $54,400, $57,600, $62,000, $64,500, and $254,500.

The median is halfway between the middle two numbers, $57,600 and $62,000. The median is ($57,600 + $62,000) ÷ 2, or $119,600 ÷ 2 = $59,800.

CONCEPT CHECK 24.2

Find the median for the following set of numbers: 14, 11, 12, 15, 10, 16, 15, 12, 13, 11, 15, 17, 13, 14, 15, 12, 18.

The median is the middle number, after all the numbers have been arranged by order of size: 10, 11, 11, 12, 12, 12, 13, 13, 14, 14, 15, 15, 15, 15, 16, 17, 18.

The median is the ninth number, or 14.

Determining the Mode

Learning Objective **3**

Determine the mode.

The **mode** of a group of numbers is the number that occurs most often. None of examples A, B, and C has a mode because each number occurs only once. The mode is useful when the word *average* implies "most typical" or "happening most often." Retail businesses keep track of the items that sell most frequently so they can avoid shortages of those items. It is usually easier to determine the mode if you first arrange the numbers in numerical order.

EXAMPLE D

Find the mode shoe size of 12 pairs of cross trainer running shoes, sizes 6, 6, $7\frac{1}{2}$, $7\frac{1}{2}$, 8, $8\frac{1}{2}$, 9, 9, 9, 9, 9, and $9\frac{1}{2}$. The numbers are already in numerical order.

The mode is size 9, because 9 occurs most frequently.

In example D neither the mean nor the median makes any sense. The mean is $98 \div 12 = 8.17$, or $8\frac{1}{6}$. The median is halfway between sizes $8\frac{1}{2}$ and 9, which would be 8.75, or $8\frac{3}{4}$. The store owner could not buy any shoes in either size $8\frac{1}{6}$ or size $8\frac{3}{4}$ because those shoe sizes do not exist. However, the store owner does want to stock several shoes in size 9.

CONCEPT CHECK 24.3

Find the mode for the following set of numbers: 14, 11, 12, 15, 10, 16, 15, 12, 13, 11, 15, 17, 13, 14, 15, 12, 18.

The mode is the number that occurs most often. First arrange the numbers by size:

10, 11, 11, 12, 12, 12, 13, 13, 14, 14, 15, 15, 15, 15, 16, 17, 18.

There are four 15s, so the mode is 15.

Constructing Frequency Tables

Learning Objective **4**

Construct frequency tables.

The data in examples A–D are sometimes called **ungrouped data** because the numbers are listed individually. Business applications, such as sales results for all Burger King restaurants, often involve hundreds or thousands of numbers. Interpreting data that are literally pages of raw numbers is impossible. To make sense of such data, we organize the individual values into groups called **classes of data** or *data classes.* Adjacent classes "touch each other," but cannot overlap, not even by one cent. Also, classes are normally the same width. In example E, the width of each class is $5,000. The number of values in each class, called the **frequency** of the class, is summarized in a table called a **frequency table.**

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

STEPS to Develop a Frequency Table

1. Determine the classes of data, and list the classes in one column.
2. Tally the data by making one mark for each data item in the column next to the appropriate class.
3. Count the tally marks for each class and write the number in the column next to the tally marks.

EXAMPLE E

Listed below are the salaries of 25 office employees of an insurance company. Make a frequency table with five classes: $40,000 up to *but not including* $45,000, $45,000 up to *but not including* $50,000, and so on.

$42,500	$41,300	$53,500	$62,400	$47,500
45,400	54,600	41,000	44,400	59,100
48,000	52,000	57,500	62,500	44,000
53,600	46,200	53,500	51,800	56,400
55,500	46,000	45,200	46,000	60,800

The frequency table for these salaries appears in Figure 24-1.

Figure 24-1 Frequency Table

Class	Tally	Frequency (F)
$40,000 up to $45,000	𝍸	5
$45,000 up to $50,000	𝍸 II	7
$50,000 up to $55,000	𝍸 I	6
$55,000 up to $60,000	IIII	4
$60,000 up to $65,000	III	+3
Total		25

COMPUTING THE MEAN OF LARGE DATA SETS

When a data set contains many numbers, as in example E, a computer spreadsheet is usually used to compute the mean. If you use a calculator, be sure to check your work. A common method to check is to add all the numbers twice. One system to add them twice, but in two different orders, is shown in the following steps.

STEPS to Compute the Mean for a Large Data Set

1. Add all the numbers in each column.
2. Add all the numbers in each row.
3. Compute the grand total by adding all the column totals.
4. Check the grand total by adding all the row totals.
5. Divide the grand total by the number of values to get the mean.

EXAMPLE F

Compute the mean of the 25 salaries in example E.

$ 42,500	$ 41,300	$ 53,500	$ 62,400	$ 47,500	$ 247,200
45,400	54,600	41,000	44,400	59,100	244,500
48,000	52,000	57,500	62,500	44,000	264,000
53,600	46,200	53,500	51,800	56,400	261,500
+ 55,500	+ 46,000	+ 45,200	+ 46,000	+ 60,800	+ 253,500
$245,000	$240,100	$250,700	$267,100	$267,800	$1,270,700

The sum of the row totals and the sum of the column totals are both $1,270,700.

Mean = $1,270,700 ÷ 25 = $50,828

CONCEPT CHECK 24.4

Make a frequency table for the following set of data. Use the classes 1,500 up to 2,000, 2,000 up to 2,500, and so on.

2,550	3,275	3,410	2,650	3,140
3,480	3,400	2,860	3,810	3,480
1,660	3,280	2,940	2,480	3,325
1,975	4,270	3,520	2,440	2,325
4,110	3,300	2,290	4,140	3,990
2,570	2,150	2,840	4,325	2,720

Class	**Tally**	**Frequency**
1,500 up to 2,000	||	2
2,000 up to 2,500	𝍸	5
2,500 up to 3,000	𝍸 ||	7
3,000 up to 3,500	𝍸 ||||	9
3,500 up to 4,000	|||	3
4,000 up to 4,500	||||	+ 4
Total		30

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 24.1.

Charts and Graphs: Constructing Histograms

Learning Objective 5

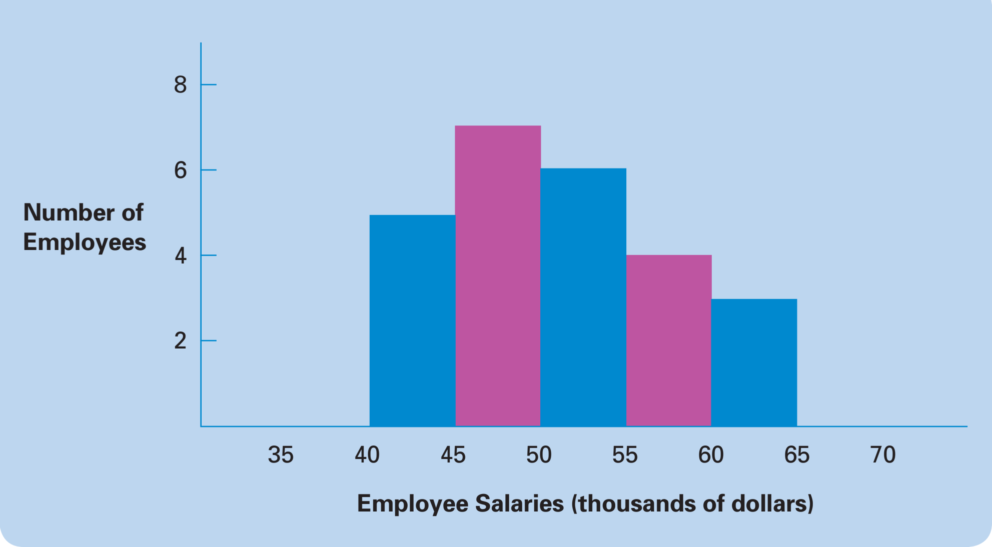
Construct histograms.

In business, statistical information is first summarized clearly in tables. For presentation, the results are then often displayed in charts or graphs. Popular graphs include the histogram, the bar graph, the line graph, and the pie chart (or circle graph). Histograms, bar graphs, and line graphs all have perpendicular axes. Labels are placed at the left (the vertical axis) and bottom (the horizontal axis).

A **histogram** is a diagram that illustrates the **grouped data** from a frequency table. The classes are positioned adjacent to each other along the horizontal axis, and the frequencies are written along the vertical axis. Figure 24-2 shows the histogram for the frequency table in Figure 24-1. The numbers on the horizontal axis increase from left to right. The numbers on the vertical axis increase from bottom to top.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

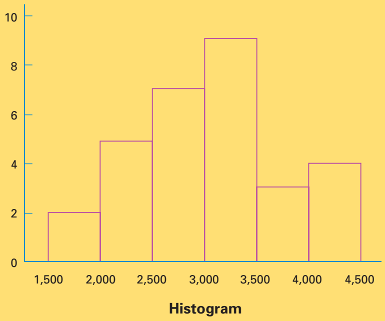
Figure 24-2 Histogram



CONCEPT CHECK 24.5

Construct a histogram from the following frequency table.

Class	**Frequency**
1,500 up to 2,000	2
2,000 up to 2,500	5
2,500 up to 3,000	7
3,000 up to 3,500	9
3,500 up to 4,000	3
4,000 up to 4,500	+ 4
Total	30



Constructing Bar Graphs

Learning Objective 6

Construct bar graphs.

A **bar graph,** or bar chart, resembles the histogram except that there may not be a numeric scale on the horizontal axis and the bars normally do not touch each other. Sosa's Markets has grocery stores in four different towns: Davis, Hubbard, Bay View, and Easton, although the Davis store just opened last year in July. The table in Figure 24-3 shows the annual sales revenue, cost of goods sold, operating expenses, and net profits for both the current year and the previous year. The bar graph in Figure 24-4 illustrates the data from the current year. Data from the table in Figure 24-3 are used in various examples throughout the remainder of this chapter.

Note: It does not make sense to have the vertical bars "touch each other" as in a histogram. The four stores are distinct objects. If the horizontal axis were "time," like consecutive months of the year, then you could make a bar graph. But it would also make

ANDREW WARD/LIFE FILE/
GETTY IMAGES

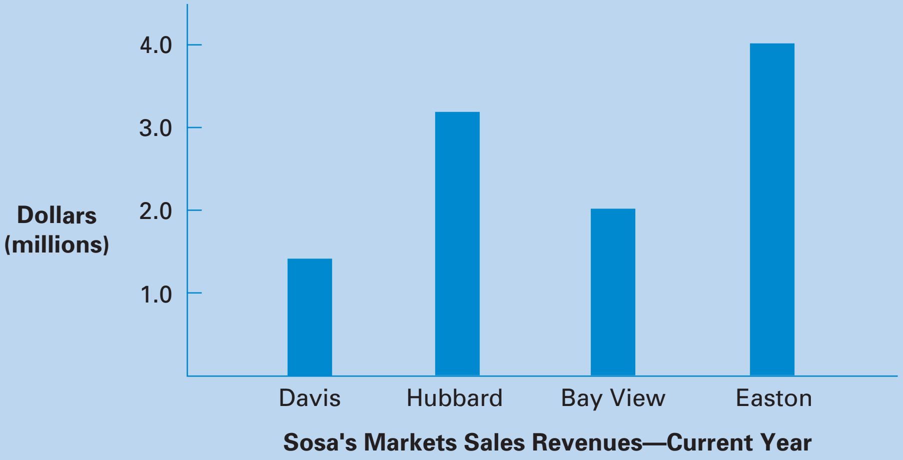
Figure 24-3 Revenues, Expenses, and Net Profits (in millions of dollars)

SOSA'S MARKETS SALES DATA FOR THE CURRENT YEAR (IN MILLIONS OF DOLLARS)

Location	Sales Revenue	Cost of Goods Sold	Operating Expenses	Net Profit (This Year)	Net Profit (Last Year)
Davis	1.50	0.75	0.50	0.25	0.15
Hubbard	3.25	1.75	1.00	0.50	0.75
Bay View	2.00	1.00	0.75	0.25	0.50
Easton	4.00	2.00	1.25	0.75	0.50

sense to use a histogram because last year could touch this year at midnight on December 31. However, as you will see, we can make some useful variations of bar graphs that we cannot do with histograms.

Figure 24-4 Bar Graph

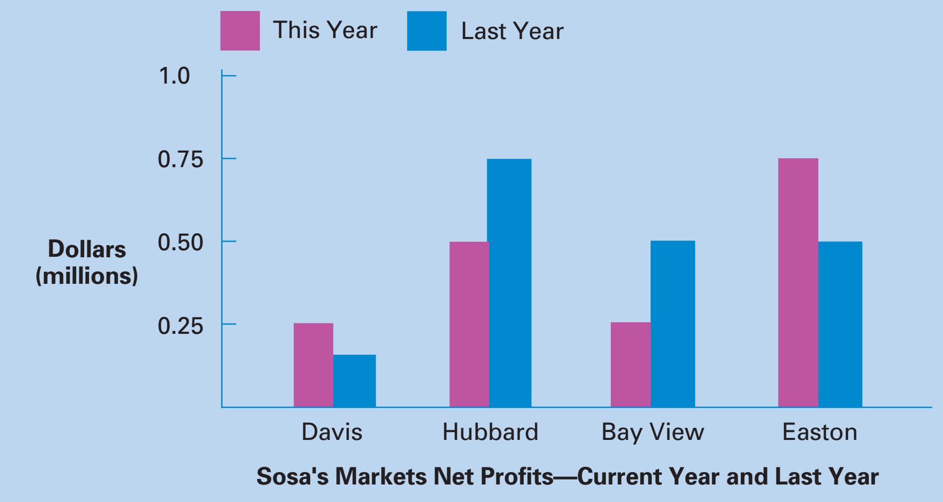


COMPARATIVE BAR GRAPH

Two bar graphs can be combined on one grid to make a **comparative bar graph.** This permits the statistician to make a graph that will compare two different sets of data. The graph for Sosa's Markets in Figure 24-5 compares each store's net profit this year with its net profit last year. Each store has one pair of bars and the two bars in each pair need to be colored or shaded differently to help the reader distinguish between the two years.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

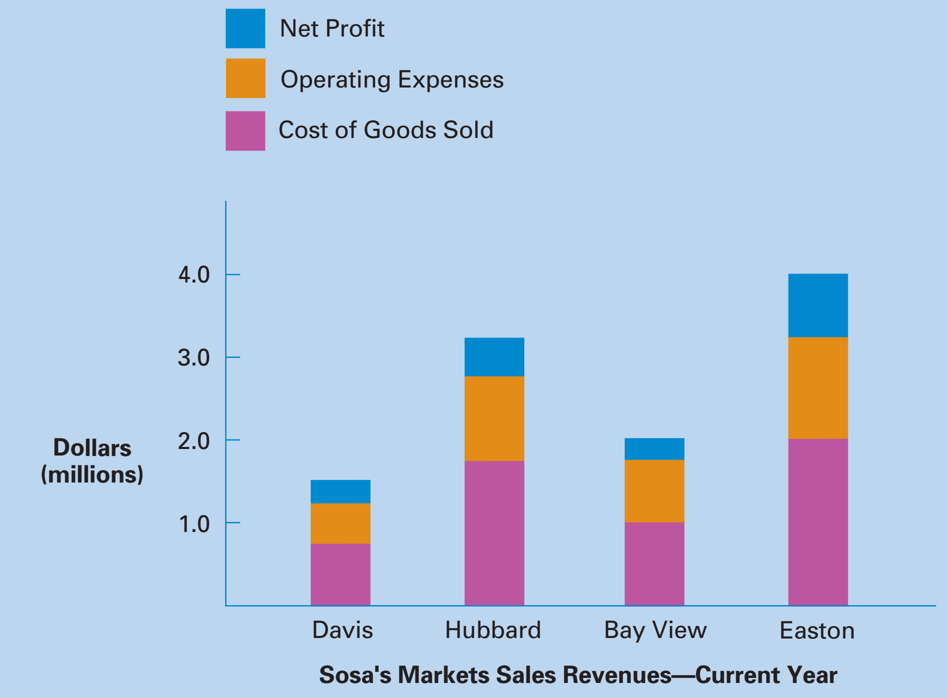
Figure 24-5 Comparative Bar Graph



COMPONENT BAR GRAPH

A bar graph constructed to show how certain data are composed of various segments is a **component bar graph.** Figure 24-6 shows how the current sales revenue is composed of cost of goods sold, operating expenses, and net profit. As in the comparative bar graph, the component parts are colored or shaded differently to permit easier reading.

Figure 24-6 Component Bar Graph



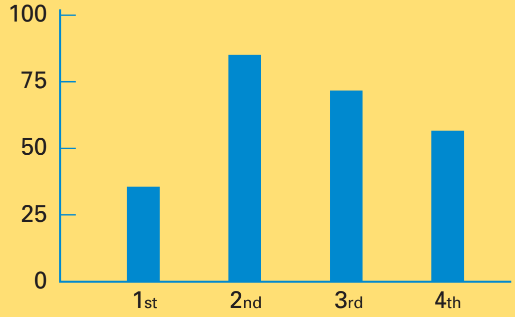
CONCEPT CHECK 24.6

Jefferson County Real Estate has three offices, each of which sells some homes. The Shopping Mall Office sells homes almost exclusively; last year it sold 150 homes. The Downtown Office handles mostly commercial property, but it sold 60 homes last year. The Mountain Office primarily manages various resort properties, but it did sell 30 homes. Following are the numbers of homes sold in each quarter of last year. The first quarter is January through March; the second quarter is April through June; the third quarter is July through September; and the fourth quarter is October through December.

Home Sales Last Year

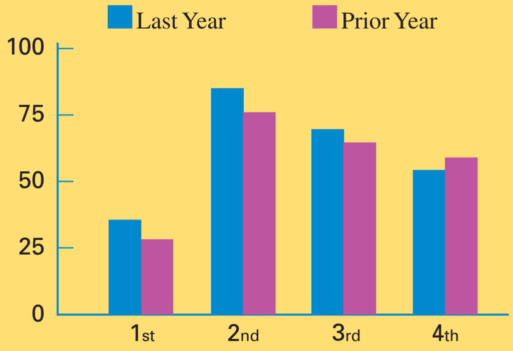
Quarter	**1st**	**2nd**	**3rd**	**4th**
Shopping Mall Office	20	60	40	30
Downtown Office	5	20	25	10
Mountain Office	+10	+3	+5	+12
Total sales last year	35	83	70	52
Total sales prior year	30	75	65	55

a. Construct a bar graph showing total home sales for each quarter last year. Make the vertical scale from 0 to 100, and mark the four quarters on the horizontal scale.



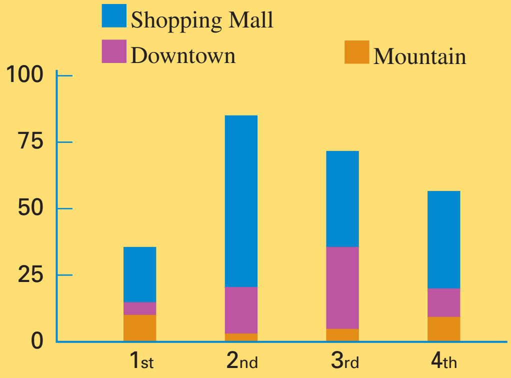
Home Sales by Quarter—Last Year

b. Construct a comparative bar graph showing total home sales for each quarter, both last year and the prior year.



Home Sales Last Year vs. Prior Year

c. Construct a component bar graph showing quarterly home sales for each office last year.



Home Sales by Office—Last Year

Constructing Line Graphs

Learning Objective 7

Construct line graphs.

Businesses often analyze data over time, perhaps monthly or annually. As we mentioned earlier, both a histogram and a bar graph can be used when time is on the horizontal axis. Another useful graph for illustrating data over time is the **line graph.** Plot the heights with single points above each month (or year). Then connect the consecutive points with straight line segments. Notice that it would not make sense to put time on the vertical axis.

Following are five months of expenses for materials for the residential and commercial divisions of Solar Metals, Inc., a custom metal-fabricating business.

	Jan.	**Feb.**	**Mar.**	**Apr.**	**May**
Residential	24,000	30,000	26,000	36,000	32,000
Commercial	46,000	40,000	50,000	46,000	54,000

Figure 24-7 shows a comparative bar graph for this data. Figure 24-8 shows two line graphs with one line for the Residential Division and the other for the Commercial Division.

Fuse/Getty Images

Figure 24-7 Comparative Bar Graph

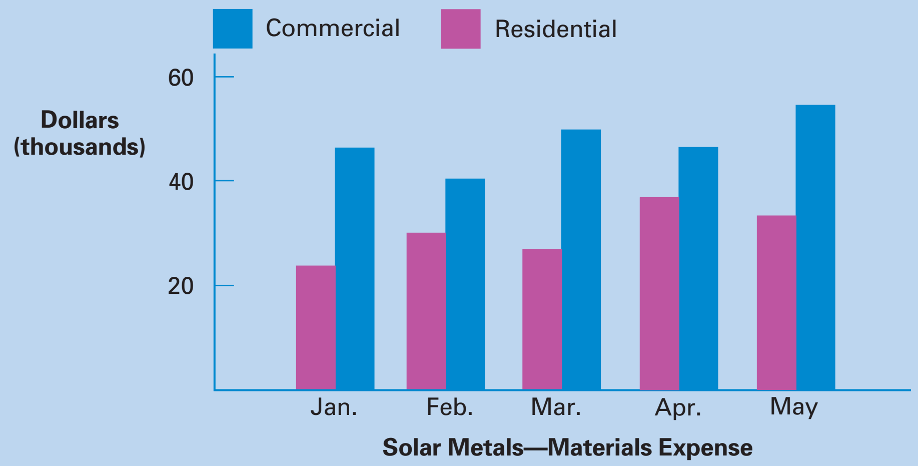
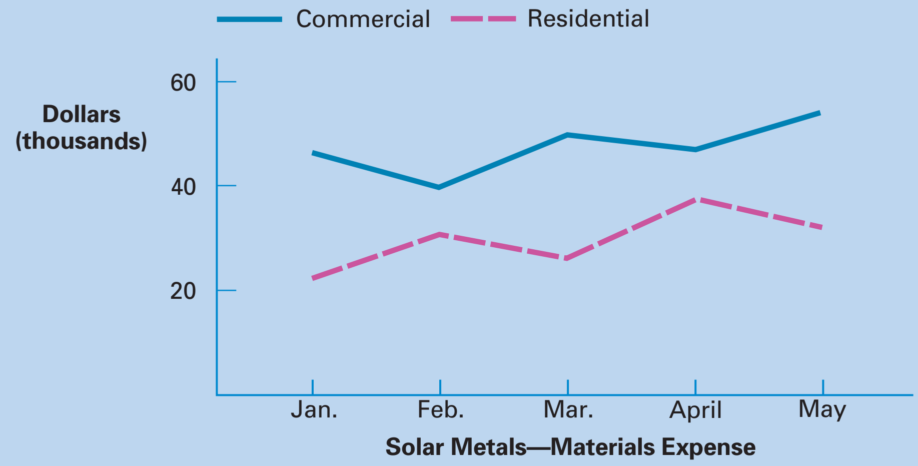


Figure 24-8 Line Graph



As we mentioned earlier, there is not a convenient, unconfusing method to make one histogram show all of the information. If you simply take the comparative bar graph, but draw the vertical bars all adjacent, the result is NOT a histogram. Histograms are not normally used for this kind of data. Histograms for the Residential and Commercial Divisions are shown in Figures 24-9 and 24-10. Their only purpose here is for you to see that the line graph and the comparative bar graph are much better suited to illustrate the differences in the data.

Figure 24-9 Histogram—Residential Division

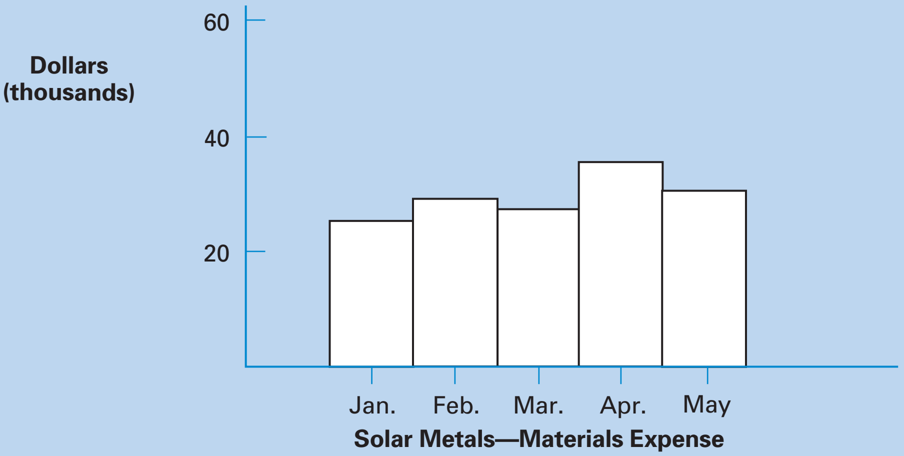
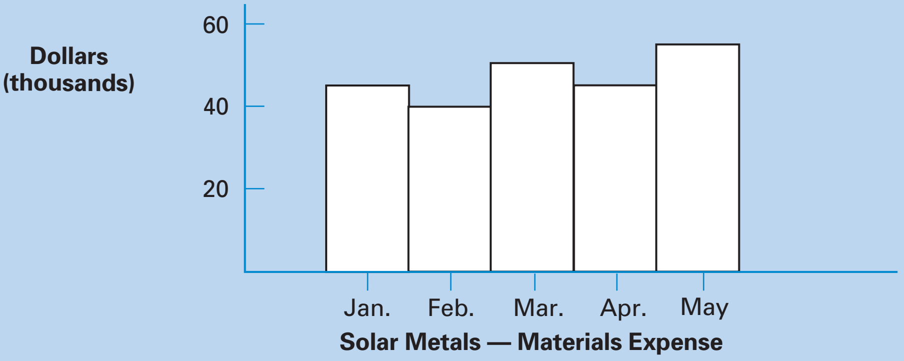


Figure 24-10 Histogram—Commercial Division



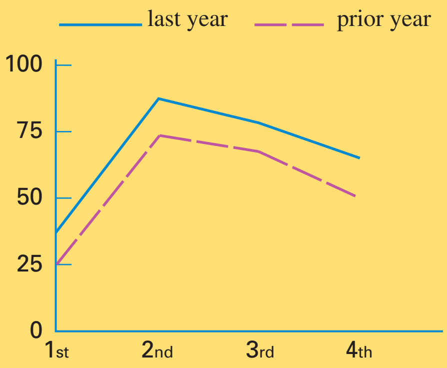
CONCEPT CHECK 24.7

Truck specialist Larry Johnson sells only pickup trucks for Tri-City Truck Dealers. Larry's quarterly truck sales for last year and the prior year are as follows:

L. Johnson Quarterly Truck Sales

Quarter	1st	2nd	3rd	4th
Sales last year	35	85	75	62
Sales prior year	25	73	64	50

Construct two line graphs on the same grid showing quarterly Truck sales for last year and for the prior year. Make the vertical scale from 0 to 100, and mark the four quarters on the horizontal scale.



L. Johnson Quarterly Truck Sales Last Year and Prior Year

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Constructing Pie Charts

Learning Objective 8

Construct pie charts.

Radius Images/Getty Images

A **pie chart,** sometimes called a circle graph, resembles a component bar graph because it shows how one quantity is composed of different parts. In a pie chart, however, the parts are often written as percents. Figure 24-11 gives the sales data breakdown for just the Bay View location of Sosa's Markets. (Refer back to Figures 24-3 and 24-6.) The pie chart shown in Figure 24-12 indicates how the Bay View sales revenue for the current year is composed of cost of goods sold, operating expenses, and net profit.

Before the pie chart is drawn, the data are changed into percents, as shown in Figure 24-11. The size of each part of the circle can be reasonably estimated by using the fractional equivalents of the percents. In Figure 24-12, cost of goods sold is 50%, or $\frac{1}{2}$, of the circle. Operating expenses make up 37.5%, or $\frac{3}{8}$, of the circle. The remaining $\frac{1}{8}$ represents net profit.

Figure 24-11 Sales Revenue for Bay View Market—Current Year

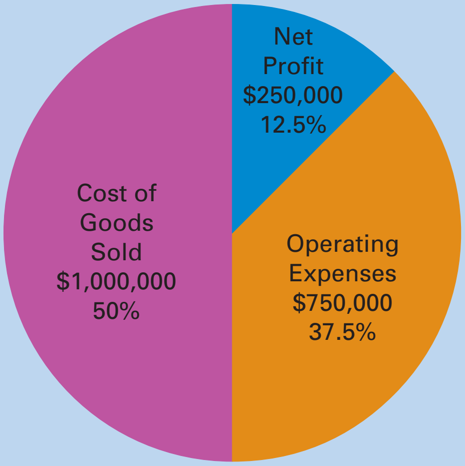
	Amount	Percent
Cost of Goods Sold	\$1,000,000	50.0%
Operating Expenses	750,000	37.5%
Net Profit Last Year	+ 250,000	+ 12.5%
Sales Revenue	\$2,000,000	100.0%

$1,000,000 ÷ $2,000,000 = 50.0%

$750,000 ÷ $2,000,000 = 37.5%

$250,000 ÷ $2,000,000 = 12.5%

Figure 24-12 Pie Chart



Bay View Market Sales Revenue—Current Year

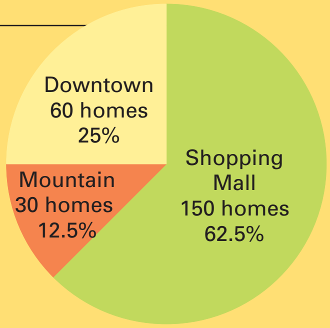
Compare the pie chart in Figure 24-12 with the Bay View part of the component bar graph in Figure 24-6.

CONCEPT CHECK 24.8

Last year's home sales by three different offices of Jefferson County Real Estate are shown below. Calculate the percent of the total sales for each office, and construct a pie chart showing each office's share of the total sales.

Office	**Homes**	**Percent**
Shopping Mall Office	150	150 ÷ 240 = 62.5%
Downtown Office	60	60 ÷ 240 = 25%
Mountain Office	+30	30 ÷ 240 = 12.5%
Total	240	240 ÷ 240 = 100%

25% is $\frac{1}{4}$ of the circle; 12.5% is half of another quarter, or $\frac{1}{8}$; 62.5% is the remaining eighth plus the remaining half, or $\frac{5}{8}$.



Home Sales Last Year

COMPLETE ASSIGNMENT 24.2.

Chapter Terms for Review

- average
- bar graph
- business statistics
- classes of data
- comparative bar graph
- component bar graph
- frequency
- frequency table
- grouped data
- histogram
- line graph
- mean
- median
- mode
- pie chart
- statistics
- ungrouped data

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

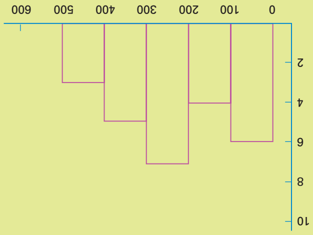
<table>
<tr><th>Learning Objective</th><th>Example</th></tr>
<tr><td>24.1
Compute the mean.</td><td>1. Compute the mean (rounded to one decimal place) for these seven values: 34, 26, 18, 9, 21, 24, and 15.</td></tr>
<tr><td>24.2
Determine the median.</td><td>2. Determine the median for these seven values: 15, 26, 18, 9, 21, 24, and 15.</td></tr>
<tr><td>24.3
Determine the mode.</td><td>3. Determine the mode for these seven values: 24, 21, 17, 9, 21, 26, and 15.</td></tr>
<tr><td>24.4
Construct a frequency table.</td><td>4. Use the following set of data to construct a frequency table. Use the classes 0 up to 100, 100 up to 200, and so on.
<table>
<tr><td>150</td><td>427</td><td>134</td><td>254</td><td>75</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>134</td><td>228</td><td>317</td><td>284</td></tr>
<tr><td>347</td><td>289</td><td>129</td><td>180</td><td>125</td></tr>
<tr><td>197</td><td>27</td><td>430</td><td>246</td><td>308</td></tr>
<tr><td>210</td><td>330</td><td>297</td><td>141</td><td>182</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>24.5
Construct histograms.</td><td>5. Construct a histogram from the following frequency table.
<table>
<tr><th>Class</th><th>Frequency</th></tr>
<tr><td>0 up to 100</td><td>6</td></tr>
<tr><td>100 up to 200</td><td>4</td></tr>
<tr><td>200 up to 300</td><td>7</td></tr>
<tr><td>300 up to 400</td><td>5</td></tr>
<tr><td>400 up to 500</td><td>+3</td></tr>
<tr><td>Total</td><td>25</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
</table>

Answers: **1.** 21 **2.** 18 **3.** 21

4.

Class	Tally	Frequency
0 up to 100	III	3
100 up to 200	卌 IIII	9
200 up to 300	卌 II	7
300 up to 400	IIII	4
400 up to 500	II	+2
Total		25

5.



Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
24.6 Construct bar graphs.	6. Tiffany Larsen is an automobile salesperson who sells coupes, sedans, and sport utility vehicles. Her vehicle sales for April, May, June, and July of this year are arranged in the table below. Also given are Tiffany's total sales for the same four months last year.

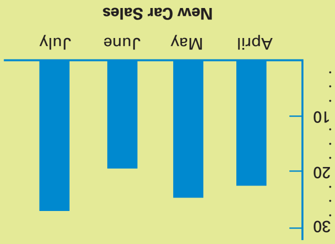
Vehicle Type	April	May	June	July
Coupe	9	6	9	8
Sedan	12	8	6	9
Sport utility vehicle	+3	+12	+5	+10
Totals this year	24	26	20	27
Totals last year	15	20	16	22

Construct a bar graph showing the four monthly totals for this year. Make a vertical scale from 0 to 30, and mark the horizontal scale April, May, June, and July.

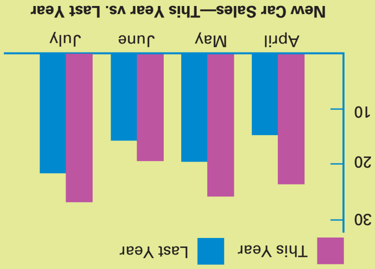
7. Construct a comparative bar graph showing the four monthly totals for this year and last year.

8. Construct a component bar graph showing car sales by model for April through July of this year.

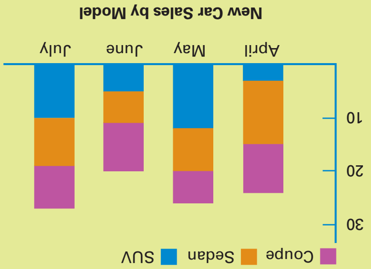
Answers: 6.



7.



8.



Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

THE BOTTOM LINE

Summary of chapter learning objectives:

Learning Objective	Example
24.7 Construct line graphs.	9. The monthly car sales for April, May, June, and July of this year and last year for Tiffany Larsen are as follows.
24.8 Construct pie charts.	10. In April of this year, Tiffany Larsen sold the following numbers of cars, arranged by type of vehicle.

9. The monthly car sales for April, May, June, and July of this year and last year for Tiffany Larsen are as follows.

Period	April	May	June	July
This year	24	26	20	27
Last year	15	20	16	22

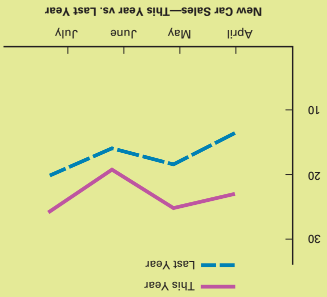
On one grid, construct line graphs showing her sales for these 4 months during this year and last year.

10. In April of this year, Tiffany Larsen sold the following numbers of cars, arranged by type of vehicle.

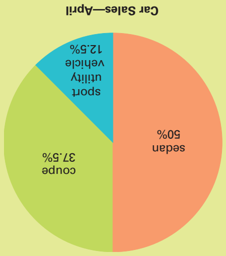
Vehicle Type	Sales	Percent
Coupe	9	
Sedan	12	
Sport utility vehicle	+ 3	
Totals	24	

Calculate the percent for each model. Then make a pie chart showing Tiffany's sales for each model in April.

Answers: 9.



10. 37.5%, 50%, 12.5%



SELF-CHECK

Review Problems for Chapter 24

1 For the data 58, 65, 55, 77, 88, 58, 82, 66, 53, 58, 62, 52, 68, 58, 78, 61, 49, find (a) the mean, (b) the median, and (c) the mode.

2 Use the data given to complete the following frequency distribution:

86, 67, 85, 57, 72
61, 77, 53, 85, 67
69, 83, 79, 68, 71
59, 62, 88, 64, 81

Class	Tally	Frequency
50 up to 60	________	**a.** ________
60 up to 70	________	**b.** ________
70 up to 80	________	**c.** ________
80 up to 90	________	**d.** ________

3 Use the frequency distributions from problem 2(a)–(d) to create the appropriate histogram. (Each vertical bar should represent one part of the problem.)

4 Kevin and Al Bianchini own two markets, Bianchini's and Foodville. In a typical week, each store sells approximately 2,400 lb of meat, fish, and poultry. Typical amounts are as follows:

Location	Meat	Fish	Poultry
Bianchini's	900	900	600
Foodville	1,200	300	900

a. Draw a comparative bar graph showing the sales of the two markets (two vertical bars for each type of product).

b. Draw a component bar graph showing the sales of the two markets. Make one vertical bar for each store, and each bar should show the amount of each product sold in that store.

c. Draw a pie chart for the sales for Bianchini's market only.

Answers to the Self-Check can be found in Appendix B at the back of the text.

Assignment 24.1: Statistical Averages

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives **1** **2** **3** **4**

A **(52 points) Solve the following problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

1. A department store has three local locations: Burch Plaza, Schaer Center, and Matthews Mall. The store gives every applicant for any type of managerial job a test of basic business skills. Listed here are the scores from the tests given to applicants at the three locations last week.

Burch Plaza	Schaer Center	Matthews Mall
59	89	64
88	60	44
62	89	53
47	55	77
68	46	58
88	74	43
78	64	77
59	89	82
45	+46	66
88		+62
+87		
____	____	____

b. Combine all the scores into one frequency distribution with the classes as shown. (1 point for each correct answer)

Class	Tally	Frequency
40 up to 50	________	________
50 up to 60	________	________
60 up to 70	________	________
70 up to 80	________	________
80 up to 90	________	________

a. Find the mean, median, and mode for each location. (3 points for each correct answer)

	Burch	Schaer	Matthews
Mean	________	________	________
Median	________	________	________
Mode	________	________	________

2. Cirano Aguilar operates a popular coffee cart from which he also sells sandwiches. He has the opportunity to open another cart in the inner patio of a complex of office buildings, but he won't be allowed to sell sandwiches. Perform a statistical analysis on Cirano's sales receipts for nonsandwich items for the first 15 work days of May and October. (3 points for each correct answer)

May			October		
$250	$380	$340	$320	$240	$230
470	450	240	220	250	370
350	260	360	320	280	340
320	310	190	310	430	200
280	250	410	360	420	180

a. Find the mean for May. ________

b. Find the mean for October. ________

c. Find the median for May. ________

d. Find the median for October. ________

e. Find the combined mean for all 30 days. (*Hint:* Add the two sums and divide by 30.)

____

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Score for A (52)

B **(48 points) Solve the following problems. (points for correct answers as marked)**

3. Mingus Bank & Trust Co. has several retail branches. Bank management wants to compare the ages of personal banking customers at two specific branches—the Financial District Branch, downtown, and the University Branch, located in a residential area between the local university and a retirement community. The bank's analyst randomly selects 30 personal banking customers from each bank and writes down their ages. The following two tables show the results.

Financial District Branch						**University Branch**					
43	30	43	51	60		74	82	46	19	20	
68	32	72	52	27		21	36	73	57	18	
28	73	43	19	64		54	17	18	75	84	
70	35	56	55	31		76	22	24	19	68	
63	24	47	44	34		27	21	75	34	18	
52	61	66	57	58		81	64	22	60	70	

a. Compute the mean age of the group of customers from the Financial District Branch. (8 points) ______

b. Compute the mean age of the group of customers from the University Branch. (8 points) ______

c. Make two frequency tables of customer ages, one for the Financial District Branch and one for the University Branch. For each table, use frequency classes 10 up to 20, 20 up to 30, . . . , 80 up to 90. (2 points for each correct row in each table)

Financial District Branch

Class	**Tally**	**Frequency**

University Branch

Class	**Tally**	**Frequency**

Score for B (48)

Assignment 24.2: Graphs and Charts

Name

Date Score

Learning Objectives 5 6 7 8

A **(18 points) Complete the following problem as directed. (9 points for each correct graph)**

1. After doing the initial research in problem 3 of Assignment 24.1, the analyst from Mingus Bank randomly selected 100 customers from the Financial District Branch and 100 customers from the University Branch. She found the age of each customer and summarized the data in the following two frequency tables.

Financial District Branch

Class	Frequency
10 up to 20	5
20 up to 30	10
30 up to 40	15
40 up to 50	21
50 up to 60	18
60 up to 70	16
70 up to 80	12
80 up to 90	+ 3
Total	100

University Branch

Class	Frequency
10 up to 20	20
20 up to 30	21
30 up to 40	10
40 up to 50	9
50 up to 60	5
60 up to 70	7
70 up to 80	15
80 up to 90	+13
Total	100

a. Draw a histogram for the Financial District Branch. Label each axis, and write a title under the graph.

b. Draw a histogram for the University Branch. Label each axis, and write a title under the graph.

Score for A (18)

B **(54 points) Complete the following problems as directed. (18 points for each correct graph)**

2. Judy Paris owns two businesses that do both copying and custom printing. One, JP Industrial Arts, is in the central business district where she specializes in high-volume copying and artwork for both corporations and non-profits. The other, Paris Printing, is in a large residential subdivision where she does custom printing, like wedding invitations and greeting cards for individuals, and advertisements for small businesses. The following table shows Judy's quarterly sales revenues from last year.

Shop	**1st Q**	**2nd Q**	**3rd Q**	**4th Q**
JP Industrial Arts	$275,000	$200,000	$250,000	$175,000
Paris Printing	150,000	125,000	100,000	200,000

a. On the grid below, make a comparative bar graph showing the quarterly sales revenues for each shop. Label each axis and write a title under the graph. Shade the bars for each shop differently.

b. On the grid below, make line graphs for each shop that show their quarterly sales revenues. Label each axis and write a title under the graph. Use a solid line for JP Industrial Arts and a dashed line for Paris Printing.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3. RFP Insurance Brokers records the totals of residential (as opposed to commercial) insurance policy premiums billed each month. The results for the last 4 months of the year are shown classified by automobile insurance, homeowner's insurance, and life insurance. Construct a component bar graph showing the premiums for each insurance type each month. Label each axis, and write a title under the graph. Shade the three types of insurance differently.

Insurance Type	September	October	November	December
Auto	$200,000	$200,000	$160,000	$240,000
Home	320,000	360,000	440,000	360,000
Life	+120,000	+160,000	+200,000	+160,000
Total	$640,000	$720,000	$800,000	$760,000

Score for B (54)

C (28 points) Complete the following problem. (points for correct answers as marked)

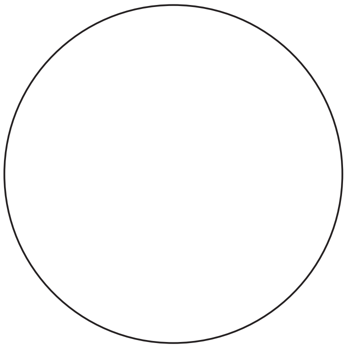
4. ArielMedia.com is an Internet website selling primarily downloadable audio and video recordings, as well as some CDs and DVDs. For its own internal sales analysis, ArielMedia.com classifies every music sale as either Rock/Pop, Folk, Country Western, or Classical/Jazz. In December, ArielMedia.com had the music sales shown in the table below.

a. Compute the percent of the total and the fraction of the total represented by each category of music. (2 points for each correct percent, 1 point for each correct fraction)

Music Type	Sales	Percent	Fraction
Rock/Pop	$280,000		
Folk	70,000		
Country	140,000		
Classical/Jazz	+ 70,000		
Total	$560,000	100.0%	$\frac{8}{8}$, or 1

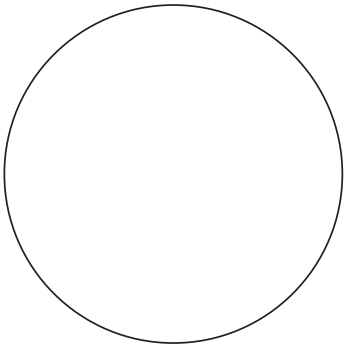
Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

b. Construct the pie chart to show the percent of total December music sales for each category of music. Label each section with the music category and percent and write a title under the graph. (8 points)



c. The percents of music sales at ArielMedia.com for November are shown below. Construct an approximate pie chart to show the percent of total November sales for each category of music. Label each section with the music category and percent, and write a title under the graph. (*Hint:* 37.5% is $\frac{3}{8}$; 12.5% is $\frac{1}{8}$; 31% is approximately between 25% and 37.5%; 19% is approximately between 12.5% and 25%.) (8 points)

Music Type	**Percent**
Rock/Pop	37.5%
Folk	12.5%
Country	31%
Classical/Jazz	+ 19%
	100.0%



Score for C (28)

Appendix A: Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

Chapter 1

Assignment 1.1

1. $2\frac{1}{6}$
3. 6
5. $1\frac{10}{13}$
7. $\frac{37}{10}$
9. $\frac{21}{8}$
11. $\frac{33}{5}$
13. $\frac{2}{5}$
15. $\frac{3}{5}$
17. $\frac{2}{3}$
19. $\frac{7}{10}$
21. $\frac{15}{18}$
23. $\frac{15}{24}$
25. $\frac{15}{35}$
27. $\frac{36}{45}$
29. $\frac{10}{10} = 1$
31. $3\frac{17}{12} = 4\frac{5}{12}$
33. $7\frac{12}{6} = 9$
35. $6\frac{58}{45} = 7\frac{13}{45}$
37. $1\frac{2}{12} = 1\frac{1}{6}$
39. $1\frac{8}{12} = 1\frac{2}{3}$
41. $1\frac{17}{20}$
43. $2\frac{17}{30}$
45. $8\frac{5}{12}$ qt
47. $\frac{7}{8}$ in.

Assignment 1.2

1. $\frac{1}{6}$
3. $\frac{5}{8}$
5. 7
7. $6\frac{3}{4}$
9. $1\frac{1}{6}$
11. $1\frac{7}{8}$
13. $1\frac{3}{7}$
15. $4\frac{1}{6}$
17. $13\frac{1}{3}$ cu yd
19. $1\frac{1}{2}$ qt
21. $14\frac{2}{3}$ times

Chapter 2

Assignment 2.1

1. 0.0613
3. 0.64
5. 860.00098
7. three hundred eight and ninety-seven hundredths
9. five hundred ninety-two and three tenths
11. forty-two and four hundred eighty-one ten-thousandths
13. one thousand seven and four tenths
15. 49.0 mi
17. 374.3 lb
19. 6.4 oz
21. \$0.10
23. \$8.10
25. \$53.00
27. 0.005 gal
29. 8.186 in.
31. 0.200 lb
33. \$0.16
35. \$2.10
37. \$0.66
39. 22.2363
41. 104.4996
43. 29.281
45. 249.202
47. 0.364
49. 17.415
51. 3.682
53. 0.4095
55. 0.176
57. 1.677

Assignment 2.2

1. \$1,311.58
3. \$338.52
5. 79.3354
7. 79.9969128
9. \$1.85
11. \$45.25
13. 6.12
15. 62.5
17. 470
19. 0.632
21. \$21,723.00
23. \$720.00
25. \$0.43
27. **c.** 0.04
29. **c.** 28
31. **b.** 0.048
33. **c.** 270
35. **d.** 120,000
37. **a.** 0.004
39. **b.** 1.2
41. **a.** 70

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Assignment 2.3

1. 8.25 ft
3. 16.85 mi
5. $302.13
7. $720
9. $125
11. $0.67
13. 23.6 gal

Chapter 3

Assignment 3.1

1. $25,600
3. AUTO
5. $51.48
7. $44.85
9. 10
11. $400
13. $910
15. $21
17. $62.50
19. $114
21. 22
23. 385
25. 7
27. 3
29. 3
31. **a.** 30, 25
  b. 46, 41
  c. 66, 60
33. **a.** 25, 5
  b. 9, 3
  c. 100, 20

Assignment 3.2

1. $1.56
3. $6.30
5. 103 lb
7. $1.50
9. 1,080 miles
11. $23.88
13. $79.92
15. $14.85
17. $23.70
19. $760
21. $801
23. $799.60
25. $240
27. $55.79
29. $89.40
31. $6 + 4 + 2 = 17 - 5$
33. $9 - 3 - 1 = 2 + 3$
35. $20 + 1 + 2 = 16 + 7$
37. $12 + 3 - 3 = 7 + 5$
39. $64 - 32 - 8 = 8 + 16$

Chapter 4

Assignment 4.1

Prefix	Symbol	Value
kilo	k	1000
centi	c	0.01
deci	d	0.1
deka	da	10
milli	m	0.001

3. **a.** 12,000
  b. 0.12
  c. 120,000
  d. 25,000
  e. 25,000,000
5. **a.** meters
  b. 54.9 m
7. **a.** 88 km/h
  b. 56 km/h
9. **a.** 0.78 inch
  b. 1.17 inches
  c. 1.56 inches
11. **a.** kiloliter (kL)
  b. liter (L)
  c. milliliter (mL)
  d. liter (L)
  e. kiloliter (kL)

Assignment 4.2

1. $4.76
3. 34.065 L
5. 12¢
7. **a.** kilogram (kg)
  b. gram (g)
  c. metric ton (t)
  d. kilogram (kg)
  e. milligram (mg)
9. $0.73 per kg; $1.17 per kg
11. 11906 g or 11.906 kg
13. **a.** liter
  b. kilogram
  c. gram
  d. milliliter
  e. gram

Chapter 5

Assignment 5.1

1. 0.31
3. 0.0333
5. 300%
7. 15%
9. 175%
11. 2.245
13. 52%
15. 8.25%
17. 400%
19. 0.0001
21. 0.21
23. 11.17
25. 0.34
27. $0.29
29. $1.65
31. 16
33. 75
35. 0.96
37. 20%
39. 200%
41. $1.20
43. 150%
45. $48
47. $8,000
49. 56
51. 480
53. 40%
55. $21.00
57. 160%
59. 25

Assignment 5.2

1. 210
3. 30
5. $8,320
7. 544
9. $170
11. 16%
13. 25%
15. 20%
17. (25); (4.6%)
19. +230; +12.7%
21. (1,318); (8.9%)
23. +156; +14.6%
25. +310; +17.2%
27. ($63.53); (9.4%)
29. +55.60; +14.9%
31. +22.74; +15.0%
33. +193.39; +4.0%
35. +259.01; +5.8%

Assignment 5.3

1. 220
3. 6,500
5. 38%
7. 280,000

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

9. $720
11. $3,250
13. $52,942
15. 10%
17. $62,500
19. 100%

Assignment 5.4

1. **a.** 1,200; 16%; $2,400
   b. 1,800; 24%; 3,600
   c. 2,100; 28%; 4,200
   d. 2,400; 32%; 4,800
3. 12,480; 6,240; 9,360; 10,920
5. 11,220; 8,580; 6,270; 6,930

Chapter 6

Assignment 6.1

1. $6,760; $6,760
3. $2,100; $5,850
5. $3,840; $5,640
7. $6,420
9. $7,100
11. $4,900
13. $1,152; $36,997
15. $504; $7,612
17. $987; $12,841
19. $539; $5,634
21. $388; $5,456

Assignment 6.2

1. $6,275
3. $5,370
5. $2,620
7. $1,834.20
9. $1,205
11. $10,800

Chapter 7

Assignment 7.1

1. $441; $819
3. $2,120; $6,360
5. 80%; $5,592
7. $720; $420; —; $1,260
9. 60%; 80%; —; $864
11. 70%; 80%; 95%; 46.8%
13. $466

Assignment 7.2

1. June 1; June 21; $86.25; $2,788.87
3. Sept. 4; Oct. 4; $6.75; $443.25
5. Apr. 8; 98%; $570.85
7. $625.00; $356.94

Chapter 8

Assignment 8.1

1. $655.95
3. $455.48
5. $280.99
7. $340; $1,190
9. $1,050; $2,550
11. $480; $1,120
13. $2,250; $4,750
15. 160%; $775
17. 220%; $50
19. 135%; $440
21. 150%; $1,500
23. $1,575; $3,675
25. $1,116; 55%

Assignment 8.2

1. $149.49
3. $1,819
5. $37.49
7. $66; $54
9. $144; $216
11. $999; $999
13. $494.40; $329.60
15. 60%; $1,425
17. 55%; $260
19. 70%; $3,600
21. 65%; $820
23. $174; $174
25. $72.96; 60%

Chapter 9

Assignment 9.1

1. 585.00; 4,782.50; 3,262.50; 2,272.50; 2,207.20; 1,917.50; 5,762.75; 5,636.33; 4,671.33; 4,021.33
3. 1,190.85; 1,190.85; 1,190.85; 878.05
5. 877.76; 3,037.76; 3,037.76; 1,837.49
7. $2,147.58
9. 2,141.70; 1,993.50; 2,970.30; 2,156.30; $1,871.13
11. 3,020.10; 2,754.38; 2,668.68; 3,604.30; $2,374.16

Assignment 9.2

1. 802.50; 752.90; 678.71; 904.21; 791.89; 758.56; 746.56; 678.79; 466.79; 328.79; 422.79
3. **a.** $740.97 **b.** $1,630.27
   c. $951.41 **d.** $757.40
   e. $664.68

Assignment 9.3

1. Cogswell Cooling, Inc.
   Reconciliation of Bank Statement, November 30

Checkbook balance		$ 480.77
Minus unrecorded bank charges:		
Service charge		− 9.50
		$ 471.27
Plus bank interest credit		+ 12.00
Adjusted checkbook balance		$ 483.27
Bank balance on statement		$1,050.82
Minus outstanding checks:		
No. 148	$ 13.90	
No. 156	235.10	
No. 161	96.35	
No. 165	$222.20	−567.55
Adjusted bank balance		$ 483.27

3. Linberg Floors
   Reconciliation of Bank Statement, May 31

Checkbook balance		$17,764.42
Plus bank interest credited		+ 16.40
		$17,780.82
Minus unrecorded bank charges:		
ATM withdrawal	$ 50.00	
Service charge	$ 18.50	
Automatic transfer—insurance	1,235.00	
Returned check	775.00	
Debit card charges	444.90	−2,523.40
Adjusted checkbook balance		$15,257.42
Bank balance on statement		$16,775.59
Plus deposit not recorded by bank		+2,004.35
		$18,779.94
Minus outstanding checks:		
No. 730	$ 85.17	
No. 749	1,216.20	
No. 753	462.95	
No. 757	512.80	
No. 761	262.50	
No. 768	982.90	−3,522.52
Adjusted bank balance		$15,257.42

Chapter 10

Assignment 10.1

1. $512.00; $153.60; $25.60; $691.20
624.00; —; —; 624.00
540.00; 162.00; 54.00; 756.00
720.00; 162.00; —; 882.00
696.00; —; —; 696.00
540.00; —; —; 540.00
512.00; 134.40; —; 646.40
480.00; 18.00; —; 498.00
720.00; 216.00; 36.00; 972.00
540.00; —; —; 540.00
512.00; 57.60; —; 569.60
696.00; 208.80; 69.60; 974.40
$7,092.00; $1,112.40; $185.20; $8,389.60

3. $2,899.20

5. $643.54

7. $5.40; $5.00; $0.40

9. $56.50; $57.00; $0.50

Assignment 10.2

1. Baker: $596.00; 596.00; 36.95; 8.64; 63.00; 123.59; 472.41
Clark: $568.00; 2; 21.30; 42.60; 610.60; 37.86; 8.85; 20.00; 78.71; 537.89
Frank: $432.00; 432.00; 26.78; 6.26; 50.00; 95.04; 336.96
Hawn: $600.00; 600.00; 37.20; 8.70; 21.00; 84.90; 515.10
Jung: $620.00; 5; 23.25; 116.25; 736.25; 45.65; 10.68; 46.00; 120.33; 615.92
Kiber: $592.00; 3; 22.20; 66.60; 658.60; 40.83; 9.55; 19.00; 87.38; 571.22
Nelson: $580.00; 580.00; 35.96; 8.41; 61.00; 117.37; 462.63
Oliver: $720.00; 2; 27.00; 54.00; 774.00; 47.99; 11.22; 23.00; 94.21; 679.79
Valdez: $672.00; 672.00; 41.66; 9.74; 48.00; 114.40; 557.60
Totals: $5,380.00; 279.45; 5,659.45; 350.88; 82.05; 351.00; 915.93; 4,743.52

3. $36.27; 8.48; 19.00; 68.75; 516.25
$38.44; 8.99; 23.00; 75.43; 544.57
$34.10; 7.98; 16.00; 63.08; 486.92
$39.42; 9.22; 24.00; 77.64; 558.16
$34.10; 7.98; 16.00; 63.08; 486.92
$37.09; 8.67; 20.00; 70.76; 527.51
$38.44; 8.99; 23.00; 75.43; 544.57
$37.05; 8.66; 20.00; 70.71; 526.79
$42.04; 9.83; 28.00; 84.87; 593.13
$40.30; 9.43; 26.00; 80.73; 569.27
$36.14; 8.45; 19.00; 68.59; 514.31
$38.44; 8.99; 23.00; 75.43; 544.57
$34.10; 7.98; 16.00; 63.08; 486.92
$485.93; 113.65; 273.00; 937.58; 6,899.89

5. **a.** $22,528.40
b. $1,396.75
c. $326.67
d. $2,500.95
e. $4,224.37

7. **a.** $19,500; $7,000
b. $56
c. $378
d. $434

Chapter 11

Assignment 11.1

1. $0.59; $8.96; $1.04
0.16; 2.51; 2.50
2.44; 37.29; 2.71
1.37; 20.93; 4.07
0.36; 5.48; 4.52
1.16; 17.66; 2.34
1.30; 19.85; 0.15
0.07; 1.05; 0.20
0.70; 10.68; 4.32
1.24; 19.02; 0.98

3. $106.26

5. **a.** Discount Carpets
b. $312

Assignment 11.2

1. **a.** $625,000,000
b. $732,997,500
c. $361,760,000

3. $1.20
$0.83

5. $2,565

7. $479.50

9. 1.7% (0.017)
1.5% (0.015)
1.35% (0.0135)
2.0% (0.02)

11. $1,392

Assignment 11.3

1. **a.** $18,700
b. $27,900
c. $14,700
d. $4,352
e. $6,180

3. **a.** $14,300
b. $1,430

5. **a.** $31,550
b. $3,840

Chapter 12

Assignment 12.1

1. **a.** $1,160
b. $20
c. $1,550
d. $1,530

3. **a.** $4,700
b. $3,133.33
c. $311
d. $3,234

5. **a.** $53,340
b. $50,000
c. $6,000
d. $3,440
e. $56,000

Assignment 12.2

1. **a.** $9,120
b. $6,840
c. $1,368

3. $200,000

5. **a.** $165,000
b. $55,000
c. $180,000
d. $120,000

7. $360,000

Assignment 12.3

1. $19.30; $3,860.00
$8.26; $2,643.20
$27.04; $540.80
$4.91; $2,356.80
$16.83; $3,366.00
$53.86; $4,578.10
3. $5,120
5. **a.** $9,050
b. $9,500
c. $6,545
7. **a.** $970
b. $1,896

Chapter 13

Assignment 13.1

1. $30.00
3. $48.00
5. $187.50
7. $2,240.00
9. $130.00
11. $48.00; $47.34; $0.66
13. $480.00; $473.42; $6.58
15. $375.00; $369.86; $5.14
17. $9.65; $9.25; $0.40
19. $60.32; $60.00; $0.32
21. $4,802.18
23. 8%
25. 225 days
27. $91.80
29. 7.5%

Assignment 13.2

1. $12.75
$862.75
3. $90
$3,690
5. $2,080
$62,080
7. $924.66
$45,924.66
9. $67.81
$5,067.81

Chapter 14

Assignment 14.1

1. **a.** 1.5%
b. 1.25%
c. 0.3%
d. 0.6%
e. 0.5%
f. 0.4%
g. 0.75%
h. 0.7%
i. 1%
j. 0.8%
3. $29.34; $1,748.68
5. $45.15; $1,151.95
7. $1,690.26; $23.63; $993.55
9. $1,098.40; $12.23;
$1,783.02
11. $824.26; $9.49; $1,477.32

Assignment 14.2

1. $36; $1,636;
$3,200
3,200; 24; 1,624;
1,600
1,600; 12; 1,612
3. $36; $1,636;
$3,200
3,200; 36; 1,636;
1,600
1,600; 36; 1,636
5. **a.** $3,200
b. $115.50
c. 14.4%
7. **a.** $3,200
b. $108
c. 13.5%

Assignment 14.3

1. $204.82550; $3,686.86
3. $6.48957; $1,784.63
5. $253.76122
7. 4,513.43; 27.08;
1,495.49; 3,017.94
9. 1,513.48; 9.08;
1,513.48; 1,522.56
11. 4,836.00; 29.02; 1,170.98;
3,665.02
13. 2,487.01; 14.92; 2,487.01;
2,501.93
15. 179,551.88; 718.21;
449.91; 179,101.97

Chapter 15

Assignment 15.1

1. 189
3. 94
5. 152
7. January 5, 2017
9. December 4, 2017
11. April 7, 2017
13. Jan. 9, 2017; $403.00;
$26,403.00
15. Oct. 27, 2016; $583.92;
$36,333.92
17. 125; $730.07; $42,530.07
19. Sept. 12, 2016; $2,115.62;
$54,115.62

Assignment 15.2

1. $31.25
$2,531.25
May 15
32
$24.75
$2,506.50
3. $0
$4,500
Jan. 22
39
$48.75
$4,451.25
5. $71.01
$3,671.01
July 19
44
$57.53
$3,613.48
7. $0
$4,000
Oct. 15
45
$49.32
$3,950.68

Assignment 15.3

1. $250; $7,250; 10.34%
3. $825; $15,675; 12.63%
5. $27.18; $952.82; 7.71%
7. $100.00; 20; $26.85; $73.15
9. $407.19; 33; $254.48;
$152.71
11. $92.00; 30; $71.87; $20.13
13. $650.00; 20; $118.07;
$531.93

Chapter 16

Assignment 16.1

1. $7,622.94; $1,622.94
3. $37,690.80; $17,690.80

5. $5,719.80; $719.80
7. $5,713.00; $1,713.00
9. $4,381.50
11. $46,140.66
13. $2,062.88
15. $22,510.44
17. $7,590.85
19. $7,142.85
21. $31,622.58
23. $1,750.71
25. $308.99

Assignment 16.2

1. $3,266.17; $633.83
3. $12,116.17; $10,883.83
5. $13,796.38; $12,203.62
7. $3,397.09; $402.91
9. $1,060.20
11. $9,230.00
13. $4,407.62
15. $2,714.50
17. $2,218.98
19. $4,273.90
21. $18,561.75
23. $4,884.72
25. $360.49

Chapter 17

Assignment 17.1

1. $696.00
$546.00
$552.00
$781.20
$1,260.00
$648.00
$4,483.20
3. **a.** $19,890
b. $20,650
c. $20,150

Assignment 17.2

1. $25,000; $23,900
205,500; 140,000
235,000
202,900
$153,000; $12,000; $45,00; $19,700
3. **a.** $70,140
b. 5.02
5. **a.** $30,123
b. $50,205
7. $915,657
9. **a.** $200,000; $4,000
b. $182,000; $86,000
c. $255,500; $188,500
d. $275,591; $168,409
e. $24,000; $13,500
f. $160,000; $208,000
g. $360,000; $60,000
h. $313,043; $126,957
i. $112,500; $12,500
j. $100,000; $30,000

Chapter 18

Assignment 18.1

1. **a.** $5700; $45,600; $14,400
b. $15,000; $45,000; $55,000
c. $19,500; $97,500; $70,500
d. $13,840; $13,840; $55,360
3. **a.** $7,000
b. $9,000
5. **a.** $4,000.00; $3,062.50
b. $3,715.20; $343.68
c. $2,000.00; $1,000.00
d. $1,920.00; $1,228.80
e. $2,362.50; $1,328.91
f. $7,695.00; $6,232.95
7. $1,237.18
9. $9,600
$6,400
$3,200
11. straight-line, $23,886

Assignment 18.2

1. **a.** $4,950
b. $8,640
3. $90,000
5. $15,670

Chapter 19

Assignment 19.1

1. 4.31%; 4.06%; $40,000; 12.31%
11.60%; 10.91%; $110,200; 12.63%
7.50%; 7.47%; $38,500; 6.45%
23.41%; 22.43%; $188,700; 10.51%
34.99%; 37.06%; $-0-; 0.00%
6.79%; 5.75%; $115.000; 25.00%
28.21%; 31.31%; $(115,000); −4.59%
41.31%; 40.00%; $300,000; 9.38%
7.08%; 6.25%; $100,000; 20.00%
76.59%; 77.57%; $285,000; 4.59%
100.00%; 100.00%; $473,700; 5.92%
5.58%; 5.32%; $47,550 11.18%
1.48%; 1.46%; $8,700; 7.44%
0.42%; 0.36%; $7,115; 24.76%
7.49%; 7.14%; $63,365; 11.10%
14.75%; 17.75%; $(170,000); −11.97%
8.85%; 8.13%; $100,000; 15.38%
23.60%; 25.88%; $(70,000); −3.38%
31.09%; 33.01%; $(6,635); −0.25%
41.31%; 43.13%; $50,000; 1.45%
8.85%; 9.06%; $25,000; 3.45%
18.75%; 14.80%; $405,335; 34.25%
68.91%; 66.99%; $480,335; 8.96%
100.00%; 100.00%; $473,700; 5.92%
3. 20.2%; 18.8%; $267,870; 11.0%
19.9%; 21.4%; $(108,160); −3.9%
6.2%; 5.7%; $93,600; 12.6%
46.3%; 45.9%; $253,310; 4.3%
32.0%; 32.2%; $120,960; 2.9%
5.5%; 4.5%; $158,920; 27.6%

26.6%; 27.8%; $(37,960); −1.1%
19.8%; 19.5%; $130,000; 5.2%
7.4%; 6.8%; $111,000; 12.7%
53.7%; 54.1%; $203,040; 2.9%
100.0%; 100.0%; $456,350; 3.5%
20.5%; 21.7%; $(50,000); −1.8%
0.7%; 0.6%; $16,300; 19.8%
0.2%; 0.2%; $1,781; 6.9%
21.5%; 22.5%; $(31,919); −1.1%
26.7%; 28.7%; $(130,500); −3.5%
1.9%; 1.5%; $50,000; 25.0%
28.06%; 30.2%; $(80,500); −2.1%
50.1%; 52.7%; $(112,419); −1.6%
36.2%; 35.6%; $250,000; 5.4%
11.2%; 10.8%; $100,000; 7.1%
2.4%; 0.8%; $218,769; 200.6%
49.9%; 47.3%; $568,769; 9.3%
100.0%; 100.0%; $456,350; 3.5%

Assignment 19.2

1. 103.95%; 103.76%; $93,000; 11.25%
3.95%; 3.76%; $5,000; 16.67%
100.00%; 100.00%; $88,000; 11.04%
23.73%; 24.72%; $13,000; 6.60%
51.98%; 49.56%; $65,000; 16.46%
75.71%; 74.28%; $78,000; 13.18%
27.12%; 26.35%; $30,000; 14.29%
48.59%; 47.93%; $48,000; 12.57%
51.41%; 52.07%; $40,000; 9.64%
14.98%; 15.06%; $12,600; 10.50%
9.49%; 10.04%; $4,000; 5.00%
2.03%; 2.51%; $(2,000); −10.00%
0.51%; 0.53%; $300; 7.14%
0.41%; 0.39%; $500; 16.13%
0.14%; 0.18%; $(200); −14.29%
0.79%; 0.65%; $1,800; 34.62%
0.36%; 0.26%; $1,100; 52.38%
28.71%; 29.61%; $18,100; 7.67%
22.70%; 22.46%; $21,900; 12.23%
3.62%; 3.51%; $4,000; 14.29%
19.08%; 18.95%; $17,900; 11.85%

3. 102%; 102%; $12,200; 16%
2%; 2%; $200; 11%
100%; 100%; $12,000; 16%
26%; 24%; $4,500; 26%
45%; 48%; $3,000; 9%
71%; 72%; $7,500; 14%
28%; 30%; $2,100; 10%
42%; 42%; $5,400; 18%
58%; 58%; $6,600; 16%
13%; 15%; $300; 3%
9%; 8%; $1,500; 25%
2%; 2%; $200; 17%
1%; 1%; $70; 18%
1%; 1%; $50; 8%
0%; 1%; $(70); −17%
2%; 2%; $200; 12%
0%; 0%; $(30); −14%
28%; 29%; $2,220; 10%
30%; 29%; $4,380; 21%
3%; 3%; $200; 10%
27%; 26%; $4,180; 22%

Assignment 19.3

1. $7,200; 6.0%
(1,700); −1.9%
29,200; 13.5%
$34,700; 8.2%
$(3,500); −5.3%
13,000; 9.8%
$9,500; 4.8%
$44,200; 7.1%
$6,050; 18.9%
6,900; 5.8%
$12,950; 8.6%
$(15,000); −11.1%
$(2,050); −0.7%
46,250; 13.8%
$44,200; 7.1%
$(20,000); −2.4%
$3,000; 1.4%
(8,000); −1.3%
$(5,000); −0.6%
29,200; 13.5%
$(34,200); −5.8%
$14,200; 5.6%
$7,000; 9.3%
(800); −2.7%
$6,200; 5.9%
$8,000; 5.3%

3. $4,000; 25.0%
4,000; 50.0%
15,000; 48.4%
$23,000; 41.8%
$(4,000); −9.3%
4,000; 36.4%
$0; 0.0%
$28,000; 25.7%
$(1,000); −18.2%
3,500; 58.3%
$2,500; 21.7%
$(13,000); −34.2%
$(10,500); −21.2%
$33,500; 56.3%
$23,000; 21.1%
$85,000; 70.8%
$3,500; 12.7%
69,500; 82.2%
$73,000; 65.2%
15,000; 48.4%
$58,000; 71.6%
$27,000; 69.2%
$9,500; 44.2%
5,750; 79.3%
$15,250; 53.0%
$11,750; 114.6%

Chapter 20

Assignment 20.1

1. **a.** $281.88
b. $402.96
c. $87.66
d. $667.65

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

  - **e.** $277.41
  - **f.** $48.45
  - **g.** $28.53
- **3.**
  - **a.** $130,799
  - **b.** $3,815
  - **c.** $10,201
- **5.**
  - **a.** 28,272
  - **b.** $18,500

Assignment 20.2

- **1.**
  - **a.** $2,700
  - **b.** $86.40
  - **c.** $2,786.40
- **3.** $1,296
- **5.**
  - **a.** $16,608
  - **b.** $17,054.40
  - **c.** $2,592
  - **d.** $760.32
- **7.**
  - **a.** $36,750
  - **b.** $14,700
  - **c.** 0; No duty is paid on exports.
- **9.** $140,000

Chapter 21

Assignment 21.1

- **1.**
  - **a.** $85,400
  - **b.** $10,846
- **3.** 6.6%
- **5.** 10.52%
- **7.**
  - **a.** $2.10; 6.56%
  - **b.** $3.00; 3.75%
  - **c.** $1.05; 2.36%
  - **d.** $5.50; 6.11%
  - **e.** $3.25; 5.6%

Assignment 21.2

- **1.** 5,000 shares;
  90,000 shares
- **3.**
  - **a.** $67,500
  - **b.** $8,750
  - **c.** $1.75
  - **d.** $270,000
  - **e.** $305,000
  - **f.** $4.00
- **5.** $9,750; $0.16
- **7.** $38,000 ÷ 25,000 = $1.52;
  -0-
  $42,000 ÷ 25,000 = $1.68;
  $14,000 ÷ 50,000 = $0.28
  $40,000 ÷ 25,000 = $1.60;
  $25,000 ÷ 50,000 = $0.50

- **9.** $550
- **11.**
  - **a.** 16
  - **b.** 15

Chapter 22

Assignment 22.1

- **1.** $9,625
- **3.** $5,400,000
- **5.**
  - **a.** $4,000.00; $300.00
  - **b.** 2,940.00; 236.25
  - **c.** 7,740.00; 911.25
  - **d.** +6,540.00; +562.50
    $21,220.00; 2,010.00
- **7.**
  - **a.** 73; $2,096.00
  - **b.** 100; $2,851.64
- **9.**
  - **a.** 8.33%
  - **b.** 7.89%
  - **c.** 8.93%
  - **d.** 7.32%

Assignment 22.2

- **1.**
  - **a.** 8.22%
  - **b.** 9.11%
- **3.**
  - **a.** $3,577.53
  - **b.** 3.98%
- **5.**
  - **a.** $640.00; $−80.00;
    $8,200.00; 6.83%
  - **b.** $600.00; +30.00;
    9,850.00; 6.40%
  - **c.** $900.00; +210.00;
    11,160.00; 9.95%
  - **d.** $510.00; −200.00;
    5,300.00; 5.85%
  - **e.** $70.00; +20.00; 950.00;
    9.47%
  - **f.** $1,950.00; −62.50;
    20,250.00; 9.32%

Chapter 23

Assignment 23.1

- **1.** $57,614.63
- **3.** $104,223.28
- **5.** $40,573.37
- **7.** $37,564.53
- **9.** $1,829.35
- **11.** $34,335.28
- **13.** $8,124.48
- **15.** $22,165.20
- **17.** $869.25
- **19.** $55,070.54
- **21.** $6,614.16
- **23.** $26,754,941.60
- **25.** $234.65

Assignment 23.2

- **1.** $18,988.95
- **3.** $41,417.49
- **5.** $119,542.55
- **7.** $23,585.11
- **9.** $1,367.47
- **11.** $1,543.04
- **13.** $32,427.90
- **15.** $2,151.66
- **17.** $2,643.92
- **19.** $68,870.65
- **21.** $398.57
- **23.** $6,450.00; $32.25;
  $1,600.45; $4,849.55
- **25.** $3,241.10; $16.21;
  $1,616.49; $1,624.61

Chapter 24

Assignment 24.1

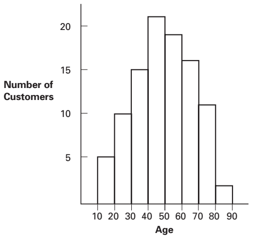
- **1.**
  - **a.** Mean: 69.9; 68;
    62.6
    Median: 68; 64; 63
    Mode: 88; 89; 77
  - **b.** 6; 5; 7; 4; 8
- **3.**
  - **a.** 48.6
  - **b.** 45.8
  - **c.** Financial District
    Branch
    10 up to 20: 1
    20 up to 30: 3
    30 up to 40: 5
    40 up to 50: 5
    50 up to 60: 7
    60 up to 70: 6
    70 up to 80: 3
    80 up to 90: +0
    Total: 30

    University
    Branch
    10 up to 20: 6
    20 up to 30: 7
    30 up to 40: 2
    40 up to 50: 1
    50 up to 60: 2
    60 up to 70: 3
    70 up to 80: 6
    80 up to 90: +3
    Total: 30

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

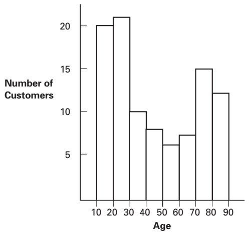
Assignment 24.2

1. **a.**



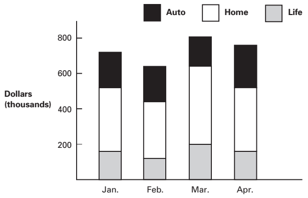
Financial District Customers

b.



University Branch Customers

3.



Residential Insurance Premiums by Insurance Type

Appendix B: Answers to Self-Check Review Problems

Chapter 1

1. $\frac{17}{6}$
2. $7\frac{1}{2}$
3. $\frac{6}{7}$
4. $\frac{40}{56}$
5. $1\frac{17}{30}$
6. $1\frac{19}{24}$
7. $7\frac{11}{20}$
8. $\frac{7}{15}$
9. $1\frac{17}{18}$
10. $1\frac{34}{45}$
11. $\frac{2}{7}$
12. $1\frac{1}{20}$
13. $2\frac{1}{3}$
14. $2\frac{1}{4}$
15. $2\frac{1}{10}$
16. $1\frac{1}{5}$
17. $8\frac{1}{4}$ qt
18. $2\frac{1}{12}$ ft
19. $6\frac{1}{8}$ tbsp
20. 9 pieces; $\frac{1}{3}$ in.

Chapter 2

1. 116.0014
2. six thousand four hundred thirty-one and seven hundred nineteen thousandths
3. 3.5
4. $12.67
5. 743.64475
6. 20.807
7. 2.717
8. 122.4881
9. 1.797726
10. $443.39
11. 3.23
12. $0.74
13. 8,649.30, or 8,649.3
14. $2.76
15. **d.** 500
16. **c.** $0.80
17. $3,825.75
18. $281,971.57
19. 590.8 cubic feet
20. 21.88 cu yd

Chapter 3

1. $35.94
2. $7.44
3. $47.76
4. $80.80
5. $31,256
6. $43,244
7. 427 miles
8. $400
9. $404.25
10. $250
11. 23 hours
12. 19 hours
13. 300
14. 8
15. 156
16. 3
17. 3
18. 13
19. 20
20. $2.00; $0.01

Chapter 4

1. decimal; 10
2. **a.** G; billion or 1,000,000
  b. d; one tenth or 1/10
  c. k; thousand or 1,000
3. 12
4. 720
5. 25.744
6. 12.7
7. 45.932
8. 50
9. 4.488
10. 15.855
11. $3.125 per kilogram
12. 7.666
13. 1.892
14. 1 700.964
15. 78.74 inches; 118.11 inches; 157.48 inches

Chapter 5

1. 0.1475
2. 62.5%
3. 1.5
4. $\frac{3}{4}$%
5. 0.0006
6. 40%
7. 11.2
8. 150
9. 180
10. 70
11. 87.5%
12. 160%
13. $120,000
14. $96,000
15. 100%
16. 50%
17. 1,625 rose bushes
18. 225%
19. $3,440
20. 64%

Chapter 6

1. **a.** $3,480
  b. $6,480
2. **a.** $4,300
  b. $6,800
3. **a.** $3,114
  b. $6,714
4. **a.** $6,926
  b. $6,926
5. $6,000
6. $2,550
7. $7,750
8. $3,300
9. $1,400
10. $6,900

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

11. $3,750
12. $5,500
13. $8,550
14. $33,910
15. $3,210
16. $25,256

Chapter 7

1. **a.** $190
b. $570
2. **a.** $360
b. $168
c. $672
3. **a.** 60%
b. $525
4. **a.** 70%
b. 85%
c. $1,071
5. **a.** 60%
b. 80%
c. 90%
d. 56.8%
6. **a.** Aug. 4
b. Aug. 24
c. $17.49
d. $857.06
7. **a.** Jan. 2
b. Feb. 11
c. 97%
d. $1,787.15
8. **a.** $10,204.08
b. $6,335.92

Chapter 8

1. **a.** $43.35
b. $211.83
c. $1,570
d. $572.63
2. **a.** $250
b. $750
3. **a.** $23.40
b. $59.40
4. **a.** 160%
b. $360
5. **a.** 175%
b. $420
6. **a.** 200%
b. $506
7. **a.** 140%
b. $70
8. **a.** $300
b. 125%
9. **a.** $400
b. 25%
10. **a.** $72
b. $168
11. **a.** $36
b. $108
12. **a.** 60%
b. $744
13. **a.** 25%
b. $132
14. **a.** 40%
b. $2,400
15. **a.** 75%
b. $48
16. **a.** $320
b. 40%
17. **a.** $2,250
b. 60%
18. **a.** $10
b. 25%
c. 20%

Chapter 9

1. **a.** B
b. D
c. A
d. D
e. C
f. C
g. D
h. D
i. D

2.

Bank Balance	$10,961.65
+ Deposit in transit	1,850.15
Subtotal	12,811.80
− O/S checks	342.90
Adj. Bank Balance	$12,468.90
Book Balance	$12,583.40
+ Interest	52.50
+ Error	3.00
Subtotal	12,638.90
− Svc Chg	20.00
− NSF CK	150.00
Adj. Book Balance	$12,468.90

Chapter 10

1. **a.** Gross pay = $950.00
b. Social Security = $ 58.90
Medicare = $ 13.78
c. FIT withheld = $128.00
d. Net pay = $749.32
2. **a.** Percentage method = $ 33.50
Wage-bracket method = $ 34.00
b. Percentage method = $ 52.15
Wage-bracket method = $ 52.00
3. Jan. $1,260.35; Feb. $1,198.35; Mar. $888.35
4. Social Security, $7,688; Medicare, $1,798, Federal income tax, $7,800; Total, $17,286
5. Social Security, $322.40; Medicare, $142.10; Total, $464.50
6. $614.08; $868.00; $464.40

Chapter 11

1. Choose A because the cost is less than B.
2. **a.** 1.5%
b. $2,100; $1,161
3. **a.** $443.50
b. 295.67
4. $27,300
5. $19,500 (5 exemptions × $3,900)
6. Standard deduction for married filing jointly is $12,200, which exceeds the itemized deduction total.
7. $21,250 ($38,000 − 8,950 − 7,800)
8. $8,857.50 (1,785 + 15% of excess over $17,850)

Chapter 12

1. Jim's insurance pays $5,300, Jim's medical expenses. Joshua's insurance pays -0-.
2. $313.20
3. $2,695
4. $29.250
5. $30,000
6. $4,389
7. $3,255
8. $1,440

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 13

- **1.**
  - **a.** $75.60
  - **b.** $74.56
  - **c.** $1.04
- **2.**
  - **a.** $140.00
  - **b.** $138.08
  - **c.** $1.92
- **3.**
  - **a.** $114.94
  - **b.** $120.00
  - **c.** $5.06
- **4.**
  - **a.** $58.98
  - **b.** $60.00
  - **c.** $1.02
- **5.** $1,500
- **6.** 5%
- **7.** 270 days
- **8.** $2,512.50
- **9.** $289.97

Chapter 14

- **1.**
  - **a.** 9.0%
  - **b.** 7.5%
  - **c.** 14.4%
  - **d.** 4.8%
- **2.**
  - **a.** 0.5%
  - **b.** 1.25%
  - **c.** 1.1%
  - **d.** 0.8%
- **3.**
  - **a.** $26.72
  - **b.** $2,387.35
- **4.**
  - **a.** $30.00
  - **b.** $1,030.00
  - **c.** $2,000.00
  - **d.** $2,000.00
  - **e.** $20.00
  - **f.** $1,020.00
  - **g.** $1,000.00
  - **h.** $1,000.00
  - **i.** $10.00
  - **j.** $1,010.00
- **5.** 12%
- **6.** $1,619.56
- **7.**
  - **a.** $24.00
  - **b.** $992.04
  - **c.** $2,007.96
  - **d.** $2,007.96
  - **e.** $16.06
  - **f.** $999.98
  - **g.** $1,007.98
  - **h.** $1,007.98
  - **i.** $8.06
  - **j.** $1,007.98
  - **k.** $1,016.04

Chapter 15

- **1.**
  - **a.** Mar. 14, 2016
  - **b.** $3,463.75
- **2.**
  - **a.** 154 days
  - **b.** $5,731.76
- **3.**
  - **a.** Jan. 5, 2017
  - **b.** $15,255.21
- **4.**
  - **a.** 120 days
  - **b.** $3,043.68
- **5.**
  - **a.** $77.85
  - **b.** $3,037.85
  - **c.** September 12
  - **d.** 59 days
  - **e.** $73.66
  - **f.** $2,964.19
- **6.**
  - **a.** $3,100
  - **b.** February 8
  - **c.** 60 days
  - **d.** $61.15
  - **e.** $3,038.85
- **7.**
  - **a.** $135.00
  - **b.** $4,365
  - **c.** 9.28%
- **8.**
  - **a.** $32.00
  - **b.** 20 days
  - **c.** $8.59
  - **d.** $23.41

Chapter 16

- **1.**
  - **a.** $4,786.72
  - **b.** $786.72
  - **c.** $20,892.24
  - **d.** $8,892.24
  - **e.** $137,849.10
  - **f.** $107,849.10
  - **g.** $21,226.40
  - **h.** $13,226.40
- **2.**
  - **a.** $14,797.50
  - **b.** $10,202.50
  - **c.** $2,340.72
  - **d.** $3,659.28
  - **e.** $10,479.15
  - **f.** $4,520.85
  - **g.** $29,698.80
  - **h.** $10,301.20
- **3.** $7,927.74
- **4.** $27,450.94
- **5.** $6,691.12
- **6.** $4,104.25

Chapter 17

- **1.** 80
- **2.**
  - **a.** 86,371; 352,129
  - **b.** 87,562.50; 350,937.50
  - **c.** 83,125; 355,375
- **3.** $131,000
- **4.**
  - **a.** $38,600
  - **b.** $271,800
  - **c.** 7.04 times

Chapter 18

- **1.**
  - **a.** 12.5%
  - **b.** 25%
  - **c.** 30%
  - **d.** 40%
- **2.** $\frac{4}{10}, \frac{3}{10}, \frac{2}{10}, \frac{1}{10}$
- **3.** Declining Balance
- **4.**
  - **a.** $9,000
  - **b.** $71,000
  - **c.** $3,000
  - **d.** $.90/hr
  - **e.** $2,124
- **5.**
  - **a.** $9,000
  - **b.** $13,500
- **6.**
  - **a.** $9,280
  - **b.** $16,620
- **7.**
  - **a.** $1,040.00
  - **b.** $1,487.00

Chapter 19

- **1.**
  - **a.** $285,000
  - **b.** $382,000
  - **c.** 14.84%; 1.49%; 34.04%
- **2.** $139,650; 30.34%
- **3.** 16.34%
- **4.**
  - **a.** 16.67% increase
  - **b.** 25.00% decrease
  - **c.** 100% increase
  - **d.** 0% no change
  - **e.** $33\frac{1}{3}$% decrease
- **5.**
  - **a.** 1.65:1
  - **b.** 1.08:1
  - **c.** 1.05 times
  - **d.** 17.72%
  - **e.** 10.79%
  - **f.** 56.44%

Chapter 20

- **1.** 477.75
- **2.** $0.47
- **3.** 5,678
- **4.** $51.35
- **5.** $28,533
- **6.** $1,856 gain
- **7.** $2,934
- **8.** $3,667.84
- **9.** $979.20
- **10.** $2,170

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 21

1. **a.** 37,700,000 shares
b. $25.71
c. Boeing $80.54 + $0.04 = $80.58
General Motors $25.71 + $0.76 = $26.47
d. $107.38 − $74.12 = $33.26
e. $80.54 ÷ 15.4 = $5.23

2. **a.** $31,890
b. $2,981.75
c. $5,974

3. **a.** $400.10 gain
b. $400.10 ÷ $8,579.95 = 4.7%

4. **a.** 11.36%
b. 16.0268%

5. 400 × 4 = 1,600 shares

6. 400 × $20 × 8% = $640 preferred dividend
1,600 × $0.60 = $960 common dividend
$960 − $640 = $320 more

7. 8,000 × 50 × 7.5% = $30,000 ÷ 8,000 = $3.75/share preferred; $85,000 − $30,000 = $55,000 ÷ 50,000 sh = $1.10/share common

8. $30,000 × 2 = $60,000 ÷ 8,000 = $7.50/share preferred; $90,000 − $60,000 = $30,000 ÷ 50,000 = $0.60/share common

Chapter 22

1. **a.** $15,600 ($15,000 × 1.04)
b. Semiannually
c. $562.50 $\left(\$15{,}000 \times 7.5\% \times \frac{1}{2}\right)$
d. $203.34 ($15,000 × 7.5% × 66 days ÷ 365)
e. $15,803.34 ($15,600 + $203.34)
f. Premium (104 = 4% above face value)
g. $600 ($15,000 × 4%) or ($15,600 − $15,000)
h. 2024
i. 7.21% ($1,125 annual interest ÷ $15,600)
j. 7.03%; $600 premium ÷ 12 yrs = $50 amortization
$1,125 − $50 = $1,075 annual interest adjusted for amortization
($15,000 + $15,600) ÷ 2 = $15,300 average principal invested
$1,075 ÷ $15,300 = 7.03% yield to maturity

2. **a.** 180 (30 × 6)
b. $7,560 (180 shares × $42)
c. $1,860 gain; $7,560 − $5,700 ($6,000 × 95%)
d. Yes, because she realizes a gain of $600 (180 shares × $35 = $6,300)

3. $10,500,000

4. MCD because the MCD bond offers the best return

Chapter 23

1. **a.** $142,286.06
b. $6,286.06
c. $475,127.60
d. $275,127.60
e. $1,066.39
f. $10,804.98
g. $977.87
h. $4,531.12

2. **a.** $6,063.94
b $936.06
c. $78,834.59
d. $21,965.41
e. $2,991.94
f. $26,862.98
g. $2,240.89
h. $7,226.70

3. $40,573.37

4. $407,768.37

5. $2,507.03

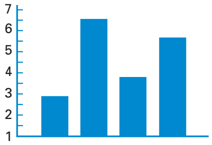
6. $16,663.06

Chapter 24

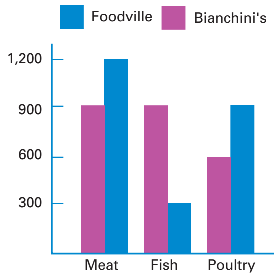
1. **a.** 64
b. 61
c. 58

2. **a.** 3
b. 7
c. 4
d. 6

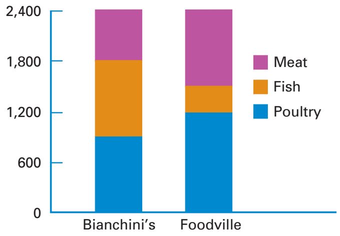
3. **a.**



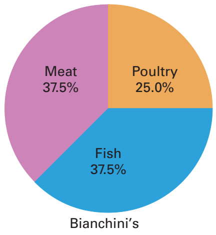
4. **a.**



b.



c.



Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Appendix C: Fundamental Concepts

This appendix is a reference for some of the fundamental concepts and vocabulary of basic mathematics for whole numbers. The concepts and vocabulary of fractions and decimals are contained in Chapters 1 and 2 of the text. Many students may remember some or all of this material from elementary school. This is not a complete review or set of instructions. It is a reminder of what you studied in earlier classes.

Adding pairs of one-digit numbers

The basis of all arithmetic is adding two one-digit numbers such as $5 + 3 = 8$, or $6 + 7 = 13$. The numbers being added are all called **addends**. The result is called the **total**, or the **sum**. You can have several addends, each with multiple digits, such as examples A, B, and C. After addition, subtraction is the reverse of addition; multiplication is "repeated addition;" and division is the reverse of multiplication. In all mathematics, it is useful to recognize the various combinations of digits that add up to 10. Below are some examples:

$$\begin{array}{r}1\\+9\\\hline 10\end{array}\quad\begin{array}{r}2\\+8\\\hline 10\end{array}\quad\begin{array}{r}3\\+7\\\hline 10\end{array}\quad\begin{array}{r}4\\+6\\\hline 10\end{array}\quad\begin{array}{r}5\\+5\\\hline 10\end{array}\qquad\begin{array}{r}1\\1\\+8\\\hline 10\end{array}\quad\begin{array}{r}1\\2\\+7\\\hline 10\end{array}\quad\begin{array}{r}1\\3\\+6\\\hline 10\end{array}\quad\begin{array}{r}1\\4\\+5\\\hline 10\end{array}\quad\begin{array}{r}2\\2\\+6\\\hline 10\end{array}\quad\begin{array}{r}2\\3\\+5\\\hline 10\end{array}\quad\begin{array}{r}2\\4\\+4\\\hline 10\end{array}\quad\begin{array}{r}3\\3\\+4\\\hline 10\end{array}$$

Interpreting whole numbers with more than one digit

The number 346 is read "three hundred forty-six." Three hundred, written as 300, is 3×100. Forty, written as 40, is 4×10. In mathematics, 346 means $3 \times 100 + 4 \times 10 + 6$.

The column of the digit indicates its value. Starting from the right end of 346, the digit 6 represents the number 6 because 6 is in the "ones column" or "units column" and "6 ones equals 6." Next is the digit 4, which represents the number 40 because 4 is in the "tens column" and "4 tens equals 40." Finally, the digit 3 represents the number 300 because 3 is in the "hundreds column" and "3 hundreds equals 300."

Adding whole numbers containing more than one digit

To add two or more whole numbers, write them neatly, aligned in columns, starting with the right column of each number. Then add each column, from right to left. Examine example A. The steps of the solution are shown in Figures A-1, A-2, A-3, and A-4. The final answer is 689.

EXAMPLE A

Add 215, 42, and 432.

$$\begin{array}{r}215\\42\\+432\\\hline \end{array}\qquad\begin{array}{r}215\\42\\+432\\\hline 9\end{array}\qquad\begin{array}{r}215\\42\\+432\\\hline 89\end{array}\qquad\begin{array}{r}215\\42\\+432\\\hline 689\end{array}$$

Fig. A-1 Fig. A-2 Fig. A-3 Fig. A-4

"Carrying" a digit to the next column to the left

In example A, each column had a total with only one digit. Most often, some columns may have a total with more than one digit. In that case, you must "carry" one digit over to the next column to the left. It may be helpful to write that digit above the next column. In example B, every column has a total with more than a single digit.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

EXAMPLE B

Add 365, 51, and 797.

$$\begin{array}{rrrr} & {}^{1} & {}^{2\,1} & {}^{2\,1} \\ 365 & 365 & 365 & 365 \\ 51 & 51 & 51 & 51 \\ \underline{+797} & \underline{+797} & \underline{+797} & \underline{+797} \\ & 3 & 13 & 1{,}213 \end{array}$$

Fig. B-1 Fig. B-2 Fig. B-3 Fig. B-4

In Fig. B-2, the sum of the ones column is 13; write 3 in the ones column and "carry 1" to the tens column. In Fig. B-3, the sum of the tens column is 21; write 1 in the tens column and "carry 2" to the hundreds column. In Fig. B-4, the sum of the hundreds column is 12; write 2 in the hundreds column and 1 in the thousands column.

Checking your answer in addition

The simplest way to check your answer in addition is to add the numbers again, but in the opposite direction. In the example B, we added *down*. To check, we can add from the bottom *up*. In the ones column, adding up, 7 + 1 + 5 = 13; and so on. The total will be the same: 1,213.

Another way to check is by adding each column separately and then using the place value of each column.

Ones column: 5 + 1 + 7 = 13. And 13 ones = 13.

Tens column: 6 + 5 + 9 = 20. And 20 tens = 20 × 10, or 200.

Hundreds column: 3 + 7 = 10. And 10 hundreds = 10 × 100, or 1,000.

The final total is 1,000 + 200 + 13 = 1,213, which checks.

Adding and checking addition of numbers arranged in tables

Very often in business, numbers will be organized into a table and you need to get a grand total for the entire table. You can add each column, and then add the column totals. To check your work, you can add each row, and then add the row totals.

EXAMPLE C

Tables C-1 and C-2 give the number of minutes that seven different employees spent answering the telephone every day last week. First find the weekly total for each employee (Table C-1) and then find the company total for the week. Check your answer by finding the total for each day (Table C-2) and then the company total. Both solutions give the grand total for the company of 769 minutes.

Telephone Minutes, by Employee

	MB	**JR**	**AT**	**TF**	**EJ**	**KN**	**HS**
Mon	14	15	29	24	23	24	19
Tue	25	26	15	21	15	22	22
Wed	18	28	15	29	17	28	26
Thu	28	19	37	18	21	21	15
Fri	23	21	17	25	19	25	25
Week	**108**	**109**	**113**	**117**	**95**	**120**	**107**

Total = 108 + 109 + 113 + 117 + 95 + 120 + 107
= 769

Table C-1 – Add Columns First

Check: Telephone Minutes, by Day

	MB	**JR**	**AT**	**TF**	**EJ**	**KN**	**HS**	**Day**
Mon	14	15	29	24	23	24	19	**148**
Tue	25	26	15	21	15	22	22	**146**
Wed	18	28	15	29	17	28	26	**161**
Thu	28	19	37	18	21	21	15	**159**
Fri	23	21	17	25	19	25	25	**155**
Total								**769**

Table C-2 – Check: Add Rows First

Important! Always check your work, even if you are using a calculator. Each digit must be pressed correctly. Sometimes a calculator button will not work properly. Sometimes, if you hold a button down too long, it will enter the digit twice. Sometimes you can press two buttons at the same time. If you are using the calculator on your cell phone it may even be more difficult to accurately press every single digit. Take the time to check your work.

Subtraction

Subtraction is the *inverse* of addition. In addition, we *increase* one number by another number. When we add 3 to 5, we increase 5 by 3 to get 8. In subtraction, we *decrease* one number by another number. When we subtract 4 from 6, we decrease 6 by 4 to get 2. The number being subtracted is called the **subtrahend**. The number being reduced is called the **minuend**. The result is called the **difference**. Here, 4 is the subtrahend; 6 is the minuend; and 2 is the difference. We can write the problem as $6 - 4 = 2$.

When the numbers have more than one digit, arrange the numbers vertically with the minuend at the top. Align the columns at the right – the ones column. Then subtract the subtrahend, one column at a time, starting at the right. Examine example D. The steps of the solution are shown in Figures D-1, D-2, D-3, D-4, and D-5. The final answer is 1,205.

EXAMPLE D

Subtract 563 from 1,768.

$$\begin{array}{rrrrrl}
1{,}768 & 1{,}768 & 1{,}768 & 1{,}768 & 1{,}768 & \text{minuend} \\
\underline{-563} & \underline{-563} & \underline{-563} & \underline{-563} & \underline{-563} & \text{subtrahend} \\
 & 5 & 05 & 205 & 1{,}205 & \text{difference}
\end{array}$$

Fig. D-1 Fig. D-2 Fig. D-3 Fig. D-4 Fig. D-5

"Borrowing 1" from the next digit to the left

In example D, the minuend digit in every column was larger than, or equal to, the subtrahend digit below it. That makes the subtraction simple. Often, the minuend digit is smaller than the subtrahend digit below it. When that happens, it is necessary to "borrow a 1" from the adjacent minuend digit at the left. And, the minuend digit at the left must be reduced by 1. Examine example E and the steps in the solution – especially the "borrowing" in Figures E-2 and E-4. It may be helpful to show the borrowing and reducing with small digits above the minuend. The final answer is 3,819.

EXAMPLE E

Subtract 563 from 4,382.

$$\begin{array}{rrrrrl}
4{,}382 & 4{,}3\overset{7}{\cancel{8}}\overset{1}{2} & 4{,}3\overset{7}{\cancel{8}}\overset{1}{2} & \overset{3}{\cancel{4}}{,}\overset{1}{3}82 & \overset{3}{\cancel{4}}{,}\overset{1}{3}82 & \text{minuend} \\
\underline{-563} & \underline{-563} & \underline{-563} & \underline{-563} & \underline{-563} & \text{subtrahend} \\
 & 9 & 19 & 819 & 3{,}819 & \text{difference}
\end{array}$$

Fig. E-1 Fig. E-2 Fig. E-3 Fig. E-4 Fig. E-5

Checking your answer in subtraction

To check your answer, always *add* the difference and the subtrahend. The sum should be the original minuend. Examples D and E and their checks are shown below.

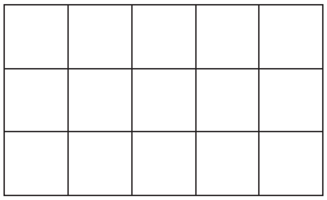
Ex. D	Check for Ex. D		Ex. E	Check for Ex. E	
1,768	1,205	1,205	4,382	3,819	3,819
−563	+563	+563	−563	+563	+563
1,205		1,768	3,819		4,382

Negative differences, or negative balances

In business, expenses are normally deducted from revenue to find the profit. Suppose that you have a business that has July revenues of $20,000; and that your business has July expenses of $6,000. Your July profit is $20,000 − $6,000 = $14,000.

But what if your August revenue is $18,000 and you have unexpected expenses totaling $22,000? Subtracting expenses from revenue, August profit = $18,000 − $22,000. In August, your business might say that it has a "loss of $4,000." When you do the subtraction with a calculator, you get "18,000 − 22,000 = −4,000." Mathematically, we can say that "profit was a *negative* $4,000." In accounting, this difference might be written within parentheses, as "$18,000 − $22,000 = ($4,000). Or, it might be written in red ink, as "$18,000 − $22,000 = $4,000." The EXCEL spreadsheet allows negative numbers to be written in four different formats: −4,000; (4,000); 4,000; or (4,000). If the negative numbers are amounts of money, then EXCEL would allow them to be written as −$4,000; ($4,000); $4,000; or ($4,000).

Multiplication



Multiplication, simply stated, is *repeated addition*. You may have learned multiplication from seeing a rectangle that is 3 units high by 5 units wide. When you count all of the squares inside of the rectangle, there are 15 squares. You can add up $5 + 5 + 5 = 15$; or $3 + 3 + 3 + 3 + 3 = 15$. Either way, $5 \times 3 = 3 \times 5 = 15$. The 5 and the 3 are both **factors**. 15 is the **product**.

Multiplying whole numbers containing more than one digit

Students practice multiplying two one-digit numbers so often in school that they have memorized the various combinations. When the numbers have more than one digit, they are arranged in columns just as in addition or subtraction. It is more convenient to put the number with the most digits on the top. It is called the **multiplicand**. Underneath it, aligned by the right column, is the shorter number, called the **multiplier**. When using a calculator, distinguishing between the multiplicand and multiplier is not as necessary. They are both factors.

After writing the multiplicand and multiplier, mentally multiply the multiplicand by each digit in the multiplier, starting from the right. Write each of these *partial product*s in separate rows, aligned by the digit in the multiplier. (When two digits have a product of more than one digit, you will need to mentally "carry" the second digit.)

EXAMPLE F

Multiply 45 and 57

57	57	57	57	multiplicand
×45	×45	×45	×45	multiplier
	285	285	285	partial product 1
		2 280	+2 280	partial product 2
			2,565	final product
Fig. F-1	Fig. F-2	Fig. F-3	Fig. F-4	

The "trailing 0s" in partial products, as in partial product #2, can often be omitted. (See example G.) They are there as "place-holders. In partial product #2, we multiplied 57 by 4 in the tens column, meaning it was actually a 40. 40 × 57 = 2,280.

EXAMPLE G

Multiply 346 and 1,758. (No "trailing 0s" are used in the partial products.)

1,758	1,758	1,758	1,758	1,758	multiplicand
×346	×346	×346	×346	×346	multiplier
	10 548	10 548	10 548	10 548	partial product 1
		70 32	70 32	70 32	partial product 2
			527 4	+527 4	partial product 3
				608,268	final product
Fig. G-1	Fig. G-2	Fig. G-3	Fig. G-4	Fig. G-5	

Multiplying when a digit in the multiplier is zero

When a digit in the multiplier is zero, the partial product for that digit would be all zeros. A shortcut is to write a zero in that column and then move to the next digit to the left.

EXAMPLE H

Multiply 304 and 1,768.

1,768	1,768	1,768	1,768	1,768	multiplicand
×304	×304	×304	×304	×304	multiplier
	7 072	7 072	7 072	7 072	partial product 1
		0	530 40	+530 40	partial product 2&3
				537,472	final product
Fig. H-1	Fig. H-2	Fig. H-3	Fig. H-4	Fig. H-5	

Checking your answer in multiplication

The best method to check a multiplication problem is with division. We will illustrate this procedure during the review of division concepts below.

Division

Division is the process of finding how many times one number (the **divisor**) is contained in another number (the **dividend**). The result is called the **quotient**. If anything is remains after the dividing has finished, it is called the **remainder**. For example, 15 ÷ 5 = 3. The

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

dividend is 15; the divisor is 5; the quotient is 3. The remainder is 0; or, we say that "there is no remainder." But 19 ÷ 5 = 3, with a remainder of 4.

Recall that "multiplication is repeated addition." Similarly, division is essentially "repeated subtraction. We can subtract the divisor 5 from the dividend 19 three times (the quotient), leaving 4 remaining:

$19 - 5 = 14;$ $\quad 14 - 5 = 9;$ $\quad 9 - 5 = 4.$

Subtracting 5 from 19 three times leaves a remainder of 4

EXAMPLE I

Divide 2,565 by 57

Division is done manually by first writing the divisor in front of a division bracket $(57\overline{)\ })$, and writing the dividend inside the bracket: $(57\overline{)2{,}565})$ The quotient and any remainder are written above the division bracket, with the remainder in parentheses.

Just as there were *partial products* in multiplication, there are *partial dividends* in division. In Fig. I-1, examine the dividend 2,565, starting from the *left* digit (2) There are no 57s in 2; next, there are no 57s in 25. But there are four 57s in 256 (a partial dividend). Write a 4 above the 6 on top of the division bracket; then multiply the divisor 57 by 4 and write the product, 228, under the partial dividend 256 (Fig. I-2). Subtract 228 from 256, leaving 28; then bring down the 5 from the original dividend to make a new partial dividend of 285 (Fig. I-3). There are five 57s in 285. Write a 5 in the quotient above the 5 in the dividend; then multiply the divisor 57 by the 5 and write the product, 285, under the partial dividend 285 (Fig. I-4). Subtract 285 from 285. The remainder is 0 (Fig. I-5).

$$\begin{array}{r} 57\overline{)2{,}565} \end{array}$$

Fig. I-1

$$\begin{array}{r} 4 \\ 57\overline{)2{,}565} \\ \underline{-2\,28} \end{array}$$

Fig. I-2

$$\begin{array}{r} 4 \\ 57\overline{)2{,}565} \\ \underline{-2\,28} \\ 285 \end{array}$$

Fig. I-3

$$\begin{array}{r} 45 \\ 57\overline{)2{,}565} \\ \underline{-2\,28} \\ 285 \\ \underline{-285} \end{array}$$

Fig. I-4

$$\begin{array}{r} 45 \\ 57\overline{)2{,}565} \\ \underline{-2\,28} \\ 285 \\ \underline{-285} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

Fig. I-5

Note about "repeated subtraction:" The 4 in the quotient is in the tens column, meaning it represents 4 tens, or 40. 40 × 57 = 2,280. Subtracting 2,280 from 2,565 leaves 285. The 5 in the quotient is in the ones column, meaning it represents 5 ones. 5 × 57 = 285. Subtracting 285 from 285 leaves a remainder of 0. The "repeated subtraction" is 2,565 − 2,280 − 285 = 0.

Examine the arrangement of the partial products in the multiplication of 57 × 45 from example F and the arrangement of the partial dividends from example I. The "zeros" representing the column value of the multiplier are shown. Example F illustrates repeated addition; example I illustrates repeated subtraction. Together, examples F and I illustrate that you can check multiplication by division, and vice-versa.

$$\begin{array}{r} 57 \\ \underline{\times\ 45} \\ 285 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 57 \\ \underline{\times\ 45} \\ 285 \\ \underline{+2\,280} \\ 2{,}565 \end{array}$$

Example F

$$\begin{array}{r} 4 \\ 57\overline{)2{,}565} \\ \underline{-2\,280} \\ 285 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 45 \\ 57\overline{)2{,}565} \\ \underline{-2\,280} \\ 285 \\ \underline{-285} \\ 0 \end{array}$$

Example I

Checking your answers in multiplication and division

The above illustration shows that you can check your multiplication answers by division. Divide the dividend by either multiplication factor. The quotient will be the other multiplication factor. Inversely, to check a division answer, multiply the quotient and the divisor. If there was not remainder, the product will be the dividend. If the division problem did have a remainder, then multiply the quotient and the divisor. Add the remainder to the product; the sum will be the dividend.

EXAMPLE J

Divide 2,572 by 57. Check the answer by multiplying the divisor and the quotient; then add the remainder. Examine the similarity of the various numbers in the two calculations.

$$\begin{array}{r} 4 \\ 57\overline{)2{,}572} \\ \underline{-2\,280} \\ 292 \\ \underline{-285} \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 45 \\ 57\overline{)2{,}572} \\ \underline{-2\,280} \\ 292 \\ \underline{285} \\ 7 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 45\ (7) \\ 57\overline{)2{,}572} \\ \underline{-2\,280} \\ 292 \\ \underline{285} \\ 7 \end{array}$$

Divide 2572 by 57

$$\begin{array}{r} 57 \\ \underline{\times\ 45} \\ 285 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 57 \\ \underline{\times\ 45} \\ 285 \\ \underline{+2\,280} \\ 2{,}565 \\ \underline{+\quad 7} \\ 2{,}572 \end{array}$$

Check the answer

GLOSSARY

A

Account purchase. A detailed statement from the commission merchant to the principal.

Account sales. A detailed statement of the amount of the sales and the various deductions sent by the commission merchant to the consignor.

Accounts receivable. Amounts owed to a business for services performed or goods delivered.

Accrued interest. Interest earned from the last payment date to the purchase date.

Accumulated depreciation. The total of all the depreciation recognized up to a specified time.

Acid test ratio. Used to determine the amount of assets that can be quickly turned into cash to pay current liabilities; acid test ratio = total of cash plus receivables ÷ total current liabilities.

Ad valorem duty. A tax charged as a percent of the value of the item.

Addend. Any of a set of numbers to be added together.

Additional death benefit (ADB). Benefits, available with some life insurance policies, that allow the insured to purchase, at a low rate per thousand dollars of coverage, additional insurance up to the full face value of the policy. In case of death of the insured by accident, both the full value of the policy and the ADB would be paid to the beneficiaries of the insured. If death occurs other than by accident, the full value of the policy is paid but no ADB is paid. Sometimes referred to as accidental death benefit.

Adjusted bank balance. The dollar amount obtained by adding to or subtracting from the bank statement balance checkbook activities not yet known to the bank. This amount should equal the adjusted checkbook balance.

Adjusted checkbook balance. The dollar amount obtained by adding to or subtracting from the checkbook balance those activities appearing on the bank statement that do not yet appear in the checkbook. This amount should equal the adjusted bank statement balance.

Adjusted gross income (AGI). Gross income minus certain income adjustments.

Allocate. Assign representative proportions of a business expense to the different departments of a company.

Amortization. The process by which a loan's monthly payments are always equal in dollar amount while the interest amount, which is calculated on the unpaid balance, always varies.

Amortization payment factor. A number which, when multiplied by the per $1,000 loan amount, calculates the amount of each loan payment.

Amortization schedule. A schedule of payments; the schedule shows the amount of interest and the amount of principal in each payment.

Amount credited. The total amount paid plus the amount of cash discount.

Amount of decrease. The rate of decrease times the base amount.

Amount of increase. The rate of increase times the base amount.

Annual discount amortization. Also known as the annual premium amortization, determined by dividing the discount (or premium) by the number of years from purchase to maturity.

Annual percentage rate (APR). The annual equivalent interest rate charged.

Annual premium amortization. Also known as the annual discount amortization, determined by dividing the premium (or discount) by the number of years from purchase to maturity.

Annuity. A sum of money paid out in a series of equal payments.

Annuity insurance. Life insurance that pays a certain sum of money to the insured every year after the insured reaches a specified age or until the insured's death.

Assessed valuation. A property value determined by a representative of the local or state government.

Assets. Things of value owned by a business or a person.

Auto collision insurance. Insurance that protects the vehicle of the insured against collision damage.

Auto comprehensive insurance. Insurance that protects the vehicle of the insured against fire, water, theft, vandalism, falling objects, and other damage not caused by collision.

Auto liability and property damage insurance. Insurance that protects the insured against claims resulting from personal injuries and property damage.

Automatic teller machine (ATM). A computerized electronic machine, many of which are located outside of banks and in numerous other locations, that allows customers to perform various banking functions, such as checking balances, making deposits, and withdrawing funds.

Average. A single number that is supposed to be "typical" or "representative" of the group, such as the mean, median, or mode.

Average cost method. A method of valuing inventory that is based on the assumption that the costs of all items on hand are averaged and shared evenly among all units.

Average daily balance. The sum of each day's balance divided by the number of days in the month. Payments are usually included; new purchases may or may not be included.

Average inventory. The inventory average calculated by summing each inventory valuation (determined by physical inventory) and dividing by the number of physical inventories over a specified period of time; average annual inventory = (beginning inventory value + ending inventory value) ÷ 2.

Average principal. The average unpaid balance of a note or loan.

Average unpaid balance. The sum of all of the unpaid monthly balances divided by the number of months.

B

Balance sheet. The financial statement of what is owned (assets), what is owed (liabilities), and the difference between the two (net worth) on a specific date.

Bank charge. A fee for services performed by the bank.

Bank discount loan. Bank loan for which the interest is subtracted from the face value at the time the loan is made.

Bank statement. A formal accounting by a bank of the adding and subtracting activities that have occurred in one bank account over a stated period of time (usually a month).

Bar graph. Also known as a bar chart, a graphic presentation of statistical information resembling the histogram except that there may not be a numeric scale on the horizontal axis and the bars normally do not touch each other.

Base (B). The whole quantity, or 100%, of an amount.

Basic depreciation rate. A rate of depreciation determined by dividing 100% by the estimated total years of useful life of the item.

Bearer. The lender of a note.

Beginning inventory (BI). The cost of inventory on hand at the beginning of a time period.

Beneficiary. A person, a company, or an organization that benefits from an insurance policy.

Board of directors. A group of people elected by shareholders to oversee the operation of the corporation.

Bond ratings. Information on the presumed safety of a bond investment, provided by firms such as Standard & Poor's and based on experience and research.

Bonds. Long-term notes that are bought and sold on the open market, much like stocks.

Book value. The original cost of an asset minus accumulated depreciation.

Broker. A person who performs services of buying and/or selling for a commission.

Business statistics. Collections of information about businesses.

C

Callable bonds. Bonds that have a provision that the issuer can repurchase, or call in, the bonds at specified dates if the board of directors authorizes the retirement (payoff) of the bonds before their maturity date.

Cancel. "Divide out" common factors that occur in both the numerator and denominator.

Cancellation. Process of dividing out common factors.

Capital stock. The general term applied to the shares of a corporation.

Cash discount. A reduction in an invoice amount available to the buyer for paying all or part of the amount due within a stated period of time.

Cash surrender value. The amount of cash that a company will pay the insured on the surrender, or "cashing-in," of an insurance policy.

Charges. The commission and any other sales expenses, such as transportation, advertising, storage, and insurance.

Charter. A corporation's basic approval document, issued by the state, under which the corporation operates.

Check. A written order directing the bank to pay a certain sum to a designated party.

Checkbook. Checks and check stubs to record deposits, withdrawals, check numbers, dates of transactions, other additions or subtractions, and the account balance.

Check register. A place for recording important information about each transaction.

Child Tax Credit. Taxpayers with dependent children under age 17 can receive a credit of $1,000 per qualifying child. The credit phases out at higher income levels.

Classes of data. Individual values organized into groups, to more easily make sense of raw numbers.

Coinsurance clause. An insurance policy clause specifying that, if a property is not insured up to a certain percentage of its value, the owner is the bearer of part of the insurance and will not be covered for the full amount of damages.

Commercial paper. Documentation of a promise to repay a loan or pay for merchandise.

Commission. Payment to an employee or to an agent for performing or helping to perform a business transaction or service.

Commission merchant. A person who performs services of buying and/or selling for a commission.

Common denominator. A denominator that is shared by two or more fractions. The product of the denominators of two or more fractions is always a common denominator.

Common stock. The usual type of stock issued by a corporation, often with different rights compared to preferred stock.

Comparative bar graph. Two bar graphs combined on one grid, to compare two different sets of comparable data.

Complement method. Method of computing the net price directly, using the complement of the trade discount rate.

Complement rate. A rate equal to 100% minus the discount rate; used with the complement method in determining trade or cash discounts.

Component bar graph. A bar graph constructed to show how certain data are composed of various parts.

Compound amount. Also known as the future value, the total value of an investment; equal to the principal plus all the compound interest.

Compound amount factor. The number from a calculator or future value table used to compute the future value from a given principal (present value) earning compound interest; also known as a future value factor.

Compound interest. Interest computed by performing the simple interest formula periodically during the term of the investment.

Consignee. The party to whom a consignment shipment is sent.

Consignment. Goods from a producer to a commission merchant for sale at the best possible price.

Consignor. The party who sends a consignment.

Convertible bonds. Corporate bonds that have a provision that they may be converted to a designated number of shares or to a designated value of the corporation's stock.

Convertible preferred stock. Preferred stock that gives the owner the option of converting those preferred shares into a stated number of common shares.

Corporate bonds. Long-term notes, such as convertible bonds and callable bonds, issued by a corporation.

Corporation. A body that is granted a charter by a state legally recognizing it as a separate entity, with its own rights, privileges, and liabilities distinct from those of its owners.

Cost of goods sold (CGS). The seller's cost of items (goods) that have been sold during a certain time.

Credit. A deposit to a bank account.

Credit balance. A negative difference.

Credit card. Credit extended by a third party.

Cross-checking. Adding columns vertically and then adding those totals horizontally.

Cumulative preferred stock. Preferred stock that, if the corporation doesn't pay the specified percentage, has the unpaid amount (the dividend in arrears) carried over to the following year or years.

Current yield. The annual interest income of a bond, calculated by dividing the annual interest by the current purchase price.

D

Decimal equivalent. The presentation of a nondecimal number in decimal form.

Decimal places. The places for digits to the right of the decimal point, representing tenths, hundredths, thousandths, and so forth.

Decimal point. The period between two numerals.

Declare a dividend. A board of directors' distribution of earnings to shareholders.

Declining-balance depreciation rate. A multiple of the basic depreciation rate, such as two (double-declining-balance) or 1.5 (150%-declining-balance).

Declining-balance (DB) method. A method to depreciate assets based on the theory that depreciation is greatest in the first year and less in each succeeding year.

Deductible clause. An insurance policy clause that stipulates that the insured will pay the first portion of collision damage and that the insurance company will pay the remainder up to the value of the insured vehicle.

Denominator. In a fraction, the number below the line.

Dependency exemptions. Reductions to taxable income for each of one or more dependents.

Deposit slip. A written form that lists cash and checks being deposited in a bank account and cash received from the amount being deposited.

Depreciation. The decrease in the value of an asset through use.

Difference. The result of subtracting the subtrahend from the minuend.

Discount. A fee charged when someone buys a note before maturity. With regard to bonds, a bond sells at a discount if the market value becomes less than the face value.

Discount amount. The decrease in value of a discounted note.

Discount date. The last day on which a cash discount may be taken. The day on which a note is discounted (sold).

Discount method. Method of computing the net price using the trade discount rate to calculate the amount of trade discount, and, subsequently, the net price.

Discount period. A certain number of days after the invoice date, during which a buyer may receive a cash discount. The time between a note's discount date and its maturity date.

Discount rate. The percent used for calculating a trade or cash discount. The percent interest charged by the buyer of a discounted note. The percent interest charged by a bank making a loan under the discount method.

Discounted note. A loan that the original lender has sold to a new lender, at a price that is less than the loan's original maturity value.

Dividend. The number being divided.

Dividend in arrears. The unpaid amount carried over to the following year or years due to holders of cumulative preferred stock.

Divisor. The number used to divide another number.

Dollar markup. The total of operating expenses and net profit. Markup expressed as an amount rather than as a percent.

Double-declining-balance. A method that determines a depreciation amount for the first year that is approximately twice the straight-line rate.

Down payment. A partial payment made at the time of a purchase with the balance due at a later time.

Due date. The final day an invoice is to be paid. After that day the buyer may be charged interest. Also the date by which a loan is to be repaid.

Duty. A charge or tax often levied against imported items to protect the domestic market against foreign competition.

E

Effective interest rate. The actual annual rate of interest.

Electronic fund transfer (EFT). Money that is transmitted electronically, primarily via computers and automatic teller machines.

Employee's earnings record. Summary by quarter of the employee's gross earnings, deductions, and net pay.

Employer's Quarterly Federal Tax Return. A tax report, filed on Form 941 every three months by all employers, that provides the IRS with details about the number of employees, total wages paid, income and FICA taxes withheld, and other figures that determine whether a tax balance is due from the company.

Ending inventory (EI). The cost of the inventory on hand at the end of a time period.

Endowment insurance. Insurance payable upon the insured's death if it occurs within a specified period, and an endowment of the same amount as the policy, payable if the insured is alive at the end of that period.

Equation. A sentence consisting of numbers and/or letters that represent numbers, divided into two sections by an equal sign (=).

Equivalent single discount rate. A single trade discount rate that can be used in place of two or more trade discount rates to determine the same discount amount.

Estimated service life. The amount of usefulness that an owner expects to get from an item before it will need to be replaced owing to obsolescence.

Exact interest method. The calculation of simple interest based on the assumption that a year is 365 (or 366) days long.

Excise tax. A tax assessed on each unit, such as is levied on the sale of gasoline, cigarettes, and alcoholic beverages.

Exponent. A number written above and to the right of a number used to indicate raising to the power.

Export. The shipment of goods made in one country for sale in other countries.

Export Administration Regulations. In the U.S., the set of International Trade Administration/Department of Commerce rules and regulations that governs trade between domestic and foreign companies.

Extension. When taking an inventory, the dollar amount derived by multiplying the quantity of an item by its unit price or average cost.

F

Face value. The dollar amount written on a note; it is the same as the amount borrowed, or the principal (P). With regard to corporate and government bonds, the amount that will be paid to the holder when a bond is redeemed at maturity.

Factors. Any of a set of numbers to be multiplied together.

Federal Insurance Contributions Act (FICA). Provides for a federal system of old-age, survivors, disability, and hospital insurance.

Federal Unemployment Tax Act (FUTA). Law that requires employers to pay the IRS an annual tax of 6.2% on the first $7,000 paid to each employee. The federal government uses the money to help fund State Employment Security Agencies, which administer unemployment insurance and job service programs.

Filing status. One of five conditions, including single, married, and married filing separate returns, that a taxpayer qualifies for on Form 1040 that will determine such factors as tax rates and allowable deductions.

Finance charge. The fee that the seller charges for the privilege of buying on credit.

Financial statements. Statements presenting financial information about a company; two of these statements are the balance sheet and the income statement.

First-in, first-out (FIFO) costing method. A method of valuing inventory that assumes that costs for units used or sold are charged according to the order in which the units were manufactured or purchased.

Fixed interest rate. An interest rate that stays the same for the entire length of the loan.

Foreign trade zones. Domestic sites in the United States that are used for import and export activity and are considered to be outside U.S. Customs territory.

Form 1040. One of the basic income tax return forms filed by taxpayers.

Form W-4. The form used to inform the government of a person's marital status and to claim withholding allowances.

Fractions. Number expressions of one or more equal parts of whole units.

Frequency. The number of values in a class of data.

Frequency table. A table that summarizes the number of values in each class.

Future value. The total value of an investment equal to the principal plus all the compound interest; also called the compounded amount.

Future value factor. The number from a calculator or future value table used to compute the future value from a given principal (present value) earning compound interest; also known as a compound amount factor.

Future value of an annuity. The total value of a set of equal deposits plus all of the compound interest.

Future value of annuity factor (FVAF). The number from a calculator or annuity table used to compute the future value of a set of equal deposits all earning compound interest.

G

Government bonds. Long-term notes such as the treasury bonds issued by the federal government and the municipal bonds issued by states, cities, school districts, and other public entities.

Graduated commission rates. A system of rates by which graduated commissions increase as the level of sales increase.

Gross cost. The prime cost and all charges paid by the principal.

Gross proceeds. The price that a commission merchant gets for a consignment.

Gross profit method. A method of estimating inventory without a physical count or perpetual inventory system.

Gross sales. Total sales before deducting any returns, cancelled orders, or sales expenses.

Group insurance. Health insurance coverage extended to a group of people. The cost for each person's coverage is less expensive than it would be under an individual policy.

Grouped data. Individual values that have been organized into data classes, as for use in a frequency table.

H

Health maintenance organization (HMO). Group health insurance coverage with limited options as a means of keeping health insurance costs lower than that of regular group policies.

Higher terms. A fraction in which both the numerator and denominator have been multiplied by the same number.

High-risk driver. A driver with a record of numerous citations or accidents.

Histogram. A diagram that presents the grouped data from a frequency table.

I

Import. Acquiring and selling goods made in a foreign country.

Improper fraction. A fraction in which the numerator is greater than or equal to the denominator.

Income statement. The financial statement that shows the revenues, the expenses, and the net income for a certain period of time.

Installments. Monthly payments, which for a credit sale typically include the purchase price plus all finance charges.

Insured. For life insurance, the person whose life is being insured; for other types of insurance, the person who receives the benefit of the insurance.

Interest. A fee, usually charged for the use of money or credit.

Interest-bearing note. A note that has a maturity value greater than its face value.

Interest dollars. The interest stated as an amount of money rather than as a percent.

Interest period. The period of time between the loan date and the repayment date.

Inventory sheet. A form used for recording information when taking a physical inventory.

Inventory turnover. The number of times the average inventory is converted into sales during the year.

Inventory turnover at cost. Cost of goods sold divided by average inventory for the same period computed at cost prices.

Inventory turnover at retail. Net sales divided by average inventory for the same period computed at retail prices.

Invoice. A document from a seller requesting payment from the buyer; the supplier's bill.

Invoice date. The date stated on an invoice; the beginning of the discount period.

Itemized deductions. Potential reductions to income allowed for certain payments made during the tax year.

J

Junk bond. A high-risk bond with a low rating.

L

Last-in, first-out (LIFO) costing method. A method of valuing inventory based on the assumption that the inventory on hand at the end of a period of time is composed of the units received first.

Least common denominator. The lowest shared multiple of two or more denominators.

Levy. A government charge or fee.

Liabilities. The sum total of all that a business owes at any point in time; debt.

Limited-payment life insurance. A certain premium to be paid every year for a certain number of years specified at the time of insuring, or until the death of the insured, should that occur during the specified period. The policy is payable on the death of the insured, although there may be some options available at the end of the payment period.

Line graph. A type of graph often used for illustrating data over time.

List price. The price amount listed in a catalog.

Loan value. The amount that an insured may borrow on a policy from the insurance company.

Long-term credit. Loans that are for longer than 1 year.

Lower of cost or market value (LCM). An inventory valuation method by which the lower amount of either the market value or the cost value is chosen.

Lower terms. A fraction that has been reduced by a common divisor.

Lowest terms. A fraction that cannot be reduced by any common divisor.

Low-risk driver. A driver with a long-standing, clear driving record.

M

Maker. With regard to a note, the borrower.

Market value. The dollar amount required to replace the inventory as of the inventory date.

Markup. The difference between price and a seller's cost of an item for sale. In dollars it is the amount added to the cost of the goods in order to have a gross profit high enough to cover operating expenses and to make a net profit.

Markup percent. A percent that is used to compute the amount of dollar markup by multiplication. It could be a percent that multiplies the cost to find the dollar markup; or, it could be a percent that multiplies the selling price to find that dollar markup.

Markup percent based on cost. The percent that is calculated by dividing the desired amount of dollar markup by the cost.

Markup percent based on selling price. The percent that is calculated by dividing the desired amount of dollar markup by the selling price.

Markup rate. Markup percent.

Maturity date. The final day of a note on which the borrower (the maker of the note) pays the face value and any interest due to the holder of the note. The due date.

Maturity value. For an interest-bearing note, it is the sum of the face value (principal) and the interest dollars: $MV = P + I$.

Mean. An average of a group of values, computed by dividing the sum of the group of values by the number of values in the group.

Median. An average of a group of values, computed by arranging the numbers in numerical order and finding the middle number.

Metric system. The decimal system of weights (grams, kilograms, etc.) and measures (meters, kilometers, etc.) used in most countries of the world, with the major exception of the U.S.

Mill. One tenth of one cent, or $0.001; a tax rate may be expressed in mills.

Minuend. Number from which subtraction is being made.

Mixed decimal. A number containing a decimal point and both a whole-number part and a decimal part.

Mixed number. A number that represents more than one whole unit by combining a whole number and a proper fraction.

Mode. An average of a group of values, computed by identifying the number that occurs most often.

Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System (MACRS). The accelerated depreciation method required by the IRS.

Mortgage. A loan, usually amortized over 15 to 30 years, used to purchase a home.

Multiplicand. The factor that is multiplied.

Multiplier. The factor that indicates how many times to multiply.

Municipal bonds. Long-term notes issued by states, cities, school districts, and other public entities.

N

Negotiable promissory note. A promissory note that may be sold to a third party.

Net price. The price that a distributor will charge a customer after any trade discounts have been subtracted from the list price.

Net proceeds. The amount sent to the consignor as a result of consignment sales; gross proceeds minus charges.

Net purchase amount. The price of the merchandise actually purchased, including allowances for returns but excluding handling and other costs.

Net revenue. Total revenue less any returns and allowances; frequently called net sales.

Net sales. Total sales for the time period minus sales returned and adjustments made during the same time.

Net worth. The difference between what a business owns (its assets) and what it owes (its liabilities). Also known as owners' or stockholders' equity.

No-fault insurance. Insurance coverage under which the driver of each vehicle involved in an injury accident submits a claim to his or her own insurance company to cover medical costs for injuries to the driver and passengers in that person's own vehicle. The insurance does not cover damage to either vehicle involved in an accident.

No-par stock. Stock issued without par value.

Non-interest-bearing promissory note. A note having a maturity value equal to its face value.

Number of compounding periods. The number of compounding periods per year times the number of years of the loan.

Numerator. In a fraction, the number above the line.

Numerical sentence. A mathematical or logical statement, such as an equation, expressed in numbers and symbols.

O

Obsolescence. Becoming out-of-date.

Odd lot. Shares of stock for sale, consisting of any number of shares less than 100.

Odd-lot differential. A small extra charge, commonly added to the round-lot price, when odd lots are purchased.

Of. "Multiply," particularly when "of" is preceded by the Rate and followed by the Base.

150%-declining-balance. A method that determines a depreciation amount for the first year that is approximately one and one-half the straight-line rate.

Ordinary annuity. An annuity in which the payments occur at the end of each period.

Ordinary interest method. The calculation of simple interest based on the assumption that a year is 360 days long.

Original cost. The cost of building or buying an asset and getting it into use.

Outstanding check. One that has been written but hasn't yet cleared the bank and been charged to the customer's account.

Outstanding deposit. A credit that hasn't yet been recorded by the bank.

Overhead costs. General costs not directly related to sales merchandise.

P

Par. A value assigned the shares of capital stock and stated on the stock certificate.

Payee. Party to whom a check is written.

Payroll register. A summary of wages earned, payroll deductions, and final take-home pay.

Percent. Word and symbol used to communicate a fraction or decimal number, verbally or in writing, as a numerator whose denominator is 100.

Percentage (P). A portion of the Base.

Percentage method. One of two primary methods for calculating the amount of income tax to withhold from employee paychecks. After the total withholding allowance is subtracted from an employee's gross earnings, the amount to be withheld is determined by taking a percentage of the balance. The percentage to be used is specified by the IRS.

Period (compounding period). The unit of time of the compounding.

Periodic interest rate. The rate of interest charged each period.

Perpetual inventory. A running count of all inventory units and unit costs based on a physical tracking of every item as it comes into and goes out of inventory.

Personal exemptions. Reductions to taxable income for the primary taxpayer and a spouse.

Physical inventory. An actual counting of the inventory.

Pie chart. Also known as a circle graph, a graphic presentation of statistics resembling a component bar graph because it shows how one quantity is composed of different parts.

Power. The number of times as indicated by an exponent that a number is multiplied by itself.

Preferred provider organization (PPO). Group health insurance coverage with benefits based on use of contracted providers as a means of keeping health insurance costs lower than that of regular group policies.

Preferred stock. A type of stock issued by corporations, which gives holders a right to share in earnings and liquidation before common shareholders do.

Premium. Fee for insurance coverage, usually paid every year by the insured person. The difference between a bond's par value and its market value when the market value is more. When bonds are sold at a premium, the yield rate will be lower than the stated (face) rate.

Premium (bond). The amount above the face value that a purchaser pays for a bond.

Present value. The amount needed to invest today to reach a stated future goal, given a certain rate of return.

Present value factor. The number from a calculator or present value table used to compute the present value (principal) from a given future value (compound amount).

Present value of an annuity. The initial value of an investment earning compound interest that will yield a series of equal, regular future payments.

Present value of annuity factor (PVAF). The number from a calculator or annuity table used to compute the initial investment earning compound interest that is required to provide for a set of equal, regular future payments.

Price/earnings ratio (P/E). A measure of a stock's value, based on the per-share earnings as reported by the company for the four most recent quarters.

Prime cost. The price that commission merchants pay for the merchandise when they purchase goods for their principals.

Principal. The person (client) for whom a service is performed. Amount that is borrowed using credit.

Proceeds. The amount that a seller receives from the buyer of a note being discounted; the difference between the maturity value and the discount amount.

Proceeds (from sale of stock). The amount of money received by the seller of stock, which is the price minus commission.

Product. The answer to a multiplication problem.

Promissory note. An agreement signed by the borrower that states the conditions of a loan.

Proper fraction. Smaller than one whole unit. The numerator is smaller than the denominator.

Property insurance. Insurance against loss of or damage to property.

Property tax. A tax on real estate or other property owned by the business or an individual.

Purchases (P). Those goods for sale that have been acquired during the current time period.

Pure decimal. A number with no whole-number part.

Q

Quotient. The answer to a division problem.

R

Rate (R). The stated or calculated percent of interest.

Rate of decrease. The negative change in two values stated as a percent.

Rate of increase. The positive change in two values stated as a percent.

Rate of return on investment. A rate that approximates the interest rate that owners are earning on their investment in a company; rate of return on investment = net income ÷ owner's equity.

Rate of yield. From an investment in stock, the ratio of the dividend to the total cost of the stock.

Rate of yield to maturity. The rate of interest investors will earn if they hold a bond to its maturity date.

Ratio. The relation of one amount to another.

Ratio of accounts receivable to net sales. Indicates the percentage of sales that have not yet been paid for by customers; ratio of accounts receivable to net sales = accounts receivable ÷ net sales.

Reconciliation of the bank balance. Comparison of the check stubs or check register with the bank statement to determine the adjusted bank balance.

Recovery amount. The maximum amount that an insurance company will pay on a claim.

Relationship of net income to net sales. This ratio indicates the portion of sales that is income; relationship of net income to net sales = net income ÷ net sales.

Remainder. A part of a dividend that is left after even division is complete. The leftover part of division into which the divisor cannot go a whole number of times.

Remittance. Amount that a buyer actually pays after deducting a cash discount.

Round lot. A unit of stocks for sale, usually 100 shares.

Rounding off. Rounding up or down.

S

Sales tax. A government charge on retail sales of certain goods and services.

Scrap value (SV). The amount the owner of an asset expects to receive upon disposing of it at the end of its estimated service life.

Series of discounts. Two or more trade discount rates available to a buyer for different volume purchases.

Short rates. Insurance premium rates charged for less than a full term of insurance.

Short-term credit. Loans that are 1 year or less in length.

Simple interest. The fundamental interest calculation: Interest = Principal × Rate × Time.

Sinking fund. A fund of deposits made by the issuer of a corporate or government bond and managed by a neutral third party in order to ultimately pay off a bond.

State Unemployment Tax Act (SUTA). Any of various laws passed by states that require the employer to pay a tax, such as 5.4% on the first $7,000 paid to each employee, used to help fund unemployment programs.

Statistics. A field of study that includes the collection, organization, analysis, and presentation of data.

Stock certificate. A paper document that establishes ownership of a stock.

Stock exchanges. Formal marketplaces, such as the New York Stock Exchange and the National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotations, that are set up for the purpose of trading stocks.

Stock transactions. The purchase and sale of stocks.

Stockbroker. An agent who handles stock transactions for clients.

Straight (ordinary) life insurance. Insurance requiring a certain premium to be paid every year until the death of the insured person. The policy then becomes payable to the beneficiary.

Straight-line (SL) method. A depreciation method that distributes the depreciable cost of an item in equal amounts to designated units or periods covering its useful life; (original cost − scrap value) ÷ estimated total life in units or periods of time = depreciation amount for one unit or period.

Subtrahend. Number being subtracted.

Sum. The total of two or more numbers being added together.

Sum-of-the-years-digits (SYD) method. A depreciation method based on the assumption that greater use (and greater productivity) occurs in the earlier years of an asset's life; the rate of depreciation is greater than the straight-line method but less than the declining-balance method in the earlier years.

T

Tax rate. The percent used to calculate a tax.

Tax rate Schedules. Tables formulated by the IRS to compute, depending upon filing status, the tax owed for various levels of taxable income.

Taxable income. The amount of income on which the income tax is determined.

Term insurance. Insurance protection issued for a limited time. A certain premium is paid every year during the specified time period, or term. The policy is payable only in the case of death of the insured during the term. Otherwise, neither the insured nor the specified beneficiaries receive any payment, and the protection stops at the end of the term.

Term of a loan. The period of time between the loan date and the due date.

Terms of payment. A statement on the invoice that informs the buyer of any available discount rate and discount date as well as the due date.

Time. Stated in years or part of a year, the length of time used in simple interest calculations.

Time line. A line representing time onto which marks are placed to indicate the occurrence of certain activities.

Total cost (for purchaser of stock). The purchase price of the stock plus a brokerage fee.

Trade discounts. Discounts given to buyers that generally are based on the quantity purchased.

Treasury bonds. Bonds issued by the United States government.

Truth in Lending Act (TILA). A federal law to assist consumers in knowing the total cost of credit.

U

Ungrouped data. Numbers listed individually.

Units-of-production method. A method for determining depreciation that distributes depreciation based on how much the asset is used.

V

Variable-rate loans. Loans that permit the lender to periodically adjust the interest rate depending on current financial market conditions.

W

Wage-bracket method. One of two primary methods for calculating the amount of income tax to withhold from employee paychecks. This method starts by granting a deduction for each withholding allowance claimed. The amount for each withholding allowance is provided by the IRS. This method involves use of a series of wage-bracket tables published by the IRS.

Withholding allowance. An amount claimed on tax Form W-4 that determines how much income tax the employer will withhold from each paycheck. Each allowance claimed (as for a spouse or dependents) reduces the amount of income tax withheld.

Working capital. The amount of current assets less current liabilities.

Working capital ratio. The amount of current assets that would remain if all a company's current liabilities were paid immediately; total current assets ÷ total current liabilities.

Y

Yield. Income from an investment; generally stated as a percent, or rate.

INDEX

Note: Page numbers referencing figures are italicized and followed by an f. Page numbers referencing tables are italicized and followed by a t.

A
ACA (Affordable Care Act), 228
Accidental death benefit, 225
Account purchase, 100, *101f*
Account sales, 99, *100f*
Accounts receivable, 376
Accounts receivable, ratio to net sales, 376
Accrued interest, 429–430
Accumulated depreciation, 353
Acid test ratio, 376
Ad valorem duty, 395
ADB (Additional death benefit), 225
Adding
  decimals, 23–24
  fractions, 7–8
Additional death benefit (ADB), 225
Adjusted gross income (AGI), 200
Affordable Care Act (ACA), 228
AGI (Adjusted gross income), 200
Allocation, of overhead expenses, 82–83
Alternate present value formula, 312
American Stock Exchange (AMEX), 406
Amortization
  annuities, 452–453
  definition, 264, 268
  for installment purchases, 268–271
  for a mortgage, 272
Amortization payment factor, 268, *269t*
Amortization schedule, 270–272, 454–455
Amount credited, 117
Amount of decrease, 81–82
Amount of increase, 81–82
Annual discount amortization, 431
Annual interest, on corporate bonds, 427–429
Annual percentage rate (APR), 262
Annual premium amortization, 431
Annuities
  definition, 442
  future value of, 442–446
  loan amortization schedule, 454–455
  payment to amortize a loan, 452–453
  present value of, 448–451
  regular payments, computing from future value, 446–448
  regular payments, computing from present value, 451–452
  various payment periods, 445–446
Annuity insurance, 225
Annuity payments, 445–446
APR (Annual percentage rate), 262
Arithmetic, whole numbers and decimal numbers, 23
Assessed valuations, 194–195
Assets, 370–371
ATM (Automatic teller machine), 147
Auto collision insurance, 220
Auto comprehensive insurance, 220
Auto insurance costs, 220–221
Auto liability and property damage insurance, 220
Automatic teller machine (ATM), 147
Average, 474
Average cost method, 334
Average daily balance, 260
Average inventory, 338, 377
Average principal, 264
Average principal invested, 431
Average unpaid balance, 264

B
B (Base), 78–80, *78f*, *79f*, 129, 306
Balance sheets, 370–372, *370–371f*
Bank charge, 149
Bank checks, 146–148, *147f*
Bank discount loan, 284
Bank discounting, 291–292
Bank statement, *150f*
Bank statements, reconciling, 149–153, *152f*
Banking
  bank statements, reconciling, 149–153, *152f*
  checkbooks and check registers, using, 148–149
  deposit slips and bank checks, using, 146–148, *146f*
Bar graphs, 479–482, *480f*
Base (B), 78–80, *78f*, *79f*, 129, 306
Base year, 81
Basic depreciation rate, 354
Bearer, 284
Beginning inventory (BI), 337
Beneficiary, 225
BI (Beginning inventory), 337
Board of directors, 410
Bond market report, 428–429, *428f*
Bond ratings, 427, 428
Bonds. *See also* Corporate bonds; Government bonds
  commissions for buying and selling, 429
  definition, 426
  newspaper information on, 428–429
  rate of yield for, 430–431
  rate of yield to maturity, 431–432
Book value, 353–354
Borrowing money to take a cash discount, 293–294
Broker commissions, 406
Budget vs. actual amounts, 374, *374f*
Business operating ratios, 375–378
Business statistics
  bar graphs, 479–482, *480f*
  definition, 474
  frequency tables, 477–478, *478f*
  histograms, 478–479, *479f*, *484f*
  line graphs, 482–484, *483f*
  mean, 474–475
  median, 475
  mode, 476
  pie charts, 485–486, *485f*

C
Calculator
  computing amounts of increase and decrease with, 82
  decimal numbers, 20–21
  future value factors, 306–307
  future value of annuity factors, 445
  interest, computing, 243
  percents to decimals, changing, 76–77
  present value factors, 312–313
  present value of an annuity, 450–451
Callable bonds, 426
Cancellation, 10–11
Capacity, measurement of
  changing to larger and smaller units, 62
  definition, 62
  US vs. SI systems, 63–64
Capital stock, 406
Cash discount, 114–118, *115f*
Cash surrender value, 226–227
Certificates of deposit (CDs), 304, 309
CFPB (Consumer Financial Protection Bureau), 260, 262
CGS (Cost of goods sold), 128, 337, 339
Charges, 99
Charter, 406
Check registers, 148–149, *148f*
Check stub, *147f*
Checkbooks, 148–149
Checks, 146–148, *147f*
Child Tax Credit, 202, 204
Cigarettes, 193
Classes of data, 477
Coinsurance clause, 223
Coinsurance on property losses, computing, 223–225
Commerce, Department of, 392
Commercial paper, 242
Commission merchant, 99
Commissions
  for bonds, 429
  broker, 406
  definition, 96
  graduated sales commissions, 97–99
  sales and purchases for principals, 99–101
  sales commissions and gross pay, 96–97
Common denominator, 7
Common factors, canceling, 10–11
Common stock, 411–412
Comparative bar graph, 480–481, *481f*, *483f*
Comparative earning potential, 411–413
Comparative income statement, *373–374f*
Complement method shortcut, 110, 112, 116
Complement rate, 110, 113
Component bar graph, 481, *481f*
Compound amount, 304, 305–306
Compound interest
  compounding periods, 307–309
  daily compounding, 309
  definition, 304
  future values, 304–309
  present value factors, 311–313
  present values, 305, 310–311
Compounding periods, 307–309
Congress, and consumer protection legislation, 262–263
Consignee, 99
Consignment, 99
Consignor, 99
Consumer Credit Protection Act, 262
Consumer Financial Protection Bureau (CFPB), 260, 262
Consumer Leasing Act, 262
Consumer protection acts, 262–263
Conversion table, length, 61
Convertible bonds, 426
Convertible preferred stock, 412
Corporate bonds. *See also* Bonds
  annual interest on, 427–429
  definition, 425, 426
  gains and losses, 426–427
Corporate income taxes, *198f*
Corporate stocks
  comparative earning potential, 411–413
  gains or losses, 410
  rate of yield, 410
  round and odd lots, costs and proceeds of, 409
  stock transactions, costs and proceeds of, 406–408
Corporation, 406
Cost
  computing from selling price, 130, 132–133
  computing markup percent from, 131
  computing selling price from, 133
  of installment purchases, 263–264
Cost of goods sold (CGS), 128, 337, 339
Credit, 151
Credit cards, 260
Cumulative designation, 411
Currency exchange rates, 392–393, *393f*
Current yield, 430
Custom tax, *198f*

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

D
Daily compounding, 309
Daily stock report, *407f*
Data classes, 477
Days in each month, *285t*
DB (Declining-balance) method, 354–355, 357
Debit card, 151
Decimal equivalent, 28
Decimal places, 21
Decimal point, 21, *21f*
Decimal system, 58–59
Decimals
  adding, 23–24
  approximating products and quotients, 30–31
  dividing, 26–28
  electronic displays, 20–21
  vs. fractions, 20
  multiplying, 25–26
  percents, changing to, 76–78
  reading, 21–22
  rounding, 22–23
  subtracting, 24–25
  using multipliers and divisors that end with zeros, 29–30
  whole numbers and arithmetic, 23
Declare a dividend, 410
Declining-balance (DB) method, 354–355, 357
Declining-balance depreciation rate, 354–355
Decrease, using percents to measure, 80–82
Deductible clause, 220
Deductions, 200, *201f*
Denominators, 4, 10–11
Dental plan rates, 175, *175f*
Dependence exemption, 199
Deposit slips, 146–148, *146f*
Depreciation
  book value, 353–354
  declining-balance method, 354–355, 357
  definition, 352
  Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System (MACRS), 356–357, *357f*
  partial-year, 357–358, 406
  straight-line method, 352, 357
  sum-of-the-years-digits method, 355–356, 357
  units-of-production method, 353–354, 357
Discount amount, 289
Discount date, 115, 289
Discount method, 109
Discount period, 115, 289
Discount rate, 111, 117, 289
Discounted note, 284
Discounting/discounts
  bank discounting, 291–292
  on bonds, 427, 430
  borrowing money to take a cash discount, 293–294
  cash discounts for fully paid invoices, 114–117
  cash discounts for partially paid invoices, 117–118
  equivalent single discount rate, 113
  vs. interest rates, 292
  promissory notes, 288–290
  series of trade discounts, 111–112
  trade discounts, 110–111
Distance problems, 43–45
Dividend, declaration of, 410
Dividend in arrears, 411
Dividing
  decimals, 26–28
  fractions, 11–12
Divisors that end with zeros, 29–30
Dodd-Frank bill, 262
Dollar markup, 128, 129
Double-declining-balance, 354
Down payment, 242
Due dates, 284, 286–287
Duties on imports, 395–396
Duty, 395

E
Earning potential, comparative, 411–413
Earning records, 176–177
Effective interest rates, for installment purchases, 264–267
EFTs (Electronic fund transfers), 147
EI (Ending inventory), 334
Electronic displays, and decimal numbers, 20–21
Electronic fund transfers (EFTs), 147
Employee earning records, 176–177, *176f*
Employer's federal and state unemployment tax liability, 179
Employer's quarterly federal tax return, 177–178, *178f*
Employer's Tax Guide, 166, 169
Ending inventory (EI), 334
Endowment insurance, 225
Equations
  definition, 45
  numerical relationships in a series, 47
  quick calculations by rounding numbers, 48
  solving simple numerical equations, 45–47
Equivalent single discount rate, 113
Estate tax, *198f*
Estimated service life, 352
Exact interest method, 244–245
Exchange rate changes, effects of, 393–394
Exchange rates, 392–393, *393f*
Excise tax, 193, *198f*
Exemptions, 196–198, 199
Exponent, 306
Export Administration Regulations, 392
Exports, 392
Extension, 332

F
Face value (*FV*), 284, 427
Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA), 164
FDA (Food and Drug Administration), 76
Federal income tax, computing withholding amounts, 166–174
Federal Insurance Contributions Act (FICA), 164, 174
Federal Reserve System, 262
Federal tax return, quarterly, 177–178, *178f*
Federal Trade Commission, 262
Federal Unemployment Tax Act (FUTA), 179
Federal unemployment tax liability, 179
FICA (Federal Insurance Contributions Act), 164, 174
FIFO method, 334
Filing status, 198, *199f*, 202
Finance charges, 260, 261–263
Financial statements
  balance sheets, 370–372, *370–371f*
  business operating ratios, 375–378
  definition, 370
  income statements, 370, 372–375, *372–374f*
Fire insurance policy, 223
First-in, first-out (FIFO) costing method, 334
Fix-rate loans, 271
FLSA (Fair Labor Standards Act), 164
Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 76
Foreign trade zones, 395
Form 1040, 198–201, *199f*, *200f*, *201f*
Form W-4, 164, *165f*
Fraction bar, 4
Fractions
  adding mixed numbers, 7–8
  canceling common factors in numerators and denominators, 10–11
  changing to percents, 77–78
  decimal equivalent, 28
  vs. decimal numbers, 20
  definition, 4
  dividing mixed numbers, 11–12
  examples of, *4f*, *9f*
  improper fractions and mixed numbers, changing, 5–6
  lower and higher terms, changing, 6–7
  multiplying mixed numbers, 10
  notation and vocabulary, 4
  on a ruler, *5f*
  subtracting mixed numbers, 8–10
Freight charges, 115–116
French Academy of Sciences, 58
Frequency, 477
Frequency tables, 477–478, *478f*
FUTA (Federal Unemployment Tax Act), 179
Future value factors (FVF), 305, *326–327t*
Future value of an annuity, 442, *444f*
Future value of annuity factors (FVAFs), 444–445, *468–469f*
Future values
  of annuities, 442–446, *444f*
  calculator, using, 306–307
  compound interest, 304–309
  computing regular payments of an annuity from, 446–448
  definition, 304
  formula for, 305–306
FV (Face value), 284, 427
FVAFs (Future value of annuity factors), 444–445, *468–469f*
FVF (Future value factors), 305, *326–327t*

G
g (Gram), 59, 64
Gains on sale of stock, 410
Gasoline, 193
Gift tax, *198f*
Government bonds, 426, 427–429. *See also* Bonds
Government debt, 198, *198f*
Government expenditures, 198, *198f*
Government income, *198f*
Government levy, 192
Graduated sales commissions, 97–99
Gram (g), 59, 64
Groceries, 193
Gross cost, 100
Gross pay, 164
Gross pay, and sales commissions, 96–97
Gross proceeds, 99
Gross profit method, 337
Gross sales, 96
Group insurance, 227–228
Grouped data, 478

H
Health maintenance organization (HMO), 228
Higher terms, 6–7
High-risk drivers, 221–222
Histograms, 478–479, *479f*, *484f*
HMO (Health maintenance organization), 228
Home Ownership and Equity Protection Act, 262
Horizontal analysis, 370
Hospital Insurance, 164
Housing and Urban Development, Department of, 262

I
I (Interest dollars), 284
Import duties, 395–396
Imports, 392
Improper fractions, 4, 5–6
Income statements, 370, 372–375, *372–374f*
Increase, using percents to measure, 80–82
Individual retirement account (IRA), 200
Installment purchases
  amortization, 268–271
  costs of, 263–264
  effective interest rate, 264–267
  finance charges, 260, 261–263
  interest rates, converting, 260
  monthly mortgage payments, 271–272
  simple interest on a monthly basis, 261
Installments, 263
Insurance
  auto insurance costs, 220–221
  cash surrender and loan values, 226–227
  coinsurance on property losses, 223–225
  life insurance premiums, 225–226
  low-risk and high-risk rates, 221–222
  medical insurance contributions and

  reimbursements, 227–229
 short rates, 222–223
Insured, 222
Interest, 242
Interest days, 285–286
Interest dollars (*I*), 284
Interest period, 242, 285
Interest rate
 converting for installment purchases, 260
 vs. discounting, 292
 and time, *246f*
 and time that yield 1%, 246
 variables in, 247–249
Interest-bearing notes, 284
Internal Revenue Service (IRS), 166, 356
International business
 currency exchange rates, 392–393
 effects of exchange rate changes, 393–394
 import duties, 395–396
International system of units (SI)
 basic elements of, 58–59
 history of, 58
 length, measurement of, 60–62
 length conversion table, 61
 prefixes and symbols, 59
 volume, measurement of, 62–64
 volume conversion table, 63
 weight, measurement of, 64–66
 weight conversion table, 65
International Trade Administration (ITA), 392
Inventory
 average cost method, 334
 FIFO method, 334
 inventory sheets, 332, *332f*, *333f*
 LIFO method, 335
 lower of cost or market value, 335–336
 perpetual inventory systems, 332–333
 turnover, 338–340, 377
 value, estimating, 337–338
Inventory sheets, 332, *332f*, *333f*
Inventory turnover, 338–340, 377
Inventory turnover at cost, 339
Inventory turnover at retail, 338
Inventory value, 337–338
Invoice, 114
Invoice date, 114
IRA (Individual retirement account), 200
IRS (Internal Revenue Service), 166, 356
ITA (International Trade Administration), 392
Itemized deductions, 200–201

J
Junk bonds, 427

L
l (Liter), 59, 62
Labor charges, 193
Large data sets, computing the mean of, 477–478
Last-in, first-out (LIFO) costing method, 335
Law enforcement and general government, *198f*
LCM (Lower of cost or market value), 335–336
Least common denominator, 7
Length, measurement of
 changing to larger and smaller units, 60
 conversion table, 61
 US vs. SI systems, 60–62
Levy, 192
Liabilities, 370–371
Life insurance
 cash surrender and loan values, 226–227
 premiums, 225–226, *226f*, *227f*
LIFO method, 335
Limited-payment life insurance, 225
Line graphs, 482–484, *483f*
List price, 110
Liter (l), 59, 62
Loan amortization schedule, 454–455
Loan payment schedule, 270
Loan values, 226–227
Long-term credit, 242
Loss on sale of stock, 410
Lower of cost or market value (LCM), 335–336
Lower terms, 6–7
Lowest terms, 6
Low-risk drivers, 221–222

M
MACRS (Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System), 356–357, *357f*
Maker, 284
Market value, 194, 335–336
Markup
 based on selling price, 132–133
 definition, 128
 markup percentage based on cost, 131
 percent based on selling price, 134
 variables, 128
Markup based on selling price, 132–133
Markup percent, 128, 129
Markup percent based on cost, 131
Markup rate, 129, 337
Markup variables, 128, 129–130
Maturity dates, 284
Maturity value (*MV*), 284, 288
Mean, 474–475
Median, 475
Medical insurance, contributions and reimbursements, 227–229
Medical plan rates, 175, *175f*
Medicare, 164, 177, 198, *198f*
Medicare tax, 174–175, 197, *198f*
Medicare withholdings, 174–176
Meter (m), 59, 60
Metric Conversion Act, 58
Metric system
 basic elements of, 58–59
 history of, 58
 length, measurement of, 60–62
 length conversion table, 61
 prefixes and symbols, 59
 volume, measurement of, 62–64
 volume conversion table, 63
 weight, measurement of, 64–66
 weight conversion table, 65
Metric units, 59
Minuend, 8
Mixed decimals, 20–21
Mixed numbers
 adding with fractions, 7–8
 changing, 5–6
 definition, 4
 dividing and fractions, 11–12
 multiplying and fractions, 10
 subtracting and fractions, 8–10
Mode, 476
Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System (MACRS), 356–357, *357f*
Monthly budget comparisons, *374f*
Monthly payments, for installment purchases, 268–271
Mortgages, 271–272
Multiplicand, 29
Multipliers that end with zeros, 29–30
Multiplying
 decimals, 25–26
 fractions, 10
Municipal bonds, 426
MV (Maturity value), 284, 288

N
National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotations (NASDAQ), 406
National defense, veterans, and foreign affairs, *198f*
Negotiable promissory note, 284, 288
Net income, relationship to net sales, 377
Net price, 110
Net proceeds, 99
Net purchase amount, 114
Net revenue, 372
Net sales, 96, 337
Net sales, ratio to accounts receivable, 376
Net sales, relationship to net income, 377
Net tax, 202–204
Net worth, 370, 371
New York Stock Exchange (NYSE), 406, *407f*
Newspaper information, 428–429
No-fault insurance, 220
Non-interest-bearing promissory notes, 290, 291
Nonprofit organizations, 197
Nontaxable items, 193
No-par stock, 406
Notation, for fractions, 4
Number of compounding periods, 307
Numerators, 4, 10–11
Numerical equations, simple, 45–47
Numerical relationships in a series, 47
Numerical sentence, 45
NYSE (New York Stock Exchange), 406, *407f*

O
Obsolescence, 352
Odd lots, 409
Odd-lot differential, 409
Old-Age, Survivors, and Disability Insurance, 164
Operating ratios, 375–378
Ordinary annuity, 442, *442f*, *444f*, *448f*
Ordinary interest method, 244, 245
Ordinary life insurance, 225
Original cost, 352
Outstanding checks, 149
Outstanding deposit, 151
Overhead costs, 82
Overhead expenses, 82–83

P
P (Percentage), 78–80, *78f*, *79f*, 129
Partial-year depreciation, 357–358, 406
Payee, 146
Payment periods, 445–446
Payroll deductions, 175, *175f*
Payroll records
 employee's earning record, 176–177, *176f*
 employer's federal and state unemployment tax liability, 179
 employer's quarterly federal tax return, 177–178, *178f*
 federal income tax withholding amounts, computing, 166–174
 payroll register, preparing, 164–166, *166f*
 Social Security, Medicare, and other withholdings, 174–176
Payroll register, 164–166, *166f*
Percentage (P), 78–80, *78f*, *79f*, 129
Percentage method, for income tax withholding, 166–167, *167f*, *168f*
Percentage rate. *See* Rate (R)
Percents
 computing tax rates in, 195–196
 decimals, changing to, 76–78
 finding base, rate, and percentage, 78–80, *78f*, *79f*
 fractions and decimals to, changing, 77–78
 increase and decrease, measurement of, 80–82
 overhead expenses, allocation of, 82–83
 using in business, 80
Period, 307
Periodic interest rate, 307
Perpetual inventory systems, 332–333
Personal exemptions, 199
Personal income taxes, 197, *198f*
Physical, human, and community development, *198f*
Physical inventory, 332
Pie charts, 485–486, *485f*
Point. *See* Decimal point
POS (Point of Sale), 151
Power, 306
PPO (Preferred provider organization), 228
Preferred provider organization (PPO), 228
Preferred stock, 411–412
Premium, 220
Premium, bonds purchased at, 427, 430
Premiums, for life insurance, 225–226, *226f*, *227f*

Present value factors (PVF), 311–313, *328–329t*
Present value of an annuity, 442, *448f*
Present value of annuity factors (PVAFs), 449–450, *470–471f*
Present values, 305, 310–311, 448–451
Price, computing from cost, 129–130
Prime cost, 100
Principal, 242, 247–249, 305
Proceeds, 289, 406
Products, approximating, 30–31
Promissory notes
  definition, 284
  discounting, 288–290
  due date, determining, 284, 286–287
  examples of, *284f*
  maturity value of, 284, 288
  non-interest-bearing, 290, 291
  number of interest days, 285–286
  overview of, 284
Proper fraction, 4
Property insurance, 223–225
Property taxes, 194–195
Prorations, 196–198
PRT formulas, *247f*
Purchases (P), 337
Purchases, computing for principals, 99–101
Pure decimals, 21
PVAFs (Present value of annuity factors), 449–450, *470–471f*
PVF (Present value factors), 311–313, *328–329t*

Q
Quarterly federal tax return, 177–178, *178f*
Quotients, 30–31

R
Rate (R), 78–80, *78f*, *79f*, 129, 247–249
Rate of decrease, 81
Rate of increase, 81
Rate of return on investment, 377
Rate of yield, 410, 430–431
Rate of yield to maturity, 431–432
Rate problems, 43–45
Ratio, 78
Ratio of accounts receivable to net sales, 376
Ratios, 375
Reading decimal numbers, 21–22
Reconciliation of the bank balance, 149–153, *152f*
Regular payments of an annuity from the future value, 446–448
Relationship of net income to net sales, 377
Remittance, 114
Retail statement of account, *261f*
Return on investment, rate of, 377
Returned merchandise, 115–116
Round lots, 409
Rounding, 22–23, 48
Rounding up, 22

S
Sales, computing for principals, 99–101
Sales commissions, 96–97
Sales invoice, *114f*
Sales price, computing from cost, 129–130
Sales tax, 192–194, *192f*
Savings accounts, 304, 309
Scrap value (SV), 352, 355
Selling price
  as the base, 129
  computing cost from, 130
  computing from cost, 133
  markup based on, 132–133
Series of trade discounts, 111–112
Shareholder's equity, 371
Shipping, 193
Short rates, 222–223
Short-term credit, 242
SI. *See* International system of units (SI)
Simple interest
  computing, 242–243
  definition, 242
  estimating, 246–247
  exact interest, 244–245
  introduction to, 242
  on a monthly basis, 261
  ordinary interest, 244
  ordinary interest vs. exact interest, 245
  variables, 247–249
Simple numerical equations, 45–47
Sinking funds, 442, 447
SL (Straight-line) method, 352, 357
Social programs, *198f*
Social Security, 164, 177, 198, *198f*
Social Security tax, 174, 197, *198f*
Social Security withholdings, 174–176
Special assessments, 196–198
Standard & Poor's, 427
Standard deductions, *201f*
State income tax, 175
State Unemployment Tax Act (SUTA), 179
State unemployment tax liability, 179
Statistics, 474. *See also* Business statistics
Stock certificate, 406
Stock exchanges, 406
Stock purchase, confirmation of, *408f*
Stock transactions, 406–408
Stockbroker, 406
Straight (ordinary) life insurance, 225
Straight-line (SL) method, 352, 357
Subtracting
  decimals, 24–25
  fractions, 8–10
Subtrahend, 8
Sum-of-the-years-digits (SYD) method, 355–356, 357
SUTA (State Unemployment Tax Act), 179
SV (Scrap value), 352, 355
SYD (Sum-of-the-years-digits) method, 355–356, 357

T
Tax credits, 202–204
Tax rate schedules, 202, *203f*
Tax rates, 192, 195–196
Taxable income, determining using standard form 1040, 198–201
Taxable items, 193
Taxes
  assessed valuations and property taxes, 194–195
  sales tax, 192–194, *192f*
  special assessments, prorations, and exemptions, 196–198, 199
  tax rates in percents, 195–196
  taxable income, determining using standard form 1040, 198–201
  taxes due, determining using standard form 1040, 202–205
Term insurance, 225
Term of the loan, 242
Terms of payment, 114
TILA (Truth in Lending Act), 262–263
Time
  and interest, 242, *246f*, 247–249
  and interest that yield 1%, 246
Time line, 442
Time problems, 43–45
Total cost, 406
Total sales. *See* Gross sales
Trade discounts, 110–111
Traditional system. *See* U.S. Traditional system
Treasury bonds, 426
True interest rate. *See* Effective interest rates
Truth in Lending Act (TILA), 262–263
Turnover, inventory, 338–340, 377

U
Unemployment tax liability, 179
Ungrouped data, 477
Uniform Product Code (UPC), 193
Units-of-production method, 353–354, 357
UPC (Uniform Product Code), 193
U.S. Customs Agency, 395
U.S. Traditional system
  length, measurement of, 60–62
  length conversion table, 61
  overview of, 58
  prefixes and symbols, 59
  volume conversion table, 63
  weight conversion table, 65

V
Variable-rate loans, 271
Variables, in simple interest, 247–249
Vendors, 110
Vertical analysis, 370
Vocabulary for fractions, 4
Volume, measurement of
  changing to larger and smaller units, 62
  conversion table, 63
  definition, 62
  US vs. SI systems, 63–64

W
Wage-bracket method, for income tax withholding, 166, 169, *170–173f*
Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, 262
Weight, measurement of
  changing to larger and smaller units, 64–66
  conversion table, 65
  US vs. SI systems, 65–66
Whole numbers, 23
Withholding allowance, 164
Word problems
  rate, time, and distance problems, 43–45
  solving, 42–43
Working capital, 375–376
Working capital ratio, 375–376

Y
Year-to-date budget comparisons, *374f*
Yield, 430
Yield, rate of, 410, 430–431

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Progress Report

Part	Chapter	Assignment	Title	Page	Date Assigned	Date Completed	Score/Grade
1	1	1.1	Addition and Subtraction of Fractions	15			
		1.2	Multiplication and Division of Fractions	17			
	2	2.1	Addition and Subtraction of Decimal Numbers	35			
		2.2	Multiplication and Division of Decimal Numbers	37			
		2.3	Decimal Numbers in Business	39			
	3	3.1	Word Problems, Equations, and Series	53			
		3.2	Word Problems, Formulas, and Equations	55			
	4	4.1	International System of Units (SI) and Capacity	69			
		4.2	International System of Units (SI) Measurement of Capacity and Weight	71			
2	5	5.1	Base, Rate, and Percentage	87			
		5.2	Rate of Increase and Rate of Decrease	89			
		5.3	Business Applications	91			
		5.4	Allocation of Overhead	93			
	6	6.1	Commission	105			
		6.2	Applications with Commission	107			
	7	7.1	Trade Discounts	123			
		7.2	Cash Discounts	125			
	8	8.1	Markup Based on Cost	139			
		8.2	Markup Based on Selling Price	141			
3	9	9.1	Check Register and Check Stubs	157			
		9.2	Check Register and Bank Statements	159			
		9.3	Bank Balance Reconciliation Statements	161			
	10	10.1	Payroll Problems	185			
		10.2	Payroll, Earnings Record, Payroll Tax Returns	187			
	11	11.1	Sales Tax	211			
		11.2	Property Taxes	213			
		11.3	Federal Income Tax	217			
	12	12.1	Auto Insurance	233			
		12.2	Property Insurance	235			
		12.3	Life and Medical Insurance	237			
4	13	13.1	Simple Interest	253			
		13.2	Simple Interest Applications	257			
	14	14.1	Monthly Finance Charges	275			
		14.2	Installment Sales and Effective Rates	279			
		14.3	Amortization and Mortgages	281			

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Part	Chapter	Assignment	Title	Page	Date Assigned	Date Completed	Score/Grade
	15	15.1	Dates, Times, and Maturity Value	297			
		15.2	Discounting Promissory Notes	299			
		15.3	Bank Discounting and Cash Discounts	301			
	16	16.1	Future Value (Compound Amount)	317			
		16.2	Present Value	321			
5	17	17.1	Inventory Cost	345			
		17.2	Inventory Estimating and Turnover	347			
	18	18.1	Business Depreciation Part 1	363			
		18.2	Business Depreciation Part 2	367			
	19	19.1	Balance Sheet Analysis	383			
		19.2	Income Statement Analysis	385			
		19.3	Financial Statement Ratios	387			
	20	20.1	Trading with Other Countries	399			
		20.2	Duties and Metric Conversion	401			
6	21	21.1	Buying and Selling Stock	417			
		21.2	Capital Stock	421			
	22	22.1	Corporate and Government Bonds	437			
		22.2	Bond Rate of Yield	439			
	23	23.1	Annuities—Future Value	459			
		23.2	Annuities—Present Value	463			
	24	24.1	Statistical Averages	491			
		24.2	Graphs and Charts	493			

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Notes

Notes

Notes

Notes

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Notes

Notes

Notes

Notes

Notes

Notes

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.